Early English Alliterative Poems In The West-Midland Dialect Of The Fourteenth Century



Richard Morris

The Project Gutenberg eBook of Early English Alliterative Poems

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Early English Alliterative Poems

Editor: Richard Morris

Release date: October 19, 2009 [eBook #30282]
Most recently updated: March 2, 2024

Language: English

Other information and formats:
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/30282

Credits: Louise Hope, David Starner and the
Online Distributed Proofreading Team

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK
EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS ***

This e-text is based on the 1869 (second) edition of the *Alliterative Poems*. A few apparent misprints were checked against the 1864 edition, but the texts as a whole were not closely compared.

The text includes characters that will only display in UTF-8 (Unicode) text readers, primarily ȝ Ȝ (yogh). There are also a few Greek words in the Index, and a handful of letters with overline or macron, such as ī. If these characters do not display properly, or if the quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that your browser's "character set" or "file encoding" is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change the default font.

All brackets are in the original.

Typographical errors are shown with mouse-hover popups. Quotation-mark errors—especially orphaned open quotes—are similarly marked. In some cases it may be possible to guess where the missing quotation mark belongs, but it seemed safer to leave the text as printed. No quotation marks disappeared between the 1864 and 1869 editions.

Full Contents
Preface
The Pearl (*separate file*)
Cleanness (*separate file*)
Patience (*separate file*)
Glossarial Index (*separate file*)
Sidenotes
Details of Text and Layout

EDITED FROM
THE UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT

BRITISH MUSEUM MS. COTTON
NERO A. x

BY

RICHARD MORRIS

Published for
THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
by the
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON NEW YORK TORONTO

FIRST PUBLISHED 1864
SECOND EDITION 1869
REPRINTED (1869 VERSION) 1965

Original Series, No. 1

ORIGINALLY PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN, HERTFORD
AND NOW REPRINTED LITHOGRAPHICALLY IN GREAT
BRITAIN
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, OXFORD
BY VIVIAN RIDLER, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY



Contents

(added by transcriber)

Items in *italics* do not have headings in the body text.

Preface v

Introduction to ***The Pearl*** [xi]

Introduction to ***Cleanness*** [xiii]

Introduction to ***Patience*** [xviii]

General Introduction [xix]

Remarks Upon the Dialect and Grammar xxi

Grammatical Details xxviii

I. Nouns xxxiii

II. Adjectives xxxiii

III. Pronouns xxx

IV. Verbs xxxiii

V. Adverbs xl

VI. Prepositions xl

VII. Conjunctions xl

Description of the Manuscript xli

Contractions Used in the Glossary xliv

The Pearl (*separate file*) 1

Notes to *The Pearl* 105

Cleanness (*separate file*) 37
Notes to *Cleanness* [108]
Patience (*separate file*) 89
Notes to *Patience* [115]

Glossarial Index (*separate file*) 117
Collected Sidenotes *(section added by transcriber)*

PREFACE.

All page references in Arabic numerals refer to the main text, located in a separate file. Parenthetical Roman numerals *do not* correspond to the editor's section headings, but the text summary is generally similar to the appropriate headnote.

THE following poems are taken from a well known manuscript in the Cottonian collection, marked Nero A. x, which also contains, in the same handwriting and dialect, a metrical romance,[1] wherein the adventures of Sir Gawayne with the "Knight in Green," are most ably and interestingly described.

Unfortunately nothing can be affirmed with any certainty concerning the authorship of these most valuable and interesting compositions. The editor of "Syr Gawayn and the Green Knight" considers that Huchowne, a supposed[2] Scotch *maker* of the fourteenth century, has the best claims to be recognised as the author, inasmuch as he is specially referred to by Wyntown as the writer of the *Gret gest of Arthure* and the *Awntyre of Gawayne*.

I do not think that any certain conclusions are to be drawn from the Scotch historian's assertion. It is well known that more versifiers than one during the fourteenth century attempted romance composition in the English language, having for their theme the knightly deeds of Arthur or Sir Gawayne. These they compiled from French originals, from which they selected the most striking incidents and those best suited to an Englishman's taste for the marvellous. We are not surprised, then, at finding so many romance poems treating of the exploits of the same hero, and laying claim to be considered as original productions. In Scotland, Huchowne's works might no doubt have been regarded as the standard romances of the period, but that they were the only English *gests* is indeed very doubtful.

The Early English alliterative romance, entitled the *Morte Arthure*, published from a manuscript in Lincoln Cathedral by Mr. Halliwell,[3] is considered by Sir F. Madden to be the veritable *gest of Arthure* composed by Huchowne. An examination of this romance does not lead me to the same conclusion, unless Huchowne was a Midland man, for the poem is not written in the old Scotch dialect,[4] but seems to have been originally composed in one of the Northumbrian dialects spoken *South* of the Tweed.[5]

The manuscript from which Mr. Halliwell has taken his text is not the original copy, nor even a literal transcript of it. It exhibits certain orthographical and grammatical peculiarities unknown to the Northumbrian dialect which have been introduced by a Midland transcriber, who has here and there taken the liberty to adapt the original text to the dialect of his own locality, probably that one of the North Midland counties, where many of the Northumbrian forms of speech would be intelligible.[6]

A comparison of the Arthurian romance with the following poems throws no light whatever upon the authorship of the poems. The dialect of the two works is altogether different, although many of the terms employed are common to both, being well known over the whole of the North of England. The grammatical forms (the best test we can have) in the poems are quite distinct from those in the *Morte Arthure*, and of course go far to prove that they do not proceed from the pen of the same writer.

The Editor of "Syr Gawayn and the Green Knight" acknowledges that the poems in the present volume, as now preserved to us in the manuscript, are not in the Scottish dialect, but he says "there is sufficient internal evidence of their being *Northern*,[7] although the manuscript containing them appears to have been written by a scribe of the Midland counties, which will account for the introduction of forms differing from those used by writers beyond the Tweed."

Now, with regard to this subsequent transcription of the poems from the Scotch into a Midland dialect,—it cannot be said to be improbable, for we have abundant instances of the multiplication of copies by scribes of different localities, so that we are not

surprised at finding the works of some of our popular Early English writers appearing in two or three forms; but, on the other hand, a comparison of the original copy with the *adapted transcriptions*, or even the reading of a transcribed copy, always shows how the author's productions have suffered by the change. Poetical works, especially those with final rhymes, of course undergo the greatest amount of transformation and depreciation. The changes incident upon the kind of transcription referred to are truly surprising, and most perplexing to those who make the subject of Early English *dialects* a matter of investigation.

But, in the present poems, the uniformity and consistency of the grammatical forms is so entire, that there is indeed no internal evidence of subsequent transcription into any other dialect than that in which they were originally written. However, the dialect and grammatical peculiarities will be considered hereafter.

Again, in the course of transcription into another dialect, any literary merit that the author's copy may have originally possessed would certainly be destroyed. But the poems before us are evidently the work of a man of birth and education; the productions of a true poet, and of one who had acquired a perfect mastery over that form of the English tongue spoken in his own immediate locality during the earlier part of the fourteenth century. Leaving out of consideration their great philological worth, they possess an intrinsic value of their own as literary compositions, very different from anything to be found in the works of Robert of Gloucester, Manning, and many other Early English authors, which are very important as philological records, but

in the light of poetical productions, cannot be said to hold a very distinguished place in English literature. The poems in the present volume contain many passages which, as Sir F. Madden truly remarks, will bear comparison with any similar ones in the works of Douglas or Spenser.

I conclude, therefore, that these poems were not transcribed from the Scotch dialect into any other, but were written in their own West-Midland speech in which we now have them.

Mr. Donaldson, who is now editing for the Early English Text Society the Troy Book, translated from Guido di Colonna, puts forward a plea for Huchowne as its author, to whom he would also assign the *Morte Arthure* (ed. Perry) and the Pistel of Sweet Susan.[8] But Mr. Donaldson seems to have been misled by the similarity of vocabulary, which is not at all a safe criterion in judging of works written in a Northumbrian, West or East Midland speech. The dialect, I venture to think, is a far safer test. A careful examination of the Troy Book compels me to differ in toto from Mr. Donaldson, and, instead of assigning the Troy Book to a Scotchman, say that it cannot even be claimed, in its present form, by any Northumbrian south of the Tweed; moreover, it presents no appearance of having been tampered with by one unacquainted with the dialect, though it has perhaps been slightly modernised in the course of transcription.

The work is evidently a genuine West-Midland production,[9] having most of the peculiarities of vocabulary and inflexions that are found in these *Alliterative Poems*.[10] I feel greatly inclined to claim this English Troy Book as the production of the author of the *Alliterative Poems*; for, leaving out

identical and by no means common expressions, we find the same power of description,[11] and the same tendency to inculcate moral and religious truths on all occasions where an opportunity presents itself.[12] Without dwelling upon this topic, which properly falls to the Editor of the Troy Book, it may not be out of place to ask the reader to compare the following description of a storm from the Troy Book, with that selected from the present volume on pp. 14 and 18.

A TEMPEST ON ÞE SEE.

There a tempest *hom* toke on þe torres hegh:
—
A *rak* and a royde wynde rose in *hor* saile,
A myst & a *merkenes* was mervell to se;
With a *routond* rayn ruthe to be-holde,
Thonr*et*[13] full *throly* with a thicke haile;
With a leuenyng light as a *low* fyre,
Blas*et* all the brode see as it bren wold.
The flode with a felle cours flow*et* on hepis,
Rose uppon rockes as any *ranke* hylles.
So wode were the waghes & þe wilde *ythes*,
All was like to be lost þat no lond hade
The ship ay shot furth o þe *shire waghes*,
As qwo clymbe at a clyffe, or a clent[14] hille.
Eft *dump* in the depe as all drowne wolde.
Was no *stightlyng* with stere ne no stithe ropes,
Ne no sayle, þat might serue for *unsound* wedur.
But all the buernes in the bote, as *hom* best liked,
Besoght unto sainttes & to sere goddes; (p. 65)

A STORME ON THE SE.

All the company enclin*et* cairy*n* to ship;
Cachy*n* in cables, knyt up *hor* ancres,
Sesit vp *hor* sailes in a sad hast;
Richet þere rapes, rapit unto see.
Hokit out of hauyn, all the hepe somyn,
Hade bir at hor bake, blawen to þe depe;
Sailyn forthe *soberly*, somyn but a while,
Noght fyftene forlong fairly to the end.
.....
When sodenly the softe aire *unsoberly* rose;
The cloudis overcast, *claterrit* aboute;
Wyndes full wodely *walt* up the ythes;
Wex *merke* as the mydnighte mystes full thicke:
Thunret in the *thestur throly* with all;
With a *launchant laite* lightonyd the water;
And a *ropand* rayne *raiked* fro the heuyn.
The storme was full stithe with mony stout windes,
Hit *walt* up the wilde se vppon wan hilles.
The ffolke was so ferd, that *on flete* were,
All drede for to drowne with dryft of the se;
And in perell were put all the proude kynges.
—(p. 150.)

The poems in the present volume, three in number, seem to have been written for the purpose of enforcing, by line upon line and precept upon precept, Resignation to the will of God; Purity of life as manifested in thought, word, and deed; Obedience to the Divine command; and Patience under affliction.

In the first poem, entitled by me "*The Pearl*", the author evidently gives expression to his own sorrow for the loss of his infant child, a girl of two years old,

whom he describes as a

> Perle plesaunte to prynces paye
> *Pearl pleasant to princes' pleasure,*
> To clanly clos in golde so clere
> *Most neatly set in gold so clear.*

Of her death he says:

> Allas! I leste hyr in on erbere
> *Alas! I lost her in an arbour,*
> Þur3 gresse to grounde hit fro me yot
> *Through grass to ground it from me got.* —(p. 1.)

The writer then represents himself as visiting his child's grave (or arbour) in the "high season of August," and giving way to his grief (p. 2). He falls asleep, and in a dream is carried toward a forest, where he saw rich rocks gleaming gloriously, hill sides decked with crystal cliffs, and trees the leaves of which were as burnished silver. The gravel under his feet was "precious pearls of orient," and birds "of flaming hues" flew about in company, whose notes were far sweeter than those of the cytole or gittern (guitar) (p. 3). The dreamer arrives at the bank of a stream, which flows over stones (shining like stars in the welkin on a winter's night) and pebbles of emeralds, sapphires, or other precious gems, so

> Þat all the lo3e lemed of ly3t
> *That all the deep gleamed of light,*
> So dere wat3 hit adubbement
> *So dear was its adornment.* —(p. 4.)

Following the course of the stream, he perceives on the opposite side a crystal cliff, from which was reflected many a "royal ray" (p. 5).

> At þe fote þer-of þer sete a faunt
> *At the foot thereof there sat a child,*

A mayden of menske, ful debonere
A maiden of honour, full debonnair;
Blysnande whyt wat3 hyr bleaunt
Glistening white was her robe,
(I knew hyr wel, I hade sen hyr ere)
(I knew her well, I had seen her before)
At glysnande golde þat man con schore
As shining gold that man did purify,
So schon þat schene an-vnder schore
So shone that sheen (bright one) on the opposite shore;
On lenghe I loked to hyr þere
Long I looked to her there,
Þe lenger I knew hyr more & more
The longer I knew her, more and more. —(pp. 6, 7.)

The maiden rises, and, proceeding along the bank of the stream, approaches him. He tells her that he has done nothing but mourn for the loss of his Pearl, and has been indeed a "joyless jeweller" (p. 8). However, now that he has found his Pearl, he declares that he is no longer sorrowful, but would be a "joyful jeweller" were he allowed to cross the stream (p. 8). The maiden blames her father for his rash speech, tells him that his Pearl is not lost, and that he cannot pass the stream till after death (p. 10). The dreamer is in great grief; he does not, he says, care what may happen if he is again to lose his Pearl. The maiden advises him to bear his loss patiently, and to abide God's doom (p. 11). She describes to him her blissful state in heaven, where she reigns as a queen (p. 12). She explains to him that Mary is the Empress of Heaven, and all others kings and queens (p. 13). The parable of the labourers in the vineyard[15] (pp. 15-18) is then rehearsed at length, to prove that "innocents" are admitted to the same privileges as are enjoyed by those who have lived longer upon the earth (p. 18).

The maiden then speaks to her father of Christ and his one hundred and forty thousand brides (p. 24), and describes their blissful state (p. 26). She points out to him the heavenly Jerusalem, which was "all of bright burnished gold, gleaming like glass" (p. 29). Then the dreamer beholds a procession of virgins going to salute the Lamb, among whom he perceives his "little queen" (p. 33). On attempting to cross the stream to follow her, he is aroused from his dream (p. 35), laments his rash curiosity in seeking to know so much of God's mysteries, and declares that man ever desires more happiness than he has any right to expect (p. 35).

The second poem, entitled "*Cleanness*," is a collection of Biblical stories, in which the writer endeavours to enforce Purity of Life, by showing how greatly God is displeased at every kind of impurity, and how sudden and severe is the punishment which falls upon the sinner for every violation of the Divine law.

After commending cleanness and its "fair forms," the author relates (I.) The Parable of the Marriage Feast (p. 39); (II.) the Fall of the Angels (p. 43); (III.) The wickedness of the antediluvian world (p. 44),

> He wat3 famed for fre þat fe3t loued best
> *He was famous as free that fight loved best,*
> & ay þe bigest in bale þe best wat3 halden
> *And ever the biggest in sin the best was held;* (p. 45.)

(IV.) The destruction of mankind by the Flood. When all were safely stowed in the ark,

> Thenne sone com þe seuenþe day, when samned wern alle
> *Then soon came the seventh day when assembled were all,*
> & alle woned in þe whichche þe wylde & þe

tame.
And all abode in the ark (hutch), the wild and the tame.
Þen bolned þe abyme & bonke3 con ryse
Then swelled the abyss and banks did rise,
Waltes out vch walle-heued, in ful wode streme3
Bursts out each well-head in full wild streams,
Wat3 no brymme þat abod vnbrosten bylyue
There was no brim (stream) that abode unburst by then,
Þe mukel lauande loghe to þe lyfte rered
The much (great) flowing deep (loch) to the loft (sky) reared.
Mony clustered clowde clef alle in clowte3
Many a clustering cloud cleft all in clouts (pieces),
To-rent vch a rayn-ryfte & rusched to þe vrþe
Rent was each a rain-rift and rushed to the earth;
Fon neuer in forty daye3, & þen þe flod ryses
Failed never in forty days, and then the flood rises,
Ouer-walte3 vche a wod and þe wyde felde3
Over-flows each wood and the wide fields;
.....
Water wylger ay wax, wone3 þat stryede
Water wildly ever waxed, abodes that destroyed,
Hurled in-to vch hous, hent þat þer dowelled
Hurled into each house, seized those that there dwelt.
Fyrst feng to þe fly3t alle þat fle my3t
First took to flight all that flee might,
Vuche burde with her barne þe byggyng þay leue3
Each bride (woman) with her bairn their abode they leave,
& bowed to þe hy3 bonk þer brentest hit wern
And hied to the high bank where highest it were,
& heterly to þe hy3e hille3 þay [h]aled on faste

And hastily to the high hills they rushed on fast;
Bot al wat3 nedle3 her note, for neuer cowþe stynt
But all was needless their device, for never could stop
Þe ro3e raynande ryg [&] þe raykande wawe3
The rough raining shower and the rushing waves,
Er vch boþom wat3 brurd-ful to þe bonke3 egge3
Ere each bottom (valley) was brim-ful to the banks' edges,
& vche a dale so depe þat demmed at þe brynke3
And each dale so deep that dammed at the brinks.
—(pp. 47, 48).

The ark is described as "heaved on high with hurling streams."

Kest to kyþe3 vncouþe þe clowde3 ful nere
Cast to kingdoms uncouth the clouds ful near,
Hit waltered on the wylde flod, went as hit lyste
It tossed on the wild flood, went as it list,
Drof vpon þe depe dam, in daunger hit semed
It drove upon the deep dam, in danger it seemed,
With-outen mast, oþer myke, oþer myry bawe-lyne
mike] See Glossary.
Without mast, or mike, or merry bow-line,
Kable, oþer capstan to clyppe to her ankre3
Cable or capstan to clip to their anchors,
Hurrok, oþer hande-helme hasped on roþer
Oar or hand-helm hooked on rudder,
Oþer any sweande sayl to seche after hauen
Or any swinging sail to seek after haven,
Bot flote forthe with þe flyt of þe felle wynde3
But floated forth with the force of the fell winds.
Wheder-warde so þe water wafte, hit rebounde
Whither-ward so (as) the water waft, it rebounded,
Ofte hit roled on-rounde & rered on ende

Oft it rolled around and reared on end,
Nyf our lorde hade ben her lode3-mon hem had lumpen harde
Had our Lord not been their (pilot) leader hardship had befallen them. —(p. 49.)

(V.) The Visit of Three Angels to Abraham (p. 54).

(VI.) The destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (pp. 64, 65), including a description of the Dead Sea, the tarn (lake) of traitors (p. 66).

(VII.) The invasion of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (p. 71), and the captivity of Judah (p. 74).

The following is a paraphrase of the fourth and fifth verses in the twenty-fifth chapter of the second book of Kings.[17]

Þenne þe kyng of þe kyth a counsayl hym takes
Then the king of the kingdom a counsel him takes,
Wyth þe best of his burnes, a blench for to make
With the best of his men a device for to make;
Þay stel out on a stylle ny3t er any steuen rysed
They stole out on a still night ere any sound arose,
& harde hurles þur3 þe oste, er enmies hit wyste
And hard hurled through the host, ere enemies it wist,
Bot er þay at-wappe ne mo3t þe wach wyth oute
But ere they could escape the watch without,
Hi3e skelt wat3 þe askry þe skewes an-vnder
High scattered was the cry, the skies there under,
Loude alarom vpon launde lulted was þenne
Loud alarm upon land sounded was then;
Ryche, ruþed of her rest, ran to here wedes,
Rich (men) roused from their rest, ran to their weeds,
Hard hattes þay hent & on hors lepes
Kettle hats they seized, and on horse leap;

Cler claryoun crak cryed on-lofte
Clear clarion's crack cried aloft.
By þat wat3 alle on a hepe hurlande swyþee
By that (time) was all on a heap, hurling fast,
Fol3ande þat oþer flote, & fonde hem bilyue
Following that other fleet (host), and found them soon,
as tyd] Immediately.
Ouer-tok hem, as tyd, tult hem of sadeles
Over-took them in a trice, tilted them off saddles,
Tyl vche prynce hade his per put to þe grounde
Till each prince had his peer put to the ground;
& þer wat3 þe kyng ka3t wyth calde prynces
And there was the king caught with crafty princes,
& alle hise gentyle for-iusted on Ierico playnes
And all his nobles vanquished on Jericho's plains.
—(pp. 71, 72.)

(VIII.) Belshazzar's impious feast (pp. 76-80), and the handwriting upon the wall (pp. 80, 81).

In þe palays pryncipale vpon þe playn wowe
In the palace principal upon the plain wall,
In contrary of þe candelstik þat clerest hit schyned
Opposite to the candlestick that clearest there shone.
Þer apered a paume, with poyntel in fyngres
There appeared a palm with a pointel in its fingers,
Þat wat3 grysly & gret, & grymly he wrytes
That was grisly and great, and grimly it writes,
None oþer forme bot a fust faylaynde þe wryst
None other form but a fist failing the wrist
Pared on þe parget, purtrayed lettres
Pared on the plaister, pourtrayed letters.
When þat bolde Balta3ar blusched to þat neue
When that bold Belshazzar looked to that fist,
Such a dasande drede dusched to his hert
Such a dazzling dread dashed to his heart.

Þat al falewed his face & fayled þe chere
That all paled his face and failed the cheer;
Þe stronge strok of þe stonde strayned his ioyntes
The strong stroke of the blow strained his joints,
His cnes cachche3 to close & cluchches his hommes
His knees catch to close, and he clutches his hams,
lers] ? feres.
& he with plat-tyng his paumes displayes his lers
And he with striking his palms displays his fears,
& romyes as a rad ryth þat rore3 for drede
And howls as a frightened hound that roars for dread,
Ay biholdand þe honde til hit hade al grauen,
Ever beholding the hand till it had all graven,
& rasped on þe ro3 wo3e runisch saue3
And rasped on the rough wall uncouth saws (words).

(IX.) The story of Nebuchadnezzar's pride and its punishment (pp. 84, 85), and the interpretation of the handwriting by Daniel (p. 86).

(X.) The invasion of Babylon by the Medes (pp. 87, 88).

Balta3ar in his bed wat3 beten to deþe
Belshazzar in his bed was beaten to death,
Þat boþe his blood & his brayn blende on þe cloþes
That both his blood and his brains blended on the clothes;
Þe kyng in his cortyn wat3 ka3t by þe heles
The king in his curtain was caught by the heels,
Feryed out bi þe fete & fowle dispysed
Ferried out by the feet and foully despised;
Þat wat3 so do3ty þat day & drank of þe vessayl

He that was so doughty that day and drank of the vessels,
Now is a dogge also dere þat in a dych lygges
Now is as dear (valuable) as a dog that in a ditch lies. —(p. 88.)

The third poem, entitled "*Patience*," is a paraphrase of the book of Jonah. The writer prefaces it with a few remarks of his own in order to show that "patience is a noble point though it displease oft."

The following extract contains a description of the sea-storm which overtook Jonah:—

Anon out of þe norþ est þe noys bigynes
Anon out of the north east the noise begins,
boþe breþes]
Eurus and Aquilo.
When boþe breþes con blowe vpon blo watteres
When both breezes did blow upon blue waters:
Ro3 rakkes þer ros with rudnyng an-vnder
Rough clouds there arose with lightning there under,
Þe see sou3ed ful sore, gret selly to here
The sea sobbed full sore, great marvel to hear;
Þe wyndes on þe wonne water so wrastel togeder,
The winds on the wan water so wrestle together,
Þat þe wawes ful wode waltered so hi3e
That the waves full wild rolled so high,
& efte busched to þe abyme þat breed fyssches
And again bent to the abyss that bred fishes;
Durst nowhere for ro3 arest at þe bothem.
Durst it nowhere for roughness rest at the bottom.
When þe breth & þe brok & þe bote metten
When the breeze and the brook and the boat met,
Hit wat3 a ioyles gyn þat Ionas wat3 inne
It was a joyless engine that Jonah was in,
For hit reled on round vpon þe ro3e yþes

For it reeled around upon the rough waves.
Þe bur ber to hit baft þat braste alle her gere
The bore (wave) bear to it abaft that burst all her gear,
Þen hurled on a hepe þe helme & þe sterne
Then hurled on a heap the helm and the stern,
to murte, marred]
? = to-marte.
Furste to murte mony rop & þe mast after
First marred many a rope and the mast after.*
Þe sayl sweyed on þe see, þenne suppe bihoued
The sail swung on the sea, then sup behoved
Þe coge of þe colde water, & þenne þe cry ryses
The boat of the cold water, and then the cry rises;
Ȝet coruen þay þe cordes & kest al þer-oute
Yet cut they the cords and cast all there-out.
Mony ladde þer forth-lep to laue & to kest
Many a lad there forth leapt to lave and to cast,
Scopen out þe scaþel water, þat fayn scape wolde
To scoop out the scathful water that fain escape would;
For be monnes lode neuer so luþer, þe lyf is ay swete
For be man's lot never so bad, the life is aye sweet.
—(p. 93.)

The writer, in concluding the story of Jonah, exhorts his readers to be "patient in pain and in joy."

For he þat is to rakel to renden his cloþeȝ,
Mot efte sitte with more vn-sounde to sewe hem togeder.
For he that is too rash to rend his clothes,
Must afterwards sit with more unsound (worse ones) to sew them together. (p. 104.)

This brief outline of the poems, together with the

short extracts from them, will, it is hoped, give the reader stomach to digest the whole. It is true that they contain many “uncouth” terms; but this will be their highest merit with the student of language, as is shown, by Dr. Guest’s testimony, that they are “for several reasons curious, and especially so to the philologist.”[22] To those readers who do not appreciate the importance of such a very large addition to the vocabulary of our Early Language as is made by these treatises, let Sir Frederic Madden’s opinion of their literary merit suffice. That distinguished editor says, of the author’s “poetical talent, the pieces contained in the MS. afford unquestionable proofs; and the description of the change of the seasons, the bitter aspect of winter, the tempest which preceded the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, and the sea storm occasioned by the wickedness of Jonas, *are equal to any similar passages* in Douglas or Spenser.”[23] Moreover, as to the hardness of the language—inasmuch as the subject matter of the poem will be familiar to all who may take up the present volume, the difficulty on the word-point will not be such as to deter the reader from understanding and appreciating the production of an old English poet, who—though his very name, unfortunately, has yet to be discovered—may claim to stand in the foremost rank of England’s early bards.

The Editor of the present volume has endeavoured to do justice to his author by giving the text, with some few exceptions, as it stands in the manuscript.[24] The contractions of the scribe have been expanded and printed in italics, a plan which he hopes to see adopted in every future edition of an early English author.

The Glossary has been compiled not only for the benefit of the reader, but for the convenience of those who are studying the older forms of our language, and who know how valuable a mere index of words and references sometimes proves.

In conclusion, I take the present opportunity of acknowledging the kind assistance of Sir Frederic Madden and E. A. Bond, Esq., of the British Museum, who, on every occasion, were most ready to render me any help in deciphering the manuscript, in parts almost illegible, from which the poems in the present volume are printed.

REMARKS UPON THE DIALECT AND GRAMMAR.

Higden, writing about the year A.D. 1350, affirms, distinctly, the existence of three different forms of speech or dialects, namely, Southern, Midland, and Northern;[25] or, as they are sometimes designated, West-Saxon, Mercian, and Northumbrian. Garnett objects to Higden's classification, and considers it certain "that there were in his (Higden's) time, and probably long before, five distinctly marked forms, which may be classed as follows:— 1. Southern or standard English, which in the fourteenth century was perhaps best spoken in Kent and Surrey by the body of the inhabitants. 2. Western English, of which traces may be found from Hampshire to Devonshire, and northward as far as the Avon. 3. Mercian, vestiges of which appear in Shropshire, Staffordshire, and South and West Derbyshire, becoming distinctly marked in Cheshire, and still more so in South Lancashire. 4. Anglian, of which there are three sub-

divisions—the East Anglian of Norfolk and Suffolk; the Middle Anglian of Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire and East Derbyshire; and the North Anglian of the West Riding of Yorkshire—spoken most purely in the central part of the mountainous district of Craven. 5. Northumbrian," spoken throughout the Lowlands of Scotland, Northumberland, Durham, and nearly the whole of Yorkshire.

Garnett's division is based upon peculiarities of pronunciation, which will be found well marked in the *modern* provincial dialects, and not upon any essential differences of inflexion that are to be found in our Early English manuscripts.[26]

The distinction between Southern and Western English was not at all required, as the Kentish Ayenbite of Inwyt (A.D. 1340) exhibits most of the peculiarities that mark the Chronicles of Robert of Gloucester (Cottonian MS. Calig. A. xi.) as a Southern (or West-Saxon) production. The Anglian of Norfolk, Lincolnshire, and Nottinghamshire may be referred to one group with the Mercian of Lancashire, as varieties of the Midland dialect.

A careful examination of our early literature leads us to adopt Higden's classification as not only a convenient but a correct one.

There is, perhaps, no better test for distinguishing these dialects from one another than the verbal inflexions of the plural number in the present tense, indicative mood.

To state this test in the briefest manner, we may say that the Southern dialect employs *-eth*, the Midland *-en*, and the Northumbrian *-es* as the inflexion for all persons of the plural present indicative:[27]—

	Southern.	Midland.	Northern.
1st pers.	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (we) hope.
2nd „	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (ye) hope.
3rd „	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (they) hope.

It is the constant and systematic employment of these inflexions, and not their occasional use that must be taken as the criterion of dialectical varieties.

In a pure specimen of the Southern dialect, we never find the Northumbrian *-es*. We do occasionally meet with the Midland *-en*, but only in those works written in localities where, from their geographical position, Southern and Midland forms would be intelligible.[28] We might look in vain for the Southern plural *-eth* in a pure Northumbrian production, but might be more successful in finding the Midland *-en* in the third person plural; as, “thay *arn*” for “they *ar*”, or “thay *er*.”

In a work composed in Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire, or Lancashire, we should be sure to find the occasional use of the Northumbrian plural *-es*.[29]

The inflexions of the verb in the singular are of value in enabling us to discriminate between the several varieties of the Midland dialect.[30] The Southern and Midland idioms (with the exception of the West-Midland of Lancashire, Cheshire, etc.) conjugated the verb in the singular present indicative, as follows:—

1st pers.	hope	(I) hope.
2nd „	hop-*est*	(thou) hopest.
3rd „	hop-*eth*	(he) hopes.

The West-Midland, corresponding to Garnett's Mercian, instead of *-est* and *-eth* employs the inflexions that are so common in the so-called Northumbrian documents of the ninth and tenth centuries:—

1st pers.	hope	(I) hope.
2nd „	hop-*es*	(thou) hopest.
3rd „	hop-*es*	(he) hopes.

The Northumbrian dialect takes *-es* in all three persons; but mostly drops it in the first person.

The peasantry of Cheshire and Lancashire still preserve the verbal inflexions which prevailed in the fourteenth century, and conjugate their verbs in the present indicative according to the following model:—

	Singular.	Plural.
1st pers.	hope	hopen.
2nd „	hopes	hopen.
3rd „	hopes	hopen.

Inasmuch as the poems in the present volume exhibit the systematic use of these forms, we cannot but believe that they were originally composed in one of those counties where these verbal inflexions were well known and extensively used. We have to choose between several localities, but if we assign the poems to Lancashire we are enabled to account for the large number of Norse terms employed. It is true that the ancient examples of the Lancashire dialect contained in Mr. Robson's Metrical Romances,[31] the Boke of Curtasye,[32] and Liber Cure Cocorum,[33] present us with much broader forms, as *-us* for *-es* in the plural number and possessive case of nouns, *-un* for *-en* in the plural present indicative mood, in passive

participles of irregular (or strong) verbs, *-ud* (*-ut*) for *-ed* in the past tense and passive participle of regular (or weak) verbs, and the pronominal forms *hor* (their), *hom* (them), for *her* and *hem*.[34]

These forms are evidence of a broad pronunciation which, at the present time, is said to be a characteristic of the northwestern division of Lancashire, but I think that there is good evidence for asserting that this strong provincialism was not confined, formerly, to the West-Midland dialect, much less to a division of any particular county. We find traces of it in Audelay's Poems (Shropshire), the Romance of William and the Werwolf,[35] and even in the Wickliffite version of the Scriptures.

Formerly, being influenced by these broad forms, I was led to select Cheshire or Staffordshire as the probable locality where the poems were written; but I do not, now, think that either of these counties ever employed a vocabulary containing so many Norse terms as are to be found in the Lancashire dialect. But although we may not be able to fix, with certainty, upon any one county in particular, the fact of the present poems being composed in the West-Midland dialect cannot be denied. Much may be said in favour of their Lancashire origin, and there are one or two points of resemblance between our poems, the Lancashire Romances, and Liber Cure Cocorum, that deserve especial notice.

I. In Sir Amadace,[36] lxviii. 9, there occurs the curious form *mi3tus* = *mi3tes* = *mightst*.[37] As it appears only once throughout the Romances we might conclude that it is an error of the scribe for *mi3test*, but when we find in the poems before us not only *my3te3* = *my3tes* (mightst), but *wolde3* = *woldes* (wouldst), *couthe3* = *couthes* (couldst), *dippte3* (dippedest),

travaylede3 (travelledst), etc., we are bound to consider *mi3tus* as a genuine form.[38] In no other Early English works of the fourteenth century have I been able to find this peculiarity. It is very common in *the Wohunge of Ure Lauerd* (xiiith cent.). See O.E. Homilies, p. 51. The Northumbrian dialect at this period rejected the inflexion in the second person preterite singular, of regular verbs,[39] and in our poems we find the *-es* often dropped, so that we get two conjugations, which may be called the inflected and the uninflected form.

	Inflected.	Uninflected.	
1st pers.	hopede	hoped	(I) hoped.
2nd „	hoped*es*	hoped	(thou) hopedest.
3rd „	hopede	hoped	(he) hoped.

Originally the inflected form may have prevailed over the whole of the North of England, but have gradually become confined to the West-Midland dialect.

II. The next point of resemblance is the use of the verb SCHIN or SCHUN = schal = shall. It is still preserved in the modern dialect of Lancashire in combination with the adverb *not*, as schunnot[40] = shall not. The following examples will serve to illustrate the use of this curious form:—

"—— þay *schin* knawe sone,
Þere is no bounté in burne lyk Balta3ar
þewes."[41]
—(B. l. 1435.)

"& þose þat seme arn & swete *schyn* se his face."[42]
—(*Ibid.* l. 1810.)

"Pekokys and pertrikys perboylyd *schyn* be."[43]
—(Liber Cure Cocorum, p. 29.)

"For þer bene bestes þat *schyn* be rost."[44]
—(*Ibid.* p. 34.)

"Alle *schun* be dra3un, Syr, at þo syde."[45]
—(*Ibid.* p.& 35.)

"Seche ferlies *schyn* falle."[46]
—(Robson's Met. Rom. p. 12, l. 4.)

41. They *shall* know soon there is no good in man like Bels virtu

42. And thos that seen are and swee *shall* see His (God face

43. Peac and part parb *shall* be.

44. For þer are beas þat *shall*

be
roas
45.
All
shall
be
drav
(hav
the
entr
rem
Sir,
at
the
side.
46.
Such
mar
shall
happ

III. Nothing is more common in the present poems than the use of *hit* as a genitive = its, which is also found in the Lancashire romances.

“Forþy þe derk dede see hit is demed ever more,
For *hit* dede3 of deþe duren þere 3et.”[47]
—(Patience, l. 1021.)

“And, as hit is corsed of kynde & *hit* cooste3 als,
Þe clay þat clenges þer-by arn corsyes strong.”[48]
—(*Ibid.* l. 1033.)

“For I wille speke with the sprete,
And of *hit* woe wille I wete,
Gif that I may *hit* bales bete.”[49]
—(Robson’s Met. Romances, p. 5, ll. 3, 4.)

47.
For

48.
The

49.
And

The present dialect of Lancashire still retains the uninflected genitive:—

> "So I geet up be strike o' dey, on seet eawt; on went ogreath tilly welly coom within two mile oth' teawn; when, os tha dule woud height, o tit wur stonning ot an ale heawse dur; on me kawve (the dule bore eawt *it* een for me) took th' tit for *it* mother, on woud seawk her."[50] (Tummus and Meary).

Thus much for the dialectical peculiarities of our author. The scanty material at our disposal must be a sufficient excuse for the very meagre outline which is here presented to the reader. As our materials increase, the whole question of Early English dialects will no doubt receive that attention from English philologists which the subject really demands, and editors of old English works will then be enabled to speak with greater confidence as to the language and peculiarities of their authors. Something might surely be done to help the student by a proper classification of our manuscripts both as to date and place of composition. We are sadly in want of unadulterated specimens of the Northumbrian and East-Midland idioms during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

There must surely be some records of these dialects in our university libraries which would well repay editing.[51]

GRAMMATICAL DETAILS.

I. Nouns.

(1) *Number.*—The plurals generally end in *-es* (*e*ȝ), *-s*. *Yȝen* (eyes), *trumpen* (trumpets), are the only plurals in *-en* that occur in the poems. In Robson's Metrical Romances we find *fellun* (fells, hills,), *dellun* (dells), and *eyren* (eggs), in Liber Cure Cocorum. The plurals of *brother*, *child*, *cow*, *doȝter* (daughter), are *brether*, *childer*, *kuy*, and *deȝter*.

(2) *Gender.*—The names of inanimate things are in the neuter gender, as in modern English. The exceptions are *deep* (fem.), *gladnes* (fem.), and *wind* (masc.).

(3) *Case.*—The genitive singular (masc. and fem.) ends in *-es* (*-e*ȝ), *-s*, but occasionally the inflexion is dropped; as, "Baltaȝar thewes," the virtues of Balshazzar.[52] If "*honde* myȝt," "*honde* werk," "*hellen* wombe," are not compounds, we have instances of the final *-e* (*en*) which formed the genitive case of *feminine* nouns in the Southern English of the fourteenth century.

In the phrases "*besten* blod" (blood of beasts), "*blonkken* bak" (back of horses), "*chyldryn* fader" (father of children), "*nakeryn* noyse" (noise of nakers), we have a trace of the genitive plural *-ene* (A.S. *-ena*).

II. Adjectives.

(1) *Number.*—The final *e*, as a sign of the plural, is very frequently dropped. *Pover* (poor), *sturn* (strong), make the plurals *poveren* and *sturnen*. In the phrase, "þo sy3te3 so *quyke3*"[53] (those sights so living), the -*e3* (= -*es*) is a mark of the plural, very common in Southern writers of the fourteenth century, and employed as a plural inflexion of the adjective until a very late period in our literature.

The Article exhibits the following forms:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	
The.	tho.[54]	tho.

This forms the plural *thise* and *thes* (*these*). *That* is always used as a demonstrative, and never as the neuter of the article; its plural is *thos* (those).[55] The older form, *theos* = *these*, shows that the *e* is not a sign of the plural, as many English grammarians have asserted.

(2) *Degrees of Comparison.*—The comparative degree ends in *-er*, and the superlative in *-est*.

Adjectives and adverbs terminating in the syllable -*lyche* form the comparative in *-loker* and the superlative in *-lokest*; as, positive *uglyche* (= ugly), comp. *ugloker*, superl. *uglokest*. The long vowel of the positive is often shortened in the comp. and superl., as in the modern English *late*, *latter*, *last*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Brade (broad),	bradder,	braddest.
Dere (dear),	derrer,	derrest.
Lyke (like),	lykker,	lykkest.
Swete (sweet),	swetter,	swettest.
Wayke (weak),	wakker,	wakkest.

Wode (mad), wodder, woddest.

The following irregular forms are occasionally met with:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Fer (far),	ferre (fyrre),	ferrest.
He3e (high),	herre,	he3est (hest).
Ne3e (nigh, near)	nerre,	nerrest (nest).
Sare (sore),	sarre,	sarrest.
Forme (first),		formast.
Mikelle (great),	mo	most.
Yvel, ill (bad),	wers (worre),	werst.

Numerals.—*Twinne* and *thrinne* occur for two and three. The ordinal numbers are—

first
(fyrste),
the
forme,
secunde,
that
other,
tother,
thryd,
thrydde,
furþe,
fyfþe,
sexte,
sevenþe,
a3tþe,

nente,

tenþe,
tyþe.

The Northumbrian numerals corresponding to *sevenþe*, *a3tþe*, *nente*, *tenþe*, are *sevend*, *aghtend*, *neghend*, *tend*. The Southern forms end in *-the*, as *sevenþe*, *ei3teoþe*, *nyþe*, *teoþe* (*tyþe*).

III. Pronouns.

In the following poems we find the pronoun *ho*, she, still keeping its ground against the Northumbrian *scho*.[56] *Ho* is identical with the modern Lancashire *hoo* (or *huh* as it is sometimes written), which in some parts of England has nearly the same pronunciation as the accusative *her*.

The Northumbrian *thay* (they) has displaced the older Midland *he*, corresponding to the Southern pronoun *hii*, *hi* (A.S. *hí*). *Hores* and *thayre3* (theirs) occasionally occur for *here*.[57] The genitives in *-es*, due no doubt to Scandinavian influence, are very common in Northumbrian writers of the fourteenth century, but are never found in any Southern work of the same period.

Hit is frequently employed as an indefinite pronoun of all genders, and is plural as well as singular. It is, as has been previously shown, uninflected in the genitive or possessive case.

Me in Southern writers is used as an indefinite pronoun of the *third* person, and represents our *one*, but in the present poems it is of all persons, and seems to be placed in apposition with the subject of the sentence corresponding to our use of myself, thyself, himself, etc.; as,

"*He* swenges *me* þys," etc. = He himself sends this, etc.[58]

"Now swe3e *me* þider swyftly" = Now go (thou) thyself thither swiftly.[59]

"*He* mete3 *me* þis good man" = He himself meets this good man.[60]

Sturzen-Becker ("Some Notes on the leading Grammatical Characteristics of the Principal Early English Dialects, Copenhagen, 1868") thinks that I have been led astray with regard to this use of *me*, which he says is nothing more than the *dativus ethicus*.

The *me* in these examples may be merely an expletive, having arisen out of the general use of the dative ethicus, but the context does not satisfy me that it has the force of a dative. Dr. Guest (Proceedings of Philolog. Soc., vol. i. p. 151-153, 1842-1844) has discussed this construction at some length, and he carefully distinguishes the dative of the 1st person from the indeterminate (or indefinite) pronoun *me* = Fr. one. He says that in Old Frisian the indefinite pronoun has two forms, *min* and *me*, "the latter of which seems to be always used as a suffix to the verb, as *momme*, one may; *somme*, one should," etc. The same construction was occasionally used in our own language, and it no doubt gave rise to those curious idioms which are noticed by Pegge in his "Anecdotes of the Eng. Lang.," p. 217. This writer, whose evidence to a *fact* we may avail ourselves of, whatever we think of his criticism or his scholarship, quotes the following as forms of speech then prevalent among the Londoners: "and so says *me* I;" "well what does *me* I;" "so says *me* she;" "then away goes *me* he;" "what does *me* they?" Here it is obvious that *me* is the indeterminate pronoun, and

represents the *subject*, while the personal pronoun is put in apposition to it, so that "says *me* I" is equivalent to "*one says, that is I*,"[61]. These idioms are not unknown to our literature.

(1) 'But as he was by diverse principall young gentlemen, to his no small glorie, lifted up on horseback, *comes me a page* of Amphialus, etc.' Pembr. Arcad. B. iii.

Other idioms, which have generally been confounded with those last mentioned, have the indeterminate pronoun preceded by a nominative absolute.

(2) '*I*, having been acquainted with the smell before, knew it was Crab, and—*goes me* to the fellow, who whips the dogs,' etc. Two Gent. of Verona, 4. 4.

(3) '*He thrusts me* himself into the company of three or four gentlemanlike dogs under the Duke's Table.' *Ib.* See B. Jons. Ev. Man in his Humour, 3, 1.

Johnson considers the *me* in examples 2 and 3 to be the oblique case of the first pers. pron., and treats it as "a ludicrous expletive." It is difficult to say how he would have parsed example 2 on such a hypothesis.

With these instances of the use of *me* (indef. or reflexive), the reader may compare the following:

(1) "Suche a touche in that tyde, *he* taȝte
(Gauan) hym in tene
And *gurdes me*, Sir Gallerun, evyn grovelonges
on grounde."
(The Anturs of Arther at the
Tarnewathelan, p. 22.)

(2) There at the dore he (the Fox) cast *me* downe
hys pack.

Spenser's Shep. Cal. ed. Morris, p. 460, l. 243.

Cp. *Cut me*, i. Hen. IV. Act 4. Sc. 4; *steps me*, Ib. Act 4, Sc. 3; *comes me, runs me*, Ib. Act 3, Sc. 1.

(3) "Juno enraged, and fretting thus,
Runs me unto one Æolus."
(Virgile Travestie, 1664.)

The indefinite *me* = one is not uncommon in Elizabethan writers. Cf. "*touch me* his hat;" "*touch me* hir with a pint of sack," etc.; "and *stop me* his dice you are a villaine" (Lodge's Wit's Miserie).

The following table exhibits the declension of the personal and relative pronouns:—

		SINGULAR.			
Nom.	I,	thou,	he,	ho,	hit.
Gen.	My, myn,	thy, thyn,	his,	hir, her,	hit.
Dat.	Me,	the,	him,	hir, her,	hit.
Acc.	Me,	the,	him,	hir, her,	hit.
		PLURAL.			
Nom.	We,	3e,	thay,		hit.
Gen.	Oure,	yor, youre,	her (here), hor,		hit.
Dat.	Vus (= uus),	yow, you,	hem, hom,		hit.
Acc.	Vus (= uus),	yow, you,	hem, hom,		hit.
Nom.	Who (quo).				

Gen.	Whose (quos).	
Dat.	Whom, Wham	(quom).
Acc.	Whom, Wham	(quom).

IV. Verbs.

Infinitive Mood.—The *-en* of the infinitive is frequently dropped, without even a final *-e* to mark its omission. Infinitives in *-y*, as *louy* (love), *schony* (shun), *spotty* (spot, defile), *styry* (stir), *wony* (dwell), occasionally occur, and probably owe their appearance to the author's acquaintance with Southern literature.[62]

Indicative Mood.—The final *e* often disappears in the first and third persons of the preterite tense, as I *loved*, he *loved*, instead of I *lovede*, he *lovede*.

The *-en* in the plural of the present and preterite tenses is frequently dropped. The pl. present in *-e*ȝ occasionally occurs.

Imperative Mood.—The imperative plural ends in *-es* (*e*ȝ), and not in *-eth* as in the Southern and ordinary Midland dialects.

Participles.—The active or imperfect participle ends in *-ande*[63] and never in *-ing*.

The participle passive or perfect of regular verbs terminates in *-ed*; of irregular verbs in *-en*. Occasionally we find the *n* disappearing, as *bigonn-e*, *fund-e*, *runn-e*, *wonn-e*, where perhaps it is represented by the final *-e*.

The prefix *-i* or *-y* (A.S. *-ge*) occurs twice only in the poems, in *i-chose* (chosen), and *i-brad* (extended); but, while common enough in the Southern and

Midland dialects, it seems to be wholly unknown to the Northumbrian speech.

The verb in the West-Midland dialect is conjugated according to the following model:—

I.—Conjugation of Regular Verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
(I) hope,	(We) hopen.
(Thou) hopes,	(ȝe) hopen.
(He) hopes,	(Thay) hopen.

PRETERITE TENSE.

(I) hopede[64] (hoped),	(We) hopeden.
(Thou) hopedes (hoped),	(ȝe) hopeden.
(He) hopede[64] (hoped),	(Thay) hopeden.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Hope (thou).	Hopes (ȝe).

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect or Active.	Perfect or Passive.
Hopande.	Hoped.

II.—Conjugation of Irregular Verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

(I) kerve,	renne,	smite,	stonde.

(Thou) kerves,	rennes,	smites,	stondes.
(He) kerves,	rennes,	smites,	stondes.
	Plural.		
(We) kerven,	rennen,	smiten,	stonden.
(Ȝe) „	„	„	„
(Thay) „	„	„	„
	PRETERITE TENSE.		
	Singular.		
(I) carf,	ran,	smot,	stod.
(Thou) carve,	ranne,	smote,	stode.
(He) carf,	ran,	smot,	stod.

Very frequently the *e* in the second person is dropped,[65] as in the Northumbrian dialect, but we never meet with such forms as carves (= carvedest), rannes (= ranst), smotes (= smotest), etc.

	Plural.		
(We) corven,	runnen,	smiten,	stonden.
(Ȝe) „	„	„	„
(Thay) „	„	„	„
	PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.		
Corven,	runnen,	smiten,	stonden.

The Northumbrian dialect does not preserve any separate form for the preterite plural, and this distinction is not always observed in the present poems.

Table of Verbs.

A.—SIMPLE ORDER.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Hate,	hatede,	hated.
Class II. (*a*)	Bede (offer),	bedde,	bed.
	Dype (dip),	dypte,	dypt.
	Kythe (show),	kydde,	kyd.
	Lende,	lende,	lent.
	Rende,	rende,	rent.
	Sende,	sende,	sent.
(*b*)	Clothe,	cladde,	clad.
	Dele (deal),	dalte,	dalt.
	Lede,	ladde,	lad.
	Leve,	lafte,	laft.
	Rede (advise),	radde,	rad.
	Sprede (spread),	spradde,	sprad.
	Swelt (die),	swalte,	——
	Swette (sweat),	swatte,	——
	Threte (threaten),	thratte,	thrat.
Class III.	Byye (buy),	bo3te,	bo3t

	Bringe,	bro3te,	bro3t.
	Cache (catch),	ca3te,	ca3t.
	Lache (seize),	la3te,	la3t.
	Reche (reck),	ro3te,	——
	Reche (reach),	ra3te,	——
	Selle,	solde,	sold.
	Worche (work),	wro3te,	wro3t.

B.—COMPLEX ORDER.

DIVISION I.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Bere (bear),	ber,	born.
	Bete (beat),	bet,	beten.
	Breke (break),	brek,	broken.
	Chese (choose),	ches (chos),	chosen.
	Cleve (cleave),	clef,	cloven.
	Ete (eat),	ette (*for* et),	eten.
	For3ete (forget),	for3et,	for3eten.
	Frese (freeze),	fres,	frosen.

	Gife (give),	gef,	given, geven.
	Heve (heave),	hef,	hoven.
	Ligge (lie),	leȝ,	leyen, leȝen.
	Lepe (leap),	lep,	lopen.
	Nemme Nimme (take),	nem (nam),	nomen.
	Schere (shear),	scher,	schorn.
	Slepe (sleep),	slep,	slepen.
	Speke (speak),	spek,	spoken.
	Stele (steal),	stel,	stolen.
	Swere (swear),	swer,	sworen.
	Wepe (weep),	wep,	wopen.
	Wreke (avenge),	wrek,	wroken.
Class II.	Falle,	fell,	fallen.
	Fonge (take),	feng,	fongen.
	Growe,	grew,	growen.
	Hange, honge,	heng,	hangen, hongen.
	Knowe, knawe,	knew,	knawen, knowen.

	Schape (make),	schep,	schapen.
	Walke,	welk,	walken.
	Wasche,	wesch,	waschen.
Class III.	Drawe, dra3e,	dro3,	drawen,.
	Fare (go),	for,	faren.
	La3e (laugh),	lo3,	la3en.
	Stande, stonde,	stod,	standen.
	Slaye,	slow, slew,	slayn.
	Take,	tok,	tane, tone.
	Wake,	wok,	waken.

DIVISION II.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Biginne,	bigon,	bigonnen, bigunnen.
	Breste,	brast, borst,	brusten, bursten.
	Climbe,	clamb, clomb,	clumben.
	Drinke,	dronk, drank,	drunken, dronken.
	Finde,	fand, fond,	funden.
	Fi3te,	fa3t, fe3t,	fo3ten.
	Helpe,	halp,	holpen.

	Kerve (cut),	carf,	corven.
	Melte,	malt,	molten.
	Renne (run),	ran,	runnen.
	Ringe,	rong,	rungen, rongen.
	Singe,	song, sang,	sungen.
	Steke,	stac,	stoken.
	Sterve (die),	starf,	storven.
	Werpe (throw),	warp,	worpen.
	Win,	wan, won,	wonnen, wunnen.
	3elde (yield),	3ald,	3olden.
Class II.	Bide (abide),	bod,	biden.
	Bite,	bot,	biten.
	Drive,	drof,	driven.
	Fine (cease),	fon,	——
	Glide,	glod,	gliden.
	Ride,	rod,	riden.
	Rise,	ros,	risen.
	Schine,	schon,	——
	Slide,	slod,	sliden.
	Smite,	smot,	smiten.
	Trine (go),	tron,	——

Class III.	Fly,	fle3, flegh, fla3,	flowen.
	See,	se3, segh, sy3,	seen.
	Sti3e, ste3e,	ste3	——

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

Can,	pret. couthe.
Dare,	„ dorste.
May,	„ mi3te.
Mot,	„ moste.
O3e (owe),	„ o3te.
Schal,	„ scholde, schulde.
Thar,	„ thurte.
Wote,	„ wiste.
Wille,	„ wolde.

Schal (shall) in the second person singular is *schal* or *schalt*; so, too, we occasionally find *wyl* for *wylt*.

The present plural of *schal* is *schul*, *schulen*, or *schyn*.

The verb *to be* is thus conjugated:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	PAST TENSE.
Singular.	
(I) am.	(I) was, wat3.
(Thou) art.	(Thou) was, wat3.
(He) is, bes, bet3.	(He) was, wat3.

Plural.

(We) arn, are, ar.	(We) wern, were.
(ȝe) arn, are, ar.	(ȝe) wern, were.
(Thay) arn, are, ar.	(Thay) wern, were.

The verbs *be*, *have*, *wille*, have negative forms; as, *nam* = am not; *nar* = are not; *nas* = was not; *naf* = have not; *nade* = had not; *nyl* = will not.

The following contractions are occasionally met with: *bos* = behoves; *byhod* = behoved; *ha* = have; *ma* = make; *man* = make (pl.) *matȝ* (*mas*) = makes; *ta* = take; *tatȝ* (= *tas*) = takes; *tane*, *tone* = taken.

V. Adverbs.

The Norse forms *hethen*, *quethen* (*whethen*),[66] and *thethen*, seem to have been known to the West-Midland dialect as well as the Saxon forms *hence* (*hennes*, *henne*), *whence* (*whennes*), *thence* (*thennes*), etc.[A] The adverbs *in-blande* (together), *in-lyche* (alike), *in-mydde* (amidst), *in-monge* (amongst), are due, perhaps, to Scandinavian influence.

VI. Prepositions.

The preposition *from* never occurs in the following poems; it is replaced by *fro*, *fra* (Northumbrian), O.N. *frá*.

VII. Conjunctions.

The conjunction *if* takes a negative form; as, *nif* = if not, unless.

DESCRIPTION OF THE MANUSCRIPT USED IN THE PRESENT VOLUME.[67]

COTTON MS. NERO A. X. A small quarto volume, consisting of three different MSS. bound together, which originally had no connection with each other. Prefixed is an imperfect list of contents in the hand-writing of James, the Bodley Librarian.

The first portion consists of a panegyrical oration in Latin by Justus de Justis, on John Chedworth, archdeacon of Lincoln, dated at Verona 16th July, 1468. It occupies thirty-six folios, written on vellum, and is the original copy presented by the author.

The second portion is that we are more immediately concerned with. It is described by James as "*Vetus poema Anglicanum, in quo sub insomnii figmento multa ad religionem et mores spectantia explicantur*," and this account, with some slight changes, is adopted by Smith and Planta, in their catalogues; both of whom assign it to the fifteenth century. It will appear, by what follows, that no less than four distinct poems have been confounded together by these writers.

This portion of the volume extends from fol. 37 to fol. 126, inclusive, and is written by one and the same hand, in a small, sharp, irregular character, which is often, from the paleness of the ink, and the contractions used, difficult to read. There are no titles or rubrics, but the divisions are marked by large initial letters of blue, flourished with red, and

several illuminations, coarsely executed, serve by way of illustration, each of which occupies a page.

1. Four of these are prefixed to the first poem. In the first the Author is represented slumbering in a meadow, by the side of a streamlet, clad in a long red gown, having falling sleeves, turned up with white, and a blue hood attached round the neck. In the second the same person appears, drawn on a larger scale, and standing by the stream. In the third he occurs nearly in the same position, with his hands raised, and on the opposite side a lady dressed in white, in the costume of Richard the Second's and Henry the Fourth's time, buttoned tight up to the neck, with long hanging sleeves. Her hair is plaited on each side, and on her head is a crown. In the fourth we see the author kneeling by the water, and beyond the stream is depicted a castle or palace, on the embattled wall of which appears the same lady, with her arm extended towards him.

The poem commences on fol. 39, and consists of one hundred and one twelve-line stanzas,[68] every five of which conclude with the same line, and are connected by the iteration of a leading expression. It concludes on fol. 55*b*.

2. Then follow two more illuminations; in the first of which Noah and his family are represented in the ark; in the second the prophet Daniel expounding the writing on the wall to the affrighted Belshazzar and his queen. These serve as illustrations to the second poem, which begins at fol. 57, and is written in long alliterative lines. It concludes on fol. 82.

3. Two illuminations precede, as before; one of which represents the sailors throwing the prophet

Jonas into the sea, the other depicts the prophet in the attitude of preaching to the people of Nineveh. The poem is in the same metre as the last, and commences at fol. 83.

It is occupied wholly with the story of Jonas, as applicable to the praise of meekness and patience; and ends on fol. 90.

4. The Romance intitled *Sir Gawayne and the Grene Kny3t* follows, fol. 91. Prefixed is an illumination of a headless knight on horseback, carrying his head by its hair in his right hand, and looking benignly at an odd-eyed bill-man before him; while from a raised structure above, a king armed with a knife, his queen, an attendant with a sabre, and another bill-man scowling looks on. Here and elsewhere the only colours used are green, red, blue, and yellow. It ends on fol. 124*b.*, and at the conclusion, in a later hand, is written "Hony soit q̃ mal penc," which may, perhaps, allude to the illumination on the opposite page, fol. 125, representing the stolen interview between the wife of the Grene Kny3t and Sir Gawayne. Above the lady's head is written:

Mi mind is mukel on on, þ*a*t wil me no3t amende,
Sum time was trewe as ston, & fro schame couþ*e* hir defende.

It does not appear very clearly how these lines apply to the painting. Two additional illuminations follow; in the first of which Gawayne is seen approaching the *Grene Chapel*, whilst his enemy appears above, wielding his huge axe; and in the second Sir Gawayne, fully equipped in armour, is represented in the presence of king Arthur and queen Guenever, after his return to the court.

The third and concluding portion of the Cotton volume extends from fol. 127 to fol. 140*b*, inclusive, and consists of theological excerpts, in Latin, written in a hand of the end of the thirteenth century. At the conclusion is added *Epitaphium de Ranulfo, abbate Ramesiensi*, who was abbot from the year 1231 to 1253, and who is erroneously called *Ralph* in the *Monasticon*, vol. ii. p. 548, new ed.

CONTRACTIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARY.

The letters A. B. C. refer severally to the poems, entitled by me, “The Pearl,” “Cleanness,” and “Patience.”

A.S.	Anglo-Saxon.
Dan.	Danish.
Du.	Dutch.
E.	English.
O.E.	Old English.
Prov.E.	Provincial English.
N.Prov.E. N.P.E.	North Provincial English.
Fr.	French.
O.Fr.	Old French.
Prov. Fr.	Provincial French.
Fris.	Frisian.

G. Doug.	Gawin Douglas's Æneid, published by the Bannatyne Club, 2 vols.
Ger.	German.
Goth.	Gothic.
Icel.	Icelandic.
Jam.	Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary.
K. Alex.	King Alexander, Romance of (Ed. Stevenson).
Met. Hom.	Metrical Homilies (Ed. Small).
O.N.	Old Norse.
O.S.	Old Saxon.
Prompt. Parv.	Promptorium Parvulorum (Ed. Way).
Sc.	Scotch.
O.Sc.	Old Scotch.
S.Sax.	Semi-Saxon.
Sw.	Swedish.
O.Sw.	Old Swedish.
Town. Myst.	Townley Mysteries.
T. B.	Troy Book (Ed. Donaldson).

Gaps in numbering represent notes that were shown inline, with or without visible numbers.

1. Edited by Sir Frederic Madden for the Bannatyne Club, under the title of "Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t," and by me for the Early English Text Soc., 1865.

2. Wyntown nowhere asserts that Huchowne is a Scotchman.

3. Edited for E. E. T. Soc. by Rev. G. G. Perry, M.A.

4. This is evident from the following particulars: —

I. In old Scotch manuscripts we find the guttural *gh* (or 3) represented by *ch*; thus, *aght*, *laght*, *saght*, *wight*, are the English forms which, in the Scotch orthography, become *aucht* (owed), *laucht* (seized), *saucht* (peace), *wicht* (active). It is the former orthography, however, that prevails in the Morte Arthure.

II. We miss the Scotch use of (1) *-is* or *-ys*, for *-es* or *-s*, in the plural number, and of possessive cases of nouns, and in the person endings of the present tense indicative mood of verbs; (2) *-it* or *-yt*, for *-ed* or *-d*, in the preterites or passive participles of regular verbs.

III. There is a total absence of the well-known Scotch forms *begouth* (began), *sa* (so), *sic* (such), *throuch*, *thorow* (through). Instead of these *bigan*, *so*, *syche*, *thrughe* (*thurgh*) are employed. See Preface to Hampole's Pricke of Conscience, pp. vii, viii.

5. This is shown by the frequent employment of *-es* as the person ending of the verb in the present tense, plural number. The corresponding Southern verbal inflexion *-eth never* occurs; while the Midland *-en* is only occasionally met with in the third person plural present, and has been introduced by a later copyist. There are other characteristics, such as the predominance of words containing the A.S. long *a*; as *hame* (home), *stane* (stone), *thra* (bold), *walde* (would), etc.; the frequent use of *thir* (these), *tha* (the, those), etc.

6. The peculiarities referred to do not appear to be owing to the copyist of the Lincoln manuscript (Robert de Thornton, a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire), who, being a Northumbrian, would probably have restored the original readings. The non-Northumbrian forms in the Morte Arthure are— 1. The change of *a* into *o*, as *bolde* for *balde*, *bote* for *bate*, *one* for *ane*, *honde* for *hande*, *londe* for *lande*; 2. *they*, *theyre*, *them*, *theym*, for *thay*, *thaire*, *tham*; 3. *gayliche*, *kindliche*, *semlyche*, etc., for *gayly*, *kindly*, *seemly*, etc. (the termination *lich*, *liche*, was wholly unknown to the Northumbrian dialect, being represented by *ly* or *like*); 4. *churle*, *churche*, *iche*, *mache*, *myche*, *syche*, *wyrche*, etc., for *carle*, *kirke*, *ilk*, *make*, *mykelle*, *swilk*, *wyrk*, etc.; 5. infinitives in *-en*, as *drenschen*, *schewenne*, *wacchenne*, etc.; 6. the use of *eke*, *thos*, for *als* (*alswa*), *thas*; 7. the employment of *aye* for *egg*. The former word *never* occurs in any pure Northumbrian work, while the latter is seldom met with in any Southern production.

7. The poems are *Northern* in contradistinction to *Southern*, but they are not Northern or Northumbrian in contradistinction to *Midland*.

8. Printed by Mr. D. Laing in his “Inedited Pieces,” from a MS. of Mr. Heber’s. Other copies are in the Vernon MS., and Cotton Calig. A. ii.; the latter imperfect.

9. Other specimens of this dialect will doubtless turn up. Mr. Brock has found a MS. in British Museum (Harl. 3909) with most of the peculiarities pointed out by me in the preface to the present work, and I believe that this dialect was probably a flourishing one in the 13th century. See O.E. Homilies, p. li.

10. (1) *en* as the inflexion of the pres. tense pl., indic. mood of verbs; (2) *s* in the second and

third pers. sing. of verbs; (3) *ho* = she; (4) *hit* = its; (5) *tow* = two; (6) *deȝter* = daughters, etc.

11. See p. 36, ll. 1052-1066; p. 37, ll. 1074-1089; pp. 161-162, ll. 4956-4975.

12. See pp. 25, 26 (Jason's unfaithfulness); pp. 74, 75, ll. 2241-2255; p. 75, ll. 2256-2263; p. 69, ll. 2267-2081; p. 158, ll. 4839-4850; p. 189, ll. 4881-4885; p. 165, ll. 5078-5086, etc.

13. In the Harl. MS. 3909, nearly all the p. part. and preterites end in *-et* (*-ut* and *-et* occur in Romances ed. by Robson).

14. This seems to furnish an etymology for *Clent* Hills, Worcestershire—*brent* is the term employed in Alliterative.

15. Matthew, chapter xx.

17. "4. And the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which is by the king's garden: (now the Chaldees were against the city round about:) and the king went the way toward the plain.

"5. And the army of the Chaldees pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho: and all his army were scattered from him."

22. History of English Rhythms, vol. i. p. 159.

23. Syr Gawayn, ed. Madden, p. 302.

24. Wherever the Text has been altered, the reading of the MS. will be found in a foot-note.

25. Polychronicon R. Higdeni, ap. Gale, p. 210, 211. See Garnett's Philological Essays, p. 43, and Specimens of Early English, p. 338.

26. It is to be regretted that Garnett did not enter upon details, and give his readers some tests by which to distinguish the "five distinctly

marked forms."

27. In English works of the fourteenth century the *-en* of the Midland, and the *-es* of the Northumbrian is frequently dropped, thus gradually approximating to our modern conjugation.

28. We are here speaking of works written in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

29. Robert of Brunne, in his "Handlyng Synne," often employs it instead of *-en*, but only for the sake of the rhyme.

30. The Midland dialect is a very difficult one to deal with, as it presents us with no uniform type; and, moreover, works written in this idiom are marked by Northern or Southern peculiarities, which have led many of our editors altogether astray in determining the locality of their composition.

31. Published by the Camden Society, 1842.

32. Edited by Mr. Halliwell for the Percy Society.

33. Edited by me for the Philological Society, 1862.

34. *-us* and *-ud* for *-es* and *-ed*, as well as *hom*, *hor*, do occasionally occur in the MS. containing our poems.

35. The Romance of William and the Werwolf is written in the West-Midland dialect as spoken probably in Shropshire.

36. Robson's Metrical Romances, p. 54, l. 9.

37. *Woldus* = *woldes* = *wouldst*, appears in Audelay's poems (in the Shropshire dialect of the fifteenth century), p. 32, l. 6.

38. The so-called Northumbrian records of the ninth and tenth centuries frequently use *-es*

instead of *-est*, in the 2nd pers. preterite of regular verbs, *e.g.*,

ðu forcerdes usic on-bec = Thou turnedst us hindward. —(Ps. xliii. 11.)

ðu saldes usic = Thou gavest us. —(Ps. xliii. 12.)

ðu bi-bohtes folc ðin butan weorðe = Thou soldest thy folk without price. —(Ps. xliii. 12.)

ðu *ge-hiowades* me & *settes* ofer me hond ðine = Thou madest me and settest over me thy hand. —(Ps. cxxxviii. 5.)

ðu *ðreades ða* ofer-hygdan = Thou hast rebuked the proud. —(Ps. cxviii. 21.)

Ic ondeto ðe fader drihten heofnes forðon ðu *gedeigeldes* ðas ilco from snotrum & hogum & *ædeaudes* ða ðæm lytlum = I thank thee, O father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. —(Matt. xi. 25).

39. Þou *torned* us hindward. —(Early English Nn. Psalter, xliii. 11.)

Þou *salde* þi folk. —(*Ibid.* xliii. 12.)

Þou *meked* us. —(*Ibid.* xliii. 20.)

Þou *made* me and set þi hand over me. —(*Ibid.* cxxxviii. 5.)

Þou *snibbed* proude. —(*Ibid.* cxviii. 21.)

40. I am informed by a Shropshire friend that it prevails in his county under the form *shinneh*.

Win = will, in *winnot*, *wunnot* = will not, is still heard in the West-Midland districts. It is found in Robson's Romances and in Liber Cure Cocorum.

50. So I got up by break of day and set out; and went straight till I well nigh came within two miles of the town, when, as the devil would have

it, a horse was standing at an ale-house door; and my calf (the devil bore out *its* eyes for me) took the horse for *its* mother, and would suck her.

51. Three specimens of the East-Midland dialect have come to light since writing the above. Harl. MS. 3909; Troy Book, ed. Donaldson, E. E. T. Soc.; The Lay-folks Mass-Book, ed. Simpson, E. E. T. Soc.

52. In the romance of "Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t" we find "*blonk* (horse) sadele," "*fox* felle" (skin). In *blonk* an *e* has probably been dropped.

53. The feminine form is seldom employed.

54. The Northumbrian plural article is *tha*.

55. The Northumbrian corresponding form is *thas*.

56. *Scho* occurs *once* in the present poems.

57. *Yowre3* (yours) sometimes takes the place of *youre* in the romance of "Sir Gawayne and the Grene Kny3t."

58. Page 92, l. 108.

59. Page 91, l. 72.

60. Syr Gawayn, l. 1932.

61. I would say that *says me I* = I myself say. — R. M.

62. *Schonied* occurs for *schoned*. No Southern writer would retain, I think, the *i* in the preterite.

63. Garnett asserts that the present participle in *-ande* is "a *certain criterion* of a Northern dialect subsequent to the thirteenth century." It is never found in any Southern writer, but is common to many Midland dialects. Capgrave employs it

frequently in his Chronicles. It is, however, no safe criterion by itself.

64. The final *e* is often dropped.

65. In *The Wohunge of Ure Lauerd* the *e* is constantly omitted.

66. "Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t."

67. Taken with some few alterations from Sir F. Madden's "Syr Gawayn."

68. A line, however, is missing from the MS. on fol. 55*b*. See page 15.

Collected Sidenotes

This section was added by the transcriber. It contains the editor's summaries as given in his sidenotes, and can be read as a condensed version of the full text. Headings in Roman numerals link to sections of the poem.

The Pearl
Cleanness
Patience

The Pearl: Sidenotes

I.

Description of a lost pearl (*i.e.* a beloved child).

The father laments the loss of his pearl.

He often visits the spot where his pearl disappeared, and hears a sweet song.

Where the pearl was buried there he found lovely flowers.
Each blade of grass springs from a dead grain.
In the high season of August the parent visits the grave of his lost child.
Beautiful flowers covered the grave.
From them came a delicious odour.
The bereaved father wrings his hands for sorrow, falls asleep upon the flowery plot, and dreams.

II.

In spirit he is carried to an unknown region, where the rocks and cliffs gleamed gloriously.
The hill sides were decked with crystal cliffs.
The leaves of the trees were like burnished silver.
The gravel consisted of precious pearls.
The father forgets his sorrow.
He sees birds of the most beautiful hues, and hears their sweet melody.
No tongue could describe the beauty of the forest.
All shone like gold.
The dreamer arrives at the bank of a river, which gave forth sweet sounds.
In it, stones glittered like stars in the welkin on a winter night.

III.

His grief abates, and he follows the course of the stream.
No one could describe his great joy.
He thought that Paradise was on the opposite bank.
The stream was not fordable.
More and more he desires to see what is beyond the brook.
But the way seemed difficult.
The dreamer finds new marvels.

He sees a crystal cliff, at the foot of which, sits a maiden clothed in glistening white.

He knows that he has seen her before.

He desires to call her but is afraid, at finding her in such a strange place.

IV.

So he stands still, like a well trained hawk.

He fears lest she should escape before he could speak to her.

His long lost one is dressed in royal array—decked with precious pearls.

She comes along the stream towards him.

Her kirtle is composed of 'sute,' ornamented with pearls.

She wore a crown of pearls.

Her hair hung down about her.

Her colour was whiter than whalebone.

Her hair shone as gold.

The trimming of her robe consisted of precious pearls.

A wonderful pearl was set in her breast.

No man from here to Greece, was so glad as the father, when he saw his pearl on the bank of the stream.

The maiden salutes him.

V.

The father enquires of the maiden whether she is his long-lost pearl, and longs to know who has deprived him of his treasure.

The maiden tells him that his pearl is not really lost.

She is in a garden of delight, where sin and mourning are unknown.

The rose that he had lost is become a pearl of price.

The pearl blames his rash speech.

The father begs the maiden to excuse his speech, for he

really thought his pearl was wholly lost to him.

The maiden tells her father that he has spoken three words without knowing the meaning of one.

The first word. The second. The third.

VI.

He is little to be praised who loves what he sees.

To love nothing but what one sees is great presumption.

To live in this kingdom (*i.e.* heaven) leave must be asked.

This stream must be passed over by death.

The father asks his pearl whether she is about to doom him to sorrow again.

If he loses his pearl he does not care what happens to him.

The maiden tells her father to suffer patiently.

Though he may dance as any doe, yet he must abide God's doom.

He must cease to strive.

All lies in God's power to make men joyful or sad.

VII.

The father beseeches the pearl to have pity upon him.

He says that she has been both his bale and bliss.

And when he lost her, he knew not what had become of her.

And now that he sees her in bliss, she takes little heed of his sorrow.

He desires to know what life she leads.

The maiden tells him that he may walk and abide with her, now that he is humble.

All are meek that dwell in the abode of bliss.

All lead a blissful life.

She reminds her father that she was very young when she died.

Now she is crowned a queen in heaven.

VIII.

The father of the maiden does not fully understand her.

Mary, he says, is the queen of heaven.

No one is able to remove the crown from her.

The maiden addresses the Virgin.

She then explains to her father that each has his place in heaven.

The court of God has a property in its own being.

Each one in it is a king or queen.

The mother of Christ holds the chief place.

We are all members of Christ's body.

Look that each limb be perfect.

The father replies that he cannot understand how his pearl can be a queen.

He desires to know what greater honour she can have.

IX.

She was only two years old when she died, and could do nothing to please God.

She might be a countess or some great lady but not a queen.

The maiden informs her father that there is no limit to God's power.

The parable of the labourers in the vineyard.

The lord of the vineyard hires workmen for a penny a day.

At noon the lord hires other men standing idle in the market place.

He commands them to go into his vineyard, and he will give them what is right.

At an hour before the sun went down the lord sees other men standing idle.

Tells them to go into the vineyard.

X.

As soon as the sun was gone down the “reeve” was told to pay the workmen.

To give each a penny.

The first began to complain.

Having borne the heat of the day he thinks that he deserves more.

The lord tells him that he agreed only to give him a penny.

The last shall be first, and the first last.

The maiden applies the parable to herself.

She came to the vine in eventide, and yet received more than others who had lived longer.

The father says that his daughter’s tale is unreasonable.

XI.

In heaven, the maiden says, each man is paid alike.

God is no niggard.

The grace of God is sufficient for all.

Those who live long on the earth often forfeit heaven by sinning.

Innocents are saved by baptism.

Why should not God allow their labour.

Our first father lost heaven by eating an apple.

And all are damned for the sin of Adam.

But there came one who paid the penalty of our sins.

The water that came from the pierced side of Christ was baptism.

XII.

Repentance must be sought by prayer with sorrow and affliction.

The guilty may be saved by contrition.

Two sorts of people are saved, the *righteous* and the *innocent*.

The words of David.

The innocent is saved by right.

The words of Solomon.

David says no man living is justified.

Pray to be saved by innocence and not by right.

When Jesus was on earth, little children were brought unto him.

The disciples rebuked the parents.

Christ said, “Suffer little children to come unto me,” etc.

XIII.

No one can win heaven except he be meek as a child.

The pearl of price is like the kingdom of heaven, pure and clean.

Forsake the mad world and purchase the spotless pearl.

The father of the maiden desires to know who formed her figure and wrought her garments.

Her beauty, he says, is not natural.

Her colour passes the fleur-de-lis.

The maiden explains to her father that she is a bride of Christ.

She is without spot or blemish.

Her weeds are washed in the blood of Christ.

The father asks the nature of the Lamb that has chosen his daughter, and why she is selected as a bride.

XIV.

The Lamb has one hundred and forty thousand brides.

St. John saw them on the hill of Sion in a dream, in the new city of Jerusalem.

Isaiah speaks of Christ or the Lamb.

He says that He was led as a lamb to the slaughter.

In Jerusalem was Christ slain.

With buffets was His face flayed.

He endured all patiently as a lamb.

For us He died in Jerusalem.

The declaration of St. John, “Behold the Lamb of God,” etc.

Who can reckon His generation, that died in Jerusalem?

In the New Jerusalem St. John saw the Lamb sitting upon the throne.

XV.

The Lamb is without blemish.

Every spotless soul is a worthy bride for the Lamb.

No strife or envy among the brides.

None can have less bliss than another.

Our death leads us to bliss.

What St. John saw upon the Mount of Sion.

About the Lamb he saw one hundred and forty thousand maidens.

He heard a voice from heaven, like many floods.

He heard the maiden sing a new song.

So did the four beasts and the elders “so sad of cheer.”

This assembly was like the Lamb, spotless and pure.

The father replies to the maiden.

He says he is but dust and ashes.

He wishes to ask one question, whether the brides have their abode in castle-walls or in manor.

XVI.

Jerusalem, he says, in Judea.

But the dwelling of the brides should be perfect.

For such “a comely pack” a great castle would be required.

The city in Judæa, answers the maiden, is where Christ suffered, and is the Old Jerusalem.

The New Jerusalem is where the Lamb has assembled his brides.

Jerusalem means the city of God.

In the Old city our peace was made at one.

In the New city is eternal peace.

XVII.

The father prays his daughter to bring him to the blissful bower.

His daughter tells him that he shall see the outside, but not a foot may he put in the city.

XVIII.

The maiden then tells her father to go along the bank till he comes to a hill.

He reaches the hill, and beholds the heavenly city.

As St. John saw it, so he beheld it.

The city was of burnished gold.

Pitched upon gems, the foundation composed of twelve stones.

The names of the precious stones.

i. Jasper.
ii. Sapphire.
iii. Chalcedony.
iv. Emerald.
v. Sardonyx.
vi. Ruby.
vii. Chrysolite.
viii. Beryl.
ix. Topaz.
x. Chrysoprasus.
xi. Jacinth.
xii. Amethyst.

The city was square.

The wall was of jasper.

Twelve thousand furlongs in length and breadth.

XIX.

Each “pane” had three gates.

Each gate adorned with a pearl.

Such light gleamed in all the streets, that there was no need of the sun or moon.

God was the light of those in the city.

The high throne might be seen, upon which the “high God” sat.

A river ran out of the throne; it flowed through each street.

No church was seen.

God was the church; Christ the sacrifice.

The gates were ever open.

There is no night in the city.

The planets, and the sun itself, are dim compared to the divine light.

Trees there renew their fruit every month.

The beholder of this fair city stood still as a “dased quail.”

XX.

As the moon began to rise he was aware of a procession of virgins crowned with pearls, in white robes, with a pearl in their breast.

As they went along they shone as glass.

The Lamb went before them.

There was no pressing.

The “alder men” fell groveling at the feet of the Lamb.

All sang in praise of the Lamb.

The Lamb wore white weeds.

A wide wound was seen near his breast.

Joy was in his looks.

The father perceives his little queen.

XIX.

Great delight takes possession of his mind.
He attempts to cross the stream.
It was not pleasing to the Lord.
The dreamer awakes, and is in great sorrow.
He addresses his pearl; laments his rash curiosity.
Men desire more than they have any right to expect.
The good Christian knows how to make peace with God.
God give us grace to be his servants!

Cleanness: Sidenotes

I.

Cleanness discloses fair forms.
God is angry with the unclean worshipper, and with false priests.
The pure worshipper receives great reward.
The impure will bring upon them the anger of God, Who is pure and holy.
It would be a marvel if God did not hate evil.
Christ showed us that himself.
St. Matthew records the discourse.
The clean of heart shall look on our Lord.
What earthly noble, when seated at table above dukes, would like to see a lad badly attired approach the table with “rent cockers,” his coat torn and his toes out?
For any one of these he would be turned out with a “big buffet,” and be forbidden to re-enter, and thus be ruined through his vile clothes.
The parable of the “Marriage of the King’s Son.”
The king’s invitation.

Those invited begin to make excuses.

One had bought an estate and must go to see it.

Another had purchased some oxen and wished to see them “pull in the plough.”

A third had married a wife and could not come.

The Lord was greatly displeased, and commanded his servants to invite the wayfaring, both men and women, the better and the worse, that hispalace might be full.

The servants brought in bachelors and squires.

When they came to the court they were well entertained.

The servants tell their lord that they have done his behest, and there is still room for more guests.

The Lord commands them to go out into the fields, and bring in the halt, blind, and “one-eyed.”

For those who denied shall not taste “one sup” to save them from death.

The palace soon became full of “people of all plights.”

They were not all one wife’s sons, nor had they all one father.

The “brightest attired” had the best place.

Below sat those with “poor weeds.”

All are well entertained “with meat and minstrelsy.”

Each with his “mate” made him at ease.

II.

The lord of the feast goes among his guests.

Bids them be merry.

On the floor he finds one not arrayed for a holyday.

Asks him how he obtained entrance, and how he was so bold as to appear in such rags.

Does he take him to be a harlot?

The man becomes discomfited.

He is unable to reply.

The lord commands him to be bound, and cast into a

deep dungeon.

This feast is likened to the kingdom of heaven, to which all are invited.

See that thy weeds are clean.

Thy weeds are thy works that thou hast wrought.

For many faults may a man forfeit bliss.

For sloth and pride he is thrust into the devil's throat.

He is ruined by covetousness, perjury, murder, theft, and strife.

For robbery and ribaldry, for preventing marriages, and supporting the wicked, for treason, treachery, and tyranny, man may lose eternal bliss.

III.

The high Prince of all is displeased with those who work wickedly.

For the first fault the devil committed, he felt God's vengeance.

He, the fairest of all angels, forsook his sovereign, and boasted that his throne should be as high as God's.

For these words he was cast down to hell.

The fiends fell from heaven, like the thick snow, for forty days.

From heaven to hell the shower lasted.

The devil would not make peace with God.

Affliction makes him none the better.

For the fault of one, vengeance alighted upon all men.

Adam was ordained to live in bliss.

Through Eve he ate an apple.

Thus all his descendants became poisoned.

A maiden brought a remedy for mankind.

IV.

Malice was merciless.

A race of men came into the world, the fairest, the merriest, and the strongest that ever were created.

They were sons of Adam.

No law was laid upon them.

Nevertheless they acted unnaturally.

The "*fiends*" beheld how fair were the daughters of these mighty men, and made fellowship with them and begat a race of giants.

The greatest fighter was reckoned the most famous.

The Creater of all becomes exceedingly wroth.

Fell anger touches His heart.

It repents Him that He has made man.

He declares that all flesh shall be destroyed, both man and beast.

There was at this time living on the earth a very righteous man: Noah was his name.

Three bold sons he had.

God in great anger speaks to Noah.

Declares that He will destroy all "that life has."

Commands him to make "a mansion" with dwellings for wild and tame.

To let the ark be three hundred cubits in length, and fifty in breadth, and thirty in height, and a window in it a cubit square.

Also a good shutting door in the side, together with halls, recesses, bushes, and bowers, and well-formed pens.

For all flesh shall be destroyed, except Noah and his family.

Noah is told to take into the ark seven pairs of every clean beast, and one of unclean kind, and to furnish the ark with proper food.

Noah fills the ark.

V.

God asks Noah whether all is ready.

Noah replies that all is fully prepared.

He is commanded to enter the ark, for God tells him that he will send a rain to destroy all flesh.

Noah stows all safely in the ark.

Seven days are passed.

The deep begins to swell, banks are broken down, and the clouds burst.

It rains for forty days, and the flood rises, and flows over the woods and fields.

All must drown.

The water enters the houses.

Each woman with her bairns flees to the hills.

The rain never ceases.

The valleys are filled.

People flock to the mountains.

Some swim for their lives.

Others roar for fear.

Animals of all kinds run to the hills.

All pray for mercy.

God's mercy is passed from them.

Each sees that he must sink.

Friends take leave of one another.

Forty days have gone by, and all are destroyed.

All rot in the mud, except Noah and his family, who are safe in the ark.

The ark is lifted as high as the clouds, and is driven about, without mast, bowline, cables, anchors, or sail to guide its course.

At the mercy of the winds.

Oft it rolled around and reared on end.

The age of the patriarch Noah.

Duration of the flood.

The completeness of the destruction.

God remembers those in the ark.

He causes a wind to blow, and closes the lakes and wells, and the great deep.

The ark settles on Mount Ararat.

Noah beholds the bare earth.

He opens his window and sends out the raven to seek dry land.

The raven “croaks for comfort” on finding carrion.

He fills his belly with the foul flesh.

The lord of the ark curses the raven, and sends out the dove.

The bird wanders about the whole day.

Finding no rest, she returns about eventide to Noah.

Noah again sends out the dove.

VI.

The dove returns with an olive branch in her beak.

This was a token of peace and reconciliation.

Joy reigns in the ark.

The people therein laugh and look thereout.

God permits Noah and his sons to leave the ark.

Noah offers sacrifice to God.

It is pleasing to Him that “all speeds or spoils.”

God declares that He will never destroy the world for the sin of man.

That summer and winter shall never cease.

Nor night nor day, nor the new years.

God blesses every beast.

Each fowl takes its flight.

Each fish goes to the flood.

Each beast makes for the plain.

Wild worms wriggle to their abodes in the earth.

The fox goes to the woods.

Harts to the heath, and hares to the gorse.

Lions and leopards go to the lakes.

Eagles and hawks to the high rocks.
The four ‘frekes’ take the empire.
Behold what woe God brought on mankind for their hateful deeds!
Beware of the filth of the flesh.
“One speck of a spot” will ruin us in the sight of God.
The beryl is clean and sound,—it has no seam.

VII.

When God repented that he had made man, he destroyed all flesh.
But afterwards He was sorry, and made a covenant with mankind that He would not again destroy all the living.
For the filth of the flesh God destroyed a rich city.
God hates the wicked as “hell that stinks.”
Especially harlotry and blasphemy.
Nothing is hidden from God.
God is the ground of all deeds.
He honours the man that is honest and whole.
But for deeds of shame He destroys the mighty ones.

VIII.

Abraham is sitting before his house-door under a green oak.
He sees three men coming along, and goes toward them.
He entreats them to rest awhile, that he may wash their feet, and bring them a morsel of bread.
Abraham commands Sarah to make some cakes quickly, and tells his servant to seethe a tender kid.
Abraham appears bare-headed before his guests.
He casts a clean cloth on the green, and sets before them cakes, butter, milk, and pottage.
God praises his friend’s feast, and after the meat is removed, He tells Abraham that Sarah shall bear him a son.

Sarah, who is behind the door, laughs in unbelief.

God tells Abraham that Sarah laughs at His words.

Sarah denies that she laughed.

Abraham's guests set out towards Sodom, two miles from Mamre.

The patriarch accompanies them.

God determines to reveal to Abraham his secret purposes.

IX.

He informs him of the destruction about to fall upon the cities of the plain, for their great wickedness, in abusing the gifts bestowed upon them.

The ordinance of marriage had been made for them, but they foully set it at nought.

The flame of love.

Therefore shall they be destroyed as an example to all men for ever.

Abraham is full of fear, and asks God whether the "sinful and the sinless" are to suffer together.

Whether he will spare the cities provided fifty righteous are found in them?

For the sake of fifty the cities shall be spared.

The patriarch beseeches God to spare the city for the sake of forty-five righteous.

For the lack of five the cities shall not be destroyed.

For forty the cities shall be spared.

Abraham entreats God's forbearance for his speech.

Thirty righteous, found in the cities, shall save them from destruction.

For the sake of twenty guiltless ones God will release the rest.

Or if ten only should be found pure.

The patriarch intercedes for Lot.

Beseeches Him to "temper His ire," and then departs weeping for sorrow.

X.

God's messengers go to Sodom.

Lot is sitting alone at the "door of his lodge."

Staring into the street he sees two men.

Beardless chins they had, and hair like raw silk.

Beautifully white were their weeds.

Lot runs to meet them.

Invites them to remain awhile in his house, and in the morning they may take their way.

Lot invites them so long that at last they comply.

The wife and daughters of Lot welcome their visitors.

Lot admonishes his men to prepare the meat, and to serve no salt with it.

Lot's wife disregards the injunction.

The guests are well entertained.

But before they go to rest the city is up in arms.

With "keen clubs" the folk clatter on the walls, and demand that Lot should deliver up his guests.

The wind yet stinks with their filthy speech.

Lot is in great trouble.

He leaves his guests and addresses the Sodomites.

He offers to give up to them his two daughters.

The rebels raise a great noise, and ask who made him a justice to judge their deeds, who was but a boy when he came to Sodom.

The young men bring Lot within doors, and smite those outside with blindness.

In vain they try to find the door of Lot's house.

XI.

Early in the morning the angels command Lot to depart from Sodom, with his wife and two daughters, and to look straight before him, for Sodom and Gomorrah shall be destroyed.

Lot asks what is best to be done, that he may escape.

He is told to choose himself a dwelling which shall be saved from destruction.

He chooses Zoar.

The angels command Lot to depart quickly.

He wakes his wife and daughters.

All four are hastened on by the angels, who “preach to them the peril” of delay.

Before daylight Lot comes to a hill.

God aloft raises a storm.

A rain falls thick of fire and sulphur.

Upon the four cities it comes, and frightens all folks therein.

The great bars of the abyss do burst.

Cliffs cleave asunder.

The cities sink to hell.

Such a cry arises that the clouds clatter again.

Lot and his companions are frightened, but continue to follow their face.

Lot’s wife looks behind her, and is turned to a stiff stone “as salt as any sea.”

Her companions do not miss her till they reach Zoar.

By this time all were drowned.

The people of Zoar, for dread, rush into the sea and are destroyed.

Only Zoar with three therein (Lot and his daughters) are saved.

Lot’s wife is an image of salt for two faults:

1. She served salt before the Lord at supper.
2. She looked behind her.

Abraham is up full early on the morn.

He looks towards Sodom, now only a pit filled with pitch, from which rise smoke, ashes and cinders, as from a furnace.

A sea now occupies the place of the four cities.
It is a stinking pool, and is called the Dead Sea.
Nothing may live in it.
Lead floats on its surface.
A feather sinks to the bottom of it.
Lands, watered by this sea, never bear grass or weed.
A man cannot be drowned in it.
The clay clinging to it is corrosive, as alum, alkaran, sulphur, etc., which fret the flesh and fester the bones.
On the shores of this lake grow trees bearing fair fruits, which, when broken or bitten, taste like ashes.
All these are tokens of wickedness and vengeance.
God loves the pure in heart.
Strive to be clean.
Jean de Meun tells how a lady is to be loved.
By doing what pleases her best.
Love thy Lord!
Conform to Christ, who is polished as a pearl.
By how comely a contrivance did he enter the womb of the virgin!
In what purity did he part from her!
No abode was better than his.
The sorrow of childbirth was turned to joy.
Angels solaced the virgin with organs and pipes.
The child Christ was so clean that ox and ass worshipped him.
He hated wickedness, and would never touch ought that was vile.
Yet there came to him lazars and lepers, lame and blind.
Dry and dropsical folk.
He healed all with kind speech.
His handling was so good, that he needed no knife to cut or carve with.
The bread he broke more perfectly than could all the

tools of Toulouse.

How can we approach his court except we be clean?

God is merciful.

Through penance we may shine as a pearl.

Why is the pearl so prized?

She becomes none the worse for wear.

If she should become dim, wash her in wine.

She then becomes clearer than before.

So may the sinner polish him by penance.

Beware of returning to sin.

For then God is more displeased than ever.

The reconciled soul God holds as His own.

Ill deeds rob Him of it.

God forbids us to defile any vessels used in His service.

In Belshazzar's time, the defiling of God's vessels brought wrath upon the king.

XII.

Daniel in his prophecies tells of the destruction of the Jews.

For their unfaithfulness in following other gods, God allowed the heathen to destroy them, in the reign of Zedekiah, who practised idolatry.

Nebuchadnezzar becomes his foe.

He besieges Jerusalem, and surrounds the walls.

The city is stuffed full of men.

Brisk is the skirmish.

Seven times a day are the gates assailed.

For two years the fight goes on, yet the city is not taken.

The folk within are in want of food.

Meager they become.

For so shut up are they that escape seems impossible.

But on a quiet night they steal out, and rush through the host.

They are discovered by the enemy.

A loud alarm is given.

They are pursued and overtaken.

Their king is made prisoner.

His chief men are presented as prisoners to Nebuchadnezzar.

His sons are slain.

His own eyes are put out.

He is placed in a dungeon in Babylon.

All for his “bad bearing” against the Lord, who might otherwise have been his friend.

Nebuchadnezzar ceased not until he had destroyed Jerusalem.

Nebuzaradan was “chief of the chivalry.”

The best men were taken out of the city.

Nevertheless Nebuzaradan spared not those left.

Brains of bairns were spilt.

Priests pressed to death.

Wives and wenches foully killed.

All that escaped the sword were taken to Babylon, and were made to drag the cart or milk the kine.

Nebuzaradan burst open the temple, and slew those therein.

Priests, pulled by the poll, were slain along with deacons, clerks, and maidens.

The enemy pillages the temple of its pillars of brass, and the golden candlestick from off the altar.

Goblets, basins, golden dishes, all are taken by Nebuzaradan, and hampered together.

Solomon had made them with much labour.

The temple he beats down, and returns to Babylon.

Presents the prisoners to the king, among whom were Daniel and his three companions.

Nebuchadnezzar has great joy, because his enemies are

slain.

Great was his wonder when he saw the sacred jewelry.

He praises the God of Israel.

Such vessels never before came to Chaldea.

They are thrust into the treasury.

Nebuchadnezzar reigns as emperor of all the earth, through the “doom of Daniel,” who gave him good counsel.

Nebuchadnezzar dies and is buried.

Belshazzar succeeds him.

He holds himself the biggest in heaven or on earth.

He honours not God, but worships false phantoms.

He promises them rewards if good fortune befal.

If they vex him he knocks them in pieces.

He has a wife, and many concubines.

The mind of the king was fixed upon new meats and other vain things.

XIII.

Belshazzar, to exhibit his vainglory, proclaims throughout Babylon, that all the great ones should assemble on a set day, at the Sultan’s feast.

Kings, dukes, and lords were commanded to attend the court.

To do the king honour many nobles came to Babylon.

It would take too long to name the number.

The city of Babylon is broad and big.

It is situated on a plain, surrounded by seven streams, a high wall, and towers.

The palace was long and large, each side being seven miles in length.

High houses were within the walls.

The time of the feast has come.

Belshazzar sits upon his throne: the hall floor is covered

with knights.

When all are seated, service begins.

Trumpets sound everywhere.

Bread is served upon silver dishes.

All sorts of musical instruments are heard in the hall.

The king, surrounded by his loves, drinks copiously of wine.

It gets into his head and stupifies him.

A cursed thought takes possession of him.

He commands his marshal to bring him the vessels taken from the temple by Nebuchadnezzar, and to fill them with wine.

The marshal opens the chests.

Covers the cupboard with vessels.

The Jewels of Jerusalem deck the sides of the hall.

The altar and crown, blessed by bishop's hands, and anointed with the blood of beasts, are set before the bold Belshazzar.

Upon this altar were noble vessels curiously carved, basins of gold, cups arrayed like castles with battlements, and towers with lofty pinnacles.

Upon them were pourtrayed branches and leaves, the flowers of which were white pearls, and the fruit flaming gems.

The goblets were ornamented with flowers of gold.

The candlestick was brought in, with its pillars of brass, and ornamental boughs, upon which sat birds of various hues.

Lights shone bright from the candlestick, which once stood before the "Holy of Holies."

The pollution of the sacred vessels is displeasing to God.

For "a boaster on bench" drinks from them till he is as "drunken as the devil."

God is very angry.

Before harming the revellers He sends them a warning.

Belshazzar commands the sacred vessels to be filled with wine.

The cups and bowls are soon filled.

Music of all kind is heard in the hall.

Dukes, princes, concubines, and knights, all are merry.

Drinking of the sweet liquors they ask favours of their gods, who, although dumb, are as highly praised “as if heaven were theirs.”

A marvel befals the feasters.

The king first saw it.

Upon the plain wall, “a palm with pointel in fingers” is seen writing.

The bold Belshazzar becomes frightened.

His knees knock together.

He roars for dread, still beholding the hand, as it wrote on the rough wall.

The hand vanishes but the letters remain.

The king recovers his speech and sends for the “book-learned;” but none of the scholars were wise enough to read it.

Belshazzar is nearly mad.

Commands the city to be searched throughout for the “wise of witchcraft.”

He who expounds the strange letters, shall be clothed in “gowns of purple.”

A collar of gold shall encircle his throat.

He shall be the third lord in the realm.

As soon as this cry was upcast, to the hall came clerks out of Chaldea, witches and diviners, sorcerers and exorcists.

But after looking on the letters they were as ignorant as if they had looked into the leather of the left boot.

The king curses them all and calls them churls.

He orders the harlots to be hanged.

The queen hears the king chide.

She inquires the cause.

Goes to the king, kneels before him, and asks why he has rent his robes for grief, when there is one that has the Spirit of God, the counsellor of Nebuchadnezzar, the interpreter of his dreams, through the holy Spirit of God.

The name of this man is Daniel, who was brought a captive from Judæa.

The queen tells the king to send for Daniel.

Her counsel is accepted.

Daniel comes before Belshazzar.

The king tells him that he has heard of his wisdom, and his power to discover hidden things, and that he wants to know the meaning of the writing on the wall.

Promises him, if he can explain the text of the letters and their interpretation, to clothe him in purple and pall, and put a ring about his neck, and to make him "a baron upon bench."

Daniel addresses the king, and reminds him how that God supported his father, and gave him power to exalt or abase whomsoever he pleased.

Nebuchadnezzar was established on account of his faith in God.

So long as he remained true, no man was greater.

But at last pride touches his heart.

He forgets the power of God, and blasphemes His name.

He says that he is "god of the ground," and the builder of Babylon.

Hardly had Nebuchadnezzar spoken, when God's voice is heard, saying, "Thy principality is departed.

Thou, removed from men, must abide on the moor, and walk with wild beasts, eat herbs, and dwell with wolves and asses."

For his pride he becomes an outcast.

He believes himself to be a bull or an ox.

Goes "on all fours," like a cow, for seven summers.

His thighs grew thick.

His hair became matted and thick, from the shoulders to the toes.

His beard touched the earth.

His brows were like briars.

His eyes were hollow, and grey as the kite's.

Eagle-hued he was.

At last he recovered his "wit," and believed in God.

Then soon was he restored to his seat.

But thou, Belshazzar, hast disregarded these signs, and hast blasphemed the Lord, defiled his vessels, filling them with wine for thy wenches, and praising thy lifeless gods.

For this sin God has sent thee this strange sight, the fist with the fingers writing on the wall.

These are the words: "Mene, Tekel, Peres.

Mene.— God has counted thy kingdom and finished it.
Tekel.—Thy reign is weighed and is found wanting in deeds of faith.
Peres.— Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Persians.

The Medes shall be masters here."

The king commands Daniel to be clothed in a frock of fine cloth.

Soon is he arrayed in purple, with a chain about his neck.

A decree is made, that all should bow to him, as the third lord that followed Belshazzar.

The decree was made known, and all were glad.

The day, however, past.

Night came on.

Before another day dawned, Daniel's words were fulfilled.

The feast lasts till the sun falls.

The skies become dark.

Each noble hies home to his supper.

Belshazzar is carried to bed, but never rises from it, for

his foes are seeking to destroy his land, and are assembled suddenly.

The enemy is Darius, leader of the Medes.

He has legions of armed men.

Under cover of the darkness, they cross the river.

By means of ladders they get upon the walls, and within an hour enter the city, without disturbing any of the watch.

They run into the palace, and raise a great cry.

Men are slain in their beds.

Belshazzar is beaten to death, and caught by the heels, is foully cast into a ditch.

Darius is crowned king, and makes peace with the barons.

Thus the land was lost for the king's sin.

He was cursed for his uncleanness, and deprived of his honour, as well as of the joys of heaven.

Thus in three ways has it been shown, that uncleanness makes God angry.

Cleanness is His comfort.

The seemly shall see his face.

God give us grace to serve in His sight!

Patience: Sidenotes

I.

Patience is often displeasing, but it assuages heavy hearts, and quenches malice.

Happiness follows sorrow.

It is better to suffer than to be angry.

Matthew tells us of the promises made by Christ: Blessed are the poor, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Blessed are the meek, for they shall "wield the world."

Blessed are the mourners, for they shall be comforted.

Blessed are the hungry, for they shall be filled.

Blessed are the merciful, for mercy shall be their reward.

Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see the Saviour.

Blessed are the peace-makers, for they shall be called God's sons.

Blessed are they that live aright, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

These blessings are promised to those who follow poverty, pity, penance, meekness, mercy, chastity, peace and patience.

Poverty and patience are to be treated together.

They are "fettled in one form," and have one meed.

Poverty will dwell where she lists, and man must needs suffer.

Poverty and patience are play-fellows.

What avails impatience, if God send affliction?

Patience is best.

Did not Jonah incur danger by his folly?

II.

Jonah was a prophet of the gentiles.

God's word came to him, saying, "Rise quickly, take the way to Nineveh.

Say that which I shall put in thine heart.

Wickedness dwells in that city.

Go swiftly and carry my message."

Jonah is full of wrath.

He is afraid that the shrews will put him in the stocks, or put out his eyes.

He thinks that God desires his death.

He determines not to go near the city, but fly to Tarshish.

Grumbling, he goes to port Joppa.

He says that God will not be able to protect him.

Jonah reaches the port, finds a ship ready to sail.
The seamen catch up the cross-sail, fasten the cables, weigh their anchors, and spread sail.
A gentle wind wafts the ship along.
Was never a Jew so joyful as was Jonah then.
He has, however, put himself in peril, in fleeing from God.
The words of David.
Does He not hear, who made all ears?
He is not blind that formed each eye.
Jonah is now in no dread.
He is, however, soon overtaken.
The wielder of all things has devices at will.
He commands Eurus and Aquilo to blow.
The winds blow obedient to His word.
Out of the north-east the noise begins.
Storms arose, winds wrestled together, the waves rolled high, and never rested.
Then was Jonah joyless.
The boat reeled around.
The gear became out of order.
Ropes and mast were broken.
A loud cry is raised, Many a lad labours to lighten the ship.
They throw overboard their bags and feather beds.
But still the wind rages, and the waves become wilder.
Each man calls upon his god.
Some called upon Vernagu, Diana, and Neptune, to the sun and to the moon.
Then said one of the sailors: “Some lawless wretch, that has grieved his God, is in the ship.
I advise that we lay lots upon each man.
When the guilty is gone the tempest may cease.”
This is agreed to.

All are assembled, from all corners of the ship, save Jonah the Jew, who had fled into the bottom of the boat.

There he falls asleep.

Soon he is aroused, and brought on board.

Full roughly is he questioned.

The lot falls upon Jonah.

Then quickly they said: “What the devil hast thou done, doted wretch?

What seekest thou on the sea?

Hast thou no God to call upon?

Of what land art thou?

Thou art doomed for thy ill deeds.”

Jonah says: “I am a Hebrew, a worshipper of the world’s Creator.

All this mischief is caused by me, therefore cast me overboard.”

He proves to them that he was guilty.

The mariners are exceedingly frightened.

They try to make way with their oars, but their endeavours are useless.

Jonah must be doomed to death.

They pray to God, that they may not shed innocent blood.

Jonah is cast overboard.

The tempest ceases and the sea settles.

The stiff streams drive the ship about.

At last they reach a bank.

The seamen thank God, and perform solemn vows.

Jonah is in great dread.

III.

Jonah is shoved from the ship.

A wild whale swims by the boat.

He opens his swallow, and seizes the prophet.

It is not to be wondered at that Jonah suffered woe.
The prophet is without hope.
Cold was his comfort.
Jonah was only a mote in the whale's jaws.
He entered in by the gills, and by means of one of the intestines of the fish, came into a space as large as a hall.
The prophet fixes his feet firmly in the belly of the whale.
He searches into every nook of its navel.
The prophet calls upon God.
He cries for mercy.
He sits safely in a recess, in a bowel of the beast, for three days and three nights.
The whale passes through many a rough region.
Jonah makes the whale feel sick.
The prophet prays to God in this wise:

IV.

"Lord! to thee have I cried out of hell's womb.
Thou dippedst me in the sea.
Thy great floods passed over me.
The streams drive over me.
I am cast out from thy sight.
The abyss binds me.
The rushing waves play on my head.
Thou possessest my life.
In my anguish I remembered my God, and besought His pity.
When I am delivered from this danger, I will obey thy commands."
God speaks fiercely to the whale, and he vomits out the prophet on a dry space.
Jonah has need to wash his clothes.
God's word comes to the prophet.

He is told to preach in Nineveh.

By night Jonah reaches the city.

Nineveh was a very great city.

Jonah delivers his message; “Yet forty days and Nineveh shall come to an end.

It shall be turned upside down, and swallowed quickly by the black earth.”

This speech spreads throughout the city.

Great fear seizes all.

The people mourn secretly, clothe themselves in sackcloth, and cast ashes upon their heads.

The message reaches the ears of the king.

He rends his robes, clothes himself in sackloth, and mourns in the dust.

He issues a decree, that all in the city, men, beasts, women and children, prince, priest, and prelates, should fast for their sins.

Children are to be weaned from the breast.

The ox is to have no hay, nor the horse any water.

Who can tell if God will have mercy?

Though He is mighty, He is merciful, and may forgive us our guilt.

All believed and repented.

God forgave them through his goodness.

V.

Much sorrow settles upon Jonah.

He becomes very angry.

He prays to God and says: “Was not this my saying, when Thy message reached me in my own country?

I knew Thy great goodness, Thy long-suffering, and Thy mercy.

I knew these men might make their peace with Thee, therefore I fled unto Tarshish.

Take my life from me, O Lord!

It is better for me to die than live."

God upbraids Jonah, saying: "Is this right to be so wroth?"

Jonah, jangling, uprises, and makes himself a bower, of hay and ever-fern, to shield him from the sun.

He slept heavily all night.

God prepared a woodbine.

Jonah awakes, and is exceedingly glad of the bower.

The prophet, under its gracious leaves, is protected from the sun's rays.

Jonah wishes he had such a lodge in his own country.

God prepared a worm, that made the woodbine wither.

Jonah awakes and finds his woodbine destroyed.

The leaves were all faded.

The sun beat upon the head of Jonah.

He is exceedingly angry, and prays God that he may die.

God rebukes the prophet.
"Dost thou well," He says, "to be angry for the gourd?"

Jonah replies, "I would I were dead."

God asks if it is to be wondered at that He should help His handy work.

Is not Jonah angry that his woodbine is destroyed, which cost him no labour?

God is not to be blamed for taking pity upon people that He made.

Should He destroy Nineveh the sorrow of such a sweet place would sink to His heart.

In the city there are little bairns who have done no wrong.

And there are others who cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand.

There are also dumb beasts in the city incapable of sinning.

Judgment must be tempered with mercy.

He that is too hasty to rend his clothes must afterwards

sit with worse ones to sew them together.
Poverty and pain must be endured.
Patience is a noble point, though it displeases oft.

Text and Layout

The text is intended to replicate the layout of the printed book as closely as possible.

Headnotes, printed at the top of each page, have been moved to the most appropriate sentence break. Some shorter headnote pairs may be merged into one. **Sidenotes** giving plot summary are placed close to their original location.

The **Notes** were originally printed as a short (12 pages) section before the Glossarial Index. For this e-text they have been distributed among their respective texts. Links to the Notes are intended to be visible but not distracting.

Text-Critical Notes such as variant readings have been handled differently than in the printed book, where they appeared either as footnotes (numbered) or sidenotes (sometimes but not always marked). Here, the word they refer to is underlined if necessary, and the note itself will generally have this form:

leak] the *t* of the MS. has a *k* over it.

Where a single word has both an endnote and a marginal note, the link to the endnote is shown.

A. An unusual typographical error, shown with beginnings of adjoining lines:

the Saxon forms
thennes), etc*t* The
in-mydde (amidst),

Back to Top
Preface
The Pearl (*separate file*)
Cleanness (*separate file*)
Patience (*separate file*)
Glossarial Index (*separate file*)
Sidenotes

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg License when you share it without

charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project

Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg License terms from this work,

or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project

Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability

to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free

distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41

Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the

solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

Introductory Material (*main file*)

The Pearl 1
Notes to *The Pearl* 105
Cleanness 37
Notes to *Cleanness* [108]
Patience 89
Notes to *Patience* [115]

Glossarial Index (*separate file*) 117

1

THE PEARL.

I.

[Fol. 39*a*.] Description of a lost pearl

(*i.e.* a beloved child).

Perle plesau*n*te to prynces paye,
To clanly clos in golde so clere,
Oute of oryent I hardyly saye,
Ne proued I neu*er* her precios pere,
So rou*n*de, so reken in vche araye,
So smal, so smoþe her syde3 were.
Quere-so-eu*er* I Iugged ge*m*me3 gaye,
I sette hyr sengeley i*n* synglure;
The father laments the loss of his pearl.
Allas! I leste hyr i*n* on erbere,
yot] ? *got.*
Þur3 gresse to grou*n*de hit fro me yot;
I dewyne for-dolked of luf daungere,
Of þat pryuy perle w*ith*-outen spot.

A FATHER VISITS HIS CHILD'S GRAVE,

He often visits the spot where his pearl disappeared,

Syþen i*n* þat spote hit fro me sprange,
Ofte haf I wayted wyschande þat wele,
Þat wont wat3 whyle deuoyde my wrange,
& heuen my happe & al my hele,
Þ*a*t dot3 bot þrych my hert þrange,
My breste in bale bot bolne & bele.
and hears a sweet song.
Ȝet þo3t me neu*er* so swete a sange,
As stylle stou*n*de let to me stele,
For-soþe þ*er* fleten to me fele,
To þenke hir color so clad i*n* clot;
moul] ? *mould.*

O moul þou marre3 a myry mele.
24 My priuy perle with-outen spotte,
2 Where the pearl was buried there he found lovely flowers.

Þat spot of spyse3 my3t nede3 sprede,
rot] ? *rote.*
Þer such ryche3 to rot is runnen;
Blome3 blayke & blwe & rede,
28 Þer schyne3 ful schyr agayn þe sunne.
Flor & fryte may not be fede,
Þer hit doun drof in molde3 dunne,
Each blade of grass springs from a dead grain.
For vch gresse mot grow of grayne3 dede,
32 No whete were elle3 to wone3 wonne;
Of goud vche goude is ay by-gonne.
So semly a sede mo3t fayly not,
sprygande] The MS. reads *sprygande.*
Þat sprygande spyce3 vp ne sponne,
36 Of þat precios perle wyth-outen spotte.
[Fol. 39*b.*] In the high season of August the parent visits the grave of his lost child.

To þat spot þat I in speche expoun
I entred in þat erber grene,
In augoste in a hy3 seysoun,
40 Quen corne is coruen wyth croke3 kene.
Beautiful flowers covered the grave.
On huyle þer perle hit trendeled doun,
Schadowed þis worte3 ful schyre &

schene
Gilofre, gyngure & gromylyou*n*,
& pyonys powdered ay by-twene.
Ȝif hit watȝ semly on to sene,
From them came a delicious odour.
A fayr reflayr ȝet fro hit flot,
Þer wonys þat worþyly I wot &
wene,
My p*re*cio*us* perle, wyth-outen
spot.

AND THERE FALLING ASLEEP, HE DREAMS.

The bereaved father wrings his hands for sorrow, falls asleep upon the flowery plot, and dreams.

Bifore þat spot my honde I
spe*n*n[e]d,
For care ful colde þat to me caȝt[e];
A denely dele in my hert de*n*ned,
Þaȝ resou*n* sette my seluen
saȝt[e].
I playned my perle þ*a*t þ*er* watȝ
spe*n*ned
Wyth fyrte skylleȝ þat faste faȝt[e],
Þaȝ kynde of kryst me comfort
ke*n*ned,
My wreched wylle i*n* wo ay
wraȝte.
I felle vpon þat flo*ur*y flaȝt[e],
Suche odo*ur* to my herneȝ schot;
I slode vpon a slepy*n*g slaȝte,
On þat p*re*c[i]os perle w*i*t*h*-outen
spot.

II.

In spirit he is carried to an unknown region,

Fro spot my spyryt þer sprang i*n*
space,
My body on balke þer bod i*n*
sweuen,
My goste is gon in gode3 grace,
In auenture þ*er* meruayle3 meuen;
I ne wyste in þis worlde quere þ*a*t hit
wace,
Bot I knew me keste þ*er* klyfe3
cleuen;
Towarde a foreste I bere þe face,
where the rocks and cliffs gleamed gloriously.
Where rych rokke3 wer to
dyscreuen;
Þe ly3t of hem my3t no mon leuen,
Þe glemande glory þat of hem gle*n*t;
For wern neu*er* webbe3 þat wy3e3
weuen,
Of half so dere adubmente.

HE SEES A BEAUTIFUL FOREST,

[Fol. 40*a*.] The hill sides were decked with crystal cliffs.

Dubbed wern alle þo downe3
syde3
W*ith* crystal klyffe3 so cler of kynde,
Holte-wode3 bry3t aboute hem
byde3;
Of bolle3 as blwe as ble of ynde,
The leaves of the trees were like burnished silver.

As bornyst syluer þe lef onslyde3,
Þat þike con trylle on vch a tynde,
Quen glem of glode3 agayn3 hem glyde3,
Wyth schym*eryn*g schene ful schrylle þay schynde.
The gravel consisted of precious pearls.
Þe grauayl þat on grou*n*de con grynde
Wern p*recio*us perle3 of oryente;
Þe su*n*ne beme3 bot blo & blynde,
In respecte of þat adubbement.
The father forgets his sorrow.

The adubbemente of þo downe3 dere
Garten my goste al greffe for-3ete
So frech flauore3 of fryte3 were,
As fode hit con me fayre refete.
He sees birds of the most beautiful hues,
Fowle3 þ*er* flowen i*n* fryth i*n* fere,
*hwe*3] Or *hiwe*3.
Of flau*m*bande hwe3, boþe smale & grete,
Bot sytole stry*n*g & gyt*er*nere,
Her reken myrþe mo3t not retrete,
and hears their sweet melody.
For quen þose brydde3 her wynge3 bete
Þay songen wyth a swete asent;
4
So grac[i]os gle couþe no mon gete
As here & se her adubbement.
No tongue could describe the beauty of the forest.

So al wat3 dubbet on dere asyse;
Þat fryth þer fortwne forth me fere3,
Þe derþe þer-of for to deuyse

Nis no wy3 worþe þat tonge bere3.
I welke ay forth i*n* wely wyse,
No bonk so byg þ*a*t did me dere3,
All shone like gold.
Þe fyrre i*n* þe fryth þe feier con ryse,
Þe playn, þe plontte3, þe spyse, þe pere3,
& rawe3 & rande3 & rych reuere3,
As fyldor fyn her b[o]nkes brent.
The dreamer arrives at the bank of a river,
I wan to a water by schore þat schere3,
Lorde! dere wat3 hit adubbement!
[Fol. 40*b*.]

The dubbemente of þo derworth depe
Wern bonke3 bene of beryl bry3t;
which gave forth sweet sounds.
Swangeande swete þe water con swepe
Wyth a rownande rourde raykande ary3t;
I*n* þe fou*n*ce þ*er* stonden stone3 stepe,
In it, stones glittered like stars
As glente þur3 glas þat glowed & gly3t,
A] ? *As.*
A stremande sterne3 quen stroþe me*n* slepe,
in the welkin on a winter night.
Staren i*n* welkyn i*n* wynt*er* ny3t;
For vche a pobbel i*n* pole þer py3t
Wat3 Emerad, saffer, oþ*er* ge*m*me

gente,
Þat alle þe lo3e lemed of ly3t,
So dere wat3 hit adubbement.

WHICH CAUSES HIS GRIEF TO ABATE.

III.

His grief abates, and he follows the course of the stream.

The dubbement dere of doun &
dale3,
Of wod & water & wlonk playne3,
Bylde in me blys, abated my bale3,
For-didden my [dis]tresse,
dystryed my payne3.
Doun after a strem þat dry3ly hale3,
I bowed in blys, bred ful my brayne3;
Þe fyrre I fol3ed þose floty vale3,
Þe more strenghþe of ioye myn
herte strayne3,
As fortune fares þer as ho frayne3,
Wheþer solace ho sende oþer elle3
sore,
Þe wy3, to wham her wylle ho
wayne3,
Hytte3 to haue ay more & more.
No one could describe his great joy.

More of wele wat3 in þat wyse
Þen I cowþe telle þa3 I tom hade,
For vrþely herte my3t not suffyse
To þe tenþe dole of þo gladne3
glade;
He thought that Paradise was on the opposite bank.

For-þy I þo3t þ*a*t paradyse
Wat3 þer oþ*er* gayn þo bonke3 brade;
I hoped þe water were a deuyse
By-twene myrþe3 by mere3 made,
By-3onde þe broke by slente oþ*er* slade,
I hope[de] þ*a*t mote merked wore.
The stream was not fordable.
Bot þe water wat3 depe I dorst not wade
& eu*er* me longed a more & more.
[Fol. 41*a*.] More and more he desires to see what is beyond the brook.

More & more, & 3et wel mare,
Me lyste to se þe broke by-3onde,
For if hit wat3 fayr þ*er* I con fare,
Wel loueloker wat3 þe fyrre londe.
Abowte me con I stote & stare
To fynde a forþe, faste con I fonde,
But the way seemed difficult.
Bot woþe3 mo i-wysse þ*er* ware,
Þe fyrre I stalked by þe stronde,
& euer me þo3t I schulde not wonde
For wo, þer wele3 so wy*n*ne wore.
Þe*n*ne nwe note me com on honde
The dreamer finds new marvels.
Þat meued my mynde ay more & more,

THE FATHER SEES HIS LOST CHILD DRESSED IN WHITE ROBES.

More meruayle con my dom adau*n*t;
I se3 by-3onde þat myry mere,

He sees a crystal cliff,
A crystal clyffe ful relusaun*t*,
Mony ryal ray con fro hit rere;
at the foot of which, sits a maiden
clothed in glistening white.
At þe fote þ*er*-of þ*er* sete a fau*n*t,
A mayden of menske, ful debonere;
Blysnande whyt wat3 hyr bleau*n*t,
6
(I knew hyr wel, I hade sen hyr ere)
As glysnande golde þat man con schere,
So schon þat schene an vnder schore;
He knows that he has seen her before.
On lengh*e* I loked to hyr þere,
Þe lenger I knew hyr more & more

The more I frayste hyr fayre face.
Her fygure fyn, quen I had fonte,
Suche gladande glory con to me glace,
As lyttel byfore þerto wat3 wonte;
He desires to call her but is afraid,
To calle hyr lyste con me enchace,
Bot baysme*n*t gef myn hert a bru*n*t,
at finding her in such a strange place.
I se3 hyr in so strange a place,
Such a burre my3t make my*n* herte blu*n*t
Þe*n*ne vere3 ho vp her fayre frou*n*t,
Hyr vysayge whyt as playn yuore,
Þat stonge my*n* hert ful stray atou*n*t,
& eu*er* þe lenger, þe more & more.

IV.

[Fol. 41*b*.]

More þen me lyste my drede aros,
So he stands still, like a well trained hawk.
I stod ful stylle & dorste not calle,
Wyth y3en open & mouth ful clos,
I stod as hende as hawk i*n* halle;
He fears lest she should escape before he could speak to her.
I hope þa*t* gostly wat3 þa*t* porpose,
I dred on ende quat schulde byfalle,
Lest ho me eschaped þat I þ*er* chos,
Er I at steuen hir mo3t stalle.
Þat gracios gay wi*th*-outen galle,
His long lost one is dressed in royal array—decked with precious pearls.
So smoþe, so smal, so seme sly3t,
Ryse3 vp i*n* hir araye ryalle,

pyece] MS. looks like *pyete*.

A p*re*c[i]os pyece i*n* perle3 py3t.
She comes along the stream towards him.

Perle3 py3te of ryal prys,
Þere mo3t mon by grace haf sene,
Quen þat frech as flor-de-lys,
Dou*n* þe bonke con bo3e by-dene.
Al blysnande whyt wat3 hir beau uiys,
Vpon at syde3 & bou*n*den bene
Wyth þe myryeste margarys at my deuyse,
Þat eu*er* I se3 3et with myn y3en;
Wyth lappe3 large I wot & I wene,
Dubbed with double perle & dy3te,

Her kirtle is composed of 'sute,'
ornamented with pearls.
Her cortel of self sute schene,
With precios perle3 al vmbe-
py3te.
She wore a crown of pearls.

A py3t coroune 3et wer þat gyrle,
Of mariorys & non oþer ston,
Hi3e pynakled of cler quyt perle,
Wyth flurted flowre3 perfet vpon;
Her hair hung down about her.
To hed hade ho non oþer werle,
here heke] In the MS. it is *lere leke*.
Her here heke al hyr vmbe-gon;
Her semblaunt sade, for doc oþer
erle,
Her colour was whiter than whalebone.
Her ble more bla3t þen whalle3
bon;
Her hair shone as gold.
As schorne golde schyr her fax þenne
schon,
On schyldere3 þat leghe vnlapped
ly3te;
Her depe colour 3et wonted non,
The trimming of her robe consisted of
precious pearls.
Of precios perle in porfyl py3te,
[Fol. 42*a*.]

Py3t wat3 poyned & vche a
hemme,
At honde, at syde3, at ouerture,
Wyth whyte perle & non oþer
gemme,
& bornyste quyte wat3 hyr
uesture.
A wonderful pearl was set in her breast.

Bot a wonder perle wi*th*-outen
we*m*me,
In mydde3 hyr breste wat3 sette so
sure;
A ma*n*ne3 dom mo3t dry3ly de*m*me,
Er mynde mo3t malte i*n* hit
mesure;
I hope no tong mo3t endure
No sau*er*ly saghe say of þ*a*t sy3t,
So wat3 hit clene & cler & pure,
Þat p*re*cios perle þ*er* hit wat3
py3t,

THE MAIDEN ADDRESSES HER FATHER.

Py3t in perle þat p*re*cios p[r]yse.
No man from here to Greece, was so glad as the father, when he saw his pearl on the bank of the stream.
On wyþ*er* half wat*er* com dou*n* þe
schore,
No gladder gome heþen i*n* to grece,
Þe*n* I, quen ho on bry*m*me wore;
Ho wat3 me nerre þen au*n*te or nece,
8
My Ioy for-þy wat3 much þe more.
Ho p*ro*fered me speche þ*a*t special
spyce,
The maiden salutes him.
Enclynande lowe i*n* wo*m*mon
lore,
Ca3te of her corou*n* of grete tresore,
& haylsed me wyth a lote ly3te.
Wel wat3 me þ*a*t eu*er* I wat3 bore,
To sware þat swete i*n* perle3
py3te!

V.

The father enquires of the maiden whether she is his long-lost pearl,

"O perle," q*uod* I, "in perle3 py3t,
Art þ*o*u my perle þat I haf playned,
Regretted by my*n* one, on ny3te?
Much longey*n*g haf I for þe layned,
Syþen into gresse þ*o*u me agly3te;
Pensyf, payred, I am for-payned,
& þ*o*u i*n* a lyf of lyky*n*g ly3te
In paradys erde, of stryf vnstrayned.
and longs to know who has deprived him of his treasure.
What wyrde hat3 hyder my iuel vayned,
& don me in þys del & gret dau*n*ger?
Fro we i*n* twy*n*ne wern towen & twayned,
I haf ben a Ioyle3 Iuelere."

SHE TELLS HIM OF HER BLISS.

[Fol. 42*b*.]

That Iuel þe*n*ne in ge*m*my3 gente,
Vered vp her vyse wi*th* y3en graye,
Set on hyr coroun of perle orie*n*t,
& soberly after þe*n*ne con ho say:
The maiden tells him that his pearl is not really lost.
"Si*r* 3e haf yo*ur* tale myse-tente,
To say yo*ur* perle is al awaye,
Þat is i*n* cofer, so comly clente,
She is in a garden of delight, where sin and mourning are unknown.

As i*n* þis gardyn gracios gaye,
Here-i*n*ne to lenge for eu*er* & play.
Þer mys nee morny*n*g com neu*er* here,
Her were a forser for þe i*n* faye,
If þou were a gentyl Iueler.

Bot Iueler gente if þou schal lose
9
Þy ioy for a ge*m*me þat þe wat3 lef,
Me þynk þe put i*n* a mad porpose,
busye3] Looks like *husye3* in MS.
& busye3 þe aboute a raysou*n* bref,
The rose that he had lost is become a pearl of price.
For þat þou leste3 wat3 bot a rose,
Þat flowred & fayled as kynde hyt gef;
Now þur3 kynde of þe kyste þa*t* hyt con close,
To a perle of prys hit is put i*n* pref;
& þou hat3 called þy wyrde a þef,
The pearl blames his rash speech.
Þat o3t of no3t hat3 mad þe cler;
Þou blame3 þe bote of þy meschef,
Þou art no kynde Iueler."

A Iuel to me þen wat3 þys geste,
& iuele3 wern hyr ge*n*tyl sawe3,
The father begs the maiden to excuse his speech, for he really thought his pearl was wholly lost to him.
"I-wyse," q*uod* I, "my blysfol beste,
My grete dystresse þou al to-drawe3,
To be excused I make requeste;
I trawed my perle don out of dawe3,

Now haf I fonde hyt I schal ma feste,
& wony w*ith* hyt i*n* schyr wod schawe3,
& loue my lorde & al his lawe3,
Þat hat3 me bro3[t] þys blys ner;
Now were I at yow by-3onde þise wawe3,
I were a ioyfol Iueler."

[Fol. 43*a*.] The maiden tells her father that he has spoken three words without knowing the meaning of one.

"Iueler," sayde þat ge*m*me clene,
"Wy borde 3e men, so madde 3e be?
Þre worde3 hat3 þou spoken at ene,
Vn-avysed, for soþe, wern alle þre,
Þou ne woste in worlde quat on dot3 mene,
Þy worde byfore þy wytte con fle.
The first word.
Þou says þou trawe3 me i*n* þis dene,
By cawse þou may w*ith* y3en me se;
The second.
Anoþ*er* þou says, i*n* þys cou*n*tre
Þy self schal won w*ith* me ry3t here;
The third.
Þe þrydde, to passe þys wat*er* fre,
Þat may no ioyfol Iueler.

VI.

He is little to be praised who loves what he sees.

I halde þat iueler lyttel to prayse.
Þat loue3 wel þ*a*t he se3 wyth y3e,
& much to blame & vn-cortoyse,
loue3] Looks at first sight like *lyue3*—MS. rubbed, but read *leue3*.
Þat loue3 oure lorde wolde make a ly3e,
Þat lelly hy3te yo*ur* lyf to rayse,
Þa3 fortune dyd yo*ur* flesch to dy3e;
3e setten hys worde3 ful westernays
loue3] Read *leue3*. To love nothing but what one sees is great presumption.
Þat loue3 no þy*n*k bot 3e hit sy3e,
is] The MS. reads *īs*.
& þat is a poy*n*t o sorquydry3e,
Þat vche god mon may euel byseme
To leue no tale be t*ru*e to try3e,
Bot þat hys one skyl may dem[e].

DEATH IS THE ROAD TO PARADISE.

Deme now þy-self, if þ*o*u con, dayly
As man to god worde3 schulde heue.
To live in this kingdom (*i.e.* heaven) leave must be asked.
Þ*o*u sayt3 þ*o*u schal won i*n* þis bayly;
Me þynk þe burde fyrst aske leue,
& 3et of grau*n*t þ*o*u my3te3 fayle;
Þ*o*u wylne3 ou*er* þys water to weue,
This stream must be passed over by death.
Er moste þ*o*u ceuer to oþ*er* cou*n*sayl,
Þy corse i*n* clot mot calder keue,
For hit wat3 for-garte, at paradys greue
Oure 3ore fader hit con mysse3eme;
Þur3 drwry deth bo3 vch ma dreue,

324 Er oue*r* þys dam hy*m* dry3ty*n*
deme."
[Fol. 43*b*.] The father asks his pearl whether she is about to doom him to sorrow again.

"Deme3 þou me," q*uod* I, "my
swete
To dol agayn, þe*n*ne I dowyne;
Now haf I fonte þat I for-lete
328 Schal I efte for-go hit er eue*r* I
fyne?
Why schal I hit boþe mysse & mete?
My p*re*cios perle dot3 me gret pyne,
What serue3 tresor, bot gare3 men
grete
332 When he hit schal efte w*ith* tene3
tyne?
Now rech I neue*r* forto declyne,
Ne how fer of folde þat man me
fleme,
11 If he loses his pearl he does not care what happens to him.
When I am partle3 of perle3 myne.
336 Bot durande doel what may men
deme?"

ALL MUST ABIDE GOD'S DOOM.

"Thow deme3 no3t bot doel
dystresse,"
Þenne sayde þat wy3t "why dot3 þou
so?
For dyne of doel, of lure3 lesse,
The maiden tells her father to suffer patiently.
340 Ofte mony mon for-gos þe mo;
Þe o3te better þy seluen blesse,
&] *in* or *an* (?).

& loue ay god & wele & wo,
For anger gayne3 þe not a cresse.
Who nede3 schal þole be not so þro;
Though he may dance as any doe, yet he must abide God's doom.
For þo3 þ*o*u dau*n*ce as any do
Brau*n*dysch & bray þy braþe3 breme,
When þ*o*u no fyrre may, to ne fro,
Þ*o*u moste abyde þat he schal deme.

Deme dry3tyn, euer hy*m* adyte,
Of þe way a fote ne wyl he wryþe,
Þy mende3 mou*n*te3 not a myte,
Þa3 þ*o*u for sor3e be neu*er* blyþe;
He must cease to strive.
Sty*n*st of þy strot & fyne to flyte,
swefte] MS. *sweste*.
& sech hys blyþe ful swefte & swyþe,
Þy prayer may hys pyte byte,
Þat mercy schal hyr crafte3 kyþe;
Hys comforte may þy lango*ur* lyþe,
& þy lure3 of ly3tly leme,
All lies in God's power to make men joyful or sad.
For marre oþ*er* madde, morne & myþe,
Al lys i*n* hym to dy3t & deme."

THE BEREAVED PARENT ASKS HIS CHILD'S PITY.

VII.

[Fol. 44*a*.]

Thenne demed I to þat damyselle,
Ne worþe no wrath þe vnto my

lorde,
raue] *rane* (?).
If rapely raue spornande i*n* spelle.
My herte wat3 al wi*th* mysse remorde,
As wallande water got3 out of welle;
The father beseeches the pearl to have pity upon him.
I do me ay i*n* hys myserecorde.
Rebuke me neu*er* wi*th* worde3 felle,
Þa3 I forloyne my dere endorde,
Bot lyþe3 me kyndely yo*ur* cou*m*forde,
Pytosly þenkande vpon þysse;
Of care & me 3e made acorde,
Þat er wat3 grou*n*de of alle my blysse;
He says that she has been both his bale and bliss.

My blysse, my bale 3e han ben boþe,
Bot much þe bygger 3et wat3 my mon,
Fro þou wat3 wroken fro vch a woþe.
And when he lost her, he knew not what had become of her.
I wyste neu*er* quere my perle wat3 gon;
Now I hit se, now leþe3 my loþe,
& quen we departed we wern at on,
God forbede we be now wroþe,
We meten so selden by stok oþ*er* ston;
Þa3 cortaysly 3e carp con,
I am bot mol & marere3 mysse,
Bot crystes mersy & mary & Ion,

Þise arn þe grou*n*de of alle my blysse.
And now that he sees her in bliss, she takes little heed of his sorrow.

In blysse I se þe blyþely blent
& I a man al mornyf mate,
ȝe take þ*er*-on ful lyttel tente,
Þaȝ I hente ofte harmeȝ hate.
Bot now I am here i*n* yo*ur* p*re*sente,
I wolde bysech wythouten debate,
He desires to know what life she leads.
ȝe wolde me say i*n* sobre asente,
What lyf ȝe lede, erly & late,
For I am ful fayn þat yo*ur* astate
Is worþen to worschyp & wele I wysse,
Of alle my Ioy þe hyȝe gate
Hit is i*n* grou*n*de of alle my blysse."
[Fol. 44*b*.] The maiden tells him that he may walk and abide with her, now that he is humble.

"Now blysse burne mot þe bytyde;"
Þen sayde þat lufsou*m* of lyth & lere,
"& welcu*m* here to walk & byde,
For now þy speche is to me dere;
Maysterful mod & hyȝe pryde
I hete þe arn heterly hated here;
My lorde ne loueȝ not forto chyde,
All are meek that dwell in the abode of bliss.
For meke arn alle þ*a*t woneȝ hy*m* nere,
13
& when i*n* hys place þou schal apere,
Be dep deuote i*n* hol mekenesse;

My lorde þe lamb, loue3 ay such chere,
Þat is þe grou*n*de of alle my blysse.

SHE DESCRIBES HER MODE OF LIFE.

All lead a blissful life.

A blysful lyf þo*u* says I lede,
Þou wolde3 knaw þ*er*-of þe stage;
She reminds her father that she was very young when she died.
Þow wost wel when þy perle con schede,
I wat3 ful 3ong & tender of age,
Bot my lorde þe lombe, þur3 hys god-hede,
He toke my self to hys maryage,
Now she is crowned a queen in heaven.
Coroun*n*de me quene i*n* blysse to brede,
I*n* lengh*e* of daye3 þat eu*er* schal wage,
& sesed i*n* alle hys herytage
Hys lef is, I am holy hysse;
Hys prese, hys prys & hys parage,
Is rote & grou*n*de of alle my blysse."

MARY IS THE EMPRESS OF HEAVEN.

VIII.

The father of the maiden does not fully understand her.

"Blysful," q*uod* I, "may þys be trwe,
Dysplese3 not if I speke erro*ur*;

Art þou þe quene of heuene3 blwe,
Þ*a*t al þys worlde schal do honou*r*?
Mary, he says, is the queen of heaven.
We leuen on marye þat grace of grewe,
Þat ber a barne of vyrgyn flou*r*,
No one is able to remove the crown from her.
Þe croune fro hyr quo mo3t remwe,
Bot ho hir passed i*n* su*m* fauou*r*?
Now for synglerty o hyr dousou*r*,
We calle hyr fenyx of arraby,
Þat freles fle3e of hyr fasor,
Lyk to þe quen of cortaysye."
[Fol. 45*a*.] The maiden addresses the Virgin.

"Cortayse quen" þe*n*ne s[a]yde þat gaye,
Knelande to grou*n*de, folde vp hyr face,
"Makele3 moder & myryest may,
bygynner] MS. reads *bȳgyner*.
Blessed bygy*n*ner of vch a grace!"
Þe*n*ne ros ho vp & con restay,
& speke me towarde i*n* þat space:
She then explains to her father that each has his place in heaven.
"S*ir* fele here porchase3 & fonge3 pray
Bot supplantore3 none w*ith*-i*n*ne þys place;
Þat emp*er*ise al heue*n*3 hat3,
& vrþe & helle i*n* her bayly;
Of erytage 3et non wyl ho chace,
For ho is quen of cortaysye.

ALL OTHERS ARE KINGS OR QUEENS.

The court of God has a property in its own being.

The co*ur*t of þe kyndom of god alyue,
Hat3 a p*ro*perty i*n* hyt self bey*n*g;
Alle þat may þer-i*n*ne aryue
Each one in it is a king or queen.
Of alle þe reme is quen oþ*er* ky*n*g,
& neu*er* oþ*er* 3et schal depryue,
Bot vchon fayn of oþ*er*e3 hafy*n*g,
& wolde her corou*n*e3 wern worþe þo fyue,
If possyble were her mendy*n*g.
The mother of Christ holds the chief place.
Bot my lady of quom Iesu con spry*n*g,
Ho halde3 þe empyre ou*er* v*us* ful hy3e,
& þat dysplese3 non of oure gy*n*g,
For ho is quene of cortaysye.

Of co*ur*taysye, as sayt3 say*n*t poule,
We are all members of Christ's body.
Al arn we me*m*bre3 of ih*es*u kryst,
As heued & arme & legg & naule,
Temen to hys body ful trwe & t[r]yste;
Ry3t so is vch a krysten sawle,
A longande lym to þe mayster of myste;
Look that each limb be perfect.
Þe*n*ne loke what hate oþ*er* any gawle,

Is tached oþ*er* ty3ed þy ly*m*me3
by-twyste,
Þy heued hat3 nauþer greme ne
gryste,
On arme oþ*er* fynger, þa3 þ*o*u ber
by3e;
So fare we alle wyth luf & lyste,
To ky*n*g & quene by cortaysye."
[Fol. 45*b*.] The father replies that he cannot understand how his pearl can be a queen.

"Cortayse," q*uod* I, "I leue
& charyte grete be yow amo*n*g,
Bot my speche þat yow ne greue,
.....
Þy self in heuen ou*er* hy3 þ*o*u heue,
To make þe quen þat wat3 so 3onge,
What more-hond mo3te he acheue
Þat hade endured i*n* worlde
stronge,
& lyued i*n* penau*n*ce hys lyue3 longe,
W*ith* bodyly bale hy*m* blysse to
byye?
He desires to know what greater honour she can have.
What more worschyp mo3t ho fonge,
Þen corou*n*de be ky*n*g by
cortayse?

IX.

That cortayse is to fre of dede,
3yf hyt be soth þat þ*o*u cone3 saye,
She was only two years old when she died, and could do nothing to please

God.
Þou lyfed not two 3er in oure þede,
Þou cowþe3 neuer god nauþer plese ne pray,
Ne neuer nawþer pater ne crede,
& quen mad on þe fyrst day!
I may not traw, so god me spede,
Þat god wolde wryþe so wrange away;
She might be a countess or some great lady but not a queen.
Of countes damysel, par ma fay,
Wer fayr in heuen to halde asstate
Aþer elle3 a lady of lasse aray,
Bot a quene, hit is to dere a date."
The maiden informs her father that there is no limit to God's power.
"Þer is no date of hys god-nesse,"
Þen sayde to me þat worþy wy3te,
"For al is trawþe þat he con dresse,
& he may do no þynk bot ry3t,
As mathew mele3 in our messe,
In sothfol gospel of god al-my3t
In sample he can ful grayþely gesse,
& lykne3 hit to heuen ly3te."
The parable of the labourers in the vineyard.
"My regne, he sayt3, is lyk on hy3t,
To a lorde þat hade a uyne I wate,
Of tyme of 3ere þe terme wat3 ty3t,
To labor vyne wat3 dere þe date,

THE PARABLE OF THE LABOURERS IN THE VINEYARD.

[Fol. 46*a*.] The lord of the vineyard hires workmen for a penny a day.

Þat date of ȝere wel knawe þys hyne;

Þe lorde ful erly vp he ros,
To hyre werkmen to hys vyne,
& fynde3 þ*er* su*m*me to hys porpos,
Into acorde þay con de-clyne,
For a pené on a day & forth þay got3,
Wryþen & worchen & don gret pyne,
Keruen & caggen & man hit clos;

At noon the lord hires other men standing idle in the market place.

Aboute vnder, þe lorde to marked tot3
& ydel men stande he fynde3 þer-ate,
“Why stande ȝe ydel” he sayde to þos,
Ne knawe ȝe of þis day no date?

“Er date of daye hider arn we won*n*e,”
So wat3 al samen her answar so3t;
“We haf standen her syn ros þe su*n*ne,
& no mo*n* bydde3 v*us* do, ry3t no3t.”

He commands them to go into his vineyard, and he will give them what is right.

“Gos i*n*-to my vyne, dot3 þat ȝe co*n*ne.”
So sayde þe lorde & made hit to3t.
“What resonabele hyre be na3t be ru*n*ne,
I yow pray i*n* dede & þo3te.”
Þay wente i*n* to þe vyne & wro3te,
& al day þe lorde þ*us* ȝede his gate,

& nw men to hys vyne he bro3te;
Wel ne3 wyl day wat3 passed date,
At an hour before the sun went down
the lord sees other men standing idle.

At þe day of date of euen-songe,
On oure byfore þe so*n*ne go dou*n*
He se3 þer ydel men ful stronge
hem] MS. *hen*.
& sa[y]de to hem w*ith* sobre sou*n*;
“Wy stonde 3e ydel þise daye3 longe.”
Þay sayden her hyre wat3 nawhere bou*n*.
Tells them to go into the vineyard.
“Got3 to my vyne 3emen 3onge
& wyrke3 & dot3 þ*a*t at 3e mou*n*.”
Sone þe worlde by-com wel brou*n*,
&] MS. & &.
Þe su*n*ne wat3 doun & hit wex late;
To take her hyre he mad su*m*ou*n*;
Þe day wat3 al apassed date.

17

THE PAYMENT OF THE LABOURERS.

X.

As soon as the sun was gone down the “reeve” was told to pay the workmen. [Fol. 46*b*.]

The date of þe daye þe lorde con knaw,
Called to þe reue “lede pay þe meyny,

Gyf hem þe hyre þat I hem owe,
& fyrre, þat non me may repreue,
Set hem alle vpon a rawe,
To give each a penny.
& gyf vchon i*n*-lyche a peny.
Bygyn at þe laste þat sta*n*de3 lowe,
Tyl to þe fyrste þat þ*o*u atteny;"
The first began to complain.
& þe*n*ne þe fyrst by-go*n*ne to pleny
& sayden þat þay hade trauayled sore,
Þese bot an [h]oure hem con streny,
V*us* þy*n*k v*us* o3e to take more.
Having borne the heat of the day he thinks that he deserves more.

More haf we serued v*us* þy*n*k so,
Þat suffred han þe daye3 hete,
Þe*n*n þyse þat wro3t[e] not houre3 two,
& þou dot3 hem v*us* to cou*n*terfete.
Þe*n*ne sayde þe lorde to on of þo,
wrang] MS. *wanig*.
"Frende no wrang I wyl þe 3ete,
Take þat is þyn owne & go;
The lord tells him that he agreed only to give him a penny.
& I hyred þe for a peny a grete,
Quy bygy*n*ne3 þ*o*u now to þrete;
Wat3 not a pené þy couenau*n*t þore?
Fyrre þe*n* couenau*n*de is no3t to plete,
Wy schalte þou þe*n*ne ask more?

More weþ*er* louyly is me my gyfte
To do wyth myn quat so me lyke3?
Oþ*er* elle3 þyn y3e to lyþ*er* is lyfte,
For I am goude & no*n* by-

swyke3."
"Þ*us* schal I," q*uod* kryste, "hit skyfte,
The last shall be first, and the first last.
Þe laste schal be þe fyrst þat stryke3,
& þe fyrst þe laste, be he neu*er* so swyft,
For mony ben calle[d] þa3 fewe be myke3."
Þ*us* pore men her part ay pyke3,
Þa3 þay com late & lyttel wore,
18 The maiden applies the parable to herself.
& þa3 her sweng wyth lyttel at-slyke3,
Þe merci of god is much þe more.

THE APPLICATION OF THE PARABLE.

[Fol. 47*a*.]

"More haf I of ioye & blysse here-i*n*ne,
Of ladyschyp gret & lyue3 blom,
Þen alle þe wy3e3 i*n* þe worlde my3t wy*n*ne
By þe way of ry3t to aske dome.
Wheþer wel nygh[t] now I con bygy*n*ne,
She came to the vine in eventide, and yet received more than others who had lived longer.
In euentyde in-to þe vyne I come,
Fyrst of my hyre my lorde con my*n*ne,
I wat3 payed anon of al & sum;
3et oþ*er* þer werne þ*a*t toke more tom,
Þat swange & swat for long 3ore,

Þat ȝet of hyre no þynk þay nom,
Parau*nter* no3t schal to ȝere more."
The father says that his daughter's tale is unreasonable.

Then more I meled & sayde apert,
"Me þynk þy tale vnresou*n*able,
rert] *ert* (?).
Godde3 ry3t is redy & eu*er* more rert,
Oþ*er* holy wryt is bot a fable;
I*n* sauter is sayd a verce ouerte
Þat speke3 a poy*n*t determynable,
'Þou quyte3 vchon as hys desserte,
pretermynable] MS. p*er*termynable.
Þou hy3e ky*n*g ay p*re*termynable,'
Now he þat stod þe long day stable,
& þou to payment com hym byfore,
Þe*n*ne þe lasse i*n* werke to take more able,
& eu*er* þe lenger þe lasse þe more."

GOD IS NO NIGGARD.

XI.

"Of more & lasse in gode3 ryche,"
Þat gentyl sayde "lys no Ioparde,
In heaven, the maiden says, each man is paid alike.
For þer is vch mon payed inliche,
Wheþer lyttel oþ*er* much be hys rewarde,
For þe gentyl cheuentayn is no chyche,
Queþ*er*-so-eu*er* he dele nesch oþ*er* harde,

gyfte3] MS. *gyste3*.
He laue3 hys gyfte3 as wat*er* of dyche,
Oþ*er* gote3 of golf þat neu*er* charde;
God is no niggard.
Hys frau*n*chyse is large þ*a*t eu*er* dard,
*no scogh*e] In the MS. it looks like *rescoghe*.
To hy*m* þat mat3 i*n* sy*n*ne no scogh*e*
No blysse bet3 fro hem reparde,
The grace of God is sufficient for all.
For þe grace of god is gret I-nogh*e*.
[Fol. 47*b*.]

Bot now þ*o*u mote3 me for to mate
Þat I my peny haf wrang tan here,
Þ*o*u say3 þat I þat com to late,
Am not worþy so gret lere.
Where wyste3 þ*o*u eu*er* any bourne abate
Euer so holy i*n* hys prayere,
Those who live long on the earth often forfeit heaven by sinning.
Þat he ne forfeted by su*m*kyn gate,
Þe mede su*m*-tyme of heuene3 clere;
& ay þe ofter, þe alder þay were,
Þay laften ry3t & wro3ten wogh*e*
Mercy & g*ra*ce moste hem þe*n* stere,
For þe g*ra*ce of god is gret i*n*-no3e.
Innocents are saved by baptism.

Bot i*n*-nogh*e* of grace hat3 i*n*nocent,
As sone as þay arn borne by lyne

I*n* þe water of babtem þay dyssente,
Þ*en* arne þay boro3t i*n*-to þe vyne,
Anon þe day w*ith* derk endente,
Þe my3t of deth dot3 to en-clyne
Þat wro3t neuer wrang er þe*n*ne þay wente;
Þe gentyle lorde þe*n*ne paye3 hys hyne,
Þay dyden hys heste, þay wern þere-ine,
Why should not God allow their labour.
Why schulde he not her labo*ur* alow,
hem] MS. *hym*.
3y[rd] & pay hem at þe fyrst fyne
For þe grace of god is gret i*n*-nogh*e*?

PARADISE WAS LOST THROUGH AN APPLE.

Ino3e is knawen þ*a*t man-kyn grete,
Fyrste wat3 wro3t to blysse parfyt;
Our first father lost heaven by eating an apple.
Oure forme-fader hit con forfete,
Þur3 an apple þat he vpon con byte;
And all are damned for the sin of Adam.
Al wer we dampned for þat mete,
To dy3e i*n* doel out of delyt,
& syþen wende to helle hete,
Þe*r*-i*n*ne to won w*ith*-oute respyt;
20 But there came one who paid the penalty of our sins.
Bot þer on com a bote as-tyt.
Ryche blod ran on rode so rogh*e*,
& wy*n*ne [&] wat*er*, þe*n* at þat plyt

Þe *gra*ce of god wex gret i*n*-
noghe.
[Fol. 48*a*.] *out*] MS. *out out*.

Innoghe þer wax out of þat welle,
Blod & wate*r* of brode woun*n*de;
Þe blod v*us* bo3t fro bale of helle,
& delyue*r*ed v*us* of þe deth
secoun*n*de;
The water that came from the pierced side of Christ was baptism.
Þe water is baptem þe soþe to telle;
Þat fol3ed þe glayue so gry*m*ly
groun*n*de,
Þat wasche3 away þe gylte3 felle,
Þat adam wyth i*n*ne deth v*us*
droun*n*de.
Now is þe*r* no3t i*n* þe worlde roun*n*de
Bytwene v*us* & blysse bot þat he
wit*h*-dro3
& þat is restored i*n* sely stoun*n*de,
& þe grace of god is gret i*n*-nogh.

XII.

Repentance must be sought by prayer with sorrow and affliction.

Grace i*n*-nogh þe mon may haue,
Þat sy*n*ne3 þe*n*ne new, 3if hy*m*
repente,
Bot wit*h* sor3 & syt he mot hit craue,
& byde þe payne þer-to is bent,
Bot resou*n* of ry3t þat con not raue,
Saue3 eue*r* more þe i*n*nosse*n*t;
Hit is a dom þat neue*r* god gaue,
Þat eue*r* þe gyltle3 schulde be

schente.
The guilty may be saved by contrition.
Þe gyltyf may contryssyou*n* hente
& be þur3 mercy to grace þry3t;
Bot he to gyle þat neu*er* glente,
At i*n*-oscente is saf & ry3te.

INNOCENTS ARE SAVED BY RIGHT.

*þ*us] MS. þ*us* þ*us*. Two sorts of people are saved, the *righteous* and the *innocent*.

Ry3t þ*us* I knaw wel i*n* þis cas,
Two men to saue is god by skylle;
face] MS. *fate*.
Þe ry3t-wys man schal se hys face,
Þe harmle3 haþel schal com hym tylle,
Þe saut*er* hyt sat3 þ*us* i*n* a pace:
The words of David.
"Lorde quo schal klymbe þy hy3 hylle3
21
Oþ*er* rest wit*h*-i*n*ne þy holy place?"
Hymself to on-sware he is not dylle;
"Hondely*n*ge3 harme þat dyt not ille,
Þat is of hert boþe clene & ly3t,
Þer schal hys step stable stylle,"
The innocent is saved by right.
Þe i*n*nosent is ay saf by ry3t.
[Fol. 48*b*.]

The ry3twys man also sertayn
Aproche he schal þ*a*t proper pyle,
Þat take3 not her lyf in vayne
Ne glauere3 her nie3bor wyth no gyle;
*sa*3] *sat*3 (?). The words of Solomon.

Of þys ry3t-wys sa3 salamon playn,
How kyntly oure con aquyle
By waye3 ful stre3t he con hym strayn,
& scheued hy*m* þe rengne of god a whyle,
As quo says “lo 3on louely yle,
Þo*u* may hit wy*n*ne if þo*u* be wy3te,”
Bot hardyly wi*th*-oute peryle,
Þe i*n*nosent is ay saue by ry3te!
David says no man living is justified.

An-ende ry3twys men, 3et sayt3 a gome
Dauid in sauter, if eu*er* 3e se3 hit,
“Lorde þy seruau*n*t dra3 neuer to dome,
For] MS. *sor.*
For non lyuyunde to þe is Iustyfyet.”
For-þy to corte quen þo*u* schal com,
Þer alle oure cause3 schal be tryed,
Alegge þe ry3t þo*u* may be i*n*-nome,
By þys ilke spech I haue asspyed;
Bot he on rode þat blody dyed,
Delfully þur3 honde3 þry3t
Pray to be saved by innocence and not by right.
Gyue þe to passe when þo*u* arte tryed
By in*n*ocens & not by ry3te.

CHRIST BLESSED LITTLE CHILDREN.

Ry3t-wysly quo con rede,
He loke on bok & be awayed
When Jesus was on earth, little children were brought unto him.

How Ih*esu*c hy*m* welke in are þede,
& burne3 her barne3 vnto hy*m* brayde,
For happe & hele þat fro hy*m* 3ede,
touch] MS. *touth*.
To touch her chylder þay fayr hym prayed.
22 The disciples rebuked the parents.
His dessypele3 wi*th* blame let be hy*m* bede,
& wyth her resou*n*e3 ful fele restayed;
Christ said, "Suffer little children to come unto me," etc.
Ih*esu*c þe*n*ne hem swetely sayde,
"Do way, let chylder vnto me ty3t.
To suche is heuen-ryche arayed,"
Þe i*n*nocent is ay saf by ry3t.

XIII.

[Fol. 49*a*.]

Ih*esu*c con calle to hy*m* hys mylde
No one can win heaven except he be meek as a child.
& sayde hys ryche no wy3 my3t wy*n*ne.
Bot he com þyder ry3t as a chylde,
Oþ*er* elle3 neu*er* more com þer-i*n*ne,
Harmle3, trwe & vnde-fylde,
W*ith*-outen mote oþ*er* mascle of sulpande sy*n*ne;
Quen such þer cnoken on þe bylde,
Tyt schal hem men þe 3ate

vnpy*n*ne,
Þer is þe blys þat con not bly*n*ne,
Þat þe Iueler so3te þur3 perre pres
& solde alle hys goud boþe wolen &
ly*n*ne,
To bye hy*m* a perle [þat] wat3
mascelle3.

The pearl of price is like the kingdom of heaven, pure and clean.

This makelle3 perle þat bo3t is
dere,
Þe Ioueler gef fore alle hys god,
Is lyke þe reme of heuenesse clere
So sayde þe fader of folde &
flode,
For hit is we*m*le3, clene & clere,
& endele3 rou*n*de & blyþe of mode,

ry3twys] MS. *ry3tywys*.

& co*m*mune to alle þat ry3twys were,
Lo! euen i*n* mydde3 my breste hit
stode;
My lorde þe lombe þat schede hys
blode,
He py3t hit þere i*n* token of pes;

Forsake the mad world and purchase the spotless pearl.

I rede þe forsake þe worlde wode,
& porchace þy perle maskelles."

FORSAKE THE MAD WORLD.

The father of the maiden desires to know who formed her figure and wrought her garments.

"O maskele3 perle i*n* perle3 pure
Þat bere3," q*uod* I, "þe perle of prys,
Quo formed þe þy fayre fygure?

Þat wro3t þy wede, he wat3 ful wys;
Her beauty, he says, is not natural.
Þy beaute com neu*er* of nature,
Pymalyon paynted neu*er* þy vys,
Ne arystotel nawþ*er* by hys lettrure
Of carpe þe kynde þese p*ro*perte3.
Her colour passes the fleur-de-lis.
Þy colo*ur* passe3 þe flo*ur*-de-lys,
Þyn angel hauy*n*g so clene corte3
priys] The MS. has *triys*.
Breue me bry3t, quat-kyn of p*r*iys
Bere3 þe perle so maskelle3."
[Fol. 49*b*.] The maiden explains to her father that she is a bride of Christ.

"My makele3 lambe þat al may bete,"
Q*uod* scho, "my dere destyné
Me ches to hys make al-þa3 vnmete,
Su*m* tyme semed þ*a*t assemblé
When I wente fro yor worlde wete.
He calde me to hys bon*er*té,
'Cu*m* hyder to me my le*m*man swete,
She is without spot or blemish.
For mote ne spot is non i*n* þe:'
He gef me my3t & als bewté.
Her weeds are washed in the blood of Christ.
I*n* hys blod he wesch my wede on dese,
& coronde clene i*n* v*er*gynté,
& py3t me i*n* perle3 maskelle3."
The father asks the nature of the Lamb that has chosen his daughter,

"Why maskelle3 bryd þat bry3t con flambe

Þat reiate3 hat3 so ryche & ryf,
Quat-kyn þy*n*g may be þat lambe,
and why she is selected as a bride.
Þat þe wolde wedde vnto hys vyf?
Ou*er* alle oþ*er* so hy3 þ*o*u clambe,
To lede wit*h* hy*m* so ladyly lyf
So mony a cumly on v*n*der cambe,
For kryst han lyued i*n* much stryf,
& þ*o*u con alle þo dere out-dryf,
& fro þat maryag al oþ*er* depres,
Al only þyself so stout & styf,
A makele3 may & maskelle3."

THE LAMB AND HIS BRIDES.

XIV.

"Maskelles," q*uod* þat myry quene,
"Vnblemyst I am wyth-outen blot,
& þat may I wit*h* mensk me*n*teene;
Bot makele3 quene þe*n*ne sade I not,
The Lamb has one hundred and forty thousand brides.
Þe lambes vyue3 i*n* blysse we bene,
A hondred & forty þowsande flot
As i*n* þe apocalyppe3 hit is sene;
St. John saw them on the hill of Sion in a dream, in the new city of Jerusalem.
Sant Ioh*a*n hem sy3 al i*n* a knot,
On þe hyl of syon þat semly clot.
Þe apostel hem segh i*n* gostly drem
Arayed to þe weddy*n*g i*n* þ*a*t hyl coppe,
Þe nwe cyte u I*erusal*em.

[Fol. 50*a*.]

Of I*erusal*em I in speche spelle.
If þou wyl knaw what-kyn he be,
My lombe, my lorde, my dere Iuelle,
My ioy, my blys, my le*m*man fre,
Isaiah speaks of Christ or the Lamb.
Þe p*ro*fete ysaye of hy*m* con melle,
Pitously of hys debonerté
*gyltle*3] MS. reads *gystle*3.
Þat gloryo*us* gyltle3 þ*a*t mon con quelle,
He says that He was led as a lamb to the slaughter.
W*ith*-outen any sake of felonye,
As a schep to þe sla3t þ*er* lad wat3 he
nem] MS. *men*.
& as lombe þat clypper i*n* lande nem,
So closed he hys mouth fro vch query,
Quen Iue3 hy*m* iugged i*n* Ih*erusal*em.
In Jerusalem was Christ slain.

In I*erusal*em wat3 my le*m*man slayn
& rent on rode w*ith* boye3 bolde;
Al oure bale3 to bere ful bayn,
He toke on hy*m* self oure care3 colde,
With buffets was His face flayed.
W*ith* boffete3 wat3 hys face flayn,
Þat wat3 so fayr on to byholde;
For sy*n*ne he set hy*m* self i*n* vayn,
Þat neu*er* hade non hym self to wolde,
He endured all patiently as a lamb.
For v*us* he lette hy*m* fly3e & folde
& brede vpon a bostwys bem,

lomb] The MS. reads *lomp*.
As meke as lomb þat no playnt tolde.
For us He died in Jerusalem.
For v*us* he swalt i*n* I*erusal*e*m*:

THE LAMB WAS SLAIN IN JERUSALEM.

I*erusal*e*m*, Iordan & galalye,
Þer as baptysed þe goude say*n*t Ion,
His worde3 acorded to ysaye;
When Ih*esu*c con to hy*m* warde gon
He sayde of hy*m* þys p*ro*fessye,
The declaration of St. John, "Behold the Lamb of God," etc.
"Lo gode3 lombe as trwe as ston,
Þat dot3 away þe sy*n*ne3 dry3e!"
Þat alle þys worlde hat3 wro3t vpon,
Hy*m* self ne wro3t neu*er* 3et non,
Wheþ*er* on hym self he con al clem,
Who can reckon His generation, that died in Jerusalem?
Hys generacyou*n* quo recen con,
Þat dy3ed for v*us* i*n* I*erusal*e*m*?
[Fol. 50*b*.]

In I*erusal*e*m* þ*us* my le*m*man swatte,
Twye3, for lombe wat3 taken þere,
By trw recorde of ayþ*er* p*ro*phete,
For mode so meke & al hys fare,
Þe þryde tyme is þ*er*-to ful mete
In apokalype3 wryten ful 3are.
In the New Jerusalem St. John saw the Lamb sitting upon the throne.
In myde3 þe trone þere saynte3 sete,
Þe apostel ioh*a*n hy*m* sayt3 as

bare,
Lesande þe boke with leue3 sware,
Þere seuen sy*n*gnette3 wern sette i*n*-
seme
& at þ*a*t sy3t vche douth con dare,
In helle, i*n* erþe & I*erusal*em.

XV.

The Lamb is without blemish.

Thys I*erusal*em lombe hade neu*er*
pechche
Of oþ*er* huee bot quyt Iolyf
Þat mot ne masklle mo3t on streche
For wolle quyte so ronk & ryf,
teche] MS. *tethe*. Every spotless soul is a worthy bride for the Lamb.
For-þy vche saule þat hade neu*er*
teche,
Is to þat lombe a worthyly wyf;
And þa3 vch day a store he feche,
No strife or envy among the brides.
Among v*us* co*m*me3 non oþ*er*
strot ne stryf,
vchon enle] *vch onlepi* (?).
Bot vchon enle we wolde were fyf,
Þe mo þe myryer so god me blesse.
I*n* compayny gret our luf con þryf
In hono*ur* more & neu*er* þe lesse.
26 None can have less bliss than another.

Lasse of blysse may non v*us* bry*n*g
Þat beren þys perle vpon oure
bereste,
For þay of mote couþe neu*er* my*n*ge,

Of spotle3 perle3 þa[y] beren þe creste,
Al-þa3 oure corses i*n* clotte3 cly*n*ge,
& 3e remen for rauþe wyth-outen reste,
We þur3-outly hauen cnawy*n*g;
Our death leads us to bliss.
Of [o]n dethe ful oure hope is drest,
Þe lonbe v*us* glade3, oure care is kest;
He myrþe3 v*us* alle at vch a mes,
Vchone3 blysse is breme & beste,
& neu*er* one3 hono*ur* 3et neu*er* þe les.

THE VISION OF SAINT JOHN.

[Fol. 51*a*.] *tale*] MS. *talle*, but *tale* in the catchwords. What St. John saw upon the Mount of Sion.

Lest les þ*o*u leue my tale farande,
I*n* appocalyppece is wryten i*n* wro
I segh*e*, says Ioh*a*n, þe lou*m*be hy*m* stande,
On þe mou*n*t of syon ful þryuen & þro,
About the Lamb he saw one hundred and forty thousand maidens.
& wyth hym mayde*n*ne3 an hu*n*dreþe þowsande
& fowre & forty þowsande mo
On alle her forhede3 wryten I fande,
Þe lombe3 nome, hys fadere3 also.
He heard a voice from heaven, like many floods.
A hue fro heuen I herde þoo,

Lyk flode3 fele laden, ru*n*ne*n* on resse,
& as þu*n*der þrowe3 i*n* torre3 blo,
Þat lote I leue wat3 neu*er* þe les.

Nauþeles þa3 hit schowted scharpe,
& ledden loude al-þa3 hit were.
He heard the maiden sing a new song.
A note ful nwe I herde hem warpe,
To lysten þat wat3 ful lufly dere,
As harpore3 harpen in her harpe,
Þat nwe songe þay so*n*gen ful cler.
In sou*n*ande note3 a gentyl carpe,
Ful fayre þe mode3 þay fonge i*n* fere
Ry3t byfore gode3 chayere,
So did the four beasts and the elders “so sad of cheer.”
& þe fowre beste3 þat hy*m* obes,
& þe alder-men so sadde of chere,
Her songe þay songen neu*er* þe les;

27

Nowþe-lese non wat3 neu*er* so quoy*n*t,
For alle þe crafte3 þat eu*er* þay knewe.
Þat of þat songe my3t sy*n*ge a poy*n*t,
Bot þat meyny þe lombe þay swe,
For þay arn bo3t fro þe vrþe aloynte.
As newe fryt to god ful due
This assembly was like the Lamb, spotless and pure.
& to þe gentyl lombe hit arn amoy*n*t,
As lyk to hym self of lote & hwe,
For neu*er* lesy*n*g ne tale vn-trwe,

Ne towched her tonge for no dysstresse.
Þat moteles meyny may neu*er* remwe,
Fro þat maskele3 mayster neu*er* þe les."

[Fol. 51*b*.] The father replies to the maiden.

"Neuer þe les let be my þonc,"
Q*uod* I, "my perle þa3 I appose,
I schulde not tempte þy wyt so wlonc,
To kryste3 chambre þat art Ichose,

He says he is but dust and ashes.

I am bot mokke & mul amo*n*g,
& þ*o*u so ryche a reken rose,
& byde3 here by þys blysful bonc
Þer lyue3 lyste may neu*er* lose,
Now hynde þat sympelnesse co*n*e3 enclose,

He wishes to ask one question,

I wolde þe aske a þy*n*ge expresse,
& þa3 I be bustwys as a blose
Let my bone vayl neu*er* þe lese.

THE ABODE OF CHRIST'S BRIDES.

XVI.

Neuer þe lese cler I yow by-calle
If 3e con se hyt be to done,
As þou art gloryo*u*s wi*t*h-outen galle,
Wi*t*h-nay þ*o*u neu*er* my ruful bone.

whether the brides have their abode in castle-walls or in manor.

Haf ȝe no wone3 i*n* castel walle,
Ne man*er* þer ȝe may mete & won?
Jerusalem, he says, in Judea.
Þ*o*u telle3 me of I*erusalem* þe ryche ryalle,
Þer dauid dere wat3 dy3t on trone,
Bot by þyse holte3 hit con not hone
Bot in Iudee hit is þ*a*t noble note;
As ȝe ar maskele3 vnder mone,
But the dwelling of the brides should be perfect.
Yo*ur* wone3 schulde by wyth-outen mote.

Þys motele3 meyny þ*o*u cone3 of mele,
Of þousande3 þry3t so gret a route,
For such "a comely pack" a great castle would be required.
A gret cete, for ȝe arn fele,
Yow by-hod haue wi*th*-outen doute;
So cu*m*ly a pakke of Ioly Iuele,
Wer euel don schulde ly3 þ*er*-oute;
& by þyse bonke3 þer I con gele
& I se no bygy*n*g nawhere aboute,
I trowe al-one ȝe lenge & loute,
To loke on þe glory of þys g*ra*c[i]o*us* gote;
If þ*o*u hat3 oþer lygy*n*ge3 stoute,
Now tech me to þat myry mote.
[Fol. 52*a*.] The city in Judæa, answers the maiden, is where Christ suffered, and is the Old Jerusalem.

"That mote þ*o*u mene3 in Iudy londe,"

Þat specyal spyce þen to me spakk,
"Þat is þe cyte þat þe lombe con
fonde
To soffer i*n*ne sor for mane3 sake,
Þe olde I*erusale*m to vnder-stonde,
For þere þe olde gulte wat3 don to
slake,
The New Jerusalem is where the Lamb has assembled his brides.
Bot þe nwe þat ly3t of gode3 sonde,
Þe apostel in apocalyppce i*n*
theme con take.
lombe] The MS. reads *lompe*.
Þe lombe þ*er*, w*ith*-outen spotte3
blake,
Hat3 feryed þyder hys fayre flote,
& as hys flok is w*ith*-outen flake,
So is hys mote w*ith*-outen moote.

THE OLD AND NEW JERUSALEM.

Of motes two to carpe clene
Jerusalem means the city of God.
& I*erusale*m hy3t boþe nawþeles,
Þat nys to yow no more to mene,
Bot cete of god oþ*er* sy3t of pes.
In the Old city our peace was made at one.
I*n* þat on oure pes wat3 mad at ene,
W*ith* payne to suffer þe lombe hit
chese,
In the New city is eternal peace.
In þat oþ*er* is no3t bot pes to glene,
Þat ay schal laste w*ith*-outen
reles,
Þat is þe bor3 þat we to pres,
flesch] MS. *fresth*.
Fro þ*a*t oure flesch be layd to rote;

29
Þer glory & blysse schal eu*er* encres,
To þe meyny þ*a*t is w*ith*-outen mote.

XVII.

The father prays his daughter to bring him to the blissful bower.

"Motele3 may so meke & mylde,"
Þen sayde I to þat lufly flor,
"Bry*n*g me to þat bygly bylde,
& let me se þy blysful bor."
Þat schene sayde, þat god wyl schylde,
His daughter tells him that he shall see the outside,
"Þ*o*u may not enter w*ith*-i*n*ne hys tor,
Bot of þe lombe I haue þe aquylde
For a sy3t þer-of þur3 gret fauor.
Vt-wyth to se þat clene cloystor,
but not a foot may he put in the city.
Þ*o*u may, bot i*n*wyth not a fote,
To strech in þe strete þ*o*u hat3 no vygo*ur*,
Bot þ*o*u wer clene w*ith*-outen mote.

XVIII.

[Fol. 52*b*.]

If I þis mote þe schal vn-hyde,
The maiden then tells her father to go

along the bank till he comes to a hill.
Bow vp to-warde þys borne3 heued,
& I an-ende3 þe on þis syde
Schal sve, tyl þou to a hil be veued,
Þen wolde [I] no lenger byde,
Bot lurked by launce3 so lufly leued,
He reaches the hill, and beholds the heavenly city.
Tyl on a hyl þat I asspyed
& blusched on þe burghe, as I forth dreued,
By-3onde þe brok fro me warde keued,
Þat schyrrer þen sunne with schafte3 schon;
In þe apokalypce is þe fasoun preued,
As deuyse3 hit þe apostel Ihoñ.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE NEW JERUSALEM.

As St. John saw it, so he beheld it.

As Iohan þe apostel hit sy3 with sy3t
I sy3e þat cyty of gret renoun,
Ierusalem so nwe & ryally dy3t,
As hit wat3 ly3t fro þe heuen adoun.
The city was of burnished gold.
Þe bor3 wat3 al of brende golde bry3t,
As glemande glas burnist broun,
Pitched upon gems,
With gentyl gemme3 an-vnder py3t;
With bantele3 twelue on basyng boun,
the foundation composed of twelve stones.

Þe fou*n*dementez twelue of riche
tenou*n*;
Vch tabelment watz a serlypez ston,
As derely deuysez þis ilk tou*n*,
I*n* apocalyppez þe apostel Ioh*a*n.
The names of the precious stones.

As þise stonez i*n* writ con ne*m*me
I knew þe name aft*er* his tale;
i. Jasper.
Iasper hyzt þe fyrst ge*m*me,
Þat I on þe fyrst basse con wale,
He glente grene i*n* þe lowest he*m*me.
ii. Sapphire.
Saffer helde þe secou*n*de stale,
iii. Chalcedony.
Þe calsydoyne þe*n*ne wi*th*-outen
we*m*me,
I*n* þe þryd table con purly pale;
iv. Emerald.
Þe emerade þe furþe so grene of
scale;
v. Sardonyx.
Þe sardonyse þe fyfþe ston;
vi. Ruby.
Þe sexte þe rybe he con hit wale,
I*n* þe apocalyppce þe apostel
Ioh*a*n.
[Fol. 53*a*.] vii. Chrysolite.

Ȝet Ioyned Ioh*a*n þe crysolyt,
Þe seuenþe ge*m*me i*n* fundament;
viii. Beryl.
Þe aztþe þe beryl cler & quyt
ix. Topaz.
Þe topasye twy*n*ne how þe ne*n*te
endent;
x. Chrysoprasus.
Þe crysopase þe tenþe is tyzt;

Iacyngh] *Iacynth* (?). xi. Jacinth.
Þe Iacy*n*gh þe enleuenþe gent;
Þe twelfþe þe gentyleste i*n* veh a plyt,
xii. Amethyst.
Þe amatyst purpre w*ith* ynde blente;
Þe wal abof þe bantels bent,
Masporye as glas þat glysnande schon,
I knew hit by his deuysement,
I*n* þe apocalyppe3 þe apostel Ioh*a*n.

As Ioh*a*n deuysed 3et sa3 I þare.
Þise twelue de-gres wern brode & stayre,
The city was square.
Þe cyte stod abof ful sware,
As longe as brode as hy3e ful fayre;
Þe strete3 of golde as glasse al bare,
The wall was of jasper.
Þe wal of Iasper þat glent as glayre;
31
Þe wone3 w*ith*-i*n*ne enurned ware
Wyth alle ky*n*ne3 perre þat mo3t repayre,
Þe*n*ne helde vch sware of þis manayre,
Twelve thousand furlongs in length and breadth.
Twelue forlonge space er eu*er* hit fon,
Of he3t, of brede, of lenþe to cayre,
For meten hit sy3 þe apostel Ioh*a*n.

NO SUN NOR MOON IN HEAVEN.

XIX.

As Iohan hym wryte3 3et more I sy3e
Each "pane" had three gates.
Vch pane of þat place had þre 3ate3,
So twelue in pourʒsent I con asspye
Þe portale3 pyked of rych plate3
Each gate adorned with a pearl.
& vch 3ate of a margyrye,
A parfyt perle þat neuer fate3;
Vchon in scrypture a name con plye,
Of israel barne3 folewande her date3,
Þat is to say as her byrþ whate3;
Þe aldest ay fyrst þer-on wat3 done.
Such light gleamed in all the streets, that there was no need of the sun or moon.
Such ly3t þer lemed in alle þe strate3
Hem nedde nawþer sunne ne mone.
[Fol. 53*b*.]

Of sunne ne mone had þay no nede
lompe] MS. *lombe*. God was the light of those in the city.
Þe self god wat3 her lompe ly3t,
Þe lombe her lantyrne with-outen drede,
Þur3 hym blysned þe bor3 al bry3t.
Þur3 wo3e & won my lokyng 3ede,
mo3t] MS. *no3t*.
For sotyle cler mo3t lette no ly3t;
The high throne might be seen, upon which the "high God" sat.

Þe hy3e trone þer mo3t 3e hede
With alle þe apparaylmente vmbe-py3te,
As Iohan þe appostel in terme3 ty3te;
Þe hy3e gode3 self hit set vpone.
A river ran out of the throne;
A reuer of þe trone þer ran out-ry3te
Wat3 bry3ter þen boþe þe sunne & mone.

NO CHURCH IN HEAVEN.

Sunne ne mone schon neuer so swete;
A! þat foysoun flode out of þat flet,
it flowed through each street.
Swyþe hit swange þur3 vch a strete,
With-outen fylþe oþer galle oþer glet.
32 No church was seen.
Kyrk þer-inne wat3 non 3ete,
Chapel ne temple þat euer wat3 set,
God was the church; Christ the sacrifice.
Þe al-my3ty wat3 her mynyster mete,
Þe lombe þe saker-fyse þer to reget;
The gates were ever open.
Þe 3ates stoken wat3 neuer 3et,
Bot euer more vpen at vche a lone;
Þer entre3 non to take reset,
an-vnder] MS. *an-vnde3*.
Þat bere3 any spot an-vnder mone.

The mone may þer-of acroche no my3te
To spotty, ho is of body to grym,
There is no night in the city.

& al-so þ*er* ne is neu*er* ny3t.
What schulde þe mone þer compas clym
ly3t] Or *sy3t*.
& to euen wyth þat worþly ly3t,
Þat schyne3 vpon þe broke3 brym?
The planets, and the sun itself, are dim compared to the divine light.
Þe planete3 arn i*n* to pou*er* a ply3t,
& þe self su*n*ne ful fer to dym.
Aboute þat wat*er* arn tres ful schym,
Þat twelue fryte3 of lyf con bere ful sone;
Trees there renew their fruit every month.
Twelue syþe3 on 3er þay beren ful frym
& re-nowle3 nwe i*n* vche a mone.
[Fol. 54*a*.]

An-vnder mone so gret m*er*wayle
No fleschly hert ne my3t endeure,
As quen I blusched vpon þat baly,
So ferly þ*er*-of wat3 þe falure.
The beholder of this fair city stood still as a "dased quail."
I stod as stylle as dased quayle,
french] *fresch* (?).
For ferly of þat french fygure,
Þat felde I nawþ*er* reste ne t*ra*uayle,
So wat3 I rauyste wyth gly*m*me pure;
For I dar say, w*ith* conciens sure,
Hade bodyly burne abiden þat bone,
Þa3 alle clerke3 hy*m* hade i*n* cure,
His lyf wer loste an-vnder mone.

A PROCESSION OF VIRGINS.

XX.

As the moon began to rise he was aware of a procession

Ry3t as þe maynful mone con rys,
Er þe*n*ne þe day-glem dryue al dou*n*,
So sodanly on a wonder wyse,
I wat3 war of a prosessyou*n*,
Þis noble cite of ryche enpresse
Wat3 sodanly ful w*ith*-outen so*m*mou*n*
of virgins crowned with pearls,
Of such v*er*gyne3 i*n* þe same gyse
Þat wat3 my blysful an-vnder crou*n*,
& coronde wern alle of þe same fasou*n*
in white robes,
Depaynt i*n* perle3 & wede3 qwyte,
with a pearl in their breast.
I*n* vchone3 breste wat3 bou*n*den bou*n*,
*wi*th *gret*] MS. *with outen*.
Þe blysful perle w*ith* gret delyt.
As they went along they shone as glass.

W*ith* gret delyt þay glod i*n* fere,
On golden gate3 þat glent as glasse;
Hu*n*dreth þowsande3 I wot þer were,
& alle in sute her liure3 wasse,
Tor to knaw þe gladdest chere.
The Lamb went before them.
Þe lombe byfore con proudly passe,
golde] MS. *glode*.
Wyth horne3 seuen of red golde cler,
As praysed perle3 his wede3 wasse;

Towarde þe throne þay trone a tras.
There was no pressing.
Þa3 þay wern fele no pres i*n* plyt,
Bot mylde as maydene3 seme at mas,
So dro3 þay forth wi*th* gret delyt.
[Fol. 54*b*.]

Delyt þ*a*t hys come encroched,
To much hit were of for to melle;
The "alder men" fell groveling at the feet of the Lamb.
Þise alder men quen he aproched,
Grouely*n*g to his fete þay felle;
Legyou*n*es of au*n*gele3 togeder uoched,
Þer kesten ensens of swete smelle,
Þen glory & gle wat3 nwe abroched.
All sang in praise of the Lamb.
Al songe to loue þat gay Iuelle,
Þe steuen mo3t stryke þur3 þe vrþe to helle,
Þat þe v*er*tues of heuen of Ioye endyte,
To loue þe lombe his meyny in melle,
I-wysse I la3t a gret delyt;

Delit þe lo*m*be forto deuise,
W*ith* much meruayle in mynde went.
34
Best wat3 he, blyþest & moste to pryse,
Þat eu*er* I herde of speche spent,
The Lamb wore white weeds.
So worþly whyt wern wede3 hys;
His loke3 symple, hy*m* self so gent,
A wide wound was seen near his breast.
Bot a wou*n*de ful wyde & weete con

wyse
An-ende hys hert þur3 hyde to-
rente;
Of his quyte syde his blod out-sprent,
A-las! þo3t I, who did þat spyt?
Ani breste for bale a3t haf for-brent,
Er he þer-to hade had delyt,

HE WISHES TO CROSS THE STREAM.

The lombe delyt non lyste to wene,
Þa3 he were hurt & wou*n*de hade,
I*n* his sembelau*n*t wat3 neu*er* sene,
Joy was in his looks.
So wern his glente3 glory*ous*
glade.
I loked amo*n*g his meyny schene,
How þay wyth lyf wern laste & lade,
The father perceives his little queen.
Þe*n* sa3 I þer my lyttel quene,
Þat I wende had standen by me
i*n* sclade;
Lorde! much of mirþe wat3 þat ho
made,
Amo*n*g her fere3 þat wat3 so quyt!
Þat sy3t me gart to þenk to wade,
For luf longy*n*g i*n* gret delyt.

XXI.

[Fol. 55*a*.] Great delight takes possession of his mind.

Delyt me drof i*n* y3e & ere,
My mane3 mynde to maddy*n*g malte;
Quen I se3 my frely I wolde be þere,
By3onde þe water, þa3 ho were

walte,
I þo3t þat no þy*n*g my3t me dere
To fech me bur & take me halte;
He attempts to cross the stream.
& to start in þe strem schulde non
me stere,
To swy*m*me þe remnau*n*t, þa3 I
þer swalte,
Bot of þat mu*n*t I wat3 bi-talt;
When I schulde start i*n* þe strem
astraye,
Out of þat caste I wat3 by-calt;
It was not pleasing to the Lord.
Hit wat3 not at my prynce3
paye,

35

THE FATHER OF THE MAIDEN AWAKES.

Hit payed hym not þat I so flonc,
Ou*er* merueilo*us* mere3 so mad
arayde,
Of raas þa3 I were rasch & ronk,
3et rapely þer-i*n*ne I wat3
restayed;
For ry3t as I sparred vn-to þe bonc,
Þat brathe out of my drem me
brayde;
The dreamer awakes,
Þen wakned I i*n* þat erber wlonk,
My hede vpon þat hylle wat3
layde,
Þer as my perle to grou*n*de strayd;
and is in great sorrow.
I raxled & fel i*n* gret affray,
& syky*n*g to my self I sayd:
“Now al be to þat prynce3
paye.”

Me payed ful ille to be out-fleme,
So sodenly of þat fayre regiou*n*,
Fro alle þo sy3te3 so quyke3 &
queme.
A longey*n*g heuy me strok i*n*
swone,
& rewfully þe*n*ne I con to reme;
He addresses his pearl;
"O perle," q*uod* I, "of rych renou*n*,
So wat3 hit me dere þ*a*t þ*o*u con
deme,
I*n* þys v*er*ay avysyou*n*;
If] MS. *inf*.
If hit be ueray & soth sermou*n*,
Þat þ*o*u so styke3 i*n* garlande gay,
laments his rash curiosity.
So wel is me i*n* þys doel dou*n*gou*n*,
Þat þ*o*u art to þat prynse3 paye."
[Fol. 55*b*.]

To þat prynce3 paye hade I ay
bente,
& 3erned no more þen wat3 me
geuen,
& halden me þer in trwe entent,
As þe perle me prayed þat wat3
so þryuen,
As helde drawen to godde3 p*re*sent,
To mo of his mysterys I hade ben
dryuen.
Men desire more than they have any right to expect.
Bot ay wolde man of happe more
hente
Þen mo3ten by ry3t vpon hem
clyuen;
Þer-fore my ioye wat3 sone to-riuen,
& I kaste of kythe3 þat laste3 aye.

Lorde! mad hit arn þat agayn þe
stryuen,
Oþer proferen þe o3t agayn þy
paye;
36

GOD GIVE US GRACE TO SERVE HIM.

The good Christian knows how to make peace with God.

To pay þe prince oþer sete sa3te,
Hit is ful eþe to þe god krystyin;
For I haf founden hym boþe day &
na3te,
A god, a lorde, a frende ful fyin.
hyl] MS. *hyiil*.
1864 edition had "hyiil", with note "*hye-hil* or *hyul*?"
Ouer þis hyl þis lote I la3te,
For pyty of my perle enclyin,
& syþen to god I hit by-ta3te,
In kryste3 dere blessyng & myn,
Þat in þe forme of bred & wyn,
God give us grace to be his servants!
Þe preste vus schewe3 vch a daye;
He gef vus to be his homly hyne,
Ande precious perle3 vnto his
pay. Amen. Amen.

105

Notes to The Pearl.

The Notes were printed in a group, immediately before the Index. They have been distributed

among the three poems for convenience.

Page 1. l. 2, *to*, very.

8 *sengeley in synglure*, ever in singleness (uniqueness).

Now is Susan in sale *sengeliche*
arayed.

Pistel of Susan, Vernon MS., fol. 317.

11 *dewyne*, pine; *for-dolked*, for-wounded (severely hurt).

16 *heuen my happe*, increase my happiness.

17 *þrych my hert þrange*, through my heart pierce.

20 *stylle stounde*, a secret sorrow.

23

O moul þou marre3 a myry mele,

O mould (earth) thou spoilest a merry discourse.

P. 2. l. 27

Blome3 blayke & blwe & rede,
Flowers yellow, blue, and red.

49 *spenned*, wrung.

51, 52

A secret grief in my heart
dinned (resounded),
Though reason set myself at
peace.

53 *spenned*, allured, enticed away.

54

Wyth fyrte skylle3 þat faste fa3t,
With trembling doubts that fast
fought (struggled).

P. 3. l. 76 bolle3 = *bole3*, trunks of trees.

78 *on vch a tynde*, on each branch.

92 *reken myrþe*, pleasant, joyous mirth.

P. 4. l. 99 *Þe derþe þer-of*, the value (preciousness) thereof.

101 *in wely wyse*, in joyful mood.

102 *dere3*, injuries, harms.

103 *fyrre*, farther.

105 *rawe3 & rande3*, borders and paths.

107 *I wan to*, I reached. *Winne* in O.E. was used much in the same way as we now employ the word *get*.

112

Wyth a rownande rourde
raykande ary3t,
With a murmuring (whispering) sound flowing aright.

113 *founce*, bottom; *stepe*, bright.

114 *glente*, shone; *gly3t*, glistened.

115 *A*[*s*] *stremande sterne3*, as glittering stars; *stroþe*, stout, brave.

119 *lo3e*, deep.

125 *dry3ly hale3*, strongly (*or* deeply) flows.

126 *bred ful* = *bred-ful* = *bretful* (?), full to the brim.

P. 5. l. 131 *wayne3*, grants.

132 *hitte3*, seeks.

138 *gayn*, opposite.

142

I hopede þat mote merked wore,

I supposed that building was devised.

149 *stote & stare*, stand (loiter) and gape.

106

150-1

To fynde a forþe, faste con I fonde,

Bot woþe3 mo I-wysse þer ware,

To find a way fast did I go,

But paths more indeed there were.

153 *wonde*, cease, abstain (from fear).

155 *nwe note*, a new matter.

163 *blysnande whyt*, glistening white. See 197.

P. 6. l. 165 *schere*, purify, refine.

169

Þe more I frayste hyr fayre face.

The more I examined her fair face.

frayst (*fraist*) usually signifies to try, tempt.

170 *fonte*, tried, examined, *found*.

176

Such a burre myȝt make myn herte blunt,

Such a blow might make mine heart faint.

179

Þat stonge myn hert ful stray atount,

Should we not read—Þat stonge myn hert ful stray a stount (?), "full stray a stount" = a blow full stray.

187 *chos*, was following, was seeking.

188

Er I at steuen hir moȝt stalle,

Before I could place her within reach of discourse.

190 *seme* = *semely*, seemly.

P. 7. l. 208 *flurted*, figured. Cf. *flurt*-silk, figured-silk.

210

Her here heke al hyr vmbe-gon,
Her hair eke (also) all her about gone.

212 *Her ble more bla3t*, her complexion whiter.

213 *schorne golde schyr*, refined gold pure.

216 *porfyl*, hem of a dress, or rather an embroidered hem.

217 *poyned*, ornamented, trimmed.

223-4

A manne3 dom my3t dry3ly demme,
Er mynde mo3t malte in hit mesure,
A man's judgment might greatly dim,
Before (his) mind could discourse of it in sufficient terms of praise.

226 *No* = *ne* (nor) would be a better reading.

230 *wyþer half*, opposite side.

P. 8. l. 243 *myn one*, myself.

244 *layned*, kept secret, hidden.

251 *Fro*, from the time that. *towen & twayned*, made two and separated.

P. 9. l. 272 *is put in pref*, has been proved.

275 *bote of þy meschef*, the remedy of thy misfortune (misery).

290

Wy borde ȝe men so madde ȝe be?

Why should you talk, so foolish you are?

P. 10. l. 307 *westernays*, wrongly, in vain? It may be another form of westernways, from the A.Sax. *wéste*, barren, empty; *wéstern*, a desert place. Or is it connected with A.Sax. *winstre*, the left hand?

320

Þy corse in clot mot colder keue,

Thy body in earth (clods) must colder plunge.

321 *for-garte* forfeited.

322 *ȝore fader* for *form-fader*, first-father.

323 *drwry* = *drery*, dreary (?). *boȝ* (= *bos* = *bus* ?) *vch ma* (*man* ?) *dreue*, behoves each man to drive (go). See B. l. 687.

327-8

Now haf I fonte þat I for-lete

Schal I efte forgo hit er euer I fyne?

Now I have found what I have lost.

Shall I again forego it ere ever I die?

P. 11. l. 336 *durande doel*, lasting grief.

343

For anger gayne3 þe not a cresse,
For anger avails the not a cress,
(*i.e.* not a mite).

Cf. the following passage from "Piers Ploughman," p. 174, l. 5629:

"Wisdom and wit now
Is noght worth a *kerse*."

353

Stynst (stynt?) of þy strot & fyne to flyte,
Leave off thy complaining and cease to chide.

354 *blyþe* is here used as a substantive in the sense of bliss, joy. *swefte* = swift.

356 *hyr crafte3 kyþe*, manifest her powers.

359-60

For marre oþer madde, morne & myþe,
Al lys in him to dy3t & deme.
For to ruin, or make foolish, grieve or to soothe,
All lies in him to order and doom.

363 *If rapely raue*, etc. = *If rapely I raue*, etc. (?)

368 Though I go astray, my dear, adored one.

P. 12. l. 369 *lyþe3*, grant.

374

Bot much þe bygger 3et wat3 my mon,
Fro þou wat3 wroken fro vch a woþe.

But much the greater yet was my moan (sorrow),
From (the time) thou wast banished from every path.

377 *now leþe3 my loþe*, now my sorrow ceases (is softened).

382 *marere3* = *mare3* (?).

386 *mate*, dejected.

402 *I hete þe*, I promise the.

P. 14. l. 446 *in hyt self beyng*, in its very being.

455 *gyng*, company.

460 *Temen*, are united, joined. *tryste*, trusty, faithful, firm.

P. 16. l. 511 *wryþen*, toil, literally to turn, twist.

512 *keruen*, dig. *caggen*, draw. *man* = *maken*, make. Cf. *ma* = make, *ta* = take, *tan* = taken.

522 *to3t*, binding, firm.

524 *pray* (so in MS.), read *pay*.

536 *at 3e moun*, that ye are able.

P. 17. l. 560 *a grete*, in the gross, a head.

563 *plete*, plead, ask for.

572 *be* = *he* (?).

P. 18. l. 575

Þaȝ her sweng wyth lyttel at-slykeȝ,
Though their labour (blow) with little falls off (fails to accomplish much).

605 *chyche*, niggard.

608 *gote*ȝ, streams; *charde*, past tense of *charre*, to turn, deviate.

P. 19. l. 617 *bourne abate* = *burne abade*, man continued.

626 *by lyne*, by lineage descent.

P. 20. l. 645

Bot þer on com a bote as-tyt,
But there came one as a remedy at once.

659 *in sely stounde*, in a happy moment.

671 *glente*, fell, slided.

P. 21. l. 680 *dylle*, slow, sluggish.

681 *dyt* = *dyde*, did (?), or *dot*ȝ, does (?).

690 *oure*, prayer.

P. 22. l. 726 *sulpande synne*, defiling, polluting, sin.

727 *bylde*, building.

735 *reme*, realm.

P. 23. l. 752 *Of carpe*, discourse of.

754 *hauyng*, condition, behaviour.

757 *bete*, save, ransom.

759 *make*, wife.

775 *vnder cambe* = *under-cam*, came under, took an inferior position (?).

P. 24. l. 802

& as a lombe þat clypper in lande nem,

And as a lamb that a *shearer* has taken, etc.

108

813-4 For us he let himself be scourged and buffetted, and stretched upon a rough tree (*i.e.* nailed to the cross).

P. 25. l. 836 *as bare*, (?) *al bare*, openly. See 1025.

837

Lesande þe boke with leueȝ sware,

Opening the book with leaves square.

839

& at þat syȝt vche douth con dare,

And at that sight each doughty (one) did tremble (with fear).

849 enle = *eneli* = onely or *onlepi* (?) = singly, alone.

P. 26. l. 865 *talle farande* = *tale farande*, pleasing story.

873 *hue*, cry, voice.

876 *lote*, sound.

P. 27. l. 896 *lote*, features.

909 *hynde* = *hende*, gentle, courteous (one).

911 *bustwys as a blose*, boisterous (wild) as a blaze (flame).

916

With nay þou neuer my ruful bone,

Do thou never refuse my mournful request.

P. 28. l. 948

So is hys mote with-outen moote,

So is his building without mote (blemish).

P. 29. ll. 975-6

& I an-ende3 þe on his syde
Schal sve, tyl þou to a hil be veued,
And I opposite thee on this side
Shall go, till thou to a hill be passed.

980-81

& blusched on þe burghe, as I forth dreued,
By3onde þe brok fro me warde keued,
And looked on the city, as I forth drove (urged),
Beyond the brook that cut me off from (the object of my desire).

P. 30. l. 1018 *Masporye* = *was pure* (?).

1022 *brode & stayre*, broad and steep (high).

1026 *þat glent as glayre*, that shone as amber.

P. 31. l. 1030 *fon*, ceased, the preterite of *fine*.

1038 *fate3* = *fade3*, fades.

1041 *whate3* = *wat3*, was.

P. 32. ll. 1065-66

Þe ȝates stoken watȝ neuer ȝet,
Bot euer more vpen at vche a lone.

The gates shut were never yet,
But ever more open at every lane.

1073 *to euen with*, to equal with, to match with.

1084 *falure* = *fasure*, form (?).

P. 33. l. 1124 *to loue*, to praise.

1127 *in melle* = *in-melle* = *i-melle*, among. Cf. *in-lyche* and *i-lyche*, etc.

P. 34. l. 1141

Þe lombe delyt non lyste to wene,
The lamb's delight none desired to doubt.

1146 *laste and lade*, followed and preceded (?).

1161

Bot of þat munt I watȝ bi-talt,
But from that purpose I was aroused (shaken).

1163 *bi-calt* = *bi-called* (?), called away.

P. 35. l. 1165 *flonc* = *flong* (?), flung.

1193 *helde*, willingly (inclined).

CLEANNESS.

I.

[Fol. 57*a*.]

Cla*n*nesse who-so kyndly cowþe
co*m*ende,
& rekken vp alle þe resou*n*ȝ þ*a*t ho
by riȝt askeȝ,
Cleanness discloses fair forms.
Fayre formeȝ myȝt he fy*n*de i*n*
forer*i*n*g* his speche,
& in þe co*n*traré, kark &
co*m*brau*n*ce huge;
God is angry with the unclean worshipper,
For wonder wroth is þe wyȝ þ*a*t
wroȝt alle þi*n*g*es*,
Wyth þe freke þat i*n* fylþe folȝes hy*m*
aft*er*,
As renkeȝ of relygiou*n* þat reden &
sy*n*gen,
and with false priests.
& aprochen to hys presens, &
presteȝ arn called;
Thay teen vnto his te*m*mple & teme*n*
to hy*m* seluen,
Reken w*i*t*h* reue*r*ence þay r[ec]hen
his auter,
Þay hondel þer his aune body & vsen
hit boþe.
The pure worshipper receives great reward.
If þay in cla*n*nes be clos þay
cleche gret mede,
Bot if þay conterfete crafte, &

cortaysye wont,
The impure will bring upon them the anger of God, Who is pure and holy.
As be honest vtwyth, & i*n*-with alle fylþe3,
Þen ar þay synful hemself & sulped altogeder,
Boþe god & his gere, & hy*m* to greme cachen.
He is so clene in his co*ur*te, þe ky*n*g þ*a*t al welde3,
& honeste in his ho*us*-holde & hagherlych serued,
With angele3 eno*ur*led in alle þat is clene,
It would be a marvel if God did not hate evil.
Boþe wi*th*-i*n*ne & wi*th*-outen, i*n* wede3 ful bry3t.
Nif he nere scoym*us* & skyg & non scaþe louied,
Hit were a meruayl to much, hit mo3t not falle;
Christ showed us that himself.
Kryst kydde hit hym self i*n* a carp one3,
Þer as he heuened a3t happe3 & hy3t hem her mede3;
St. Matthew records the discourse.
Me myne3 on one amo*n*ge oþ*er*, as maþew recorde3,
Þat þ*us* of clannesse vn-close3 a ful cler speche.
The clean of heart shall look on our Lord.
Þe haþel clene of his hert hapene3 ful fayre,

For he schal loke on oure lorde
wi*th* a bone chere,
As so sayt3, to þat sy3t seche schal
he neu*er*,
anwhere] *aywhere* (?).
Þat any vncla*n*nesse hat3 on,
anwhere abowte:
For he þ*a*t flem*us* vch fylþe fer fro
his hert,
burne] Looks like *burre* in MS.
May not byde þat burne þat hit his
body ne3en;
For-þy hy3 not to heuen i*n* hatere3
to-torne,
Ne i*n* þe harlote3 hod & hande3
vnwaschen;
What earthly noble, when seated at table
For what vrþly haþel þat hy3 hono*ur*
halde3
Wolde lyke, if a ladde com lyþ*er*ly
attyred,
[Fol. 57*b*.] above dukes, would like to see a lad badly attired approach the table
When he were sette solempnely i*n* a
sete ryche,
Abof dukes on dece, wi*th* dayntys
serued,
Þen þe harlot wi*th* haste helded to þe
table
with “rent cockers,” his coat torn and his toes out?
Wi*th* rent cokre3 at þe kne & his
clutte trasches,
& his tabarde to-torne & his tote3
oute;
For any one of these he would be turned

out with a "big buffet,"
Oþ*er* ani on of alle þyse he schulde
be halden vtt*er*,
With mony blame ful bygge, a boffet,
p*er*aun*t*e*r*,
Hurled to þe halle dore & harde
þ*er*-oute schowued,
and be forbidden to re-enter,
& be forboden þat bor3e to bowe
þider neue*r*,
On payne of enprysonment &
putty*n*g i*n* stokke3;
and thus be ruined through his vile clothes.
& þ*us* schal he be schent for his
schrowde feble,
Þa3 neue*r* i*n* talle ne in tuch he
trespas more.
& if vnwelcu*m* he were to a worþlych
prynce
3et hy*m* is þe hy3e ky*n*g harder i*n*
her euen,

THE PARABLE OF THE MARRIAGE FEAST.

The parable of the "Marriage of the King's Son."
As maþew mele3 in his masse of þat
man ryche,
Þat made þe mukel mangerye to
marie his here dere,
& sende his sonde þen to say þat þay
samne schulde,
& in comly quoyntis to com to his
feste;
The king's invitation.
"For my boles & my bore3 arn
bayted & slayne,

& my fedde foule3 fatted w*ith*
scla3t,
My polyle þat is pe*nn*e-fed &
partrykes boþe,
Wyth schelde3 of wylde swyn,
swane3 & crone3;
Al is roþeled & rosted ry3t to þe sete,
Come3 cof to my corte, er hit
colde worþe."

THOSE INVITED TO THE FEAST REFUSE TO COME.

Those invited begin to make excuses.
When þay knewen his cal þ*a*t þider
com schulde,
Alle ex-cused hem by þe skyly he
scape by mo3t:
One had bought an estate and must go to see it.
On hade bo3t hym a bor3 he sayde
by hys t*ra*wþe,
Now t[ur]ne I þeder als tyd, þe
tou*n* to by-holde;
Another had purchased some oxen and wished to see them "pull in the plough."
An oþ*er* nayed also & nurned þis
cawse:
I haf 3erned & 3at 3okke3 of oxen,
& for my hy3e3 hem bo3t, to bowe
haf I mest*er*,
To see hem pulle in þe plow
aproche me byhoue3;
A third had married a wife and could not come. *sower*] *swer* (?).
& I haf wedded a wyf, sower hy*m* þe
þryd,
Excuse me at þe co*ur*t, I may not
com þere;

Þ*us* þay dro3 hem adre3 w*ith* dau*nger*
vchone,
place] MS. *plate*.
Þat non passed to þe place þa3 he
prayed were.
[Fol. 58*a*.] The Lord was greatly
displeased,
The*n*ne þe ludych lorde lyked ful ille
& hade dedayn of þat dede, ful
dry3ly he carpe3:
He sayt3 “now for her owne sor3e
þay for-saken habbe3,
More to wyte is her wrange, þen
any wylle gentyl;
and commanded his servants to invite
the wayfaring,
Þe*n*ne got3 forth my gome3 to þe
grete streete3,
& forsette3 on vche a syde þe cete
aboute;
Þe wayferande freke3, on fote & on
hors,
both men and women, the better and
the worse,
Boþe burne3 & burde3, þe bett*er* &
þe wers,
Laþe3 hem alle luflyly to lenge at my
fest,
& bry*n*ge3 hem blyþly to bor3e as
barou*n*e3 þay were,
that his palace might be full.
So þat my palays plat-ful be py3t al
aboute,
Þise oþ*er* wreche3 I-wysse worþy
no3t wern.”
The servants brought in bachelors and
squires.
Þe*n* þay cayred & com þat þe cost

waked,
Bro3ten bachlere3 hem wyth þat þay
by bonke3 metten,
Swyere3 þat swyftly swyed on
blonke3,
& also fele vpon fote, of fre & of
bonde.

When they came to the court they were well entertained.

When þay com to þe co*ur*te keppte
wern þay fayre,
Sty3tled w*ith* þe stewarde, stad i*n* þe
halle,
Ful man*er*ly w*ith* marchal mad forto
sitte,
As he wat3 dere of de-gre dressed
his seete.

The servants tell their lord that they have done his behest, and there is still room for more guests.

Þe*n*ne segge3 to þe souerayn sayden
þer-aft*er*,
"Lo! lorde w*ith* yo*ur* leue at yo*ur* lege
heste,
& at þi ba*n*ne we haf bro3t, as þou
beden habbe3,

THE HALT AND THE BLIND ARE INVITED.

The Lord commands them to go out into the fields,

Mony renischche renke3 & 3et is
rou*m* more."
Sayde þe lorde to þo lede3, "layte3
3et ferre,
Ferre out i*n* þe felde, & feche3 mo
geste3,

Wayte3 gorste3 & greue3, if ani
gome3 lygge3,
What-kyn folk so þer fare, feche3
hem hider,
for-lote3] *forlete3* (?).
Be þay fers, be þay feble for-lote3
none,
and bring in the halt, blind, and "one-eyed."
Be þay hol, be þay halt, be þay
ony3ed,
& þa3 þay ben boþe blynde &
balt*er*ande cruppele3,
For those who denied shall not taste "one sup" to save them from death.
Þat my ho*us* may holly by halkes
by fylled;
For certe3 þyse ilk renke3 þat me
renayed habbe
& de-nou*n*ced me, no3t now at þis
tyme,
Schul neu*er* sitte in my sale my sop*er*
to fele,
þa3] MS. þa3 þa3.
Ne suppe on sope of my seve, þa3
þay swelt schulde."
[Fol. 58*b*.] The palace soon became full of "people of all plights."
The*n*ne þe sergau*n*te3, at þat sawe,
swengen þ*er*-oute,
& diden þe dede þat [is] demed, as
he deuised hade,
& w*ith* peple of alle plyte3 þe palays
þay fyllen;
They were not all one wife's sons, nor had they all one father.
Hit weren not alle on wyue3
su*n*e3, wonen w*ith* on fader;

Wheþ*er* þay wern worþy, oþ*er* wers,
wel wern þay stowed,
The "brightest attired" had the best place.
Ay þe best byfore & bry3test atyred,
Þe derrest at þe hy3e dese þat
dubbed wer fayrest;
Below sat those with "poor weeds."
116 & syþen on lenþe bilooghe lede3
inogh,
soerly] *soberly* (?).
& ay a segge soerly semed by her
wede3;
So with marschal at her mete
mensked þay were,
Clene men i*n* compaynye for-knowen
wern lyte,
All are well entertained "with meat and minstrelsy."
120 & 3et þe symplest in þ*a*t sale
wat3 serued to þe fulle,
Boþe with menske, & w*ith* mete &
mynstrasy noble,
& alle þe layke3 þat a lorde a3t i*n*
londe schewe.
& þay bigo*n*ne to be glad þat god
dri*n*k haden,
Each with his "mate" made him at ease.
124 & vch mon w*ith* his mach made
hy*m* at ese.

II.

The lord of the feast goes among his guests.

Now i*n*-mydde3 þe mete þe mayst*er*

hym biþo3t,
Þat he wolde se þe semblé þ*a*t
samned was þ*er*e,
*pou*e*r*e*n*] MS. poueu*er*.
& re-hayte rekenly þe riche & þe
pou*er*en,
& cherisch hem alle w*ith* his cher,
& chaufen her Ioye,
Þen he bowe3 fro his bour i*n* to þe
brode halle,
Bids them be merry.
& to þe best on þe bench, & bede
hy*m* be myry,
Solased hem w*ith* semblau*n*t & syled
fyrre;
Tron fro table to table & talkede
ay myrþe,

41

THE MAN WITHOUT A WEDDING GARMENT.

On the floor he finds one not arrayed for a holyday.
Bot as he ferked ou*er* þe flor he
fande w*ith* his y3e,
Hit wat3 not for a haly day honestly
arayed,
A þral þry3t i*n* þe þrong
vnþryuandely cloþed,
Ne no festiual frok, bot fyled with
werkke3.
Þe gome wat3 vn-garnyst w*ith* god
me*n* to dele,
& gremed þ*er*-w*ith* þe grete lord &
greue hy*m* he þo3t;
Asks him how he obtained entrance, and how he was so bold as to appear in such rags.

"Say me, frende," q*uod* þe freke w*ith*
a felle chere,
"Hov wan þ*o*u into þis won i*n*
wede3 so fowle?
Þe abyt þat þ*o*u hat3 vpon, no haly
day hit menske3;
Þ*o*u burne for no brydale art busked
i*n* wede3!
How wat3 þ*o*u hardy þis ho*us* for þyn
vnhap [to] ne3e,
I*n* on so ratted a robe & rent at þe
syde3?
[Fol. 59*a*.]
Þow art a gome vn-goderly i*n* þat
gou*n* febele;
Þ*o*u praysed me & my place ful pou*er*
& ful [g]nede,
Does he take him to be a harlot?
Þat wat3 so prest to aproche my
p*re*sens here-i*n*ne;
Hope3 þ*o*u I be a harlot þi erigant
to prayse?"
The man becomes discomfited.
Þat oþ*er* burne wat3 abayst of his
broþe worde3,
& hurkele3 dou*n* with his hede, þe
vrþe he bi-holde3;
He wat3 so scou*m*fit of his scylle, lest
he skaþe hent,
He is unable to reply.
Þat he ne wyst on worde what he
warp schulde.
The lord commands him to be bound,
Þe*n* þe lorde wonder loude laled &
cryed,
& talke3 to his tormentto*ur*e3: "take3
hym," he bidde3,

"Bynde3 byhynde, at his bak, boþe
two his hande3,
& felle fett*er*e3 to his fete festene3
bylyue;
Stik hym stifly i*n* stoke3, & steke3
hy*m* þ*er*-aft*er*
and cast into a deep dungeon.
Depe i*n* my dou*n*gou*n* þ*er* doel eu*er*
dwelle3,
Greui*n*g, & grety*n*g, & gryspy*n*g
harde
Of teþe tenfully to-geder, to teche
hy*m* be quoy*n*t."
This feast is likened to the kingdom of heaven, to which all are invited.
Thus comparisu*n*e3 kryst þe kyndom
of heueñ,
To þis frelych feste þat fele arn to
called,
For alle arn laþed luflyly, þe luþ*er* &
þe bett*er*,
Þat eu*er* wern ful3ed i*n* font þat
fest to haue.
See that thy weeds are clean.
Bot war þe wel, if þ*o*u wylt, þy
wede3 ben clene,
& honest for þe haly day, lest þ*o*u
harme lache,
For aproch þ*o*u to þat prynce of
parage noble.
sowle] *fowle* (?).
He hat*es* helle no more þe*n* hem
þat ar sowle.
42
Wich arn þe*n*ne þy wede3 þ*o*u
wrappe3 þe i*n*ne,
Thy weeds are thy works that thou hast

wrought.
Þat schal schewe he*m* so schene
schrowde of þe best?
Hit arn þy werke3 wyt*er*ly, þ*a*t þ*o*u
wro3t haue3,
& lyued wi*th* þe lyky*n*g þ*a*t ly3e
in þy*n* hert,
Þat þo be frely & fresch fonde i*n* þy
lyue,
& fetyse of a fayr forme, to fote & to
honde,
& syþe*n* alle þy*n* o þ*er* lyme3 lapped
ful clene,
For many faults may a man forfeit bliss.
Þe*n*ne may þ*o*u se þy sauior & his
sete ryche.
For fele faute3 may a freke forfete
his blysse,
For sloth and pride he is thrust into the devil's throat.
Þat he þe sou*er*ayn ne se þen, for
slauþe one,
As for bobau*n*ce & bost & bolnande
p*r*iyde,
Þroly i*n*-to þe deuele3 þrote man
þry*n*ge3 bylyue,
[Fol. 59*b*.] He is ruined by covetousness, perjury, murder, theft, and strife.
For couetyse, & colwarde & croked
dede3,
For mon-sworne, & men-scla3t, & to
much drynk,
For þefte, & for þrepy*n*g, vn-þonk
may mon haue;
For robbery and ribaldry, for preventing marriages, and supporting the wicked,
For roborrye, & riboudrye &

resou*n*e3 vntrwe,
& dysheriete & depryue dowrie of wydoe3,
For marry*n*g of maryage3 & may*n*tnau*n*ce of schrewe3,
boþe] loþe (?). for treason, treachery, and tyranny, man may lose eternal bliss.
For traysou*n*, & trichcherye, & tyrau*n*tyré boþe,
188 & for fals famacions & fayned lawe3;
Man may mysse þe myrþe, þat much is to prayse,
For such vnþewe3 as þise & þole much payne,
& i*n* þe creatores cort com neu*er* more,
192 Ne neu*er* see hym with sy3t for such sour to*ur*ne3.

GOD IS DISPLEASED WITH THE WICKED.

III.

Bot I haue herkned & herde of mony hy3e clerke3,
& als i*n* resou*n*e3 of ry3t red hit my seluen,
The high Prince of all is displeased with those who work wickedly.
Þ*a*t þat ilk prop*er* prynce þat paradys welde3
196 Is displesed at vch a poy*n*t þat plyes to scaþe.
Bot neu*er* 3et i*n* no boke breued I herde
Þat eu*er* he wrek so wyþ*er*ly on werk

þat he made,
Ne venged for no vilté of vice ne sy*n*ne,
Ne so hastyfly wat3 hot for hatel of his wylle,
Ne neu*er* so sodenly so3t vn-sou*n*dely to weng,
As for fylþe of þe flesch þat foles han vsed;

43

For as I fynde þ*er* he for3et alle his fre þewes,
For the first fault the devil committed, he felt God's vengeance.
& wex wod to þe wrache, for wrath at his hert,
For þe fyrste felonye þe falce fende wro3t.
Whyl he wat3 hy3e i*n* þe heuen houen vpon lofte,
Of alle þyse aþel au*n*gele3 attled þe fayrest,
He, the fairest of all angels, forsook his sovereign,
& he vnkyndely as a karle kydde areward,
He se3 no3t bot hym self how semly he were,
Bot his sou*er*ayn he forsoke & sade þyse worde3:
and boasted that his throne should be as high as God's.
"I schal telde vp my trone i*n* þe tra mou*n*tayne
& by lyke to þat lorde þat þe lyft made.
With þis worde þat he warp, þe

wrake on hy*m* ly3t,
For these words he was cast down to hell.
Dry3tyn w*ith* his dere dom hym drof
to þe abyme,
I*n* þe mesure of his mode, his met3
neu*er* þe lasse,
Bot þer he tynt þe tyþe dool of
his to*ur* ryche,
[Fol. 60*a*.]
Þa3 þe felou*n* were so fers for his
fayre wede3
& his glorio*us* glem þat glent so
bry3t;
As sone as dry3tyne3 dome drof to
hy*m* seluen,
[Þi]kke þowsande3 þro þrwen
þer-oute

THE FALL OF THE ANGELS.

The fiends fell from heaven,
Fellen fro þe fyrmame*n*t, fende3 ful
blake
Weued] *wened* (?). like the thick snow, for forty days.
Weued at þe fyrst swap as þe snaw
þikke,
Hurled i*n*-to helle-hole as þe hyue
swarme3;
Fyltyr fenden folk forty daye3
lencþe,
Er þat styngande storme stynt ne
my3t;
Bot as smylt mele vnder smal siue
smokes for-þikke,
From heaven to hell the shower lasted.
So fro heuen to helle þat hatel schor

laste,
Þis] *ȝis* (?).
On vche syde of þe worlde
aywhere ilyche.
Þis hit watȝ a brem brest & a byge
wrache,
The devil would not make peace with God.
& ȝet wrathed not þe wyȝ, ne þe
wrech saȝtled,
Ne neu*er* wolde, for wylnesful, his
worþy god knawe,
Ne pray hym for no pité, so
proud watȝ his wylle,
lyttel] MS. *lyttlel*. Affliction makes him none the better.
For-þy þaȝ þe rape were rank, þe
rawþe watȝ lyttel;
Þaȝ he be kest into kare he kepes no
bett*er*.
For the fault of one, vengeance alighted upon all men.
Bot þat oþ*er* wrake þat wex on
wyȝeȝ, hit lyȝt
Þurȝ þe faut of a freke þat fayled
i*n* trawþe.
obedyent] *obedience* (?). Adam was ordained to live in bliss.
A*da*m i*n* obedyent ordaynt to blysse,
Þer pryuely i*n* paradys his place watȝ
de-vised,
To lyue þer i*n* lyky*n*g þe lenþe of a
terme,
& þe*n*ne en-herite þat home þat
au*n*geleȝ for-gart,
Through Eve he ate an apple.
Bot þurȝ þe eggy*n*g of eue he ete of

an apple
Þat en-poysened alle peple3 þat
parted fro hem boþe,
Thus all his descendants became poisoned.
For a defence þat wat3 dy3t of
dry3tyn seluen,
& a payne þer-on put & pertly
halden;
Þe defence wat3 þe fryt þat þe freke
towched,
& þe dom is þe deþe þat drepe3 v*us*
alle.
A maiden brought a remedy for mankind.
Al i*n* mesure & meþe wat3 mad þe
vengiau*n*ce,
& efte amended wi*th* a mayden
þat make hade neu*er*.

THE WICKEDNESS OF THE ANTEDILUVIAN WORLD.

IV.

Bot in þe þryd wat3 forþrast al þat
þryue schuld,
Malice was merciless.
Þer wat3 malys mercyles & mawgre
much scheued,
Þat wat3 for fylþe vpon folde þa*t* þe
folk vsed,
A race of men came into the world,
[Þ]at þen wonyed i*n* þe worlde
wi*th*-outen any mayste*r*3;
[Fol. 60*b*.] the fairest, the merriest, and the strongest that ever were created.
Hit wern þe fayrest of forme & of
face als,

Þe most & þe myriest þat maked
wern euer,
Þe styfest, þe stalworþest þat stod
eu*er* on fete;
& lengest lyf i*n* hem lent of lede3
alle oþ*er*,
For hit was þe forme-foster þat þe
folde bred,
They were sons of Adam.
Þe aþel au*n*cetere3 su*n*e3 þat ad*a*m
wat3 called,
To wham god hade geuen alle þat
gayn were,
Alle þe blysse boute blame þat
bodi my3t haue,
& þose lykkest to þe lede þat lyued
next aft*er*,
For-þy so semly to see syþe*n* wern
none.
No law was laid upon them.
Þer wat3 no law to hem layd bot loke
to kynde,
& kepe to hit, & alle hit cors
clanly ful-fylle;
Nevertheless they acted unnaturally.
& þe*n*ne fou*n*den þay fylþe i*n*
fleschlych dede3
& controeued agayn kynde contraré
werke3,
& vsed hem vn-þryftyly vchon on
oþ*er*,
& als with oþ*er*, wylsfully, vpon a
wrange wyse.
The "*fiends*" beheld how fair were the
daughters of these mighty men,
So ferly fowled her flesch þat þe
fende loked,

How þe de3t*er* of þe douþe wern
dere-lych fayre,
and made fellowship with them and begat a race of giants.
& fallen i*n* fela3schyp wit*h* hem on
folken wyse
& en-gendered on hem ieau*n*te3
wit*h* her Iape3 ille.
45
Þose wern men meþele3 & ma3ty on
vrþe,
Þat for her lodlych layke3 alosed þay
were.
famed] *fained* (?).
He wat3 famed for fre þat fe3t loued
best,
The greatest fighter was reckoned the most famous.
& ay þe bigest i*n* bale þe best
wat3 halden;
& þe*n*ne euele3 on erþe ernestly
grewen
& multyplyed mony-folde i*n*-monge3
mankynde,
The Creater of all becomes exceedingly wroth.
For þat þe ma3ty on molde so marre
þise oþ*er*.
Þat þe wy3e þat al wro3t ful
wroþly bygy*n*ne3.
When he knew vche contre corupte
i*n* hit seluen,
& vch freke forloyned fro þe ry3t
waye3,
Fell anger touches His heart.
Felle temptande tene towched his
hert;
As wy3e, wo hy*m* with-i*n*ne werp

to hy*m* seluen:
It repents Him that He has made man.
"Me for-þy*n*ke3 ful much þat eu*er* I
mon made,
Bot I schal delyu*er* & do away þat
doten on þis molde,

GOD DETERMINES TO DESTROY ALL FLESH.

He declares that all flesh shall be
destroyed, both man and beast.
& fleme out of þe folde al þat flesch
were3,
Fro þe burne to þe best, fro
brydde3 to fysche3;
[Fol. 61*a*.]
Al schal dou*n* & be ded & dryuen out
of erþe,
Þat eu*er* I sette saule i*n*ne; & sore hit
me rwe3
Þat eu*er* I made hem my self; bot if I
may her-aft*er*,
I schal wayte to be war her
wrenche3 to kepe."
There was at this time living on the
earth a very righteous man:
Þe*n*ne i*n* worlde wat3 a wy3e
wonyande on lyue,
Ful redy & ful ry3twys, & rewled
hy*m* fayre;
In þe drede of dry3tyn his daye3 he
vse3,
& ay glydande wyth his god his
g*ra*ce wat3 þe more.
Noah was his name.
Hy*m* wat3 þe nome Noe, as is
i*n*noghe knawen,
Three bold sons he had.

He had þre þryuen su*n*e3 & þay þre wyue3;
Sem soþly þat on, þat oþ*er* hy3t cam
& þe Iolef Iapheth wat3 gendered þe þryd.
God in great anger speaks to Noah.
Now god i*n* nwy to Noe co*n* speke,
Wylde wrakful worde3 i*n* his wylle greued:
"Þe ende of alle-kyne3 flesch þat on vrþe meue3,
Is fallen forþ wyth my face & forþ*er* hit I þenk,
W*ith* her vn-worþelych werk me wlate3 w*ith*-i*n*ne,
Þe gore þ*er*-of me hat3 greued & þe glette nwyed;
Declares that He will destroy all "that life has."
I schal strenkle my distresse & strye al to-geder,
Boþe lede3 & londe & alle þat lyf habbe3.

46

NOAH IS COMMANDED TO BUILD AN ARK.

Commands him to make "a mansion" with dwellings for wild and tame.
Bot make to þe a manciou*n* & þat is my wylle,
A cofer closed of tres, clanlych planed;
Wyrk wone3 þ*er*i*n*ne for wylde & for tame,
*wi*th-i*nne*] MS. w*ithin*me
& þe*n*ne cleme hit w*ith* clay comly w*ith*-i*n*ne

& alle þe endentur dryuen daube
wi*th*-outen.
To let the ark be three hundred cubits in length,
& þ*us* of lenþe & of large þat lome
þou make,
Þre hundred of cupyde3 þ*o*u holde to
þe lenþe,
and fifty in breadth, and thirty in height, and a window in it a cubit square.
Of fyfty fayre ou*er*-þwert forme
þe brede;
& loke euen þat þyn ark haue of
he3þe þretté,
& a wyndow wyd vpon, wro3t vpon
lofte,
In þe compas of a cubit kyndely
sware,
Also a good shutting door in the side,
A wel dutande dor, don on þe
syde;
together with halls, recesses, bushes, and bowers, and well-formed pens.
Haf halle3 þer-i*n*ne & halke3 ful
mony,
Boþe boske3 & bo*ur*e3 & wel
bou*n*den pene3;
For I schal waken vp a wat*er* to
wasch alle þe worlde,
& quelle alle þat is quik wi*th*
quauende flode3.
[Fol. 61*b*.] For all flesh shall be destroyed,
Alle þat glyde3 & got3, & gost of lyf
habbe3,
I schal wast with my wrath þat wons
vpon vrþe;

Bot my forwarde w*ith* þe I festen on
þis wyse,
except Noah and his family.
For þ*o*u in reysou*n* hat3 rengned
& ry3twys ben eu*er*;
Þ*o*u schal ent*er* þis ark w*ith* þyn aþel
barne3
& þy wedded wyf; with þe þ*o*u take
Þe make3 of þy myry su*n*e3; þis
meyny of a3te
I schal saue of mo*n*ne3 saule3, &
swelt þose oþ*er*.
Noah is told to take into the ark seven pairs of every clean beast, and one of unclean kind,
Of vche best þat bere3 lyf busk þe a
cupple,
Of vche clene comly kynde enclose
seuen make3,
Of vche horwed, i*n* ark halde bot a
payre,
For to saue me þe sede of alle ser
kynde3;
& ay þ*o*u meng w*ith* þe male3 þe
mete ho-beste3,
Vche payre by payre to plese ayþ*er*
oþ*er*;
and to furnish the ark with proper food.
W*ith* alle þe fode þat may be fou*n*de
frette þy cofer,
For sustnau*n*ce to yow self & also
þose oþ*er*."
Noah fills the ark.
Ful grayþely got3 þis god ma*n* & dos
gode3 hestes,
In dry3 dred & dau*n*ger, þat durst do
non oþer.

Wen hit wat3 fettled & forged & to
þe fulle grayþed,
Þe*n*n con dry3ttyn hym dele
dry3ly þyse worde3:
47

V.

God asks Noah whether all is ready.

"Now Noe," q*uod* oure lorde, "art
þou al redy?
Hat3 þ*o*u closed þy kyst w*ith* clay
alle aboute?"
Noah replies that all is fully prepared.
"3e lorde w*ith* þy leue," sayde þe
lede þe*n*ne,
"Al is wro3t at þi worde, as þ*o*u
me wyt lante3."
He is commanded to enter the ark,
"Enter in þe*n*n," q*uod* he, "& haf þi
wyf w*ith* þe,
Þy þre su*n*e3 w*ith*-outen þrep & her
þre wyue3;
Beste3, as I bedene haue, bosk þ*er*-
i*n*ne als,
& when 3e arn staued, styfly
steke3 yow þ*erin*ne;
for God tells him that he will send a rain to destroy all flesh.
Fro seuen daye3 ben seyed I sende
out by-lyue,
Such a rowtande ryge þat rayne
schal swyþe,
Þat schal wasch alle þe worlde of
werke3 of fylþe;

Schal no flesch vpon folde by
fonden onlyue;
Noah stows all safely in the ark.
Out-taken yow a3t i*n* þis ark staued,
& sed þat I wyl saue of þyse ser
beste3."
styste3] *stynte3* (?).
Now Noe neu*er* styste3 (þat niy3[t]
he bygy*n*ne3),
Er al wer stawed & stoken, as þe
steuen wolde.

THE RAIN DESCENDS.

[Fol. 62*a*.] Seven days are passed.
The*n*ne sone com þe seuenþe day,
when samned wern alle,
& alle woned i*n* þe whichche þe
wylde & þe tame.
The deep begins to swell, banks are broken down,
Þe*n* bolned þe abyme & bonke3 con
ryse,
Walt*es* out vch walle-heued, i*n* ful
wode streme3,
Wat3 no bry*m*me þat abod vnbrosten
bylyue,
Þe mukel lauande logh*e* to þe lyfte
rered.
and the clouds burst.
Mony clust*er*ed clowde clef alle i*n*
clowte3,
It rains for forty days, and the flood rises,
To-rent vch a rayn-ryfte &
rusched to þe vrþe;
Fon neu*er* i*n* forty daye3, & þe*n* þe
flod ryses,

and flows over the woods and fields.
Ou*er*-walte3 vche a wod & þe wyde felde3;
For when þe wat*er* of þe welkyn w*ith* þe worlde mette,
Alle þat deth mo3t dry3e drowned þer-i*n*ne;
Þer wat3 moon forto make when meschef was cnowen,
All must drown.
Þat no3t dowed bot þe deth in þe depe streme3.
Wat*er* wylger ay wax, wone3 þat stryede,
Hurled i*n*-to vch ho*us*, hent þat þer dowelled.
The water enters the houses.
Fyrst feng to þe fly3t alle þat fle my3t,
Vuche burde w*ith* her barne þe byggy*n*g þay leue3,
Each woman with her bairns flees to the hills.
& bowed to þe hy3 bonk þer brentest hit wern,
& het*er*ly to þe hy3e hylle3 þay [h]aled on faste;
The rain never ceases.
Bot al wat3 nedle3 her note, for neu*er* cowþe stynt
Þe ro3e raynande ryg [&] þe raykande wawe3,
The valleys are filled.
Er vch boþom wat3 brurd-ful to þe bonke3 egge3,
& vche a dale so depe þat de*m*med at þe brynke3.

Þe moste mou*n*tay*n*e3 on mor þe*n*ne
wat3 no more dry3e,
People flock to the mountains.
& þe*r*-on flokked þe folke, for ferde
of þe wrake,
Syþen þe wylde of þe wode on þe
wat*er* flette;
Some swim for their lives.
Su*m*me swy*m*med þe*r*-on þat saue
hemself trawed,
Su*m*me sty3e to a stud & stared to þe
heuen,
Others roar for fear.
Rwly wyth a loud rurd rored for
drede.
Animals of all kinds run to the hills.
Hare3, hertte3 also, to þe hy3e
ru*n*nen,
Bukke3, bausene3 & bule3 to þe
bonkke3 hy3ed,
All pray for mercy.
& alle cryed for care to þe ky*n*g of
heuen,
Re-cou*er*er of þe creator, þay cryed
vchone,
God's mercy is passed from them.
Þat amou*n*ted þe masse, þe mase his
mercy wat3 passed,
& alle his pyte departed fro peple
þat he hated.
[Fol. 62*b*.]
Bi þat þe flod to her fete flo3ed &
waxed,
Each sees that he must sink.
Þen vche a segge se3 wel þat synk
hy*m* byhoued;
Frende3 fellen i*n* fere & faþmed

togeder
To dry3 her delful deystyné & dy3en alle samen;
Friends take leave of one another.
Luf loke3 to luf & his leue take3,
For to ende alle at one3 & for eu*er* twy*n*ne.
Forty days have gone by, and all are destroyed.
By forty daye3 wern faren, on folde no flesch styryed,
wa3e3] *wawe3* (?).
Þat þe flod nade al freten w*ith* fe3tande wa3e3,
For hit clam vche a clyffe cubit*es* fyftene,
Ou*er* þe hy3est hylle þat hurkled on erþe.

ALL ROT IN THE MUD.

All rot in the mud,
Þe*n*ne mo*ur*kne i*n* þe mudde most ful nede
*i*n-*spranc*] *in-sprang* (?).
Alle þat spyrakle i*n*-spranc, no sprawly*n*g awayled,
except Noah and his family,
Saue þe haþel vnder hach & his here straun*g*e,
Noe þat ofte neuened þe name of oure lorde,
who are safe in the ark.
Hy*m* a3t-su*m* i*n* þat ark as aþel god lyked,
Þer alle lede3 i*n* lome lenged druye,
The ark is lifted as high as the clouds,

Þe arc houen wat3 on hy3e wi*th*
hurlande gote3,
Kest to kythe3 vncouþe þe clowde3
ful nere.
49 and is driven about,
Hit walt*er*ed on þe wylde flod, went
as hit lyste,
416 Drof vpon þe depe dam, i*n*
dau*nger* hit semed,
without mast, bowline, cables, anchors,
or sail to guide its course.
With-oute*n* mast, oþ*er* myke, oþ*er*
myry bawelyne,
Kable, oþ*er* capstan to clyppe to her
ankre3,
Hurrok, oþ*er* hande-helme hasped on
roþ*er*,
420 Oþ*er* any sweande sayl to seche
aft*er* hauen,
At the mercy of the winds.
Bot flote forthe wi*th* þe flyt of þe
felle wynde3;
Wheder-warde so þe wat*er* wafte, hit
rebou*n*de.
Oft it rolled around and reared on end.
Ofte hit roled on-rou*n*de & rered on
ende,
424 Nyf oure lorde hade ben her
lode3-mon he*m* had lu*m*pen
harde.
The age of the patriarch Noah.
Of þe lenþe of noe lyf to lay a lel
date,
Þe sex hundreth of his age & none
odde 3ere3,
Of seco*n*de monyth, þe seue*n*þe day
ry3te3,

Duration of the flood.
To-walten alle þyse welle-hede3
& þe wat*er* flowed,
& þrye3 fyfty þe flod of folwande
daye3,
yre3] *yþe3* (?).
Vche hille wat3 þer hidde w*ith* yre3
ful graye;
The completeness of the destruction.
Al wat3 wasted þat þer wonyed þe
worlde w*ith*-i*n*ne,
Þer eu*er* flote, oþ*er* flwe, oþ*er* on
fote 3ede,
[Fol. 63*a*.]
That ro3ly wat3 þe remnau*n*t þat þe
rac dryue3,
Þat alle gendre3 so ioyst wern ioyned
wyth-i*n*ne.
God remembers those in the ark.
Bot quen þe lorde of þe lyfte lyked
hymseluen
For to my*n*ne on his mon his
meth þat abyde3,
He causes a wind to blow,
Þe*n* he wakened a wynde on
watt*er*e3 to blowe;
llak] So in MS. and closes the lakes and wells, and the great deep.
Þe*n*ne lasned þe llak þat large wat3
are,
Þen he stac vp þe stange3, stoped þo
welle3,
Bed bly*n*ne of þe rayn, hit batede
as fast,
Þe*n*ne lasned þe lo3 lowkande to-
geder.
Aft*er* harde daye3 wern out an
hundreth & fyfté,

As þat lyftande lome luged aboute,
Where þe wynde & þe weder warpen hit wolde,

THE ARK RESTS ON MOUNT ARARAT.

The ark settles on Mount Ararat.
Hit sa3tled on a softe day synkande to grou*n*de.
On a rasse of a rok, hit rest at þe laste,
On þe mou*n*te of mararach of armene hilles,
Þat oþ*er*-waye3 on ebrv hit hat þe thanes.
Bot þa3 þe kyste in þe crage3 wern closed to byde,
3et fyned not þe flod ne fel to þe boþeme3,
Noah beholds the bare earth.
Bot þe hy3est of þe egge3 vnhuled wern a lyttel,
Þat þe burne by*n*ne borde byhelde þe bare erþe;
He opens his window and sends out the raven to seek dry land.
Þe*n*ne wafte he vpon his wyndowe, & wysed þ*er*-oute
A message fro þat meyny hem molde3 to seche,
Þat wat3 þe rauen so ronk þat rebel wat3 eu*er*;
He wat3 colored as þe cole, corbyal vn-trwe.
& he fonge3 to þe fly3t, & fa*n*ne3 on þe wynde3,
Houe3 hy3e upon hy3t to herken

tyþy*n*ges.
The raven "croaks for comfort" on finding carrion.
He crouke3 for comfort when
carayne he fynde3;
Kast vp on a clyffe þer costese lay
drye,
He hade þe smelle of þe smach &
smolt*es* þeder sone,
He fills his belly with the foul flesh.
Falle3 on þe foule flesch & fylle3 his
wombe,
& sone 3ederly for-3ete 3ister-day
steuen,
How þe cheuetayn hy*m* charged
þ*a*t þe kyst 3emed.
Þe rauen rayke3 hy*m* forth þat reches
ful lyttel
How alle fode3 þer fare, elle3 he
fynde mete;

NOAH SENDS FORTH A DOVE.

borde] MS. *lorde*. The lord of the ark curses the raven,
Bot þe burne by*n*ne borde þat bod to
hys come,
Ba*n*ned hy*m* ful bytt*er*ly wi*th*
best*es* alle samen,
[Fol. 63*b*.] *doun*e] *douue* or *douene* (?). and sends out the dove.
He seche3 an oþ*er* sonde3mon &
sette3 on þe dou*n*e;
Bry*n*ge3 þat bry3t vpon borde
blessed & sayde,
"Wende worþelych wy3t v*us* wone3
to seche,
Dryf ou*er* þis dy*m*me wat*er*; if þou

druye fynde3
Bry*n*g bodworde to bot blysse to v*us*
alle;
Þa3 þat fowle be false, fre be þ*o*u
euer."
The bird wanders about the whole day.
Ho wyrl*e* out on þe weder o*n* wy*n*ge3
ful scharpe,
Dre3ly alle a longe day þ*a*t dorst
neu*er* ly3t;
Finding no rest, she returns about eventide to Noah.
& when ho fynde3 no folde her fote
on to pyche,
Ho vmbe-keste3 þe coste & þe kyst
seche3,
Ho hitte3 on þe euentyde & on þe
ark sitte3;
Noe ny*m*mes hir anon & naytly
hir staue3.
Noah again sends out the dove.
Noe on anoþ*er* day ny*m*me3 efte þe
dovene,
& bydde3 hir bowe ou*er* þe borne
efte bonke3 to seche;
& ho skyrme3 vnder skwe & skowte3
aboute,
Tyl hit wat3 ny3e at þe na3t &
noe þe*n* seche3.

51

VI.

The dove returns with an olive branch in her beak.
On ark on an euentyde houe3 þe

downe,
On stamyn ho stod & stylle hy*m*
abyde3;
What! ho bro3t i*n* hir beke a bronch
of olyue,
G*r*acyo*us*ly vmbe-grouen al wi*th*
grene leue3;
This was a token of peace and reconciliation.
Þat wat3 þe sy*n*gne of sauyté þa*t*
sende he*m* oure lorde,
& þe sa3tly*n*g of hy*m*-self wi*th* þo
sely beste3.
Joy reigns in the ark.
Þe*n* wat3 þer ioy i*n* pat gyn where
Iu*m*pred er dry3ed,
& much comfort i*n* þat cofer þat
wat3 clay-daubed.
The people therein laugh and look thereout.
Myryly on a fayr morn, monyth þe
fyrst,
Þat falle3 formast i*n* þe 3er, & þe
fyrst day,
Lede3 lo3en i*n* þat lome & loked þe*r*-
oute,
How þat watte*r*e3 wern woned &
þe worlde dryed.
Vchon loued oure lorde, bot lenged
ay stylle,
Tyl þay had tyþy*n*g fro þe tolke þat
tyned he*m* þe*r*-i*n*ne;

NOAH LEAVES THE ARK.

God permits Noah and his sons to leave the ark.
Þe*n* gode3 glam to hem glod þat

gladed hem alle,
Bede hem drawe to þe dor,
delyu*er* hem he wolde;
Þe*n* went þay to þe wykket, hit walt
vpon sone,
Boþe þe burne & his barne3 bowed
þ*er*-oute;
Her wyue3 walke3 hem wyth & þe
wylde aft*er*,
Þroly þrublande i*n* þronge,
þrowen ful þykke;
[Fol. 64*a*.] Noah offers sacrifice to God.
Bot Noe of vche honest kynde nem
out an odde
& heuened vp an auter & hal3ed hit
fayre,
& sette a sakerfyse þ*er*-on of vch a
ser kynde,
Þat wat3 comly & clene, god
kepe3 non oþ*er*.
When bremly brened þose beste3, &
þe breþe rysed,
It is pleasing to Him that "all speeds or spoils."
Þe sauo*ur* of his sacrafyse so3t to
hym euen
Þat al spede3 & spylle3; he spek*es*
wi*th* þat ilke
I*n* comly comfort ful clos &
cortays worde3:
God declares that He will never destroy the world for the sin of man.
"Now noe no more nel I neu*er* wary,
Alle þe mukel mayny [on] molde for
no ma*n*ne3 sy*n*ne3,
For I se wel þat hit is sothe, þat alle
ma*n*ne3 wytte3

To vn-þryfte arn alle þrawen w*ith*
þo3t of her hertte3,
& ay hat3 ben & wyl be 3et fro her
barnage;
Al is þe mynde of þe man to malyce
enclyned,
52
For-þy schal I neu*er* schende so
schortly at ones,
As dysstrye al for mane3 sy*n*ne
[in] daye3 of þis erþe.
Bot waxe3 now & wende3 forth &
worþe3 to monye,
Multyplye3 on þis molde & menske
yow by-tyde.
That summer and winter shall never cease.
Sesou*n*e3 schal yow neu*er* sese of
sede ne of heruest,
Ne hete, ne no harde forst, vmbre
ne dro3þe,
Ne þe swetnesse of somer, ne þe
sadde wynt*er*,
Nor night nor day, nor the new years.
Ne þe ny3t, ne þe day, ne þe newe
3ere3,
Bot eu*er* re*n*ne restle3 rengne3 3e
þ*er*-i*n*ne."
God blesses every beast.
Þ*er*wyth he blesse3 vch a best, &
byta3t hem þis erþe.
Þe*n* wat3 a skylly skyualde, quen
scaped alle þe wylde;

THE BEASTS ARE DISPERSED.

Each fowl takes its flight. Each fish goes to the flood.

Vche fowle to þe fly3t þat fyþere3
my3t serue,
Vche fysch to þe flod þat fy*n*ne
couþe nayte,
þat] MS. *þat þat*. Each beast makes for the plain. Wild worms wriggle to their abodes in the earth.
Vche beste to þe bent þat byt*es*
on erþe3;
Wylde worme3 to her won wryþe3 i*n*
þe erþe,
The fox goes to the woods. Harts to the heath, and hares to the gorse.
Þe fox & þe folmarde to þe fryth
wynde3,
Hertt*es* to hy3e heþe, hare3 to
gorste3,
Lions and leopards go to the lakes. Eagles and hawks to the high rocks.
& lyou*n*e3 & lebarde3 to þe lake
ryft*es*,
Herne3 & haueke3 to þe hy3e roche3;
Þe hole-foted fowle to þe flod hy3e3,
& vche best at a brayde þer hy*m* best
lyke3;
The four 'frekes' take the empire.
Þe fowre freke3 of þe folde
fonge3 þe empyre.

GOD'S HATRED OF WICKEDNESS.

[Fol. 64*b*.] Behold what woe God brought on mankind for their hateful deeds!
Lo! suche a wrakful wo for wlatsu*m*
dede3
Parformed þe hy3e fader on folke þat
he made;

Þat he chysly hade cherisched he
chastysed ful hardee,
I*n* de-voydy*n*ge þe vylanye þ*a*t
venkquyst his þewe3.
For-þy war þe now, wy3e, þat
worschyp desyres,
I*n* his comlych co*ur*te þat ky*n*g is of
blysse,
Beware of the filth of the flesh.
I*n* þe fylþe of þe flesch þat þou be
fou*n*den neu*er*,
Tyl any wat*er* i*n* þe worlde to
wasche þe fayly,
For is no segge vnder su*n*ne so seme
of his crafte3,
If he be sulped i*n* sy*n*ne, þat [ne]
sytte3 vnclene.
"One speck of a spot" will ruin us in the sight of God.
On spec of a spote may spede to
mysse
Of þe sy3te of þe sou*er*ayn þat
sytte3 so hy3e,
For þat schewe me schale i*n* þo
schyre howse3,
The beryl is clean and sound,—it has no seam.
As þe beryl bornyst byhoue3 be
clene,
53
Þat is sou*n*de on vche a syde & no
sem habes,
W*ith*-outen maskle oþ*er* mote as
margerye p*er*le.

VII.

When God repented that he had made man, he destroyed all flesh.

Syþe*n* þe soue*r*ayn i*n* sete so sore for-
þo3t
Þat eue*r* he man vpon molde merked
to lyuy,
For he i*n* fylþe wat3 fallen, felly he
uenged,
*fo*ur*ferde*] *for-ferde* (?).
Quen fo*ur*ferde alle þe flesch þat
he formed hade,
But afterwards He was sorry,
Hy*m* rwed þat he hem vp-rerde &
ra3t hem lyflode,
& efte þat he he*m* vndyd, hard hit
hym þo3t;
For quen þe swemande sor3e so3t to
his hert,
and made a covenant with mankind
He knyt a couenau*n*de cortaysly
wit*h* monkynde þe*r*e,
In þe mesure of his mode & meþe of
his wylle,
that He would not again destroy all the living.
Þat he schulde neue*r* for no syt smyte
al at one3,
As to quelle alle quyke3 for qued þat
my3t falle,
Whyl of þe lenþe of þe londe
laste3 þe te*r*me.
Þat ilke skyl for no scaþe ascaped
hy*m* neue*r*,
Wheder wonderly he wrak on
wykked men afte*r*;
For the filth of the flesh God destroyed a rich city.

Ful felly for þat ilk faute forferde a
kyth ryche,
I*n* þe anger of his ire þat ar3ed
mony;
& al wat3 for þis ilk euel, þat vn-
happen glette,
Þe venym & þe vylanye & þe vycios
fylþe,
Þat by-sulpe3 ma*n*ne3 saule i*n*
vnsou*n*de hert,
Þat he his saueour ne see wi*th*
sy3t of his y3en,
God hates the wicked as "hell that stinks." [Fol. 65. *a*.]
Þat alle ille3 he hates as helle þat
stynkke3;
Bot non nuye3 hy*m*, on na3t ne neu*er*
vpon daye3,
Especially harlotry and blasphemy.
As harlottrye vn-honest, heþy*n*g of
seluen;
Þat schame3 for no
schrewedschyp schent mot
he worþe!
Bot sauyo*ur* mon i*n* þy self, þa3 þo*u*
a sotte lyuie,
Þa3 þo*u* bere þy self babel, by-þenk
þe su*m*-tyme,
Wheþer he þat stykked vche a stare
i*n* vche steppe y3e,
self] MS. *sele.*
3if hy*m* self be bore blynd*e* hit is
a brod wonder;
& he þat fetly i*n* face fettled alle eres
he] MS. *he he.*
If he hat3 losed þe lysten hit lyfte3
meruayle;

Nothing is hidden from God.
Trave þou neu*er* þat tale, vn-trwe
þou hit fynde3,
Þer is no dede so derne þat ditte3
his y3en;
54
Þer is no wy3e i*n* his werk so war ne
so stylle
þre] *þer* (?).
Þat hit ne þrawe3 to hym þre er he
hit þo3t haue;
God is the ground of all deeds.
For he is þe gropande god, þe
grou*n*de of alle dede3,
ring] *rink* or *renk* (?).
Rypande of vche a ri*n*g þe
reynye3 & hert;
He honours the man that is honest and whole.
& þere he fynde3 al fayre a freke
wyth-i*n*ne
Þat hert honest & hol, þat haþel he
hono*ur*e3,
Sende3 hy*m* a sad sy3t to se his auen
face,
& harde honyse3 þise oþ*er* & of
his erde fleme3.
But for deeds of shame He destroys the mighty ones.
Bot of þe dome of þe douþe for
dede3 of schame
He is so skoymos of þat skaþe, he
scarre3 bylyue,
He may not dry3e to draw allyt, bot
drepe3 i*n* hast
& þat wat3 schewed schortly by a
scaþe one3.

ABRAHAM RECEIVES THREE GUESTS, AND ENTERTAINS THEM.

VIII.

Abraham is sitting before his house-door under a green oak.

Olde Abraham i*n* erde one3 he sytte3
Euen byfore his ho*us*-dore vnder an oke grene;
Bry3t blykked þe bem of þe brode heuen,
I*n* þe hy3e hete þ*er*-of Abraham bide3,
He wat3 schu*n*t to þe schadow vnder schyre leue3;
He sees three men coming along,
Þe*n*ne wat3 he war on þe waye of wlonk wy3e3 þry*n*ne.
If þay wer farande & fre & fayre to beholde,
Hit is eþe to leue by þe last ende;
For þe lede þat þer laye þe leue3 an-vnder,
and goes toward them.
When he hade of hem sy3t he hy3e3 bylyue,
& as to god þe good mon gos hem agayne3
& haylsed hem i*n* onhede & sayde, "hende lorde
[Fol. 65*b*.]
3if eu*er* þy mon vpon molde merit disserued,
He entreats them to rest awhile,
Lenge a lyttel with þy lede I lo3ly bi-seche;

Passe neu*er* fro þi pou*er*e, 3if I hit pray durst,
Er þou haf biden with þi burne & vnder bo3e restted;
& I schal wy*n*ne yow wy3t of wat*er* a lyttel,
that he may wash their feet,
& fast aboute schal I fare yo*ur* fette wer waschene;
Restte3 here on þis rote & I schal rachche aft*er*
and bring them a morsel of bread.
& bry*n*ge a morsel of bred to banne yo*ur* hertte."
"Fare forthe," q*uod* þe freke3, "& fech as þou segge3;
By bole of þis brode tre we byde þe here."
Abraham commands Sarah to make some cakes quickly,
Þe*n*ne orppedly i*n*-to his ho*us* he hy3ed to Saré
Comau*n*ded hir to be cof & quyk at þis one3;
"Þre mette3 of mele menge & ma kake3,
Vnder aske3 ful hote happe hem byliue;
Quyl I fete su*m*quat fat þou þe fyr bete,
Prestly at þis ilke poynte su*m* polment to make."
*cobho*us] *cov-hous* = cow-house (?). and tells his servant to seethe a tender kid.
He cached to his cobho*us* & a calf bry*n*ge3
Þat wat3 tender & not to3e; bed

tyrne of þe hyde,
& sayde to his seruaun*t* þa*t* he hit seþe faste
& he deruely at his dome dy3t hit bylyue.

Abraham appears bare-headed before his guests.

Þe burne to be bare-heued buske3 hy*m* þe*n*ne,

He casts a clean cloth on the green,

Cleche3 to a clene cloþe & keste3 on þe grene,
Þrwe þryftyly þe*r*-on þo þre þerue kake3,

and sets before them cakes, butter, milk, and pottage.

& bry*n*ge3 butt*er* wyth-al, & by þe bred sette3
Mete; messe3 of mylke he merkke3 bytwene,
Syþe*n* potage & polment i*n* plater honest;
As sewer i*n* a god assyse he serued hem fayre,
Wyth sadde semblau*n*t & swete of such as he hade,

GOD DISCLOSES HIS PURPOSE TO ABRAHAM.

God praises his friend's feast,

& god as a glad gest mad god chere,
Þat wat3 fayn of his frende & his fest praysed.
Abraham, al hodle3 wi*th* arme3 vp-folden,
Mynystred mete byfore þo men þat my3tes al welde3;
Þe*n*ne þay sayden, as þay sete same*n*

alle þry*n*ne,
and after the meat is removed,
When þe mete wat3 remued & þay of
mensk speken,
"I schal efte here away abram," þay
sayden,
648 "3et er þy lyue3 ly3t leþe vpon
erþe,
[Fol. 66*a*.] He tells Abraham that Sarah shall bear him a son.
& þe*n*ne schal saré consayue & a su*n*
bere,
Þat schal be abrahame3 ayre, & afte*r*
hy*m* wy*n*ne
W*ith* wele & wyth worschyp þe
worþely peple
652 Þat schal halde i*n* heritage, þat I
haf men 3ark."
Sarah, who is behind the door, laughs in unbelief.
Þe*n*ne þe burde byhynde þe dor for
busmar la3ed;
sothly] ? *softly* or *sotly* = foolishly
& sayde sothly to hir-self saré þe
madde:
"May þ*o*u traw for tykle þat þ*o*u
to*n*ne mo3te3,
656 & I so hy3e out of age & also my
lorde,"
For soþely, as says þe wryt, he wern
of sadde elde,
Boþe þe wy3e & his wyf, such werk
wat3 hem fayled,
56 *byene*] ? *bycame*.
Fro mony a brod day by-fore ho
barayn ay byene,
660 Þat selue saré w*ith*-outen sede i*n*-

to þat same tyme.
God tells Abraham that Sarah laughs at His words.
Þe*n*ne sayde oure syre þer he sete
"se! so saré la3es,
Not trawande þe tale þat I þe to schewed;
Hope3 ho o3t may be harde my honde3 to work?
& 3et I a-vow v*er*ayly þe avau*n*t þat I made,
I schal 3eply a3ayn & 3elde þat I hy3t,
& sothely sende to saré a soñ & an hayre."
Sarah denies that she laughed.
Þe*n*ne swenged forth saré & swer by hir trawþe,
lansed] *laused* (?).
Þat for lot þat þay lansed ho la3ed neu*er*.
"Now i*n*nogh*e* hit is not so" þe*n*ne n*ur*ned þe dry3tyn,
"For þ*o*u la3ed alo3, bot let we hit one."
Abraham's guests set out towards Sodom,
With þat þay ros vp radly as þay rayke schulde,
& setten toward sodamas her sy3t alle at-one3;
For þat Cite þ*er* bysyde wat3 sette i*n* a vale,
two miles from Mamre.
No myle3 fro mambre mo þe*n* tweyne,
Where-so wonyed þis ilke wy3 þat

wende3 w*ith* oure lorde,
For to tent hy*m* w*ith* tale & teche hy*m* þe gate,
The patriarch accompanies them.
Þen glyde3 forth god, þe godmo*n* hy*m* fol3e3.
Abraham helde3 hem wyth, he*m* to co*n*ueye,
I*n* towarde þe Cety of sodamas þat sy*n*ned had þe*n*ne
I*n* þe faute of þis fylþe; þe fader hem þretes,
& sayde þ*us* to þe segg þat sued hy*m* aft*er*:
God determines to reveal to Abraham his secret purposes.
"How my3t I hyde myn hert fro habraham þe trwe,
Þat I ne dyscou*er*ed to his corse my cou*n*sayl so dere.
Syþen he is chosen to be chef chyldryn fader,
[Fol. 66*b*.]
Þat so folk schal falle fro, to flete alle þe worlde,
& vche blod i*n* þat burne blessed schal worþe.
Me bos telle to þat tolk þe tene of my wylle
& alle myn atly*n*g to abraham vn-haspe bilyue.

THE FILTHINESS OF SODOM AND GOMORRAH.

IX.

He informs him of the destruction about to fall upon the cities of the plain,

"The grete sou*n* of sodamas synkke3
i*n* my*n* ere3,
& þe gult of gomorre gare3 me to
wrath;
I schal ly3t i*n*-to þat led & loke my
seluen,
If] MS. i*n*f.
If þay haf don as þe dyne dryue3
on-lofte,
for their great wickedness,
Þay han lerned a lyst þat lyke3 me
ille,
Þat þay han fou*n*den i*n* her flesch of
faute3 þe werst,
in abusing the gifts bestowed upon them.
Vch male mat3 his mach a man as
hy*m* seluen,
& fylt*er* folyly i*n* fere, on
fe*m*male3 wyse.
I compast hem a kynde crafte &
kende hit hem derne,
The ordinance of marriage had been made for them,
& amed hit i*n* my*n* ordenau*n*ce
oddely dere,
& dy3t drwry þer-i*n*ne, doole alþ*er*-
swettest,
& þe play of paramore3 I
portrayed my seluen;
& made þer-to a man*er* myriest of
oþ*er*,
When two true togeder had ty3ed
hem seluen,
conne] *come* (?).
By-twene a male & his make such
m*er*þe schulde conne;

Wel ny3e pure paradys mo3t
preue no bett*er*,
Elle3 þay mo3t honestly ayþ*er* oþ*er*
welde.
but they foully set it at nought.
At a stylle stollen steuen, vnstered
wyth sy3t,
The flame of love.
Luf lowe hem bytwene lasched so
hote,
Þat alle þe meschefe3 on mold
mo3t hit not sleke;
Now haf þay skyfted my skyl &
scorned natwre,
Therefore shall they be destroyed as an example to all men for ever.
& hentte3 hem i*n* heþy*n*g an vsage
vn-clene;
Hem to smyte for þat smod smartly I
þenk
Þat wy3e3 schal be by hem war,
worlde wit*h*-outen ende."

ABRAHAM PLEADS FOR THE CITIES.

Abraham is full of fear,
Þe*n*ne ar3ed abraham & alle his mod
chau*n*ge[d],
For hope of þe harde hate þat hy3t
hat3 oure lorde;
and asks God whether the "sinful and the sinless" are to suffer together.
Al sykande he sayde "s*ir* wit*h* yor
leue,
Schal synful & sakle3 suffer al on
payne;
Weþ*er* eu*er* hit lyke my lorde to lyfte
such dome3,

Þat þe wykked & þe worþy schal on
wrake suffer,
& weye vpon þe worre half þat
wrathed þe neu*er*?
Þat wat3 neu*er* þy won þat
wro3te3 v*us* alle.
[Fol. 67*a*.] Whether he will spare the cities provided fifty righteous are found in them?
Now fyfty fyn frende3 wer fou*n*de i*n*
3onde toune
In þe Cety of Sodamas & also
gomorré
Þat neu*er* lakked þy laue, bot loued
ay trauþe,
& re3t-ful wern & resou*n*able &
redy þe to serue,
Schal þay falle i*n* þe faute þat oþ*er*
freke3 wro3t
& ioyne to her iuggement her iuise to
haue?
Þat nas neu*er* þyn note, vnneuened
hit worþe,
Þat art so gaynly a god & of goste
mylde!”
58 &] *An* (?). For the sake of fifty the cities shall be spared.
“Nay for fyfty,” q*uod* þe fader, “& þy
fayre speche,
& þay be fou*n*den i*n* þat folk of her
fylþe clene,
I schal for-gyue alle þe gylt þur3 my
g*ra*ce one,
& let hem smolt al unsmyten
smoþely atone3.”
The patriarch beseeches God to spare the city for the sake of forty-five

righteous.
"AA! blessed be þow," q*uod* þe burne, "so boner & þewed,
& al halde3 i*n* þy honde, þe heuen & þe erþe,
Bot for I haf þis talke tat3 to non ille,
3if I mele a lyttel more þat mul am & aske3;
What if fyue faylen of fyfty þe nou*m*bre,
& þe remnau*n*t be reken, how restes þy wylle?"
For the lack of five the cities shall not be destroyed.
"And fyue wont of fyfty," q*uod* god, "I schal for3ete alle
& wyth-halde my honde for horty*n*g on lede."
"& quat if faurty be fre & fauty þyse oþ*er*
Schalt þow schortly al schende & schape non oþ*er*."
For forty the cities shall be spared.
"Nay þa3 faurty forfete 3et fryst I a whyle,
& voyde away my vengau*n*ce, þa3 me vyl þynk."
Þe*n* abraham obeched hym & lo3ly hi*m* þonkke3,
"Now sayned be þou sauio*ur*, so symple i*n* þy wrath!
I am bot erþe ful euel & vsle so blake,
Abraham entreats God's forbearance for his speech.
Forto mele wyth such a mayst*er* as my3te3 hat3 alle,

Bot I haue by-go*n*nen wyth my god,
& he hit gay*n* þynke3,
3if I for-loyne as a fol þy frau*n*chyse
may serue;
What if þretty þryuande be þrad i*n*
3on tou*n*e3,
What schal I leue if my lorde, if
he hem leþe wolde?"
Þe*n*ne þe godlych god gef hy*m*
onsware,
Thirty righteous, found in the cities,
shall save them from destruction.
"3et for þretty i*n* þrong I schal my
þro steke,
& spare spakly of spyt i*n* space of my
þewe3,
& my rankor refrayne fo*ur* þy
reken worde3."
[Fol. 67*b*.]
"What for twenty," q*uod* þe tolke,
"vntwyne3 þ*o*u hem
þe*n*ne?"
"Nay, 3if þ*o*u 3erne3 hit, 3et 3ark I
hem g*ra*ce;
For the sake of twenty guiltless ones
God will release the rest.
If þat twenty be trwe I tene hem no
more,
Bot relece alle þat regiou*n* of her
ronk werkke3."
"Now aþel lorde," q*uod* Abraham,
"one3 a speche
& I schal schape no more þo
schalkke3 to helpe;
59
If ten trysty i*n* toune be tan i*n* þi
werkke3

Or if ten only should be found pure.
Wylt þou mese þy mode & menddyng abyde?"
"I graunt," quod þe grete god, "graunt mercy," þat oþer.
& þenne arest þe renk & raȝt no fyrre;
& godde glydeȝ his gate by þose grene wayeȝ
& he conueyen hym con with cast of his yȝe,

MESSENGERS ARE SENT TO LOT.

The patriarch intercedes for Lot.
& als he loked along þere as oure lorde passed,
Ȝet he cryed hym after with careful steuen:
"Meke maystер on þy mon to mynne if þe lyked,
Loth lengeȝ in ȝon leede þat is my lef broþer,
He sytteȝ þer in sodomis, þy seruaunt so pouere
Among þo mansed men þat han þe much greued;
Beseeches Him to "temper His ire,"
Ȝif þou tyneȝ þat toun, tempre þyn yre
As þy mersy may malte þy meke to spare."
and then departs weeping for sorrow.
Þen he wendeȝ, wendeȝ his way wepande for care
so[*rȝe*]] *sorewe* is written by a late hand over the original word.
To-warde þe mere of mambre

wepande for so[r3e,]
& þere i*n* longy*n*g al ny3t he lenge3
i*n* wones,
Whyl þe soue*r*ayn to sodamas
sende to spye.

X.

God's messengers go to Sodom.

His sondes i*n*-to sodamas wat3 sende
i*n* þat tyme,
I*n* þat ilk euentyde, by au*n*gels
tweyne,
Meuand meuande] So in MS.
Meuand meuande mekely togeder as
myry me*n* 3onge,
Lot is sitting alone at the "door of his lodge."
As loot i*n* a loge dor lened hy*m*
alone,
I*n* a porche of þat place py3t to þe
3at*es*,
Þat wat3 ryal & ryche, so wat3 þe
renk*es* seluen.
Staring into the street he sees two men.
As he stared i*n*-to þe strete þ*er* stout
men played
He sy3e þer swey i*n* asent swete
men tweyne;
Beardless chins they had,
Bolde burne3 wer þay boþe wi*th*
berdles chy*n*ne3,
and hair like raw silk.
Royl rollande fax to raw sylk lyke,
Of ble as þe brere flo*ur* where-so þe
bare scheweed,

792 Ful clene wat3 þe cou*n*tenau*n*ce
of her cler y3en;
[Fol. 68*a*.] Beautifully white were their weeds.
Wlonk whit wat3 her wede & wel hit
hem semed.
Of alle feture3 ful fyn & fautle3 boþe;
Wat3 non autly i*n* ouþ*er*, for aungels
hit wern,
60
796 & þat þe 3ep vnder-3ede þat i*n* þe
3ate sytte3.

LOT ENTERTAINS THE MESSENGERS.

Lot runs to meet them.
He ros vp ful radly & ran hem to
mete
& lo3e he loute3 hem to, loth, to þe
grou*n*de,
& syþen soberly [sat3] "syre3 I yow
by-seche,
Invites them to remain awhile in his house,
800 Þat 3e wolde ly3t at my loge &
lenge þ*er*-i*n*ne,
Come3 to yo*ur* knaues kote I craue at
þis one3;
I schal fette yow a fatte yo*ur* fette
forto wasche;
I norne yow bot for on ny3t ne3e me
to lenge,
and in the morning they may take their way.
804 & i*n* þe myry morny*n*g 3e may
yo*ur* waye take."
& þay nay þat þay nolde ne3 no
howse3,

Bot stylly þer i*n* þe strete as þay
stadde wern,
Þay wolde lenge þe long na3t &
logge þ*er*-oute;
Hit wat3 ho*us* inno3e to hem þe
heuen vpon lofte.
Lot invites them so long that at last they comply.
Loth laþed so longe wyth luflych
worde3,
Þat þay hy*m* grau*n*ted to go & gru3t
no leng*er*.
Þe bolde to his byggy*n*g brynge3 hem
bylyue,
The wife and daughters of Lot welcome their visitors.
Þat ryally [wat3] arayed, for he
wat3 ryche eu*er*.
Þe wy3e3 wern welcom as þe wyf
couþe,
His two dere do3t*er*e3 deuoutly he*m*
haylsed,
Þat wer maydene3 ful meke, maryed
not 3et,
& þay wer semly & swete, &
swyþe wel arayed.
Lot admonishes his men to prepare the meat,
Loth þe*n*ne ful ly3tly loke3 hy*m*
aboute,
& his me*n* amones*t*es mete forto dy3t,
þynk] *þyng* (?).
Bot þenkke3 on hit be þrefte what
þynk so 3e make,
*so*ur] savo*ur* (?). and to serve no salt with it.
For wyth no so*ur* ne no salt
serue3 hy*m* neu*er*.

wroth] *wro3t* (?).
Bot 3et I wene þat þe wyf hit wroth to dyspyt,
*vn-sau*ere] MS. vnfau*er*e.
& sayde softely to hir self "þis vn-sau*er*e hyne
Loue3 no salt i*n* her sauce 3et hit no skyl were
824 Þat oþ*er* burne be boute þa3 boþe be nyse."
Lot's wife disregards the injunction.
Þe*n*ne ho sau*er*e3 wi*th* salt her seue3 vchone
Agayne þe bone of þe burne þat hit forboden hade,
& als ho scelt he*m* i*n* scorne þat wel her skyl knewen.
828 Why wat3 ho wrech so wod, ho wrathed oure lorde!
[Fol. 68*b*.] The guests are well entertained.
Þe*n*ne seten þay at þe soper, wern serued by-lyue,
Þe gest*es* gay & ful glad, of glam debonere,
Welawy*n*nely wlonk tyl þay waschen hade,
61
832 Þe trest*es* tylt to þe wo3e & þe table boþe.
But before they go to rest the city is up in arms.
Fro þe segge3 haden souped & seten bot a whyle,
Er eu*er* þay bosked to bedde þe bor3 wat3 al vp;
Alle þat weppen my3t welde, þe wakker & þe stronger,

To vmbe-ly3e lothe3 ho*us* þe
lede3 to take,
In grete flokke3 of folk, þay fallen to
his 3ate3,
As a scowte-wach scarred, so þe
asscry rysed;

LOT'S HOUSE IS BESET.

With "keen clubs" the folk clatter on the walls,
W*ith* kene clobbe3 of þat clos þay
clat3 on þe wowe3,
& wyth a schrylle scharp schout
þay schewe þyse worde:
and demand that Lot should deliver up his guests.
"If þou louye3 þy lyf loth i*n* þyse
wone3
3ete v*us* out þose 3ong men þat 3ore-
whyle here entred,
hym] *hem* (?).
Þat we may lere hym of lof, as oure
lyst bidde3,
As is þe asyse of Sodomas to
segge3 þ*a*t passen."
Whatt! þay sputen & speken of so
spito*us* fylþe,
What! þay 3e3ed & 3olped of
3estande sor3e,
The wind yet stinks with their filthy speech.
Þat 3et þe wynd, & þe weder, & þe
worlde stynk*es*
Of þe brych þat vp-brayde3 þose
broþelych worde3.
Þe god man glyfte w*ith* þ*a*t glam &
gloped for noyse,

So scharpe schame to hy*m* schot, he schrank at þe hert,
For he knew þe costou*m* þat kyþed þose wreche3,
He doted neu*er* for no doel so depe i*n* his my*n*de.
Lot is in great trouble.
Allas! sayd hy*m* þe*n*ne loth, & ly3tly he ryse3
& bowe3 forth fro þe bench i*n*-to þe brode 3at*es*.
What! he wonded no woþe of wekked knaue3,
*per**il*] MS. *pil.*
Þat he ne passed þe port þe p*er*il to abide.
He leaves his guests
He went forthe at þe wyket & waft hit hy*m* aft*er*,
Þat a clyket hit cle3t clos hy*m* byhynde.
and addresses the Sodomites.
Þe*n*ne he meled to þo men mesurable worde3,
For harlote3 w*ith* his hendelayk he hoped to chast;
“Oo! my frende3 so fre, yo*ur* fare is to strange,
Dot3 away yo*ur* derf dyn & dere3 neu*er* my gest*es*,
Avoy! hit is yo*ur* vylaynye, 3e vylen yo*ur* seluen;
&] *And* = *An* (?).
& 3e ar iolyf gentylmen yo*ur* iapes ar ille.
[Fol. 69*a*.]
Bot I schal ke*n*ne yow by kynde a

crafte þat is bett*er*;
He offers to give up to them his two daughters.
I haf a tresor i*n* my telde of tow my fayre de3t*er*,
Þat ar maydene3 vnmard for alle men 3ette;
62
868 In sodamas, þa3 I hit say, non semloker burdes,
Hit arn ronk, hit arn rype & redy to ma*n*ne;
To samen wyth þo semly þe solace is bett*er*,
I schal biteche yow þo two þat tayt arn & quoy*n*t,
872 & layke3 wyth hem as yow lyst & lete3 my gest*es* one."
The rebels raise a great noise,
Þe*n*ne þe rebaude3 so ronk rerd such a noyse,
Þat a3ly hurled i*n* his ere3 her harlote3 speche;
and ask who made him a justice to judge their deeds,
"Wost þ*o*u not wel þ*a*t þ*o*u wone3 here a wy3e strange,
876 An out-comly*n*g, a carle, we kylle of þyn heued.
Who Ioyned þe be iostyse oure iape3 to blame,
who was but a boy when he came to Sodom.
Þat com a boy to þis bor3, þa3 þ*o*u be burne ryche?"
Þ*us* þay þrobled & þrong & þrwe vmbe his ere3,
880

& distresed hy*m* wonder strayt, w*ith*
strenkþe i*n* þe prece,

THE MEN OF SODOM SMITTEN WITH BLINDNESS.

The young men bring Lot within doors,
Bot þat þe 3onge me*n*, so 3epe,
3ornen þ*er*-oute,
Wapped vpon þe wyket & wo*n*nen
hem tylle,
& by þe honde3 hy*m* hent & horyed
hy*m* w*ith*-i*n*ne,
884 & steken þe 3at*es* ston-harde
wyth stalworth barre3.
and smite those outside with blindness.
Þay blwe a boffet i*n* blande þat
ba*n*ned peple,
Þat þay blust*er*ed as blynde as
bayard wat3 eu*er*;
In vain they try to find the door of Lot's house.
Þay lest of lote3 logg*in*g any lysou*n*
to fynde,
888 Bot nyteled þ*er* alle þe ny3t for
no3t at þe last;
Þe*n*ne vch tolke ty3t hem þat hade of
tayt fayled,
& vchon roþeled to þe rest þat he
reche mo3t;
wrank] *wrang* (?).
Bot þay wern wakned al wrank þat
þ*er* i*n* won lenged,
892 Of on þe vglokest vnhap þat eu*er*
on erd suffred.

LOT IS SENT OUT OF THE CITY.

XI.

Early in the morning the angels
command Lot to depart from Sodom,

Ruddon of þe day-rawe ros vpon
v3ten,
When merk of þe mydny3t mo3t no
more last,
Ful erly þose aungele3 þis haþel þay
ruþen
& glopnedly on gode3 halue gart
hy*m* vpryse,
Fast þe freke ferke3 vp ful ferd at his
hert;
Þay comau*n*ded hy*m* cof to cach þat
he hade,
with his wife and two daughters,
“Wyth þy wyf & þy wy3e3 & þy
wlone de3tters,
For we laþe þe, s*ir* loth, þat þ*o*u
þy lyf haue;
[Fol. 69*b*.]
Cayre tid of þis kythe er combred
þ*o*u worþe,
With alle þi here vpon haste, tyl þ*o*u
a hil fynde;
and to look straight before him,
Fou*n*de3 faste on yo*ur* fete, bifore
yo*ur* face lokes,
Bot bes neu*er* so bolde to blusch
yow bihynde,
& loke 3e ste*m*me no stepe, bot
streche3 on faste,
Til 3e reche to a reset, rest 3e neu*er*;
for Sodom and Gomorrah shall be
destroyed.

For we schal tyne þis tou*n* & trayþely
disstrye,
Wyth alle þise wy3e3 so wykke
wy3tly de-voyde
& alle þe londe wi*th* þise lede3 we
losen at one3;
Sodomas schal ful sodenly synk i*n*-to
grou*n*de,
& þe grou*n*de of gomorre gorde i*n*-to
helle,
& vche a koste of þis kyth*e* clater
vpon hepes.
Lot asks what is best to be done,
Þe*n* laled loth, “lorde what is best?
If I me fele vpon fote þat I fle mo3t,
that he may escape.
Hov schulde I huyde me fro hem þa*t*
hat3 his hate ky*n*ned,
*þinke*3] þi*n*ge3.
I*n* þe brath of his breth þat
bre*n*ne3 alle þi*n*ke3,
To crepe fro my creato*ur* & know not
wheder,
Ne wheþer his fooschip me fol3e3
bifore oþ*er* bihynde?”
Þe freke sayde “no foschip oure fader
hat3 þe schewed,
Bot hi3ly heuened þi hele fro hem
þat arn combred:
He is told to choose himself a dwelling
which shall be saved from destruction.
Nov walle þe a wo*n*ny*n*g þat þe
warisch my3t,
& he schal saue hit for þy sake þat
hat3 v*us* sende hider,
For þou art oddely þyn one out of þis
fylþe,

em] *broþer* is written over in a later hand.
& als Abraham þyn em hit at hi*m* self asked."
"Lorde, loued he worþe," q*uod* loth, "vpon erþe!
He chooses Zoar.
Þe*n* is a cite herbisyde þat segor hit hatte,
Here vtt*er* on a rou*n*de hil hit houe3 hit one,
I wolde, if his wylle wore, to þat won scape."
The angels command Lot to depart quickly.
"Þe*n*n fare forth," q*uod* þat fre, "& fyne þ*o*u neu*er*
W*ith* þose ilk þat þow wylt þ*a*t þrenge þe aft*er*,
& ay goande on yo*ur* gate, wyth-outen agayn-tote,
For alle þis londe schal be lorne, longe er þe son*n*e rise."
He wakes his wife and daughters.
Þe wy3e wakened his wyf & his wlonk de3te*r*es,
& oþ*er* two myri men þo maydene3 schulde wedde;
& þay token hit as tyt & tented hit lyttel,
Þa3 fast laþed hem loth, þay le3en ful stylle.
64 [Fol. 70*a*,] All four are hastened on by the angels,
Þe aungele3 hasted þise oþ*er* & a3ly hem þratten,
& enforsed alle fawre forth at þe 3ate3,

Þo wern loth & his lef, his luflyche de3t*er*,
Þer so3t no mo to sauement of cities aþel fyue.
who “preach to them the peril” of delay.
Þise aungele3 hade hem by hande out at þe 3ate3,
Prechande hem þe perile, & beden hem passe fast.
“Lest 3e be taken i*n* þe teche of tyrau*n*te3 here,
Loke 3e bowe now bi bot, bowe3 fast hence!”
Before daylight Lot comes to a hill.
& þay kayre-ne con & kenely flowen;
Erly, er any heuen glem, þay to a hil comen.
God aloft raises a storm.
Þe grete god i*n* his greme bygy*n*ne3 onlofte;
To wakan wedere3 so wylde þe wynde3 he calle3,
& þay wroþely vp-wafte & wrastled togeder,
Fro fawre half of þe folde, flytande loude.
Clowde3 clust*er*ed bytwene kesten vp torres,
Þat þe þik þu*n*der þrast þirled hem ofte.
A rain falls thick of fire and sulphur.
Þe rayn rueled adou*n*, ridlande þikke,
Of felle flau*n*kes of fyr & flakes of soufre,
Al in smolderande smoke smachande

ful ille,
Swe] *Sweyed* (?). Upon the four cities it comes,
Swe aboute sodamas & hit syde3 alle,
Gorde to gomorra þat þe grou*n*de lansed;
Abdama & syboym, þise ceteis alle faure,
Al birolled wyth þe rayn, rostted & bre*n*ned,
and frightens all folks therein.
& ferly flayed þat folk þat i*n* þose fees lenged;
For when þat þe helle herde þe hou*n*de3 of heuen
He wat3 ferlyly fayn, vnfolded bylyue.

THE DESTRUCTION OF THE CITIES.

The great bars of the abyss do burst.
Þe grete barre3 of þe abyme he barst vp at one3,
Þat alle þe regiou*n* to-rof i*n* riftes ful grete,
Cliffs cleave asunder.
& clouen alle i*n* lyttel cloutes þe clyffe3 aywhere,
As lance leue3 of þe boke þat lepes i*n* twy*n*ne.
The cities sink to hell.
Þe brethe of þe brynston bi þat hit blende were,
Al þo citees & her sydes sunkken to helle.
Rydelles wern þo grete rowtes of renkkes wi*th*-i*n*ne,

When þay wern war of þe wrake þ*a*t
no wy3e achaped,
Such a cry arises that the clouds clatter again.
Such a 3om*er*ly 3arm of 3elly*n*g þer
rysed;
Þer-of clat*er*ed þe cloudes þat
kryst my3t haf rawþe.
65 [Fol. 70*b*.]
Þe segge herde þat sou*n* to segor þat
3ede,
& þe wenches hy*m* wyth þat by þe
way fol3ed;
Lot and his companions are frightened,
Ferly ferde wat3 her flesch, þat
flowen ay ilyche,
Trynande ay a hy3e trot þat torne
neu*er* dorsten.
Loth & þo luly-whit his lefly two
de3t*er*,
but continue to follow their face.
Ay fol3ed here face, bifore her boþe
y3en;
Bot þe balleful burde, þat neu*er* bode
keped,

LOT'S WIFE BECOMES A STIFF STONE.

Lot's wife looks behind her,
Blusched by-hynden her bak, þat
bale forto herkken;
Hit wat3 lusty lothes wyf þat ou*er*
he[r] lyfte schulder.
Ones ho bluschet to þe bur3e, bot
bod ho no lenger,
and is turned to a stiff stone "as salt as any sea."
Þat ho nas stadde a stiffe ston, a

stalworth image
Al so salt as ani se & so ho ȝet stande3.
Her companions do not miss her till they reach Zoar.
Þay slypped bi & sy3e hir not þat wern hir samen feres,
Tyl þay i*n* segor wern sette, & sayned our lorde;
Wyth ly3t loue3 vplyfte þay loued hy*m* swyþe,
Þat so his seruau*n*tes wolde see & saue of such woþe.
By this time all were drowned.
Al wat3 dampped & don, & drowned by þe*n*ne;
The people of Zoar, for dread, rush into the sea and are destroyed.
Þe lede3 of þat lyttel tou*n* wern lopen out for drede,
I*n*-to þat malscrande mere, marred bylyue,
Þat no3t saued wat3 bot segor þat sat on a lawe,
Only Zoar with three therein (Lot and his daughters) are saved.
Þe þre lede3 þer-i*n*, loth & his de3ter;
For his make wat3 myst, þat on þe mou*n*t lenged
In a stonen statue þat salt sauor habbes,
Lot's wife is an image of salt for two faults:
1. She served salt before the Lord at supper.
2. She looked behind her.
For two fautes þat þe fol wat3 fou*n*de i*n* mistrauþe;

On, ho serued at þe soper salt bifore dry3tyn
& syþen, ho blusched hir bihynde, þa3 hir forboden were;
For on ho standes a ston, & salt for þat oþ*er*,
& alle lyst on hir lik þat arn on launde bestes.
Abraham is up full early on the morn.
Abraham ful erly wat3 vp on þe morne,
Þat alle na3t [so] much niye hade no mon i*n* his hert,
Al i*n* longi*n*g for loth leyen i*n* a wache,
Þer he lafte hade oure lorde, he is on lofte wo*n*nen;
He looks towards Sodom,
He sende toward sodomas þe sy3t of his y3en,
Þat eu*er* hade ben an erde of erþe þe swettest
As aparau*n*t to paradis þat plantted þe dry3tyn,
66 now only a pit filled with pitch,
Nov is hit plu*n*ged i*n* a pit like of pich fylled.
[Fol. 71*a*.]
Suche a roþu*n* of a reche ros fro þe blake,
from which rise smoke, ashes and cinders, as from a furnace.
Aske3 vpe i*n* þe ayre & vselle3 þer flowen,
As a fornes ful of flot þat vpon fyr boyles,
When bry3t bre*n*nande bronde3

ar bet þ*er* an-vnder.
Þis wat3 a uengau*n*ce violent þat voyded þise places,
Þat fou*n*dered hat3 so fayr a folk & þe folde sonkken.

THE DEAD SEA COVERS THE FIVE CITIES.

A sea now occupies the place of the four cities.
Þer faur*e* citees wern set, nov is a see called,
Þat ay is drouy & dym, & ded i*n* hit kynde,
Blo, blubrande, & blak, vnblyþe to ne3e,
It is a stinking pool,
As a stynkande stanc þat stryed sy*n*ne,
Þat eu*er* of sy*n*ne & of smach, smart is to fele;
and is called the Dead Sea.
For-þy þe derk dede see hit is demed eu*er* more,
For hit dede3 of deþe duren þere 3et.
For hit is brod & boþe*m*le3, & bitter as þe galle,
Nothing may live in it.
& no3t may lenge i*n* þat lake þat any lyf bere3,
& alle þe coste3 of kynde hit combre3 vchone;
Lead floats on its surface.
For lay þ*er*-on a lump of led & hit on loft flete3,
A feather sinks to the bottom of it.
& folde þ*er*-on a ly3t fyþ*er* & hit to fou*n*s synkke3.

Lands, watered by this sea, never bear grass or weed.
& þ*er* wat*er* may walt*er* to wete any erþe,
Schal neu*er* grene þ*er*-on growe, gresse ne wod nawþ*er*.
If any schalke to be schent wer schowued þ*er*-i*n*ne,
Þa3 he bode i*n* þat boþ*em* broþely a monyth,
A man cannot be drowned in it.
He most ay lyue i*n* þat lo3e i*n* losy*n*g eu*er*-more,
& neu*er* dry3e no dethe, to dayes of ende;
& as hit is corsed of kynde & hit cooste3 als,
The clay clinging to it is corrosive,
Þe clay þat clenges þ*er*-by arn corsyes strong,
alkaran] *alkatran* (?). *angré*] *augre* = *aigre* (?). as alum, alkaran, sulphur, etc.,
As alu*m* & alkaran, þat angré arn boþe,
Soufre so*ur*, & sau*n*dyu*er*, & oþ*er* such mony;
& þer walte3 of þat wat*er* i*n* waxlokes grete,
spuniande] *spinnande* (?).
Þe spuniande aspaltou*n* þat spysere3 sellen;
& suche is alle þe soyle by þat se halues,
festred] *festres* (?). which fret the flesh and fester the bones.
Þat fel fretes þe flesch & festred bones.
On the shores of this lake grow trees

bearing fair fruits,
& þer ar tres by þat terne of
traytou*r*es;
& þay borgou*n*e3 & beres blome3 ful
fayre,
& þe fayrest fryt þat may on folde
growe,
67
1044 As orenge & oþ*er* fryt & apple
garnade
[Fol. 71*b*.]
Also red & so ripe & rychely hwed,
As any dom my3t deuice of dayntye3
oute;
which, when broken or bitten, taste like ashes.
Bot quen hit is brused oþ*er* broken,
oþ*er* byten i*n* twy*n*ne,
wydowande] MS. wy*n*dowande.
1048 No worlde3 goud hit wyth-i*n*ne,
bot wydowande askes;

IT IS A TOKEN OF WICKEDNESS AND VENGEANCE.

All these are tokens of wickedness and vengeance.
Alle þyse ar teches & tokenes to trow
vpon 3et,
& wittnesse of þat wykked werk & þe
wrake aft*er*,
Þat oure fader forferde for fylþe of
þose ledes.
God loves the pure in heart.
1052 Þe*n*ne vch wy3e may wel wyt
þat he þe wlonk louies,
& if he louyes clene layk þat is oure
lorde ryche,
Strive to be clean.

& to be couþe i*n* his co*ur*te þou
coueytes þe*n*ne
To se þat semly i*n* sete & his swete
face,
Clerrer cou*n*seyl, cou*n*sayl con I
non, bot þat þou clene
worþe.
Jean de Meun tells how a lady is to be loved.
For clopy*n*gnel i*n* þe compas of his
clene rose,
Þer he expoune3 a speche, to hy*m*
þat spede wolde,
Of a lady to be loued, loke to hir
sone,
By doing what pleases her best.
Of wich bery*n*g þat ho be, &
wych ho best louyes,
& be ry3t such i*n* vch a bor3e of body
& of dedes,
& fol3 þe fet of þat fere þat þou fre
haldes.
& if þou wyrkkes on þis wyse, þa3 ho
wyk were,
Hir schal lyke þat layk þat
lyknes hir tylle.
If þou wyl dele drwrye wyth dry3tyn
þe*n*ne,
Love thy Lord!
& lelly louy þy lorde & his leef
worþe.
Conform to Christ, who is polished as a pearl.
Þe*n*ne co*n*fou*r*me þe to kryst, & þe
clene make,
Þat eu*er* is polyced als playn as
þe p*er*le seluen.

For loke fro fyrst þat he ly3t w*ith*-
i*n*ne þe lel mayden!

CHRIST WAS EVER PURE.

By how comely a contrivance did he enter the womb of the virgin!
By how comly a kest he wat3 clos
þere,
When venkkyst wat3 no v*er*gynyté,
ne vyole*n*ce maked,
Bot much clener wat3 hir corse,
god ky*n*ned þeri*n*ne;
In what purity did he part from her!
& efte when he borne wat3 i*n*
beþelen þe ryche,
I*n* wych puryté þay dep*ar*ted; þa3
þay pou*er* were,
abos] *abof* (?).
Wat3 neu*er* so blysful a bo*ur* as wat3
abos þe*n*ne
No abode was better than his.
Ne no schroude ho*us* so schene
as a schepon þare,
Ne non so glad vnder god as ho þat
grone schulde;
68 The sorrow of childbirth was turned to joy.
For þer wat3 seknesse al sou*n*de þat
sarrest is halden,
& þer wat3 rose reflayr where rote
hat3 ben eu*er*,
& þer wat3 solace & songe wher
sor3 hat3 ay cryed;
[Fol. 72*a*.] Angels solaced the virgin with organs and pipes.
For au*n*gelles w*ith* i*n*strumentes of
organes & pypes,

& rial ry*n*gande rotes & þe reken
fyþel,
& alle hende þat honestly mo3t an
hert glade,
Aboutte my lady wat3 lent, quen
ho delyu*er* were.
The child Christ was so clean that ox
and ass worshipped him.
Þe*n*ne wat3 her blyþe barne burnyst
so clene,
Þat boþe þe ox & þe asse hym hered
at-ones;
Þay knewe hy*m* by his clannes for
ky*n*g of nature,
For non so clene of such a clos
com neu*er* er þe*n*ne;
He hated wickedness,
& 3if clanly he þe*n*ne com, ful
cortays þ*er*-aft*er*,
Þat alle þat longed to luþ*er* ful lodly
he hated;
and would never touch ought that was
vile.
By nobleye of his norture he nolde
neu*er* towche
O3t þat wat3 vngoderly oþ*er*
ordure wat3 i*n*ne.
Yet there came to him lazars and lepers,
lame and blind.
3et comen lodly to þat lede, as
la3ares monye,
Su*m*me lepre, su*m*me lome, &
lom*er*ande blynde,
Poysened & parlatyk & pyned i*n*
fyres,
Dry and dropsical folk.
Drye folk & ydropike, & dede at

þe laste;
Alle called on þat cortayse &
claymed his *gr*ace.
He healed all with kind speech.
He heled hem wyth hynde speche of
þat þay ask aft*er*,
For what-so he towched also-tyd
to*ur*ned to hele,
Wel cla*n*ner þen any crafte
cowþe devyse;
So clene wat3 his hondely*n*g vche
ordure hit schonied,
His handling was so good,
& þe gropy*n*g so goud of god & man
boþe,
Þat for fetys of his fyngeres fonded
he neu*er*
cout] *cut* (?). that he needed no knife to cut or carve with.
Nauþ*er* to cout ne to kerue, w*ith*
knyf ne wyth egge,
The bread he broke
For-þy brek he þe bred blades wyth-
outen;
For hit ferde freloker i*n* fete i*n* his
fayre honde,
more perfectly than could all the tools of Toulouse.
Displayed more pryuyly when he hit
part schulde,
Þe*n*ne alle þe toles of tolowse
mo3t ty3t hit to kerue,
How can we approach his court except we be clean?
Þ*us* is he kyryo*us* & clene þat þo*u* his
cort askes;
Hov schulde þo*u* com to his kyth bot
if þo*u* clene were?

*sov[*er*]ly*] MS. *sovly*.
Nov ar we sore & synful & sov[*er*]ly
vch one,
1112 How schulde we se, þe*n* may we
say, þ*a*t syre vpon throne?
69 God is merciful.
ȝis, þat mayst*er* is mercyable; þaȝ
þ*o*u be man fe*n*ny,
& al to-marred i*n* myre whyl þ*o*u on
molde lyuyes,
Þ*o*u may schyne þurȝ schryfte, þaȝ
þ*o*u haf schome serued,

PENANCE MAKES MAN PURE AS A PEARL.

Through penance we may shine as a pearl.
1116 & pure þe with penau*n*ce tyl þ*o*u
a perle worþe.
[Fol. 72*b*.] Why is the pearl so prized?
Perle praysed is prys, þ*er* perre is
schewed,
Þaȝ hy*m* not derrest be demed to
dele for penies,
Quat may þe cause be called, bot for
hir clene hwes,
1120 Þat wy*n*nes worschyp, abof alle
whyte stones?
For ho schynes so schyr þat is of
schap rou*n*de,
Wyth-outen faut oþ*er* fylþe ȝif ho fyn
were;
She becomes none the worse for wear.
& wax eu*er* i*n* þe worlde i*n* wery*n*g
so olde,
1124 ȝet þe perle payres not whyle ho
i*n* pyese lasttes
If she should become dim, wash her in

wine.
& if hit cheue þe chau*n*ce vncheryst
ho worþe,
Þat ho blyndes of ble i*n* bo*ur* þ*er* ho
lygges,
No-bot wasch hir wyth wo*ur*chyp i*n*
wyn as ho askes,
She then becomes clearer than before.
Ho by kynde schal be-com clerer
þen are;
So if folk be defowled by vnfre
chau*n*ce,
So may the sinner polish him by penance.
Þat he be sulped i*n* sawle, seche to
schryfte
& he may polyce hym at þe prest, by
penau*n*ce taken,
Wel bry3t*er* þen þe beryl oþ*er*
browden perles.
Beware of returning to sin.
Bot war þe wel, if þou be waschen
wyth wat*er* of schryfte,
& polysed als playn as parchmen
schauen,
Sulp no more þe*n*ne i*n* sy*n*ne þy
saule þ*er*-aft*er*,
For then God is more displeased than ever.
For þe*n*ne þou dry3tyn dyspleses
wi*th* dedes ful sore,
& entyses hy*m* to tene more trayþly
þe*n* eu*er*
& wel hatt*er* to hate þe*n* hade þou
not waschen;
The reconciled soul God holds as His own.
For when a sawele is sa3tled &

sakred to dry3tyn,
He holly haldes hit his & haue
hit he wolde,
Þe*n*ne efte lastes hit likkes, he loses
hit ille,
þewes] *þeues*. (?). Ill deeds rob Him of it.
As hit were rafte wyth vn-ry3t &
robbed wyth þewes.
War þe þe*n*ne for þe wrake, his
wrath is achaufed,

GOD PUNISHES IMPURITY.

God forbids us to defile any vessels used in His service.
For þat þat ones wat3 his
schulde efte be vn-clene,
Þa3 hit be bot a bassy*n*, a bolle, oþ*er*
a scole,
A dysche oþ*er* a dobler þ*a*t dry3tyn
one3 serued,
70
To defowle hit eu*er* vpon folde fast
he for-bedes,
So is he scoym*us* of scaþe þat
scylful is eu*er*.
In Belshazzar's time, the defiling of God's vessels brought wrath upon the king.
& þat wat3 bared i*n* babyloyn i*n*
Balta3ar tyme,
Hov harde vnhap þer hy*m* hent &
hastyly sone,
For he þe vesselles avyled þat vayled
i*n* þe temple
I*n* seruyse of þe sou*er*ayn su*m*
tyme byfore.
[Fol. 73*a*.]

Ȝif ȝe wolde tyȝt me a tom telle hit I
wolde,
Hov charged more watȝ his chau*n*ce
þat he*m* cherych nolde
Þen his fader forloyne þat feched
he*m* wyth strenþe,
& robbed þe relygiou*n* of relykes
alle.

XII.

Daniel in his prophecies tells of the destruction of the Jews.

Danyel i*n* his dialokeȝ de-vysed su*m*
tyme,
As ȝet is proued ex-presse i*n* his
p*ro*fecies,
Hov þe gentryse of Iuise &
Ih*erusal*em þe ryche
Watȝ disstryed wyth distres, &
drawen to þe erþe,
For their unfaithfulness
For þat folke i*n* her fayth watȝ
fou*n*den vntrwe,
Þat haden hyȝt þe hyȝe god to halde
of hy*m* eu*er*;
& he hem halȝed for his & help at
her nede
In mukel meschefes mony, þat
meruayl [is] to here;
in following other gods,
& þay forloyne her fayth & folȝed
oþ*er* goddes,
& þat wakned his wrath & wrast hit
so hyȝe,

God allowed the heathen to destroy them,
Þat he fylsened þe faythful i*n* þe falce lawe
To for-fare þe falce i*n* þe faythe trwe;
3edechyas] MS. *3edethyas*. in the reign of Zedekiah,
Hit wat3 sen i*n* þat syþe þat 3edechyas re*n*gned,
I*n* Iuda, þat iustised þe iuyne ky*n*ges.
He sete on Salamones solie, on solemne wyse,
Bot of leaute he wat3 lat to his lorde hende;
who practised idolatry.
He vsed abominaciones of idolatrye,
& lette ly3t bi þe lawe þat he wat3 lege tylle;
For-þi oure fader vpon folde a foman hy*m* wakned,
Nebuchadnezzar becomes his foe.
Nabigo-de-no3ar nuyed hy*m* swyþe.
He pur-sued i*n* to palastyn w*ith* proude men mony,
wyth] MS. *wyth with*.
& þer he wast wyth werre þe wones of þorpes.
He her3ed vp alle isr*ae*l & hent of þe beste,

NEBUCHADNEZZAR BESIEGES JERUSALEM.

He besieges Jerusalem, and surrounds the walls.
& þe gentylest of Iudee i*n* I*erusal*em biseged,

71
Vmbe-walt alle þe walles wyth wy3es
ful stronge,
At vche a dor a do3ty duk, & dutte
hem wyth-i*n*ne;
The city is stuffed full of men.
For þe bor3 wat3 so bygge baytayled
alofte,
1184 & stoffed wyth-i*n*ne w*i*t*h* stout
men to stalle hem þ*e*r-oute.
Þe*n*ne wat3 þe sege sette þe Cete
aboute,
Brisk is the skirmish.
Skete skarmoch skelt, much skaþe
lached;
At vch brugge a berfray on basteles
wyse,
[Fol. 73*b*.] Seven times a day are the
gates assailed.
1188 Þat seuen syþe vch a day asayled
þe 3ates,
Trwe tulkkes i*n* to*ur*es teueled wyth-
i*n*ne,
In bigge brutage of borde, bulde on
þe walles;
For two years the fight goes on, yet the
city is not taken.
Þay fe3t & þay fende of, & fylt*er*
togeder
1192 Til two 3er ou*er*-torned, 3et tok
þay hit neu*er*.
The folk within are in want of food.
At þe laste vpon longe, þo ledes
wyth-i*n*ne,
Faste fayled hem þe fode, enfaminied
monie;
Þe hote hunger wyth-i*n*ne hert hem

wel sarre,
Þen any dunt of þat douthe þat dowelled þ*er*-oute.
Þe*n*ne wern þo rowtes redles i*n* þo ryche wones,
Meager they become.
Fro þat mete wat3 myst, megre þay wexen,
For so shut up are they that escape seems impossible.
& þay stoken so strayt, þ*a*t þay ne stray my3t
A fote fro þat forselet to forray no goudes.
Þe*n*ne þe ky*n*g of þe kyth a cou*n*sayl hy*m* takes,
Wyth þe best of his burnes, a blench forto make;
But on a quiet night they steal out, and rush through the host.
Þay stel out on a stylle ny3t er any steuen rysed,
& harde hurles þur3 þe oste, er enmies hit wyste,
Bot er þay at-wappe ne mo3t þe wach wyth-oute,
They are discovered by the enemy.
Hi3e skelt wat3 þe askry þe skewes an-vnder,
A loud alarm is given.
Loude alarom vpon lau*n*de lulted wat3 þe*n*ne;
Ryche, ruþed of her rest, ran to here wedes,
Hard hattes þay hent & on hors lepes;
Cler claryou*n* crak cryed onlofte.

They are pursued
By þat wat3 alle on a hepe hurlande swyþee,
1212 Fol3ande þat oþ*er* flote, & fonde hem bilyue,
and overtaken.
Ou*er*-tok hem, as tyd, tult hem of sadeles,
Tyl vche prynce hade his per put to þe grou*n*de;

THE KING OF JUDAH IS MADE PRISONER.

Their king is made prisoner.
& þer wat3 þe ky*n*g ka3t wyth calde pry*n*ces,
72
1216 & alle hise gentyle for-iusted on ierico playnes,
His chief men are presented as prisoners to Nebuchadnezzar.
& presented wern as presoneres to þe prynce rychest,
Nabigo-de-no3ar noble i*n* his chayer,
& he þe faynest freke þat he his fo hade,
1220 & speke spito*us*ly hem to & spylt þ*er*aft*er*.
His sons are slain.
Þe ky*nges* su*n*nes i*n* his sy3t he slow eu*er* vch one,
His own eyes are put out.
& holkked out his auen y3en het*er*ly boþe
He is placed in a dungeon in Babylon.
& bede þe burne to be bro3t to babyloyn þe ryche,
[Fol. 74*a*.]

1224 & þere i*n* dongou*n* be don to
dre3e þ*er* his wyrdes.
Now se, so þe sou*er*ay[n] set hat3 his
wrake;
Nas hit not for nabugo ne his noble
nauþ*er*,
Þat oþ*er* depryued wat3 of pryde
with paynes stronge,
All for his "bad bearing" against the
Lord,
who might otherwise have been his
friend.
1228 Bot for his bery*n*g so badde
agayn his blyþe lorde;
For hade þe fader ben his frende þat
hy*m* bifore keped,
Ne neu*er* trespast to him i*n* teche of
mysseleue.
To Colde wer alle Calde & kythes of
ynde,
1232 3et take torkye hem wyth her
tene hade ben little;
Nebuchadnezzar ceased not until he had
destroyed Jerusalem.
3et nolde neu*er* nabugo þis ilke note
leue,
Er he hade tuyred þis tou*n* & torne
hit to grou*n*de;
He ioyned vnto I*erusal*em a gentyle
duc þe*n*ne,
Nebuzaradan was "chief of the
chivalry."
1236 His name wat3 nabu-3ardan, to
noye þe iues;
He wat3 mayster of his men & my3ty
hi*m* seluen,
Þe chef of his cheualrye his chekkes

to make,
He brek þe bareres as bylyue, & þe
bur3 aft*er*,
& enteres i*n* ful ernestly, i*n* yre
of his hert.
What! þe maysterry wat3 mene, þe
me*n* wern away,
The best men were taken out of the city.
Þe best bo3ed wyth þe burne þat þe
bor3 3emed;
so] The MS. reads *fo*.
& þo þat byden wer so biten with þe
bale hunger,
Þat on wyf hade ben worþe þe
welgest fo*ur*re;
Nevertheless Nebuzaradan spared not those left.
Nabi3ardan no3t for-þy nolde not
spare,
Bot bede al to þe bronde vnder bare
egge.
Þay slowen of swettest semlych
burdes,
Brains of bairns were spilt.
Baþed barnes i*n* blod & her
brayn spylled;
Priests pressed to death.
Prestes & prelates þay presed to
deþe,
Wives and wenches foully killed.
Wyues & wenches her wombes
tocoruen,
Þat her boweles out-borst aboute þe
diches,
All that escaped the sword were taken to Babylon,
& al wat3 carfully kylde þat þay
cach my3t,

& alle [þat] swypped vnswol3ed of
þe sworde kene,
Þay wer cagged & ka3t on capeles al
bare,
Festned fettres to her fete vnder fole
wombes,
& broþely bro3t to babyloyn þer
bale to suffer,
To sytte i*n* seruage & syte; þat
su*m*tyme wer ge*n*tyle,
and were made to drag the cart or milk the kine.
Now ar chau*n*ged to chorles &
charged wyth werkkes,
Boþe to cayre at þe kart & þe kuy
mylke,
[Fol. 74*b*.]
Þat su*m*tyme sete i*n* her sale
syres & burdes.

NEBUZARDAN PILLAGES THE TEMPLE.

Nebuzaradan burst open the temple,
& 3et nabu3ardan nyl neu*er* stynt,
Er he to þe tempple tee wyth his
tulkkes alle;
Betes on þe barers, brestes vp þe
3ates,
and slew those therein.
Slouen alle at a slyp þat serued
þer-i*n*ne,
Priests, pulled by the poll, were slain along with deacons, clerks, and maidens.
Pulden prestes bi þe polle & plat of
her hedes,
Di3ten dekenes to deþe, dungen dou*n*
clerkkes,

& alle þe maydenes of þe mu*nste*r
ma3tyly hokyllen
Wyth þe swayf of þe sworde þat
swol3ed he*m* alle.
The enemy pillages the temple
Þe*n*ne ran þay to þe relykes as
robbors wylde,
& pyled alle þe apparement þat
pented to þe kyrke,
of its pillars of brass,
Þe pure pyleres [o]f bras po*ur*trayd
i*n* golde,
and the golden candlestick
& þe chef chau*n*deler charged
with þe ly3t,
Þat ber þe lamp vpon lofte, þat
lemed eu*er* more,
Bifore þ[e] sancta s*anct*oru*m* þer
selcouth wat3 ofte.
Þay ca3t away þat condelstik, & þe
crowne als,
from off the altar.
Þat þe aut*er* hade vpon, of aþel
golde ryche;
Goblets,
Þe gredirne & þe goblot*es* garnyst of
sylu*er*,
basins,
Þe bases of þe bry3t postes &
bassynes so schyre;
golden dishes,
Dere disches of golde & dubleres
fayre,
Þe vyoles & þe vesselment of
v*er*tuo*us* stones.
all are taken by Nebuzaradan,
Now hat3 nabu3ardan nome*n* alle

þyse noble þy*n*ges,
& pyled þat p*re*cio*us* place & pakked þose godes;
Þe golde of þe ga3afylace to swyþe gret nou*m*bre,
and hampered together.
1284 Wyth alle þe vrnmentes of þat ho*us*, he hamppred to-geder.
Alle he spoyled spito*us*ly i*n* a sped whyle,
Solomon had made them with much labour.
Þat salomon so mony a sadde 3er so3t to make,
74
Wyth alle þe coyntyse þat he cowþe clene to wyrke;
1288 De-uised he þe vesselment, þe vestures clene,
Wyth sly3t of his ciences, his sou*er*ayn to loue,
Þe ho*us* & þe ano*ur*nementes he hy3tled to-gedere.
*nu*mn*e*n*d*] *nummen* (?).
Now hat3 nabu3ardan nu*m*ne*n*d hit al samen,
The temple he beats down,
1292 & syþen bet dou*n* þe bur3 & brend hit i*n* askes;
Þe*n*ne wyth legiou*n*es of ledes ou*er* londes he rydes,
Her3e3 of Israel þe hyrne aboute.
and returns to Babylon.
Wyth charged chariotes þe cheftayn he fynde[3],

NEBUCHADNEZZAR IS PLEASED WITH THE SPOIL.

[Fol. 75*a*.] Presents the prisoners to the king,
Bike*n*nes þe catel to þe ky*n*g, þat he ca3t hade,
P*re*sented him þe p*r*isoneres i*n* pray þat þay token,
Moni a worþly wy3e whil her worlde laste,
Moni semly syre son*e*, & swyþe rych maydenes,
Þe pruddest of þe p*ro*uince, & p*ro*phetes childer,
among whom were Daniel and his three companions.
As Ananie & a3arie & als Mi3ael,
& dere daniel also, þat wat3 deuine noble,
With moni a modey moder chylde mo þe*n* i*n*-noghe.
Nebuchadnezzar has great joy,
& nabugo-de-no3ar makes much ioye,
Nov he þe ky*n*g hat3 c*on*quest & þe kyth wu*n*nen,
because his enemies are slain.
& dreped alle þe do3tyest & derrest i*n* armes,
& þe lederes of her lawe layd to þe grou*n*de,
& þe pryce of þe p*ro*fecie p*r*isoners maked;

HE PRIZES GREATLY THE SACRED JEWELRY.

Great was his wonder when he saw the sacred jewelry.
Bot þe ioy of þe iuelrye so gentyle & ryche,

When hit wat3 schewed hy*m* so
schene, scharp wat3 his
wonder,
Of such vessel auayed þat vayled so
huge,
Neu*er* 3et nas nabugo-de-no3ar
er þe*n*ne.
He praises the God of Israel.
He sesed hem wi*th* solemneté, þe
sou*er*ayn he praysed,
þat wat3 aþel ou*er* alle, israel
dry3tyn;
Such vessels never before came to Chaldea.
Such god, such gomes, such gay
vesselles
Comen neu*er* out of kyth, to
Caldee reames.
They are thrust into the treasury.
He trussed hem i*n* his tresorye i*n* a
tryed place
Rekenly wyth reu*er*ens, as he ry3t
hade;
& þ*er* he wro3t as þe wyse, as 3e may
wyt here-aft*er*,
For hade he let of hem ly3t, hy*m*
mo3t haf lu*m*pen worse.
Nebuchadnezzar reigns as emperor of all the earth,
Þat ryche i*n* gret rialté rengned his
lyue,
As *con*quero*ur* of vche a cost he
cayser wat3 hatte,
Emp*erour* of alle þe erþe & also þe
saudan,
& als þe god of þe grou*n*de wat3

grauen his name
fro] *for* (?). through the "doom of Daniel,"
& al þur3 dome of daniel, fro he deuised hade,
Þat alle goudes com of god, & gef hit hy*m* bi samples,
bi-cnv] Looks like bicuv*er* in MS. who gave him good counsel.
Þat he ful clanly bi-cnv his carp bi þe laste,
& ofte hit mekned his my*n*de, his mayst*er*ful werkkes.
Bot al drawes to dy3e w*ith* doel vp[o]n ende;
Bi] *be* (?).
Bi a haþel neu*er* so hy3e he heldes to grou*n*de,
Nebuchadnezzar dies and is buried.
& so nabugo-de-no3ar as he nedes moste;
[Fol. 75*b*.]
For alle his empire so hi3e i*n* erþe is he *gra*uen.
Belshazzar succeeds him.
Bot þe*n*n þe bolde balta3ar, þat wat3 his barn aldest,
He wat3 stalled i*n* his stud, & stabled þe rengne;
He holds himself the biggest in heaven or on earth.
I*n* þe bur3 of babiloyne þe biggest he trawed,
no] *on* (?).
Þat nauþ*er* i*n* heuen ne no erþe hade no pere;
For he bigan i*n* alle þe glori þat hy*m* þe gome lafte,

Nabugo-de-No3ar, þat wat3 his noble fader;
So kene a ky*n*g i*n* Caldee com neu*er* er þe*n*ne.
He honours not God,
Bot hono*ur*ed he not hy*m* þat in heuen wonies,
but worships false phantoms.
Bot fals fantu*m*mes of fendes, formed with handes
Wyth tool out of harde tre, & telded on lofte,
& of stokkes & stones, he stoute goddes call3
When þay ar gilde al with golde & gered wyth sylu*er*,
& þere he kneles & calle3, & clepes after help.
&] *An* (?). He promises them rewards if good fortune befal.
& þay reden hi*m* ry3t rewarde he hem hetes,
& if þay gruchen hi*m* his grace to gremen his hert,
If they vex him he knocks them in pieces.
He cleches to a gret klubbe & knokkes hem to peces;
Þ*us* in pryde & olipra*un*ce his Empyre he haldes,
In lust & i*n* lecherye, & loþelych werkkes;
He has a wife, and many concubines.
& hade a wyf forto welde, a worþelych quene,
& mony a le*m*man, neu*er* þe lat*er*, þat ladis wer called.

In þe clernes of his *con*cubines &
curio*us* wede3,
The mind of the king was fixed upon
new meats and other vain things.
In noty*n*g of nwe metes & of nice
gettes,
Al wat3 þe mynde of þat man, o*n*
misschapen þi*n*ges,
1356 Til þe lorde of þe lyfte liste hit
abate.
76

BELSHAZZAR PROCLAIMS A FEAST,

XIII.

Belshazzar, to exhibit his vainglory

Then*n*e þis bolde Balta3ar biþenkkes
hy*m* ones,
To vouche on a vayment of his vayne
g[l]orie;
þink] *þing* (?).
Hit is not i*n*nogh*e* to þe nice al no3ty
þi*n*k vse,
1360 Bot if alle þe worlde wyt his
wykked dedes.
proclaims throughout Babylon,
Balta3ar þur3 babiloyn his ba*n*ne
gart crye,
& þur3 þe cu*n*tre of caldee his
cally*n*g con spry*n*g,
that all the great ones should assemble
on a set day, at the Sultan's feast.
Þat alle þe grete vpon grou*n*de
schulde geder hem samen
1364 & assemble at a set day at þe
saudans fest.

Kings, dukes, and lords were
commanded to attend the court.
Such a mangerie to make þe man
wat3 auised,
Þat vche a kythyn ky*n*g schuld com
þider;
Vche duk wyth his duthe & oþ*er* dere
lordes,
[Fol. 76*a*.]
1368 Schulde com to his co*ur*t to kyþe
hy*m* for lege,
& to reche hy*m* reu*er*ens & his reuel
herkken;
To do the king honour many nobles
came to Babylon.
To loke on his lemanes & ladis hem
calle,
To rose hy*m* i*n* his rialty rych me*n*
so3tten,
1372 & mony a barou*n* ful bolde, to
babyloyn þe noble.
Þer bowed toward babiloyn burnes
so mony,
Ky*n*ges, Cayseres ful kene, to þe
co*ur*t wo*n*nen,
Mony ludisch lordes þat ladies
bro3ten,
It would take too long to name the
number.
1376 Þat to neuen þe nou*m*bre to
much nye were.
The city of Babylon is broad and big.
For þe bo*ur*3 wat3 so brod & so bigge
alce,
Stalled i*n* þe fayrest stud þe sterre3
an-vnder,
It is situated on a plain,
Prudly on a plat playn, plek alþ*er*-

fayrest,
surrounded by seven streams,
Vmbe-sweyed on vch a syde
wi*th* seuen grete wat*er*es,
a high wall, and towers.
W*ith* a wonder wro3t walle wruxeled
ful hi3e,
W*ith* koy*n*t carneles aboue, coruen
ful clene,
Troched toures bitwene twenty spere
lenþe,
*þo*ur] *þore* (?).
& þiker þrowen vmbe þo*ur*-w*ith*
ou*er*-þwert palle.
The palace was long and large,
Þe place, þat plyed þe pursau*n*t
wyth-i*n*ne,
Wat3 longe & ful large & eu*er* ilych
sware,
each side being seven miles in length.
& vch a syde vpon soyle helde seuen
myle,
& þe saudans sete sette i*n* þe
myddes;
Þat wat3 a palayce of pryde passande
alle oþ*er*,
Boþe of werk & of wu*n*der & walle al
aboute;
High houses were within the walls.
He3e houses w*ith*-i*n*ne þe halle to hit
med,
So brod bilde i*n* a bay, þ*a*t
blonkkes my3t re*n*ne.

TO WHICH KINGS AND EMPERORS ARE INVITED.

The time of the feast has come.
When þe terme of þe tyde wat3 to

vsched of þe feste,
Dere dro3en þ*er*-to & vpon des metten,
Belshazzar sits upon his throne:
& balta3ar vpon bench was busked to sete,
Stepe stayred stones of his stoute throne.
the hall floor is covered with knights.
Þe*n*ne wat3 alle þe halle flor hiled w*ith* kny3tes,
& baroun*e*s at þe side-bordes bounet ay-where,
For non wat3 dressed vpon dece bot þe dere seluen,
& his clere concubynes i*n* cloþes ful bry3t.
When all are seated, service begins.
When alle segges were þ*er* set, þe*n* seruyse bygy*n*nes,
Trumpets sound everywhere.
Sturnen trumpen strake steuen i*n* halle,
Aywhere by þe wowes wrasten krakkes,
[Fol. 76*b*.]
& brode baneres þer-bi blusnande of gold;
þe] MS. þe þe. Bread is served upon silver dishes.
Burnes berande þe bredes vpon brode skeles,
seerved] MS. sev*e*red.
Þat were of sylu*er*en sy3t & se*er*ved þ*er*-wyth,
Lyfte logges þer-ou*er* & on lofte coruen,
golde] MS. *glolde* (?).

Pared out of paper & poynted of golde,
Broþe baboynes abof, besttes an-vnder,
Foles i*n* foler flakerande bi-twene,
& al i*n* asure & ynde enaumayld ryche,
All sorts of musical instruments are heard in the hall.
& al on blonkken bak bere hit on honde.
& ay þe nakeryn noyse, notes of pipes,
Ty*m*bres & tabornes, tulket amo*n*g,
Sy*m*bales & sonete3 sware þe noyse,
& bougou*n*3 busch bat*e*red so þikke;
So wat3 serued fele syþe þe sale alle aboute,
The king, surrounded by his loves, drinks copiously of wine.
W*it*h solace at þe sere course, bifore þe self lorde,
Þer þe lede & alle his loue lenged at þe table.
It gets into his head and stupifies him.
So faste þay we3ed to hi*m* wyne, hit warmed his hert
& breyþed vppe i*n* to his brayn & blemyst his my*n*de,
& al waykned his wyt, & wel ne3e he foles,
For he wayte3 onwyde, his wenches he byholdes,
& his bolde baronage, aboute bi þe wo3es;
A cursed thought takes possession of

him.
Þe*n*ne a dotage ful depe drof to his hert,
& a caytif cou*n*sayl he ca3t bi hy*m* seluen.
78

BELSHAZZAR BRINGS OUT THE SACRED VESSELS

He commands his marshal to bring him the vessels
Maynly his marschal þe mayste*r* vpon calles,
1428 & comau*n*des hym cofly coferes to lance,
& fech forþe vessel þa*t* his fader bro3t
taken from the temple by Nebuchadnezzar,
Nabugo-de-no3ar, noble i*n* his strenþe,
Conquerd with his kny3tes & of kyrk rafte
1432 I*n* iude, i*n* i*erusal*em i*n* gentyle wyse:
and to fill them with wine.
“Bry*n*g hem now to my borde, of beu*er*age he*m* fylles,
Let þise ladyes of hem lape, I luf he*m* i*n* hert;
Þat schal I cortaysly kyþe & þay schi*n* knawe sone,
1436 Þer is no bou*n*té i*n* burne lyk balta3ar þewes.”
The marshal opens the chests.
Þe*n*ne towched to þe treso*ur* þis tale wat3 sone,
& he wi*th* keyes vn-closes kystes ful

mony;
Mony burþen ful bry3t wat3 bro3t i*n*-
to halle,
Covers the cupboard with vessels. [Fol. 77*a*.]
1440 & cou*e*red mony a cupborde
with cloþes ful quite.
ierusalem] MS. i*esural*em.
Þe iueles out of i*erusal*em wi*th*
ge*m*mes ful bry3t,
The Jewels of Jerusalem deck the sides of the hall.
Bi þe syde of þe sale were semely
arayed;
The altar and crown,
Þe aþel auter of brasse wat3 hade i*n*-
to place;
1444 Þe gay coroun of golde gered on
lofte,
blessed by bishop's hands,
and anointed with the blood of beasts,
Þat hade ben blessed bifore wyth
bischopes hondes
& wyth besten blod busily anoynted,
In þe solempne sacrefyce þat goud
sauor hade,
1448 Bifore þe lorde of þe lyfte i*n*
louy*n*g hy*m* seluen,
are set before the bold Belshazzar.
Now is sette for to serue satanas þe
blake,
Bifore þe bolde balta3ar wyth bost &
wyth pryde.

TO DECK THE FESTIVE HALL.

Upon this altar were noble vessels
curiously carved,

Houen vpon þis auter wat3 aþel
vessel,
so] MS. *fo*.
Þat wyth so curio*us* a crafte
coruen wat3 wyly;
Salamon sete him s[eue]n 3ere & a
syþe more,
W*ith* alle þe syence þat hy*m* sende þe
sou*er*ayn lorde,
For to compas & kest to haf hem
clene wro3t;
basins of gold,
For þer wer bassynes ful bry3t of
brende golde clere,
En-aumaylde w*ith* a3er & eweres of
sute;
foul] *ful* (?). cups arrayed like castles
with battlements,
Cou*er*ed cowpes foul clene, as
casteles arayed,
Enbaned vnder batelment w*ith*
bantelles quoy*n*t,
ferlyle] *ferlyke* (?).
& fyled out of fygures of ferlyle
schappes.
and towers with lofty pinnacles.
Þe cop*er*ou*n*es of þe canacles þat on
þe cuppe reres,
Wer fetysely formed out i*n* fylyoles
longe,
Upon them were pourtrayed
branches and leaves,
Pinacles py3t þer apert þat p*ro*fert
bitwene,
& al boiled abof w*ith* braun*n*ches
& leues,
Pyes & papeiayes purtrayed with-
i*n*ne,

As þay prudly hade piked of
pomgarnades;
the flowers of which were white pearls,
For alle þe blomes of þe boȝes wer
blyknande perles
and the fruit flaming gems.
& alle þe fruyt i*n* þo formes of
flau*m*beande ge*m*mes,
Ande safyres, & sardiners, & semely
topace,
Alabau*n*derynes, & amarau*n*ȝ &
amaffised stones,
Casydoynes, & crysolytes, & clere
rubies,
Penitotes, & pynkardines, ay
perles bitwene,
So trayled & tryfled a trau*er*ce wer
alle,
Bi vche bekyrande þe bolde, þe
brurdes al vmbe;
Þe gobelotes of golde grauen aboute,
[Fol. 77*b*.] The goblets were
ornamented with flowers of gold.
& fyoles fretted wi*th* flores &
flee3 of golde,
Vpon þat avter wat3 al aliche
dresset.
The candlestick was brought in,
Þe candelstik bi a cost wat3 cayred
þider sone,
[V]pon þe pyleres apyked þat
praysed hit mony,
with its pillars of brass,
Vpon hit base3 of brasse þat ber
vp þe werkes,
and ornamental boughs,
Þe boȝes bryȝt þer abof, brayden of

golde,
upon which sat birds of various hues.
Braun*n*ches bredande þer-on, &
bryddes þer seten
Of mony kyndes, of fele-kyn hues,
1484 As þay w*i*t*h* wy*n*ge vpon wynde
hade waged her fyþ*e*res,
Lights shone bright from the candlestick,
In-mo*n*g þe leues of þe lampes wer
grayþed;
louelych] Looks like *louflych*.
& oþ*e*r louelych ly3t þat lemed ful
fayre,
As mony mort*e*res of wax merkked
w*i*t*h*-oute,
1488 W*i*t*h* mony a borlych best al of
brende golde.
Hit wat3 not wonte i*n* þat wone to
wast no serges,
which once stood before the "Holy of Holies."
Bot i*n* te*m*ple of þe trauþe trwly to
stonde;
Bifore þe s*anct*a, s*anct*or*um* soþefast
dry3tyn,
1492 Expouned his speche sp*irit*ually
to special p*ro*phetes.

THE SACRED VESSELS ARE DEFILED.

The pollution of the sacred vessels is displeasing to God.
Leue þou wel þat þe lorde þ*a*t þe
lyfte 3emes
Displesed much, at þat play i*n* þat
plyt stronge,
Þat his ineles so gent wyth iaueles

wer fouled,
Þat p*re*syo*us* i*n* his presens wer proued su*m* whyle.
Soberly i*n* his sacrafyce su*m*me wer anoynted,
Þur3 þe somones of him selfe þat syttes so hy3e;
80 For "a boaster on bench" drinks from them till he is as "drunken as the devil."
Now a bost*er* on benche bibbes þerof
Tyl he be dronkken as þe deuel, & dotes þ*er* he syttes;
God is very angry.
So þe worcher of þis worlde wlates þer-wyth,
Þat i*n* þe poynt of her play he poruayes a mynde;
Before harming the revellers He sends them a warning.
Bot er harme hem he wolde i*n* haste of his yre,
He wayned hem a warny*n*g þat wonder hem þo3t.
Nov is alle þis guere geten glotou*n*es to serue;
bry3t3] ? *bry3te*.
Stad i*n* a ryche stal & stared ful bry3t3,
Belshazzar commands the sacred vessels to be filled with wine.
Balta3ar i*n* a brayd bede v*us* þ*er*-of.
"We3e wyn i*n* þis won, wassayl!" he cryes.
Swyfte swaynes ful swyþe swepen þ*er*-tylle,
The cups and bowls are soon filled.
Kyppe kowpes i*n* honde ky*n*ge3 to serue,

I*n* bry3t bolle3, ful bayn birlen þise
oþ*er*,
[Fol. 78*a*.]
& vche mon for his mayst*er*
machches alone.
Music of all kind is heard in the hall.
Þer wat3 ry*n*gi*n*g, on ry3t, of ryche
metalles,
Quen renkkes i*n* þat ryche rok
re*n*nen hit to cache,
Clat*erin*g of conacle3 þat kesten þo
burdes,
As sonet out of sau[t]*er*ay songe
als myry.
Þen þe dotel on dece drank þat he
my3t,
Dukes, princes, concubines, and knights,
all are merry.
& þe*n*ne arn dressed duke3 &
prynces,
Concubines & kny3tes, bi cause of
þat m*er*the;
As vchon hade hy*m* i*n* helde he
haled of þe cuppe,
Drinking of the sweet liquors they ask
favours of their gods,
So long likked þise lordes þise
lykores swete,
& gloryed on her falce goddes & her
g*ra*ce calles,
Þat were of stokkes & stones, stille
euer more;
is] MS. īs. who, although dumb,
Neu*er* steuen hem astel, so
stoken is hor tonge,
Alle þe goude golden goddes þe
gaule3 3et neuenen,

Belfagor & belyal & belssabub als,
are as highly praised “as if heaven were theirs.”
Heyred hem as hyȝly as heuen wer þayres,
Bot hy*m* þat alle goudes giues, þat god þay for-ȝeten,
A marvel befals the feasters.
For þer a ferly bifel þat fele folk seȝen;
The king first saw it.
Fyrst knew hit þe ky*n*g & alle þe cort aft*er*,

THE HANDWRITING ON THE WALL.

Upon the plain wall,
I*n* þe palays pryncipale vpon þe playn wowe,
I*n* contrary of þe candelstik þat clerest hit schyned.
“a palm with pointel in fingers” is seen writing.
Þer apered a paume, w*ith* poyntel i*n* fyngres
Þat watȝ grysly & gret, & grymly he wrytes,
81
Non oþ*er* forme bot a fust faylande þe wryste,
Pared on þe parget, purtrayed lettres.
The bold Belshazzar becomes frightened.
When þat bolde balta3ar blusched to þat neue,
Such a dasande drede dusched to his hert,

Þat al falewed his face & fayled þe chere;
Þe stronge strok of þe stonde strayned his ioy*n*tes,
His knees knock together.
His cnes cachches to close & cluchches his ho*m*mes,
lers] MS. ler*n*s.
& he w*i*t*h* plat-ty*n*g his paumes displayes his lers,
He roars for dread, still beholding the hand, as it wrote on the rough wall.
& romyes as a rad ryth þat rore3 for drede,
Ay biholdand þe honde til hit hade al g*ra*uen,
& rasped on þe ro3 wo3e runisch saue3.
scrof] MS. *strof*.
When hit þe scrypture hade scraped wyth a scrof pe*n*ne,
As a colto*ur* i*n* clay cerues þ*o* for3es,
[Fol. 78*b*.] The hand vanishes but the letters remain.
Þe*n*ne hit vanist v*er*ayly & voyded of sy3t,
Bot þe lettres bileued ful large vpon plast*er*.
The king recovers his speech and sends for the "book-learned;"
Sone so þe ky*n*ge for his care carpi*n*g my3t wy*n*ne,
He bede his burnes bo3 to þat were bok lered,
To wayte þe wryt þat hit wolde & wyt*er* hym to say,
"For al hit frayes my flesche þe fyngres so gry*m*me."

but none of the scholars were wise
enough to read it.
Scoleres skelten þeratte þe skyl forto
fynde,
Bot þer wat3 neu*er* on so wyse couþe
on worde rede,
Ne what ledisch lore ne langage
nauþ*er*
What tyþy*n*g ne tale tokened þo
dra3tes.
Belshazzar is nearly mad.
Þe*n*ne þe bolde balta3ar bred ner
wode.
ede] *bede* (?).
& ede þe Ceté to seche segges þur3-
out,

THE KING CONSULTS HIS DIVINERS.

Commands the city to be searched
throughout for the "wise of witchcraft."
Þat wer wyse of wyche-crafte &
warla3es oþ*er*,
Þat con dele wyth dem*er*layk, &
deuine lettres:
"Calle hem alle to my cort þo calde
clerkkes,
Vn-folde hem alle þis ferly þat is
bifallen here,
He who expounds the strange letters,
& calle wyth a hi3e cry; 'he þat
þe ky*n*g wysses,
In expouny*n*g of speche þat spredes
i*n* þise lettres,
& make þe mat*er* to malt my mynde
wyth-i*n*ne,
Þat I may wyt*er*ly wyt what þat wryt
menes,

shall be clothed in “gowns of purple.”
He schal þe gered ful gaye i*n*
gounes of porpre,
A collar of gold shall encircle his throat.
& a coler of cler golde clos vmbe his
þrote;
He shall be the third lord in the realm.
He schal be prymate & prynce of
pure clergye,
& of my þreuenest lorde3 þe þrydde
he schal
& of my reme þe rychest to ryde
wyth myseluen,
Out-taken bare two & þe*n*ne he þe
þrydde.’”
As soon as this cry was upcast, to the hall came clerks out of Chaldea,
Þis cry wat3 vp-caste, & þer comen
mony
Clerkes out of caldye þat ke*n*nest wer
knauen,
As þe sage sathrapas þat sorsory
couþe;
witches and diviners,
Wyche3 & walkyries wo*n*nen to þat
sale,
Deuinores of demorlaykes þat
dremes cowþe rede,
sorcerers and exorcists.
Sorsers & exorsism*us* & fele such
clerkes;
But after looking on the letters they were as ignorant as if they had looked into the leather of the left boot.
& alle þat loked on þat lett*er* as
lewed þay were,
As þay had loked i*n* þe leþ*er* of my

lyft bote.
Þe*n*ne cryes þe ky*n*g & kerues his wedes;
The king curses them all and calls them churls.
What! he corsed his clerkes & calde hem chorles,
[Fol. 79*a*.] He orders the harlots to be hanged.
To henge þe harlotes he he3ed ful ofte,
So wat3 þe wy3e wytles, he wed wel ner.
The queen hears the king chide.
Ho herde hy*m* chyde to þe chambre þat wat3 þe chef quene;
She inquires the cause.
When ho wat3 wyt*er*ed bi wy3es what wat3 þe cause,
Suche a chau*n*gande chau*n*ce i*n* þe chef halle,
lauce] *lance* (?).
Þe lady to lauce þat los þat þe lorde hade,
Goes to the king, kneels before him,
Glydes dou*n* by þe grece & gos to þe ky*n*g;
Ho kneles on þe colde erþe & carpes to hy*m* seluen,
Wordes of worchyp wyth a wys speche.
“Kene ky*n*g,” q*uod* þe quene, “kayser of vrþe,
Eu*er* laste þy lyf i*n* lenþe of dayes;
and asks why he has rent his robes for grief,
Why hat3 þou rended þy robe for redles here-i*n*ne,

Þa3 þose ledes ben lewed lettres to rede,
& hat3 a haþel i*n* þy holde, as I haf herde ofte,
when there is one that has the Spirit of God,
Þat hat3 þe gostes of god þat gyes alle soþes;
His sawle is ful of syence, sa3es to schawe,
To open vch a hide þy*ng* of aunt*er*es vn-cowþe;
the counsellor of Nebuchadnezzar,
Þat is he þat ful ofte hat3 heuened þy fader
Of mony ang*er* ful hote w*ith* his holy speche.
When nabugo-de-no3ar wat3 nyed i*n* stou*n*des,
the interpreter of his dreams,
He de-vysed his dremes to þe dere trawþe,
He keu*er*ed hy*m* w*ith* his cou*n*sayl of caytyf wyrdes;
83
Alle þat he spured hym i*n* space he expowned clene,
through the holy Spirit of God.
Þur3 þe sped of þe spyryt þat sprad hy*m* w*ith*-i*n*ne,
Of þe godelest godde3 þat gaynes ay-where.
For his depe diuinité & his dere sawes,

DANIEL IS SENT FOR.

by] *be* (?). The name of this man is

Daniel,
Þy bolde fader balta3ar bede by his name,
Þat now is demed danyel of derne coni*n*ges,
who was brought a captive from Judæa.
Þat ca3t wat3 i*n* þe captyuidé i*n* cu*n*tre of iues;
Nabu3ardan hy*m* nome & now is he here,
A prophete of þat prouince & pryce of þe worlde.
The queen tells the king to send for Daniel.
Sende i*n*-to þe ceté to seche hy*m* bylyue,
& wy*n*ne hy*m* wi*th* þe worchyp to wayne þe bote,
& þa3 þe mat*er* be merk þat merked is 3ender,
He schal de-clar hit also, as hit on clay stande."
as] MS. *as as*. Her counsel is accepted.
Þat gode cou*n*seyl at þe quene wat3 cached as swyþe,
[Fol. 79*b*.]
Þe burne byfore balta3ar wat3 bro3t i*n* a whyle,
Daniel comes before Belshazzar.
When he com bifore þe ky*n*g & clanly had halsed,
Balta3ar vmbe-brayde hy*m* & "leue s*ir*," he sayde,
The king tells him that he has heard of his wisdom,
"Hit is tolde me bi tulkes, þat þ*o*u trwe were
Profete of þat prouynce þat

prayed my fader,
Ande þat þou hat3 i*n* þy hert holy
co*n*ny*n*g,
Of sapyence þi sawle ful soþes to
schawe;
and his power to discover hidden things,
Goddes gost is þe geuen þat gyes alle
þy*n*ge*s*,
1628 & þou vnhyles vch hidde þat
heuen ky*n*g my*n*tes;
and that he wants to know the meaning
of the writing on the wall.
& here is a ferly byfallen, & I fayn
wolde
Wyt þe wytte of þe wryt, þat on þe
wowe clyues,
For alle calde clerkes han
cowwardely fayled;
Promises him, if he can explain the text
of the letters and their interpretation,
1632 If þou w*ith* quay*n*tyse co*n*quere
hit, I quyte þe þy mede.
For if þou redes hit by ry3t & hit to
resou*n* bry*n*ges,
Fyrst telle me þe tyxte of þe tede
lettres,
& syþen þe mat*er* of þe mode, mene
me þ*er*-aft*er*,
1636 & I schal halde þe þe hest þat I
þe hy3t haue;
to clothe him in purple and pall, and put
a ring about his neck,
Apyke þe i*n* porpre cloþe, palle
alþer-fynest,
and to make him “a baron upon bench.”
& þe by3e of bry3t golde abowte þy*n*
nekke,

& þe þryd þryuenest þat þry*n*ges me
aft*er*,
Þou schal be barou*n* vpon
benche, bede I þe no lasse."

DANIEL DESCRIBES HOW NEBUCHADNEZZAR

Daniel addresses the king,
Derfly þe*n*ne danyel deles þyse
wordes:
84
"Ryche ky*n*g of þis rengne rede þe
oure lorde,
and reminds him how that God supported his father,
Hit is surely soth, þe sou*er*ayn of
heuen
Fylsened eu*er* þy fader & vpon
folde cheryched,
and gave him power to exalt or abase whomsoever he pleased.
Gart hy*m* grattest to be of gou*er*nores
alle,
& alle þe worlde i*n* his wylle welde
as hy*m* lykes.
Who-so wolde wel do, wel hy*m*
bityde,
& quos deth so he de3yre he
dreped als fast;
Who-so hy*m* lyked to lyft, on lofte
wat3 he sone,
& quo-so hy*m* lyked to lay, wat3
lo3ed bylyue.
Nebuchadnezzar was established
So wat3 noted þe note of nabugo-de-
no3ar,
Styfly stabled þe rengne bi þe
stronge dry3ty*n*,

on account of his faith in God.
For of þe hy3est he hade a hope i*n*
his hert,
Þat vche pou*er* past out of [þ]at
prynce euen;
So long as he remained true, no man was greater.
& whyle þat wat3 cle3t clos i*n* his
hert,
Þere wat3 no mon vpon molde
of my3t as hy*m* selue*n*,
[Fol. 80*a*.] But at last pride touches his heart.
Til hit bitide on a tyme, towched
hy*m* pryde
For his lordeschyp so large, & his lyf
ryche;
He hade so huge an insy3t to his
aune dedes,
He forgets the power of God, and blasphemes His name.
Þat þe power of þe hy3e prynce
he purely for3etes.
Þe*n*ne bly*n*nes he not of blasfemyon
to blame þe dry3ty*n*,
His my3t mete to goddes he made
wit*h* his wordes:
He says that he is "god of the ground,"
"I am god of þe grou*n*de, to gye as
me lykes,
As he þat hy3e is i*n* heuen his
au*n*geles þa*t* weldes;
If he hat3 formed þe folde & folk þ*er*
vpone,
and the builder of Babylon.
I haf bigged babiloyne, bur3 alþ*er*-
rychest,
Stabled þer-i*n*ne vche a ston i*n*

strenkþe of myn armes,
Mo3t neuer my3t bot myn make such anoþer."
Hardly had Nebuchadnezzar spoken, when God's voice is heard, saying, "Thy principality is departed.
Wat3 not þis ilke worde wonnen of his mowþe one,
Er þennе þe souerayn sa3e souned in his eres,
"Now nabugo-de-no3ar innо3e hat3 spoken,
Now is alle þy pryncipalté past at ones,
Thou, removed from men, must abide on the moor, and walk with wild beasts, eat herbs, and dwell with wolves and asses."
& þou, remued fro monnes sunes, on mor most abide,
& in wasterne walk & wyth þe wylde dowelle,
As best, byte on þe bent of braken & erbes,
With wroþe wolfes to won & wyth wylde asses."
In mydde þe poynt of his pryde departed he þere,

WAS PUNISHED FOR HIS PRIDE.

For his pride he becomes an outcast.
Fro þe soly of his solempneté, his solace he leues,
& carfully is out-kast to contré vnknawen,
Fer in-to a fyr fryth þere frekes

neu*er* comen.
He believes himself to be a bull or an ox.
His hert heldet vnhole, he hoped non oþ*er*
Bot a best þat he be, a bol oþ*er* an oxe.
Goes "on all fours,"
He fares forth on alle faure, fogge wat3 his mete,
& ete ay as a horce when erbes were fallen,
like a cow,
Þus he cou*n*tes hy*m* a kow, þat wat3 a ky*n*g ryche,
for seven summers.
Quyle seuen syþe3 were ou*er*-seyed som*er*es I trawe.
His thighs grew thick.
By þat, mony þik thy3e þry3t vmbe his lyre,
Þat alle wat3 dubbed & dy3t i*n* þe dew of heuen;
His hair became matted and thick, from the shoulders to the toes.
Faxe fylt*er*ed, & felt flosed hy*m* vmbe,
Þat schad fro his schulderes to his schyre wykes,
& twenty-folde twyna*n*de hit to his tos ra3t
Þer mony clyuy as clyde hit cly3t to-geder.
His beard touched the earth.
His berde I-brad alle his brest to þe bare vrþe,
His brows were like briars. [Fol. 80*b*.]
His browes bresed as breres aboute

his brode chekes;
His eyes were hollow,
and grey as the kite's.
Hol3e were his y3en & vnder campe hores,
1696 & al wat3 gray as þe glede, w*ith* ful gry*m*me clawres
paune] ? *panne*.
Þat were croked & kene as þe kyte paune;
Eagle-hued he was.
Erne-hwed he wat3 & al ou*er*-brawden,
Til he wyst ful wel who wro3t alle my3tes,
1700 & cowþe vche kyndam tokerue & keu*er* when hy*m* lyked;
At last he recovered his "wit,"
Þe*n*ne he wayned hy*m* his wyt þat hade wo soffered,
Þat he com to knawlach & ke*n*ned hy*m* seluen,
laued] *loued* (?). and believed in God.
Þe*n*ne he laued þat lorde & leued i*n* trawþe,
1704 Hit wat3 non oþ*er* þen he þat hade al i*n* honde.
Then soon was he restored to his seat.
Þe*n*ne sone wat3 he sende agayn, his sete restored;
His barou*n*es bo3ed hy*m* to, blyþe of his come,
Ha3erly i*n* his aune hwe his heued wat3 cou*er*ed,
1708 & so 3eply wat3 3arked & 3olden his state.
But thou, Belshazzar, hast disregarded these signs,

Bot þou balta3ar his barne & his
bolde ayre,
Se3 þese sy*n*gnes w*ith* sy3t & set hem
at lyttel,
Bot ay hat3 hofen þy hert agaynes þe
hy3e dry3t[y]n,
and hast blasphemed the Lord,
1712 W*ith* bobau*n*ce & w*ith* blasfamye
bost at hy*m* kest,
86 defiled his vessels,
& now his vessayles avyled i*n* vanyté
vnclene,
Þat i*n* his hows hy*m* to hono*ur* were
heue*n*ed of fyrst;
filling them with wine for thy wenches,
Bifore þe barou*n*3 hat3 hom bro3t, &
byrled þ*er*i*n*ne
1716 Wale wyne to þy wenches i*n*
waryed stou*n*des;
Bifore þy borde hat3 þou bro3t
beu*er*age i*n* þede,
Þat blyþely were fyrst blest w*ith*
bischopes hondes,
and praising thy lifeless gods.
Louande þeron lese godde3, þat lyf
haden neu*er*,
1720 Made of stokkes & stone3 þat
neu*er* styry mo3t.
For this sin God has sent thee this
strange sight,
& for þat froþande fylþe, þe fader of
heuen
Hat3 sende] MS. *hat3 sende hat3 sende*.
Hat3 sende i*n*-to þis sale þise sy3tes
vncowþe,
the fist with the fingers writing on the
wall.
Þe fyste w*ith* þe fy*ng*e*r*es þat flayed

þi hert,
Þat rasped renyschly þe wo3e
wi*th* þe ro3 pe*n*ne.

THE INTERPRETATION OF THE HANDWRITING.

These are the words:
Þise ar þe wordes here wryten wi*th*-
oute werk more,
By vch fygure, as I fynde, as oure
fader lykes.
"Mene, Tekel, Peres.
"Mane, techal, phares, merked i*n*
þry*n*ne,
Þat þretes þe of þy*n* vnþryfte
vpon þre wyse;
Now expowne þe þis speche spedly I
þenk.
[Fol. 81*a*.] Mene.— God has counted thy kingdom and finished it.
Mane menes als much as, maynful
gode
Hat3 cou*n*ted þy kyndam bi a clene
nou*m*bre,
& ful-fylled hit i*n* fayth to þe
fyrre ende.
Tekel.— Thy reign is weighed and is found wanting in deeds of faith.
To teche þe of techal, þat terme þ*us*
menes,
Þy wale rengne is walt i*n* we3tes to
heng,
& is fu*n*de ful fewe of hit fayth
dedes.
& phares fol3es for þose fawtes
to frayst þe trawþe,
Peres.— Thy kingdom is divided,
In phares fynde I forsoþe þise felle

sa3es;
De-parted is þy pryncipalté,
depryued þou worþes,
and given to the Persians.
Þy rengne rafte is þe fro, & ra3t is þe
perses,
The Medes shall be masters here."
1740 Þe medes schal be mayst*er*es
here, & þou of menske
schowued."
The king commands Daniel to be clothed in a frock of fine cloth.
Þe ky*n*g comau*n*ded anon to cleþe
þ*a*t wyse,
In frokkes of fyn cloþ, as forward hit
asked;
Soon is he arrayed in purple, with a chain about his neck.
Þe*n*ne sone wat3 danyel dubbed i*n*
ful dere porpor
coler] MS. *cloler*.
1744 & a coler of cler golde kest vmbe
his swyre.
Þe*n* wat3 demed a de-cre bi þe duk
seluen,
A decree is made, that all should bow to him,
Bolde balta3a[r] bed þat hy*m* bowe
schulde
Þe comynes a lof calde þat to þe
ky*n*g lo*n*ged,
87 as the third lord that followed Belshazzar.
1748 As to þe prynce pryuyest preued
þe þrydde,
He3est of alle oþ*er*, saf onelych
tweyne,
To bo3 aft*er* balta3ar i*n* bor3e & i*n*

felde.
The decree was made known, and all were glad.
Þys wat3 cryed & knawen i*n* cort als fast,
1752 & alle þe folk þer-of fayn þat fol3ed hy*m* tylle;
The day, however, past.
Bot how-so danyel wat3 dy3t, þat day ou*er*-3ede,
Night came on.
Ny3t ne3ed ry3t now wi*th* nyes fol mony,
Before another day dawned,
Daniel's words were fulfilled.
For da3ed neu*er* an oþ*er* day þat ilk derk aft*er*,
1756 Er dalt were þat ilk dome þat danyel deuysed,
The feast lasts till the sun falls.
Þe solace of þe solempneté i*n* þat sale dured
Of þat farand fest, tyl fayled þe su*n*ne;
blykned] *blaykned* (?) The skies become dark.
Þe*n*ne blykned þe ble of þe bry3t skwes,
1760 Mo*ur*kenes þe mery weder, & þe myst dryues
Þor3 þe lyst of þe lyfte, bi þe lo3 medoes;
Each noble hies home to his supper.
Vche haþel to his home hy3es ful fast,
Seten at her sop*er* & songen þ*er*-aft*er*,
1764 Þen fou*n*de3 vch a fela3schyp fyrre at forþ na3tes.

DARIUS LAYS SIEGE TO BABYLON.

Belshazzar is carried to bed, but never rises from it,

Balta3ar to his bedd with blysse wat3 caryed,
[Fol. 81*b*.]
Reche þe rest as hy*m* lyst, he ros neu*er* þer-aft*er*;

for his foes are seeking to destroy his land, and are assembled suddenly.

For his foes i*n* þe felde i*n* flokkes ful grete
Þat longe hade layted þat lede his londes to strye,
Now ar þay sodenly assembled at þe self tyme,
Of hem wyst no wy3e þat i*n* þat won dowelled.

The enemy is Darius, leader of the Medes.

Hit wat3 þe dere daryus þe duk of þise medes,
Þe prowde prynce of perce & porros of ynde,

He has legions of armed men.

W*ith* mony a legiou*n* ful large, w*ith* ledes of armes,
Þat now hat3 spyed a space to spoyle caldee3.

Under cover of the darkness, they cross the river.

Þay þrongen þeder i*n* þe þest*er* on þrawen hepes,
Asscaped ou*er* þe skyre watt*er*es & scaþed þe walles,

By means of ladders they get upon the walls,

Lyfte laddres ful longe & vpon lofte
wonen,
Stelen stylly þe tou*n* er any steue*n*
rysed,
ny3t] MS. *my3t*. and within an hour enter the city, without disturbing any of the watch.
W*it*h-i*n*ne an oure of þe ny3t an entré
þay hade;
1780 3et afrayed þay no freke, fyrre
þay passen,
& to þe palays pry*n*cipal þay
aproched ful stylle;
They run into the palace, and raise a great cry.
Þe*n*ne ran þay i*n* on a res, on rowtes
ful grete,
Blastes out of bry3t brasse brestes so
hy3e,
88
1784 Ascry scarred on þe scue þat
scomfyted mony.
Men are slain in their beds.
Segges slepande were slayne er þay
slyppe my3t,
Vche ho*us* heyred wat3, w*it*h-i*n*ne a
honde-whyle;

BELSHAZZAR IS BEATEN TO DEATH.

Belshazzar is beaten to death,
Balta3ar i*n* his bed wat3 beten to
deþe,
1788 Þat boþe his blod & his brayn
blende on þe cloþes;
and caught by the heels, is foully cast into a ditch.
The ky*n*g i*n* his cortyn wat3 ka3t bi

þe heles,
Feryed out bi þe fete & fowle dispysed;
Þat wat3 so do3ty þat day & drank of þe vessayl,
Now is a dogge al so dere þat in a dych lygges;
Darius is crowned king,
For þe mayst*er* of þyse medes on þe morne ryses,
Dere daryo*us* þat day dy3t vpon trone,
and makes peace with the barons.
Þat ceté seses ful sou*n*de, & sa3tly*n*g makes
Wyth alle þe barou*n*3 þ*er*-aboute, þat bowed hy*m* aft*er*.
Thus the land was lost for the king's sin.
& þ*us* wat3 þat londe lost for þe lordes sy*n*ne,
& þe fylþe of þe freke þat defowled hade
Þe orne-mentes of godde3 ho*us* þat holy were maked;
He was cursed for his uncleanness,
He wat3 corsed for his vn-cla*n*nes, & cached þ*er*-i*n*ne,
Done dou*n* of his dy*n*gneté for dede3 vnfayre,
and deprived of his honour, as well as of the joys of heaven.
& of þyse worldes worchyp wrast out for eu*er*,
& 3et of lyky*n*ges on lofte letted, I trowe,
Thus in three ways has it been shown,

To loke on oure lofly lorde late bitydes.
Þus vpon þry*n*ne wyses I haf yow þro schewed,
that uncleanness
Þat vn-cla*n*nes to-cleues i*n* corage dere
Of þat wy*n*nelych lorde þat wonyes i*n* heuen,
telled] *telles* (?). makes God angry.
Entyses hy*m* to be tene, telled vp his wrake;
Cleanness is His comfort.
Ande cla*n*nes is his comfort, & coyntyse he louyes,
The seemly shall see his face.
& þose þat seme arn & swete schy*n* se his face.
God give us grace to serve in His sight!
Þat we gon gay i*n* oure gere þat gr*a*ce he v*us* sende,
Þat we may serue i*n* his sy3t, þ*er* solace neu*er* bly*n*ne3. Amen.

108

Notes to Cleanness.

The Notes were printed in a group, immediately before the Index. They have been distributed among the three poems for convenience.

Page 37. l. 3 *forering* = *for-bering*. (?)

10 *reken*, reverently, solemnly.

12 *cleche gret mede*, take great reward.

16 *& hym to greme cachen*, and him to wrath drive.

18 *hagherlych*, fitly, decently.

21 *scoymous & skyg*, scrupulous and particular; *skyg* implies dread, fear, shyness.

23 *in a carp*, in a discourse.

24 *heuened a3t happe3*, exhibited eight blessings.

25 *me myne3*, I remember.

109

P. 38. l. 27 *hapene3*, is happy, blessed.

29 *as so sayt3*, as one says.

32

May not byde þat burne (? *burre*) *þat hit his body ne3en*,

May not abide (suffer) that man (? blow), that it (? he) should approach his body.

39 *helded*, approached.

41 *tote3* = *tot3* = toes.

49 *worþlych*, worshipful (? *worldlych*, worldly).

50 *in her* (? *herin*).

52 *here dere*, beloved heir.

54 *comly quoyntis*, comely attire.

56 *with scla3t*, against (for) slaughter.

59 *roþeled*, ready prepared, literally hastened.

62 *skyly*, device, excuse.

P. 39. l. 65 *nayed*, refused; *nurned*, uttered.

71 *a-dre3*, aback, aside.

76

More to wyte is her wrange, þen
any wylle gentyl,
More to blame is their fault,
than any forlorn gentile.

Wylle has the significations of wandering, astray; as "*wyl dremes*," wandering dreams, "*wylle of wone*," astray from human habitations, having lost one's way; and hence *wylle* is often used to denote uncertainty, bewilderment.

81 *laþe3*, invite.

90 *sty3tled*, established, placed.

91 *þe marchal*, i.e. the marshal of the hall, whose duty it was, at public festivals, to place every person according to his rank and station.

95 *at þi banne*, at thy command.

96 *renischche renke3*, strange men.

97 *layte3 3et ferre*, search yet farther.

P. 40. l. 99 *wayte3*, watch.

103 *balterande cruppele3*, limping cripples. *Balter* signifies to jump, skip, hop, etc.

110 *demed*, decreed.

112

Hit weren not alle on wyue3 sune3, wonen with on fader,

They were not all one wife's sons, begotten with one father.

127

& rehayte rekenly þe riche & þe poueren,

And cheer, prince-like (nobly), the rich and the poor.

Rehete is the most common form of the word:

"Him would I comforte and *rehete*." —Rom. Rose, l. 6509.

131 *syled fyrre*, proceeded farther.

132 *Tron fro table to table*, went from table to table. *Tron* is the pret. of the verb *tryne*, to go, walk.

P. 41. l. 134 *Hit wat3 not*, there was one (who) was not.

135 *þry3t*, thrust; *unþryuandely*, badly.

144 *ratted*, rent, torn.

145 *goun febele*. Cf. *feble wede*, bad or poor clothing. —Havelok the Dane, l. 418.

149 *broþe worde3*, angry (fierce) words.

150 *Hurkele*, cower, hang. *Hurkele* signifies, literally, to squat, nestle, rest.

153 *laled*, spoke (quickly).

164 *ful3ed*, baptised.

166 *harme lache*, take hurt.

P. 42. l. 179 *As*, also; *bolnande priyde*, swelling pride.

180

Þroly in-to þe deuele3 þrote
man þrynge3 bylyue,

Roughly into the devil's throat
man is thrust soon.

181 *colwarde*, deceitful, treacherous. I have not been able to meet with the word *colle* used as noun or verb in any writer of the 14th or 15th century. *Col* occurs, however, as a prefix, in *Col-prophet* (false prophet), *Col-fox* (crafty fox), used by Chaucer; *Col-knyfe* (treacherous knife), which occurs in the "Townley Mysteries."

200 *hatel of his wylle*, anger of his will.

P. 43. l. 207 *attled*, endowed.

215 *met3* = *mess* (?), pity.

216 *tynt þe tyþe dool*, lost the tenth part.

222 *weued*, cut off. *swap*, blow.

230 *þe wrech sa3tled*, appeased the vengeance.

231 *wylnesful*, wilfulness.

233

For-þy þa3 þe rape were rank,
þe rawþe wat3 lyttel,

Wherefore, though the blow
were smart, the sorrow
was little.

237 *in obedyent* = *in-obedyent* (?), disobedient.

110

P. 44. l. 246 *drepe*, destroy (slay).

257 *forme-foster* should be *forme-fostere3*, being in apposition with *auncetere3*.

261 For *lede* read *lede3* (?).

270 *de3ter of þe douþe*, the daughters of the mighty (doughty) ones.

271 *on folken wyse*, after the manner of men.

P. 45. l. 273 *meþele3*, immoderate, intemperate.

274 *alosed*, (? noted).

298 *þryuen*, grown up, adult.

306 *nwyed* = annoyed, *i.e.* displeased.

P. 46. l. 320 *dutande*, shutting.

321 *halke3*, recesses.

331 *þis meyny of a3te*, this company (household) of eight.

335 *horwed*, unclean.

P. 47. l. 350 *with-outen þrep*, without contradiction, gainsaying.

354 *a rowtande ryge*, a rattling shower.

359 *styste3* = *stynte3* stops, ceases.

362 *& alle woned in þe whichche*, and all abode in the ark. *Whichche* is another (and genuine) form of *hutch*.

364

Waltes out vch walle-heued, in ful wode streme3,

Bursts out each well-head (spring, fountain) in full wild streams.

365 *brymme*, stream.

366 *þe mukel lauande loghe*, the great flowing deep.

369 *fon*, ceased.

373 *moon*, moan, sorrow.

374 *dowed*, availed.

375 *wylger*, wilder, fiercer.

376 *dowelled* = *dwelled*.

377 *feng to þe fly3t*, took to flight.

378 *Vuche burde with her barne*, each woman with her child (bairn).

P. 48. l. 379 *bowed*, hastened; *brentest*, highest, steepest.

380 *heterly*, quickly, (hotly); *haled*, rushed.

381 *Bot al wat3 nedle3 her note*, but their device was altogether in vain.

382 *þe ro3e raynande ryg*, the rough raining shower; *raykande wawe3*, flowing waves.

383 *boþom*, a *bottom* or valley.

384 *demmed*, collected, accumulated.

391 *þe hy3e*, the heights, high grounds.

392 *bausene3*, badgers.

394 *re-coverer*, succour, refuge.

395 *Þat amounted*, etc., read *Þat amounted þe mase*, etc., that the astonishment increased. (Professor Child).

397 *Bi þat*, by that time. This phrase is still preserved in the North of England.

399

Frende3, fellen in fere, faþmed to-geder.

Friends, fallen in company, *embraced* (fathomed) together.

The verb *faþme* in Early English also signifies to *grope*.

400 *dry3*, suffer; *delful*, doleful.

404 *freten*, devoured; *wa3e3*, waves.

406 *hurkled*, rested. This word is still preserved in the local dialects of the

North of England, with the sense of “to cower,” “squat.”

407 *mourkne*, rotten.

409 *here*, company.

411 *a3t-sum*, in care, sorrowful.

413 *hurlande gote3*, rushing streams.

414 *kythe3 vncouþe*, unknown regions.

P. 49. l. 421 *flyt*, current, flitting.

424 *lumpen*, the passive participle of *lympen*, to befal, happen.

430 *yre3* is evidently an error for *yþe3*, waves.

433 *Rac*, moving clouds, mists. Still in provincial use.

436 *meth*, pity, mercy.

438 *lasned*, lessened, became smaller.

439 *stac vp þe stange3*, closed up the pools. *Stang* = *stanc*, *stank*, a word still used in the North of England.

441 *lo3* = *logh*, deep.

443 *lome* = *loom*, i.e., the ark.

446 *rasse* = the provincial *raise*, a mound.

449 *kyste* = chest (ark); *wern* = *were* (?).

P. 50. l. 451 *egge3*, *edges*, banks, hills; *vnhuled*, uncovered.

452 *bynne*, within. Cf. *boute*, without.

461 *smach* smack, scent; *smoltes* (? *smolte*, i.e. smelt).

463 *3ederly*, quickly, soon; *steuen*, command, literally voice.

466 *fode3*, persons; *elle3*, provided that.

469 *doune* = *dovene*, a female dove (see line 481).

111

476 *dre3ly*, drearily, sorrowfully.

480 *naytly*, dexterously (neatly).

482 *borne* = *burne*, stream.

483 *skwe*, sky, cloud; *skowte3*, looks.

P. 51. l. 485 *downe* = *dovene* (see ll. 469, 481).

487 *What!* lo!

490 *sa3tlyng*, reconciliation.

496 *woned* = *waned*, decreased, gone down.

498 *tyned*, enclosed.

499 *gode3 glam*, God's message (word); *glod*, came, literally glided.

501 *walt wafte* (?) (see B. l. 857).

504 *þroly þrublande in þronge*, quickly pressing in throng (crowd), *i.e.*, huddling together.

509 *breþe*, steam, savour.

511 *spede3* & *spylle3*, prospers (speeds) and spoils.

517 *barnage*, childhood.

P. 52. l. 525 *sadde*, sharp, bitter.

529 *þen wat3 a skylly skyualde*, then was a design (purpose) manifested (ordered).

531 *nayte*, use, employ.

533 *wryþe3*, crawl, creep.

534 *folmarde*, polecat.

536 *lake ryftes*, fissures of the lake.

537 *Herne3 = erne3*, eagles.

539 *at a brayde*, in a moment.

P. 53. l. 558 *merked*, ordained.

561 *ra3t*, extended to, gave.

566 *syt*, fault.

567 *quyke3*, living (things); *qued*, wickedness.

573 *vnhappen glette*, unfortunate filth, unhappy sin.

579 *heþyng of seluen*, contempt of [God's] self.

583 *steppe y3e*, bright eye; *steppe* = *stepe* is often explained by steep, deep set; but we often meet with such phrases as "*stepe* stones," bright stones, "*stepe* starres," bright stars.

586 *losed þe listen*, lost the hearing; *lysten*, in O.E. has frequently the meaning of *to hear*.

587 *trave* = *trawe*, trow, believe.

588

þer is no dede so derne þat
ditte3 his y3en.

There is no deed so secret that closes His eyes (*i.e.* that He does not see).

P. 54. l. 591 *gropande*, searching, examining.

592

Rypande of vche a ring þe
reynye3 & hert

Trying (probing) the reins and heart of every man.

Rype is still used in the North of England in the sense of to plunder. Cf. our modern use of the word *ransack* with its earlier meanings of to try, probe, search.

596 *honyse3*, disgraces, ruins, destroys.

598 *scarre3*, literally *scares*, is frightened, startled.

599 *to drawe allyt* = *to draw a lyte* = to draw back a little.

603 *blykked*, shone, glared.

605 *schunt*, aside, from *schunt*, to slip away, retreat.

P. 55. l. 623 *orppedly*, quickly, hastily.

626 *happe*, cover, still in use in the north provincial dialects.

627 *som quat fat*, some sort of a vessel; *þe fyr bete*, make up the fire; *bete* signifies, literally, to mend.

632 *deruely* = *derfely*, quickly.

635 *þerue kake3* = *therfe* or *tharfe* cakes, *i.e.*, cakes made without leaven.

646 *mensk*, thanks.

648 *leþe*, cease.

652 *3ark*, select, chosen.

653 *for busmar*, in scorn.

654 *sothly* = truly (? *sotly*, foolishly or *softly*).

Numbered 655 and printed after following note. The word “sothely” also occurs in 657, but the text note (“sotly...”) refers to 654.

655

May þou traw for tykel þat þou tonne mo3te3,

Mayst thou trow (believe) for the uncertainty (of such a thing) that thou mightest conceive;

for tykel, on account of the uncertainty.

P. 56. l. 659 *byene* = *ben*, been or *bycame*. The sense would require *hade* before *byene*, if *byene* = *ben*.

668

Þat for lot þat þay lansed ho
laȝed neuer,
That for (any) sound that they
uttered, she never
laughed;

lot = late, in the sense of *sound*, is not very common in Old English authors.

670 *a-loȝ* = lowly, softly.

686 *blod*, child.

687 *bos*, behoves.

688 *atlyng*, intention, purpose; *vn-haspe*, disclose.

P. 57. l. 696 *fylter*, join.

698 *amed*, placed; *oddely dere*, singularly dear. *Oddely* occurs in some northern works with the sense of illustriously, nobly.

699 *drwry*, love; *doole alþer-swettest*, the sweetest of all gifts; gift the sweetest of all.

703 *conne* is probably an error for *come*, but it may signify, be kindled, produced, begotten.

706 *stollen*, stealthy, secret.

711 *smod* = the Scotch *smot*, *smad*, stain, filth.

719 *þe worre half*, the weaker portion, literally, the worse half.

723 *laue*, law.

P. 58. l. 732 *smolt*, be at peace.

740 *for hortyng*, for hurting = for fear of hurting. This sense of *for* is very common in writers of the 16th and 17th centuries.

743 *fryst*, delay, put off.

747 *vsle*, ashes, cinders.

752 *leþe*, destroy.

754 *I schal my þro steke*, I shall moderate (literally, shut up) my anger.

756 *reken*, wise.

P. 59. l. 764 *mese þy mode*, temper thy wrath.

778 *mere*, boundary, *meer*.

784 *lened* = leaned, reclined; but we may read *leued* = *beleued*, remained.

P. 60. l. 796 *vnder-ʒede* = *vnder-ʒete*, understood.

801 *knaueʒ kote*, servant's house. It looks at first sight like *kuchieʒ kote*.

802 *fatte* = *vat*, vessel.

803 *norne* = *nurne*, request.

810 *gruʒt*, gruched = begrudged.

813 *couþe*, knew.

814 *haylsed*, saluted.

824 *boute*, without.

830 *of glam debonere*, of pleasant, courteous conversation.

831 *wela-wynnely*, very joyfully.

P. 61. l. 832 *woʒe* = *wowe*, wall.

835 *wakker* comp. *wayk*, weak.

836 *vmbe-lyʒe*, surround.

838 *scowte-wach*, sentinel; *asscry*, cry, shout, noise.

846 *ʒeʒed* = chattered, gaggled; *ʒestande sorʒe*, afflicting (or frothing) sorrow.

848 *brych* = what is low, vile, filthy (? *bryth*, breath); *vpbrayde*ʒ, raises.

849 *glyfte with þat glam*, was frightened at that speech.

855 *wonded no woþe*, avoided no danger (hurt).

859 *meled*, spoke.

860 *hendelayk*, courtesy, civility.

P. 62. l. 871 *tayt* = lively.

874 *a3ly* = *awly*, fearfully.

876 *out-comlyng*, a stranger. In this form it is still known in the North of England. *Comlyng* is the more usual form of the word in our early literature; *carle* = *churl*.

881 *3ornen*, ran.

882 *wapped*, beat.

885 *in blande* = together (?); *banned*, cursed.

888 *nyteled*, laboured, toiled.

889 *of tayt*, from fear. *Teyt*, fear, alarm, occurs in the northern romance of Alexander.

890 *roþeled*, hastened.

892 *vglokest vnhap*, the most dreadful misfortune.

893

Ruddon of þe day-rawe ros
vpon v3ten.

The light of the day-break rose
on the morn.

894 *merk*, darkness.

895 *ruþen*, rouse.

901 *cayre tid of þis kythe*, depart quickly from this land.

P. 63. l. 905 *stemme no stepe*, stop (keep back), no step. Cf. our modern phrase "*stem* the tide."

909 *losen*, destroy.

911 *gorde*, rush.

912 *clater*, shatter.

915 *kynned*, kindled.

916 *þe brath of his breth*, the fierceness of his wrath.

918 *foo-schip*, enmity.

921 *walle* = *wale*, choose; *wonnyng*, dwelling, abode.

927 *vtter*, without.

928 *wore* = *ware* = were. Cf. *thore* = *thare* = there.

931 *agayn-tote*, looking back; *tote* (toot) occurs frequently with the sense of "to peep," "look," in Early English.

P. 64. l. 944 *Loke 3e bowe now bi bot*, Look ye go now by (according to) command.

947 *greme*, wrath.

948 *wakan*, arouse, stir up.

950 *flytande*, chiding, murmuring.

955 *smachande*, savouring, smelling.

964 *riftes*, fissures.

113

965 *cloutes*, pieces.

969 *Rydelles* = *redeless* = without counsel, helpless; *rowtes*, companies.

971

Such a 3omerly 3arm of 3ellyng þer rysed,

Such a mournful (pitiful) outcry of yelling there rose.

P. 65. l. 976 *Trynande ay a hyȝe trot*, going ever (at) a great pace.

987 *loueȝ*, not *loaves*, but = the provincial *looves* = hands.

989 *dampped* = *dumped*, beaten down.

991 *malscrande mere*, accursed lake.

992 *on a lawe*, on a hill.

1000 *& alle lyste on hir lik* (i.e. *lick*) *þat arn on launde bestes.*

> “Als so sco loked hir behind,
> A stan sco standes bi þat way
> And sua sal do to domesday;
> In a salt stan men seis hir stand
> Þat best likes o þat land;
> Þat anes o þe wok day,
> Þan is sco liked al away
> And þan þai find hir on þe morn,
> Hale als sco was ar beforn.”
>
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 17*b*.)

1002 *niye*, anguish.

P. 66. l. 1009 *a roþun of a reche*, a rush of smoke, a mass of vapour; *blake*, the black (pit).

1011 *flot*, fat, grease.

1016 *drouy*, turbid, from *droue*, to trouble.

1024 *coste3 of kynde* = natural properties.

1030 *boþem broþely*, filthy pit.

1031 *losyng*, perdition.

1033 *cooste3* = properties.

1035 *alkaran*, Mandeville employs the term *alkatran*; *angré* = poisonous or grievous, or *augre* = *aigre*, sharp.

1036 *saundyuer* = *sandiver*, glass-gall.

1037 *waxlokes*, waves.

1038 *spuniande*, cleaving, sticky.

1039 *se halues*, sea coasts.

1041 *terne* = *tarne*, lake.

1044 *apple garnade* = pomegranate.

P. 67. l. 1072 *kynned*, conceived.

1076 *a schepon* = a stable.

P. 68. l. 1079 *reflayr*, smell, odour; *rote*, decay.

1082 *þe reken fyþel*, the merry fiddle.

1094 *lomerande blynde*, the hesitating (slow, creeping), blind. The primitive meaning of *lomerande* seems to be that of *slow*, sluggish.

1108 *ty3t*, endeavour.

P. 69. l. 1113 *fenny*, dirty, filthy, and hence sinful.

1118 *to dele*, to exchange.

1123 For "*& wax euer*," etc., the sense seems to require that we should read "*& wax ho euer*," etc.

1124 *in pyese* = whole.

1126 *blyndes of ble*, becomes dull of hue, loses its colour.

1127 *No-bot*, only.

1141 *lastes*, vices.

1142 *þewes* = *þeues* (?), thieves, or *unþewes*, vices (?)

P. 70. l. 1153 *tyȝt me a tom* = give me an opportunity; *tom* has the sense of *leisure* and not of *time*.

1167 *fylsened*, helped, aided.

1172 *lat*, late, slow.

1178 *þorpes*, cities.

P. 71. l. 1186 *skete skarmoch*, *skelt*, brisk skirmish, hastened (came on quickly).

1190 *brutage* = *bretage*, parapets of a wall.

1202 *blench*, stratagem.

1205 *at-wappe*, escape.

1206 *skelt*, spread.

1208 *ruþed*, roused.

1209 *hard hattes*, (?) hats made of tow; *herd*, *hard* (*harden*, *hards*), in O. English signify cloth made of tow.

P. 72. l. 1219 *faynest*, gladdest.

1224 *dreȝe þer his wyrdes*, endure there his destiny.

1246 *to þe bronde*, to the sword.

P. 73. l. 1254 *on capeles*, on horses.

1255 *fole wombes*, bellies of foals.

1259 *to 114 cayre at þe kart & þe kuy mylke*, to drag at the cart and milk the cows.

1265 *plat of*, strike off.

1284 *hamppred* = *hampered*, packed up for removal.

P. 74. l. 1290 *hyȝtled*, ornamented.

1303 *modey* = *moody*, proud.

1313 *sesed*, took possession of.

P. 75. l. 1327 *bi-cnv* = *bicneu*, acknowledged.

1330 *heldes*, descends.

1332 *grauen*, buried.

1334 *stalled in his stud*, placed in his stead (position).

1342 *tre*, wood; *telded*, raised.

1344 *gered*, covered, decked.

1346 *reden*, advise.

1354 *notyng*, devising, contriving; *gettes*, devices.

P. 76. l. 1358 *avayment*, exhibition.

1361 *banne*, proclamation.

1362 *callyng*, decree.

1366 *vche a kythyn kyng*, every king of countries.

1375 *ludisch lordes*, lords of nations.

1379 *plek*, spot (plot of ground).

P. 77. l. 1396

Stepe stayred [*þe*] *stones of his stoute throne*,

Bright shone the stones of his firm throne.

1397 *hiled* = covered.

1398 *bounet*, went about.

1402 *strake steuen* = struck up sound.

1403 *wrasten krakkes*, sounds (notes) are raised.

1410 *foles*, fowls, birds. *flakerande*, flickering, fluttering.

1412 *on blonkken bak*, on the back of horses. In lines 1407-1412 we have evidently an allusion to the "table subtilties" of the fourteenth century.

1420 *weȝed*, served.

1425 *dotage*, folly.

P. 78. l. 1435 *schin*, shall.

1446 *besten blod*, blood of beasts; *busily*, laboriously.

1462 *fylyoles*, round towers.

P. 79. l. 1472 Penitotes. So in MS., but read *Peritotes*.

1478 *cost*, contrivance.

1495 *iaueles* = worthless wretches, used by Hall and Spenser.

P. 80. l. 1501 *wlates*, is disgusted.

1504 *wayned*, granted.

1505 *glotoun*, a general term of reproach.

1507 *vus* = *use*, drink.

1510 *kyppe*, take, seize, catch up.

1511 *birlen*, pour out.

1517 *dotel*, fool.

1520 as each one was disposed so tossed he off the cup.

P. 81. l. 1537 *neue*, fist.

1542 *lers*, features, but (?) *fers*, fears.

1543 *as a rad ryth*, as a frightened hound (literally mastiff).

1545 *runisch saue3*, strange words.

1554 *skelten*, hasten.

1557 *þo dra3tes*, the characters.

1559 *ede* = went, but *bede*, bade, commanded.

1560 *warla3es*, wizards.

1566 *malt*, to soothe.

1568 *gered*, clothed.

P. 82. l. 1585 *he wed wel ner*, he became nearly mad.

1603 *in stoundes*, at times.

P. 83. l. 1606 *spured*, asked, enquired of.

1634 *tede* = *tene*, ten (?)

1637 *apyke*, adorn, clothe.

P. 84. l. 1650 *loȝed*, made low.

1654 *pouer*, power.

1674 *wasterne*, wilderness; *dowelle*, dwelle.

1675 *braken*, fern.

P. 85. l. 1678 *soly*, seat.

1684 *ay* (?) = hay.

1686 *ouer-seyed*, passed over.

1690 *wykes*, members.

1692 *clyde*, plaister (?).

1694 *bresed*, rough, bristly; Sir F. Madden interprets it *broken*.

1695 *campe hores*, shaggy hairs.

1696 *glede*, kite.

1701 *wayned*, recovered.

1707 *haȝerly*, properly.

P. 86. l. 1713 *auyled*, defiled.

1716 *wale wyne*, choice wine; *in waryed stoundes*, in accursed moments.

P. 87. l. 1755 *daȝed*, dawned.

1759 *blykned* = *blaykned*, became dark, blackened.

1760 *Mourkenes*, becomes murky.

1761 *lyst*, path.

1768 *layted*, sought.

1773 *ledes of armes*, men of arms.

1775 *þester*, darkness.

115

P. 88. l. 1785 *slyppe*, escape.

1786 *honde-whyle*, a moment.

1788 *blende*, mingled.

1792 *now is a dogge also dere*, now is as valuable as a dog.

1808 *telled* = raised (?) *telles* = raises.

1811 *gere*, clothing.

89

PATIENCE.

I.

[Fol. 83*a*.] Patience is often displeasing,

Pacience is a poynt, þaȝ hit displese ofte,
When heuy herttes ben hurt wyth

heþy*n*g oþ*er* elles,
*aswage*n] MS. *aswagend*.
Suffrau*n*ce may aswage*n* hem & þe swelme leþe,
but it assuages heavy hearts, and quenches malice.
For ho quelles vche a qued, & quenches malyce;
For quo-so suffer cowþe syt, sele wolde fol3e,
Happiness follows sorrow.
& quo for þro may no3t þole, þe þikker he sufferes;

PATIENCE IS TO BE COMMENDED.

It is better to suffer than to be angry.
Þe*n* is bett*er* to abyde þe bur vmbe-stou*n*des,
Þen ay þrow forth my þro, þa3 me þynk ylle.
I herde on a halyday at a hy3e masse,
Matthew tells us of the promises made by Christ: Blessed are the poor, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
How mathew melede, þat his mayst*er* his meyny con teche,
A3t happes he hem hy3t & vche on a mede,
Su*n*derlupes for hit dissert vpon a ser wyse:
Thay arn happen þat han i*n* hert pouerté,
For hores is þe heuen-ryche to holde for eu*er*;
Blessed are the meek, for they shall

"wield the world."
Þay ar happen also þat haun*n*te
mekenesse,
For þay schal welde þis worlde &
alle her wylle haue;
Blessed are the mourners, for they shall be comforted.
Thay ar happen also þat for her
harme wepes,
For þay schal comfort encroche i*n*
kythes ful mony;
Blessed are the hungry, for they shall be filled.
Þay ar happen also þat hungeres
aft*er* ry3t,
For þay schal frely be refete ful of
alle gode;
Blessed are the merciful, for mercy shall be their reward.
Thay ar happen also þat han i*n* hert
rauþe,
For mercy i*n* alle man*er*es her mede
schal worþe;
Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see the Saviour.
Þay ar happen also þat arn of hert
clene,
For þay her sauyo*ur* in sete schal
se wi*th* her y3en;
Blessed are the peace-makers, for they shall be called God's sons.
Thay ar happen also þat halden her
pese,
For þay þe *gra*cio*us* godes su*n*es
schal godly be called;
Blessed are they that live aright, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
Þay ar happen also þat con her hert

stere,
For hores is þe heuen-ryche, as I er sayde.
These blessings are promised to those who follow
These arn þe happes alle a3t þat v*us* bihy3t weren,
If we þyse ladyes wolde lof i*n* lykny*n*g of þewes;
[Fol. 83*b*.] poverty, pity, penance, meekness, mercy, chastity, peace and patience,
Dame pouert, Dame pitee, Dame penau*n*ce þe þrydde,
Dame Mekenesse, Dame mercy & Miry cla*n*nesse,
& þe*n*ne Dame pes & pacyence put i*n* þ*er*-aft*er*.
He were happen þat hade one, alle were þe bett*er*,
syn] MS. *fyn*.
Bot syn I am put to a poy*n*t þat pou*er*te hatte,
Poverty and patience are to be treated together.
I schal me poruay pacyence, & play me wit*h* boþe;
For in þe tyxte, þere þyse two arn i*n* teme layde,
They are "fettled in one form,"
Hit arn fettled in on forme, þe forme & þe laste,
& by quest of her quoyntyse enquylen on mede,
and have one meed.
& als i*n* myn vpynyou*n* hit arn of on kynde;
Poverty will dwell where she lists,

For þer as pouert hir proferes ho nyl
be put vtt*er*,
Bot lenge where-so-eu*er* hir lyst, lyke
oþ*er* greme,
& þere as pouert enpresses, þa3 mon
pyne þynk,
mun] *mon* (?). and man must needs suffer.
Much maugre his mun, he mot
nede suffer,
Poverty and patience are play-fellows.
Thus pou*er*te & pacyence arn nedes
play-feres.
Syþen I am sette w*ith* he*m* samen,
suffer me by-houes,
Þe*n*ne is me ly3tloker hit lyke & her
lotes prayse,
Þe*n*ne wyþ*er* wyth & be wroth &
þe wers haue.
What avails impatience,
3if me be dy3t a destyné due to
haue,
What dowes me þe dedayn, oþ*er*
dispit make?
if God send affliction?
Oþ*er* 3if my lege lorde lyst on lyue
me to bidde,
Oþ*er* to ryde, oþ*er* to re*n*ne, to
rome i*n* his ernde,
What grayþed me þe grychchy*n*g bot
grame more seche?
Much 3if he me ne made, maugref
my chekes,
Patience is best.
& þe*n*ne þrat moste I þole, & vnþonk
to mede,
Þe[t] had bowed to his bode,

bongre my hyure.
Did not Jonah incur danger by his folly?
Did not Ionas i*n* Iude suche Iape su*m*-
whyle,
To sette hy*m* to sewrte, vnsou*n*de he
hy*m* feches?
tyme] MS. *tyne*.
Wyl ȝe tary a lyttel tyme & tent me a
whyle,
I schal wysse yow þer-wyth as
holy wryt telles.
91

JONAH IS SENT TO NINEVEH.

II.

Jonah was a prophet of the gentiles.

Hit bi-tydde su*m*-tyme i*n* þe termes
of Iude,
Ionas ioyned watȝ þ*er*-i*n*ne ientyle
p*ro*phete;
God's word came to him, saying,
Goddes glam to hy*m* glod, þat hy*m*
vnglad made,
With a roghlych rurd rowned i*n*
his ere;
"Rise quickly, take the way to Nineveh.
"Rys radly," he says, "& rayke forth
euen,
Nym þe way to nynyue, wyth-outen
oþ*er* speche,
[Fol. 84*a*.]
& in þat cete my saȝes soghe alle
aboute,
Say that which I shall put in thine heart.
Þat, i*n* þat place at þe poy*n*t, I put

i*n* þi hert;
For Iwysse hit arn so wykke þat i*n*
þat won dowelle3,
Wickedness dwells in that city.
& her malys is so much I may not
abide,
Bot venge me on her vilanye &
venym bilyue;
Go swiftly and carry my message."
Now swe3e me þider swyftly & say
me þis arende."
When þat steuen wat3 stynt, þat
stowned his my*n*de,
Jonah is full of wrath.
Al he wrathed i*n* his wyt & wyþ*e*rly
he þo3t,
If I bowe to his bode & bry*n*g he*m* þis
tale,
He is afraid that the shrews
& I be Nu*m*men in Nuniue, my
nyes begy*n*es;
He telles me þose trayto*u*res arn
typped schrewes,
I com wyth þose tyþy*n*ges, þay ta me
bylyue,
will put him in the stocks,
Pyne3 me i*n* a prysou*n*, put me i*n*
stokkes,
or put out his eyes.
Wryþe me i*n* a warlok, wrast out
myn y3en.
Þis is a m*e*ruayl message a man for to
preche,
Amonge enmyes so mony & mansed
fendes;
He thinks that God desires his death.
Bot if my gaynlych god such gref to

me wolde,
For] MS. *fof*.
For desert of su*m* sake þat I slayn were,
He determines not to go near the city,
At alle peryles, q*uod* þe pr*o*phete, I aproche hit no nerre,
I wyl me su*m* oþ*er* waye, þat he ne wayte aft*er*;
but fly to Tarshish.
I schal tee i*n*-to tarce, & tary þere a whyle,
& ly3tly, when I am lest, he letes me alone.
Grumbling, he goes to port Joppa.
Þe*n*ne he ryses radly, & raykes bilyue
Ionas toward port Iaph, ay Ianglande for tene,
Þat he nolde þole, for no-þy*n*g, non of þose pynes,
He says that God will not be able to protect him.
Þa3 þe fader þat hy*m* formed were fale of his hele.
"Oure syre syttes," he says, "on sege so hy3e
I*n* his g[l]wande glorye, & glou*m*bes ful lyttel,

HE SAILS FOR TARSHISH.

Þa3 I be nu*m*men i*n* nuniue & naked dispoyled,
On rode rwly to-rent, wi*th* rybaudes mony."
Jonah reaches the port, finds a ship ready to sail.

Þ*us* he passes to þat port, his passage
to seche,
Fyndes he a fayr schyp to þe fare
redy;
Maches hy*m* wi*th* þe maryneres,
makes her paye,
For to towe hy*m* i*n*-to tarce, as
tyd as þay my3t.
The seamen catch up the cross-sail,
fasten the cables, weigh their anchors,
Then he tron on þo tres & þay her
tra*m*me ruchen,
Cachen vp þe crossayl, cables þay
fasten,
[Fol. 84*b*.]
Wi3t at þe wyndlas we3en her
ankres,
Sprude spak to þe sprete þe spare
bawe-lyne,
and spread sail.
Gederen to þe gyde ropes, þe grete
cloþ falles;
Þay layden i*n* on ladde-borde & þe
lofe wy*n*nes.
A gentle wind wafts the ship along.
Þe blyþe breþe at her bak þe bosum
he fyndes,
He swenges me þys swete schip
swefte fro þe hauen.
Was never a Jew so joyful as was Jonah
then.
Wat3 neue*r* so Ioyful a Iue, as Ionas
wat3 þe*n*ne,
Þat þe daunger of dry3tyn so derfly
ascaped;
He wende wel þat þat wy3 þa*t* al þe
world planted,

Hade no ma3t i*n* þat mere no man forto greue.
He has, however, put himself in peril,
Lo! þe wytles wrechche, for he wolde no3t suffer,
Now hat3 he put hy*m* i*n* plyt of p*er*il wel more;
Hit wat3 a weny*n*g vn-war þat welt i*n* his mynde,
in fleeing from God.
Þa3 he were so3t fro samarye þat god se3 no fyrre,
3ise he blusched ful brode, þat burde hy*m* by sure,
The words of David.
Þat ofte kyd hy*m* þe carpe þat ky*n*g sayde,
Dy*n*gne dauid on des, þat demed þis speche,
I*n* a psalme þat he set þe saut*er* wit*h*-i*n*ne;
O Fole3 i*n* folk fele3 oþ*er* whyle,
Does He not hear, who made all ears?
& vnderstondes vmbe-stou*n*de, þa3 he be stape fole,
Hope 3e þat he heres not þat eres alle made?
He is not blind that formed each eye.
Hit may not be þat he is blynde þ*a*t bigged vche y3e.
Jonah is now in no dread.
Bot he dredes no dynt þat dotes for elde,
For he wat3 fer i*n* þe flod fou*n*dande to tarce;
He is, however, soon overtaken.
Bot, I trow, ful tyd, ou*er*-tan þat he

were,
128 So þat schomely to schort he
schote of his ame.
The wielder of all things has devices at will.
For þe welder of wyt, þat wot alle
þy*n*ges,
Þat ay wakes & waytes, at wylle hat3
he sly3tes;
93

HE IS OVERTAKEN BY A TEMPEST.

He calde on þat ilk crafte he carf
w*ith* his hondes,
132 Þay wakened wel þe wroþeloker,
for wroþely he cleped:
He commands Eurus and Aquilo to blow.
"Ewr*us* & aq*u*ilou*n*, þat on est sittes,
Blowes boþe at my bode vpon blo
watt*er*es."
The winds blow obedient to His word.
Þe*n*ne wat3 no tom þer bytwene his
tale & her dede,
136 So bayn wer þay boþe two, his
bone for to wyrk.
Out of the north-east the noise begins.
An-on out of þe norþ est þe noys
bigynes,
When boþe breþes con blowe vpon
blo watteres;
[Fol. 85*a*.]
Ro3 rakkes þer ros w*ith* rudny*n*g an-
vnder,
Storms arose,
winds wrestled together, the waves rolled high,

Þe see sou3ed ful sore, gret selly to here;
Þe wyndes on þe wo*nn*e wat*er* so wrastel to-geder,
Þat þe wawes ful wode walt*er*ed so hi3e,
& efte busched to þe abyme þat breed fysches;
and never rested.
Durst nowhere for ro3 arest at þe bothem.
When þe breth & þe brok & þe bote metten,
Then was Jonah joyless.
Hit wat3 a ioyles gyn þat Ionas wat3 i*nn*e,
The boat reeled around.
For hit reled on rou*n*[d] vpon þe ro3e yþes.
The gear became out of order.
Þe bur ber to hit baft þat braste alle her gere,
Þen hurled on a hepe þe helme & þe sterne,
Ropes and mast were broken.
Furst to murte mony rop & þe mast aft*er*.
Þe sayl sweyed on þe see, þe*nn*e suppe bihoued
colde] MS. *clolde*. A loud cry is raised,
Many a lad labours to lighten the ship.
Þe coge of þe colde wat*er*, & þe*nn*e þe cry ryses;
3et coruen þay þe cordes & kest al þ*er*-oute.
Mony ladde þer forth-lep to laue & to kest,

Scopen out þe scaþel wat*er*, þat fayn
scape wolde;
lode] *lote* (?).
For be mo*n*nes lode neu*er* so
luþ*er*, þe lyf is ay swete.
They throw overboard their bags and feather beds.
Þer wat3 busy ou*er*-borde bal*e* to kest
Her bagges, & her feþ*er* beddes, &
her bry3t wedes,
Her kysttes, & her coferes, her
caraldes alle,
& al to ly3ten þat lome, 3if leþe
wolde schape;
But still the wind rages, and the waves become wilder.
Bot eu*er* wat3 ilyche loud þe lot of þe
wy*n*des,
& eu*er* wroþ*er* þe wat*er*, & wodder þe
stremes.
Þe*n* þo wery for-wro3t wyst no bote,
Each man calls upon his god.
Bot vchon glewed on his god þat
gayned hy*m* beste;
Some called upon Vernagu, Diana, and Neptune, to the sun and to the moon.
Summe to vernagu þ*er* vouched a-
vowes solemne,
Summe to diana deuout, & derf
nepturne,
94
To mahou*n* & to mergot, þe mone &
þe su*n*ne,
& vche lede as he loued & layde
had his hert.

JONAH IS CONDEMNED TO DEATH,

Then said one of the sailors:
"Some lawless wretch, that has grieved
his God, is in the ship.
Þe*n*ne bispeke þe spakest dispayred
wel nere:
I leue here be su*m* losynger, su*m*
lawles wrech,
Þat hat3 greued his god & got3 here
amonge v*us*;
Lo al synkes i*n* his sy*n*ne & for his
sake marres!
I advise that we lay lots upon each man.
I lovne þat we lay lotes on ledes
vchone,
& who-so ly*m*pes þe losse, lay hy*m*
þ*er*-oute;
[Fol. 85*b*.] When the guilty is gone the
tempest may cease."
& quen þe gulty is gon what may
gome trawe,
Bot he þat rules þe rak may rwe
on þose oþ*er*?
This is agreed to.
Þis wat3 sette i*n* asent, & sembled
þay were,
All are assembled, from all corners of
the ship,
Her3ed out of vche hyrne to hent þat
falles.
A lodes-mon ly3tly lep vnder
hachches,
For to layte mo ledes & hem to
lote bry*n*g,
Bot hy*m* fayled no freke þat he fynde
my3t,
save Jonah the Jew,
Saf Ionas þe Iwe þat Iowked i*n*
derne.

who had fled into the bottom of the boat.
He wat3 flowen for ferde of þe flode lotes
I*n*-to þe boþem of þe bot, & on a brede lyggede,
On helde by þe hurrok, for þe heuen wrache,
There he falls asleep.
Slypped vpon a slou*m*be, selepe, & sloberande he routes.
Soon he is aroused,
Þe freke hy*m* fru*n*t wi*th* his fot & bede hy*m* ferk vp,
Þer ragnel i*n* his rakentes hy*m* rere of his dremes;
Bi þe haspede he hentes hy*m* þe*n*ne,
and brought on board.
& bro3t hy*m* vp by þe brest & vpon borde sette,
Full roughly is he questioned.
Arayned hy*m* ful runyschly what raysou*n* he hade
I*n* such sla3tes of sor3e to slepe so faste;
The lot falls upon Jonah.
Sone haf þay her sortes sette & serelych deled,
þe] MS. *þe þe*.
& ay þe lote, vpon laste, lymped on Ionas.
Then quickly they said:
“What the devil hast thou done, doted wretch?
Þe*n*ne ascryed þay hy*m* sckete, & asked ful loude,
“What þe deuel hat3 þ*o*u don, doted wrech?

What seekest thou on the sea?
What seches þou on see, sy*n*ful schrewe,
W*ith* þy lastes so luþ*er* to lose v*us* vchone?
Hast thou no God to call upon?
Hatȝ þou, gome, no gou*er*no*ur* ne god on to calle,
200 Þat þou þ*us* slydes on slepe when þou slayn worþes?
Of what land art thou?
Of what londe art þou lent, what laytes þou here
Whyder i*n* worlde þat þou wylt, & what is þyn arnde?
95 Thou art doomed for thy ill deeds."
Lo þy dom is þe dyȝt, for þy dedes ille!
204 Do gyf glory to þy godde, er þou glyde hens."
Jonah says: "I am a Hebrew,
a worshipper of the world's Creator.
"I am an Ebru," q*uod* he, "of Israyl borne;
Þat wyȝe I worchyp, Iwysse, þat wroȝt alle þy*n*ges,
Alle þe worlde w*ith* þe welkyn, þe wynde & þe sternes,
208 & alle þat woneȝ þer w*ith*-i*n*ne, at a worde one.
All this mischief is caused by me,
therefore cast me overboard."
Alle þis meschef for me is made at þys tyme,
For I haf greued my god & gulty am fou*n*den;
[Fol. 86*a*.] *baþeþes*] *baþes* (?).
For-þy bereȝ me to þe borde, &

baþeþes me þ*er*-oute,
Er gete 3e no happe, I hope
forsoþe."

AND IS CAST OVERBOARD.

*hy*m] *hem* (?).
He ossed hy*m* by vnny*n*ges þat þay
vnder-nomen,
He proves to them that he was guilty.
Þat he wat3 flawen fro þe face of
frelych dry3tyn;
The mariners are exceedingly frightened.
Þe*n*ne such a ferde on hem fel &
flayed he*m* wi*th*-i*n*ne,
Þat þay ruyt hy*m* to rowwe &
letten þe ry*n*k one.
They try to make way with their oars,
Haþeles hy3ed i*n* haste wi*th* ores ful
longe,
Sy*n* her sayl wat3 hem aslypped on
syde3 to rowe;
Hef & hale vpon hy3t to helpen hym
seluen,
but their endeavours are useless.
Bot al wat3 nedles note, þat nolde
not bityde:
In bluber of þe blo flod bursten her
ores,
Jonah must be doomed to death.
Þe*n*ne hade þay no3t i*n* her honde
þat hem help my3t;
Þe*n*ne nas no cou*m*fort to keu*er*, ne
cou*n*sel non oþer,
Bot ionas i*n*-to his Iuis Iugge
bylyue.
They pray to God,

Fyrst þay prayen to þe prynce þ*a*t
p*ro*phetes seruen,
Þat he gef hem þe g*ra*ce to greuen
hy*m* neu*er*,
that they may not shed innocent blood.
Þat þay i*n* balele3 blod þer blenden
her hande3,
Þa3 þat haþel wer his, þ*a*t þay
here quelled.
Jonah is cast overboard.
Tyd by top & bi to þay token hy*m*
sy*n*ne,
I*n*-to þat lodlych lo3e þay luche hy*m*
sone;
out-tulde] *out-tulte* (?). The tempest ceases and the sea settles.
He wat3 no tytter out-tulde þat
tempest ne sessed,
Þe se sa3tled þ*er*-w*ith*, as sone as
ho mo3t.
Þe*n*ne þa3 her takel were torne, þ*a*t
tot*er*ed on yþe3,
The stiff streams drive the ship about.
Styffe stremes & stre3t hem strayned
a whyle,
serue] *sterue* (?).
Þat drof hem dry3lych adou*n* þe depe
to serue,
At last they reach a bank.
Tyl a swetter ful swyþe he*m*
swe3ed to bonk.
The seamen thank God,
and perform solemn vows.
Þer wat3 louy*n*g on lofte, when þay
þe londe wo*n*nen,
To oure mercyable god, on moyses
wyse,

Wit*h* sacrafyse vp-set, & solempne vowes,
& graun*t*ed hy*m* vn-to be god & graythly non oþ*er*;
Jonah is in great dread.
Þa3 þay be Iolef for Ioye, Ionas 3et dredes,
Þa3 he nolde suffer no sore, his seele is on ant*er*;
For what-so worþed of þat wy3e, fro he i*n* wat*er* dipped,
Hit were a wonder to wene, 3if holy wryt nere.

A WILD WHALE SWALLOWS JONAH.

III.

Jonah is shoved from the ship. *to*] MS. to to.

Now is ionas þe Iwe Iugged to drowne;
Of þat schended schyp men schowued hy*m* sone.
[Fol. 86*b*.] A wild whale swims by the boat.
A wylde walt*er*ande whal, as wyrde þe*n* schaped,
Þat wat3 beten fro þe abyme, bi þat bot flotte,
& wat3 war of þat wy3e þat þe wat*er* so3te,
He opens his swallow,
& swyftely swenged hy*m* to swepe & his swol3 opened;
Þe folk 3et haldande his fete þe fysch hy*m* tyd hentes,

and seizes the prophet.
With-outen towche of any tothe
he tult in his þrote.
swayues] *swaynes* (?).
Thenne he swenge3 & swayues to þe
se boþem,
Bi mony rokke3 ful ro3e & rydelande
strondes,
Wyth þe mon in his mawe, malskred
in drede.
It is not to be wondered at that Jonah suffered woe.
As lyttel wonder hit wat3 3if he
wo dre3ed,
For nade þe hy3e heuen kyng, þur3
his honde my3t,
Warded þis wrech man in warlowes
gutte3,
What lede mo3t lyue bi lawe of any
kynde,
Þat any lyf my3t be lent so longe
hym with-inne?
Bot he wat3 sokored by þat syre þat
syttes so hi3e,
waule3] *wanle3* (?). The prophet is without hope.
Þa3 were waule3 of wele, in wombe
of þat fissche,
& also dryuen þur3 þe depe, & in
derk walt*er*e3.
Cold was his comfort.
Lorde! colde wat3 his cumfort &
his care huge,
For he knew vche a cace & kark þat
hym lymped;
How fro þe bot in-to þe blober wat3
with a best lachched,
þrwe] *þrwen* (?).

& þrwe i*n* at hit þrote, w*i*t*h*-outen þret more,
Jonah was only a mote in the whale's jaws.
As mote i*n* at a mu*n*ster dor, so mukel wern his chawle3,
He entered in by the gills, and by means of one of the intestines of the fish, came into a space as large as a hall.
He glydes i*n* by þe giles, þur3 glaymande glette,
Relande i*n* by a rop, a rode þat hy*m* þo3t,
Ay hele ou*er* hed, ho*ur*lande aboute,
Til he blu*n*t i*n* a blok as brod as a halle;
The prophet fixes his feet firmly in the belly of the whale.
& þer he festnes þe fete & fathme3 aboute,
& stod vp i*n* his stomak, þat stank as þe deuel;
Þ*er* in saym & i*n* sor3e þat sauo*ur*ed as helle,
Þ*er* wat3 bylded his bour, þat wyl no bale suffer;
& þe*n*ne he lurkkes & laytes where wat3 le best,
He searches into every nook of its navel.
In vche a nok of his nauel, bot nowhere he fynde3
No rest ne recou*er*er, bot ramelande myre,
In wych gut so eu*er* he got3; bot eu*er* is god swete;
The prophet calls upon God.
& þer he lenged at þe last & to þe lede called.

"Now prynce, of þy pr*o*phete pité
þ*o*u haue!
[Fol. 87*a*.]
Þa3 I be fol, & fykel, & falce of my
hert,
He cries for mercy.
De-woyde now þy vengau*n*ce,
þur3 v*er*tu of rauthe;
Tha3 I be gulty of gyle as gaule of
pr*o*phet*es*,
Þ*o*u art god, & alle gowde3 ar
grayþely þyn owen;
Haf now m*er*cy of þy man & his mys-
dedes,
& preue þe ly3tly a lorde, i*n*
londe & i*n* wat*er*."
He sits safely in a recess,
With þat he hitte to a hyrne & helde
hy*m* þ*er*-i*n*ne,
Þ*er* no de-foule of no fylþe wat3 fest
hy*m* abute;
Þer he sete also sou*n*de, saf for merk
one,
As i*n* þe bulk of þe bote, þer he
by-fore sleped.
in a bowel of the beast,
So in a bouel of þat best he bide3 on
lyue,
for three days and three nights.
Þre dayes & þ[r]e ny3t ay þenkande
on dry3tyn,
His my3t & his m*er*ci, his mesure
þe*n*ne;
Now he knawe3 hy*m* i*n* care þat
couþe not i*n* sele.

THE WHALE WANDERS ABOUT.

The whale passes through many a rough region.
Ande eu*er* walt*er*es þis whal bi
wyldren depe,
Þur3 mony a regiou*n* ful ro3e, þur3
ronk of his wylle,
Jonah makes the whale feel sick.
For þat mote i*n* his mawe mad hy*m*, I
trowe,
Þa3 hit lyttel were, hy*m* wyth to
wamel at his hert,
Ande assayled þe segge; ay sykerly
he herde
Þe bygge borne on his bak & bete on
his sydes;
The prophet prays to God in this wise:
Þen a prayer ful prest þe pr*o*phete
þ*er* maked
On þis wyse, as I wene, his
worde3 were mony:

JONAH PRAYS FOR HIS DELIVERANCE.

IV.

"Lord! to thee have I cried out of hell's womb.

"Lorde to þe haf I cleped, i*n* care3 ful
stronge,
Out of þe hole þ*o*u me herde, of
hellen wombe
98
I calde, & þ*o*u knew myn vncler
steuen;
Thou dippedst me in the sea.
Þou dipte3 me of þe depe se, i*n*-to
þe dy*m*me hert,

Thy great floods passed over me.
Þe grete flem of þy flod folded me vmbe;
Alle þe gote3 of þy guferes, & grou*n*dele3 powle3,
The streams drive over me.
& þy stryuande streme3 of strynde3 so mony,
I*n* on daschande dam, dryue3 me ou*er*;
I am cast out from thy sight.
& 3et I say, as I seet i*n* þe se boþem,
'Care-ful am I kest out fro þy cler y3en
& deseu*er*ed fro þy sy3t; 3et surely I hope,
Efte to trede on þy temple & teme to þy seluen.'
I am wrapped i*n* wat*er* to my wo stou*n*de3,
The abyss binds me.
Þe abyme byndes þe body þat I byde i*n*ne;
[Fol. 87*b*.] The rushing waves play on my head.
Þe pure poplande ho*ur*le playes on my heued,
To laste mere of vche a mou*n*t man am I fallen;
Þe barre3 of vche a bonk ful bigly me haldes,
lont] *lond* (?). Thou possessest my life.
Þat I may lachche no lont & þ*o*u my lyf weldes;
Þ*o*u schal releue me renk, whil þy ry3t slepe3,
Þur3 my3t of þy m*er*cy þ*a*t mukel

is to tryste.
In my anguish I remembered my God,
For when þacces of anguych wat3
hid i*n* my sawle,
Þe*n*ne I remembred me ry3t of my
rych lorde,
and besought His pity.
Prayande hi*m* for peté his prophete
to here,
328 Þat in-to his holy ho*us* myn
orisou*n* mo3t entre.
I haf meled wi*th* þy maystres mony
longe day,
Bot now I wot wyt*er*ly, þat þose
vnwyse ledes
*hy*m] *hem* (?).
Þat affyen hy*m* i*n* vanyté & i*n* vayne
þy*n*ges,
*þin*k] *þing* (?).
332 For þi*n*k þat mou*n*tes to no3t, her
mercy forsaken;
When I am delivered from this danger,
Bot I dewoutly awowe þat v*er*ray
bet3 halden,
Soberly to do þe sacrafyse when I
schal saue worþe,
I will obey thy commands."
& offer þe for my hele a ful hol gyfte,
336 & halde goud þat þou me hetes;
haf here my trauthe."

THE WHALE VOMITS UP JONAH.

God speaks fiercely to the whale,
and he vomits out the prophet on a dry
space.
The*n*ne oure fader to þe fysch
ferslych bidde3,

Þat he hy*m* sput spakly vpon spare drye;
Þe whal wende3 at his wylle & a warþe fynde3,
& þ*er* he brake3 vp þe buyrne, as bede hy*m* oure lorde.
Jonah has need to wash his clothes.
Þe*n*ne he swepe to þe sonde i*n* sluchched cloþes,
Hit may wel be þat mest*er* were his mantyle to wasche;
99
Þe bonk þat he blosched to & bode hy*m* bisyde,
Wern of þe regiou*n*es ry3t þat he renayed hade;
God's word comes to the prophet.
Þe*n*ne a wynde of godde3 worde efte þe wy3e bruxle3,
"Nylt þ*o*u neu*er* to nuniue bi no-ky*n*ne3 waye3?"
"3isse lorde," q*uod* þe lede, "lene me þy g*ra*ce
non] MS. *mon*. He is told to preach in Nineveh.
For to go at þi gre, me gayne3 non oþ*er*."
"Ris, aproche þe*n* to prech, lo þe place here!
loke] *loken* (?).
Lo! my lore is i*n* þe loke, lance hit þer-*in*ne."
Þe*n*ne þe renk radly ros as he my3t,
By night Jonah reaches the city.
& to niniue þat na3t he ne3ed ful euen;
Nineveh was a very great city.

Hit wat3 a ceté ful syde & selly of brede,
On to þrenge þ*er*-þur3e wat3 þre dayes dede.

THE PROPHET PREACHES AGAINST NINEVEH.

[Fol. 88*a*.]
Þat on Io*ur*nay ful Ioynt Ionas hy*m* 3ede,
Er eu*er* he warpped any worde to wy3e þ*a*t he mette,
Jonah delivers his message;
& þe*n*ne he cryed so cler, þat ke*n*ne my3t alle;
Þe trwe tenor of his teme he tolde on þis wyse:
"Yet forty days and Nineveh shall come to an end.
"3et schal forty daye3 fully fare to an ende,
& þe*n*ne schal Niniue be nomen & to no3t worþe;
Truly þis ilk tou*n* schal tylte to grou*n*de,
It shall be turned upside down,
and swallowed quickly by the black earth."
Vp-so-dou*n* schal 3e du*m*pe depe to þe abyme,
To be swol3ed swyftly wyth þe swart erþe,
& alle þat lyuyes here-i*n*ne lose þe swete."
This speech spreads throughout the city.
Þis speche sprang i*n* þat space & spradde alle aboute,
To borges & to bacheleres, þat i*n* þat

bur3 lenged;
Great fear seizes all.
Such a hidor hem bent & a hatel drede,
Þat al chaun*n*ged her chere & chylled at þe hert.
Þe segge sesed not 3et, bot sayde eu*er* ilyche
"Þe verray vengaun*n*ce of god schal voyde þis place."
The people mourn secretly,
Þe*n*ne þe peple pitosly pleyned ful stylle,
& for þe drede of dry3tyn doured i*n* hert;
clothe themselves in sackcloth,
Het*er* hayre3 þay hent þat asperly bited,
& þose þay boun*n*den to her bak & to her bare syde3,
and cast ashes upon their heads.
Dropped dust on her hede & dy*m*ly biso3ten,
Þat þat penaun*n*ce plesed hi*m* þ*a*t playne3 on her wronge.
The message reaches the ears of the king.
& ay he cryes i*n* þ*a*t kyth tyl þe ky*n*g herde;
& he radly vp-ros & ran fro his chayer,
He rends his robes,
His ryche robe he to-rof of his rigge naked,
& of a hep of askes he hitte i*n* þe mydde3;
clothes himself in sackloth,

He aske3 heterly a hayre & hasped
hy*m* vmbe,
Sewed a sekke þer abof, & syked ful
colde;
and mourns in the dust.
Þer he dased i*n* þat duste, w*ith*
droppande teres,
Wepande ful wonderly alle his
wrange dedes.
He issues a decree,
Þe*n*ne sayde he to his seriau*n*tes,
“samnes yow bilyue,
Do dryue out a decre demed of my
seluen,
that all in the city, men, beasts, women and children, prince, priest, and prelates,
Þat alle þe bodyes þat ben w*ith*-i*n*ne
þis bor3 quyk,
Boþe burnes & bestes, burde3 &
childer,
Vch prynce, vche prest & prelates
alle,
should fast for their sins.
Alle faste frely for her falce werkes;
[Fol. 88*b*.] Children are to be weaned from the breast.
Sese3 childer of her sok, sogh*e* hem
so neu*er*,
Ne best bite on no brom, ne no
bent nauþ*er*,
Passe to no pasture, ne pike non
erbes,
The ox is to have no hay, nor the horse any water.
Ne non oxe to no hay, ne no horse to
wat*er*;
Al schal crye for-cle*m*med, w*ith* alle

oure clere strenþe,
Þe rurd schal ryse to hy*m* þat
rawþe schal haue;
Who can tell if God will have mercy?
What wote oþer wyte may 3if þe
wy3e lykes,
Þat is hende i*n* þe hy3t of his
gentryse?
Though He is mighty,
I wot his my3t is so much, þa3 he be
mysse-payed,
He is merciful,
Þat i*n* his mylde amesy*n*g he
m*er*cy may fynde;
& if we leuen þe layk of oure layth
sy*n*nes,
& stylle steppen i*n* þe sty3e he
sty3tle3 hy*m* seluen,
He wyl wende of his wodschip, & his
wrath leue,
and may forgive us our guilt.
& for-gif v*us* þis gult 3if we hy*m*
god leuen."
All believed and repented.
Þe*n*ne al leued on his lawe & laften
her sy*n*nes,
Par-formed alle þe penau*n*ce þat þe
prynce radde;
God forgave them through his goodness.
& god þur3 his godnesse forgef as he
sayde,
Þa3 he oþ*er* bihy3t, [&] w*ith*-
helde his vengau*n*ce.

GOD'S MERCY DISPLEASES JONAH.

V.

Much sorrow settles upon Jonah.

Muche sor3e þe*n*ne satteled vpon segge Ionas,
He wex as wroth as þe wynde towarde oure lorde,
He becomes very angry.
So hat3 ang*er* onhit his hert; he calle3
He prays to God and says:
A prayer to þe hy3e prynce, for pyne, on þys wyse:
"Was not this my saying, when Thy message reached me in my own country?
"I biseche þe syre now þ*o*u self iugge,
Wat3 not þis ilk my worde þat worþen is nouþe,
Þat I kest i*n* my cu*n*tre, when þ*o*u þy carp sende3,
Þat I schulde tee to þys tou*n*, þi talent to preche?
I knew Thy great goodness,
Wel knew I þi cortaysye, þy quoy*n*t soffrau*n*ce.
Þy bou*n*té of debonerté & þy bene g*ra*ce,
Thy long-suffering,
and Thy mercy.
Þy longe abydy*n*g wyth lur, þy late vengau*n*ce,
& ay þy mercy is mete, be mysse neu*er* so huge.
I wyst wel when I hade worded quatsoeu*er* I cowþe,
I knew these men might make their peace with Thee,

To manace alle þise mody men þat i*n*
þis mote dowelle3,
Wyth a prayer & a pyne þay my3t
her pese gete,
therefore I fled unto Tarshish.
& þer-fore I wolde haf flowen fer
i*n*-to tarce.
Take my life from me, O Lord!
Now lorde lach out my lyf, hit lastes
to longe,
Bed me bilyue my bale sto*ur*, &
bry*n*g me on ende,
[Fol. 89*a*.] It is better for me to die than live."
For me were swett*er* to swelt, as
swyþe as me þynk,
Þe*n* lede lenger þi lore, þat þ*us*
me les make3."
God upbraids Jonah, saying:
Þe sou*n* of oure sou*er*ayn þen swey i*n*
his ere,
Þat vpbraydes þis burne vpon a
breme wyse:
"Is this right to be so wroth?"
"Herk renk! is þis ry3t so ronkly to
wrath,
For any dede þat I haf don oþ*er*
demed þe 3et?"
Jonah, jangling, uprises,
Ionas al Ioyles & Ianglande vp-ryses
& halde3 out on est half of þe hy3e
place,
& farandely on a felde he fettele3
hy*m* to bide,
For to wayte on þat won what
schulde worþe aft*er*.
and makes himself a bower,

Þer he busked hy*m* a bo*ur*, þe best
þat he my3t,
of hay and ever-fern,
Of hay & of eu*er*-ferne & erbe3 a
fewe,
For hit wat3 playn i*n* þat place for
plyande greue3,
to shield him from the sun.
For to schylde fro þe schene, oþ*er*
any schade keste.
He bowed vnder his lyttel boþe, his
bak to þe su*n*ne,
He slept heavily all night.
& þer he swowed & slept sadly al
ny3t,

JONAH IS SHELTERED BY A WOODBINE.

God prepared a woodbine.
Þe whyle god of his grace ded growe
of þat soyle,
Þe fayrest bynde hy*m* abof þat
eu*er* burne wyste.
When þe dawande day dry3tyn con
sende,
Jonah awakes, and is exceedingly glad
of the bower.
Þe*n*ne wakened þe wy3 vnder
wodbynde,
Loked alofte on þe lef þat lylled
grene;
Such a lefsel of lof neu*er* lede
hade,
102
For hit wat3 brod at þe boþem,
bo3ted onlofte,
Happed vpon ayþ*er* half a ho*us* as hit
were,

A nos on þe norþ syde & nowhere non elle3,
Bot al schet i*n* a scha3e þat schaded ful cole.
The prophet, under its gracious leaves,
Þe gome gly3t on þe grene g*ra*ciouse leues,
Þat eu*er* wayued a wynde so wyþe & so cole;
Þe schyre su*n*ne hit vmbe-schon, þa3 no schafte my3t
is protected from the sun's rays.
Þe mou*n*tau*n*ce of a lyttel mote, vpon þat man schyne,
Þe*n*ne wat3 þe gome so glad of his gay logge,
Lys loltrande þer-i*n*ne, lokande to toune,
So blyþe of his wodbynde he balt*er*es þer vnde[r],
þe] *de* altered to þe.
Þat of no diete þat day þe deuel haf, he ro3t;
& eu*er* he la3ed as he loked þe loge alle aboute,
Jonah wishes he had such a lodge in his own country.
& wysched hit were i*n* his kyth, þer he wony schulde,
[Fol. 89*b*.]
On he3e vpon Effraym oþ*er* ermo*n*nes hille3,
"I-wysse a worþloker won to welde I neu*er* keped."
& quen hit ne3ed to na3t nappe hy*m* bihoued;
He slyde3 on a slou*m*be, slep slogh*e*

vnder leues,
God prepared a worm,
that made the woodbine wither.
Whil god wayned a worme þat wrot
vpe þe rote,
& wyddered wat3 þe wodbynde
bi þat þe wy3e wakned;
& syþen he warne3 þe west to waken
ful softe,
vnte] *vnto* (?).
& saye3 vnte 3efer*us* þat he syfle
warme,
Þat þer quikken no cloude bi-fore þe
cler su*n*ne,
& ho schal busch vp ful brode &
bre*n*ne as a candel.
Jonah awakes and finds his woodbine destroyed.
Þen wakened þe wy3e of his wyl
dremes,
& blusched to his wodbynde þat
broþely wat3 marred,
The leaves were all faded.
Al welwed & wasted þo worþelych
leues;
Þe schyre su*n*ne hade hem
schent, er eu*er* þe schalk
wyst,
The sun beat upon the head of Jonah.
& þe*n* hef vp þe hete & hete*r*ly
bre*n*ned;
Þe warm wynde of þe weste wert*es*
he swyþe3.

HE LAMENTS ITS DESTRUCTION.

Þe man marred on þe molde þat
mo3t hy*m* not hyde,

His wodbynde wat3 away, he
weped for sor3e,
He is exceedingly angry,
"With hatel ang*er* & hot, het*er*ly he
calle3:
A! þou maker of man, what mayst*er*y
þe þynke3
Þ*us* þy freke to forfare forbi alle oþ*er*,
W*ith* alle meschef þat þou may,
neu*er* þou me spare3?
I keu*er*ed me a cu*m*fort þat now is
ca3t fro me,
My wod-bynde so wlonk þat wered
my heued,
Bot now I se þou art sette my solace
to reue;
and prays God that he may die.
Why ne dy3tte3 þou me to di3e; I
dure to longe?"
God rebukes the prophet.
3et oure lorde to þe lede lansed a
speche:
"Dost thou well," He says, "to be angry
for the gourd?"
"Is þis ry3t-wys þou renk, alle þy
ronk noyse,
So wroth for a wodbynde to wax so
sone,
Why art þou so waymot wy3e for
so lyttel?"
Jonah replies, "I would I were dead."
"Hit is not lyttel," q*uod* þe lede, "bot
lykker to ry3t,
I wolde I were of þis worlde wrapped
i*n* molde3."
God asks if it is to be wondered at that
He should help His handy work.

"Þe*n*ne byþenk þe mon, if þe for-
þynk sore,
If I wolde help my honde werk,
haf þ*o*u no wonder;
Is not Jonah angry that his woodbine is destroyed, which cost him no labour?
Þ*o*u art waxen so wroth for þy wod-
bynde,
& trauaylede3 neu*er* to tent hit þe
tyme of an howre,
[Fol. 89*a*.]
Bot at a wap hit here wax & away at
an oþ*er*,
& 3et lyke3 þe so luþ*er*, þi lyf
wolde3 þ*o*u tyne;

GOD JUSTIFIES HIS MERCY AND FORBEARANCE.

God is not to be blamed for taking pity upon people that He made.
Þe*n*ne wyte not me for þe werk þat I
hit wolde help,
& rwe on þo redles þat remen for
sy*n*ne.
Fyrst I made he*m* myself of mat*er*es
my*n* one,
& syþen I loked he*m* ful longe &
hem on lode hade;
& if I my trauayl schulde tyne of
t*er*mes so longe,
Should He destroy Nineveh the sorrow of such a sweet place would sink to His heart.
& type dou*n* 3onder tou*n* when hit
turned were,
Þe sor of such a swete place burde
synk to my hert,
So mony malicio*us* mon as

mo*ur*ne3 þe*r*-i*n*ne;
In the city there are little bairns who have done no wrong.
& of þat sou*m*me 3et arn su*m*me such sotte3 for madde,
As lyttel barne3 on barme þat neuer bale wro3t,
& wy*m*men vnwytté þat wale ne couþe
for] MS. *fol.*
Þat on hande fro þat oþ*er* for alle þis hy3e worlde,
And there are others who cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand.
Bitwene þe stele & þe stayre disserne no3t cu*n*en,
What rule renes i*n* rou*n* bitwene þe ry3t hande
& his lyfte, þa3 his lyf schulde lost be þer-for;
There are also dumb beasts in the city incapable of sinning.
& als þer ben dou*m*be beste3 i*n* þe bur3 mony,
Þat may not sy*n*ne i*n* no syt hem seluen to greue,
Why schulde I wrath wyth hem, syþe*n* wy3e3 wyl torne,
*cu*m] *Or* cu*n*.
& cu*m* & cnawe me for ky*n*g, & my carpe leue?
104
Wer I as hastif a[s] þou, heere were harme lu*m*pen,
Couþe I not þole bot as þou þer þryued ful fewe;
I may not be so mal[i]cio*us* & mylde

be halden,
Judgment must be tempered with mercy.
For malyse is no3[t] to may*n*tyne
boute mercy w*ith**in*ne;
Be no3t so gryndel god man, bot
go forth þy wayes."
He that is too hasty to rend his clothes must afterwards sit with worse ones to sew them together.
Be preue & be pacient, i*n* payne & i*n*
Ioye,
For he þat is to rakel to renden his
cloþe3,
Mot efte sitte w*ith* more vn-sou*n*de to
sewe he*m* togeder.
Poverty and pain must be endured.
For-þy when pou*er*té me enprece3
& payne3 i*n*-no3e,
Ful softly w*ith* suffrau*n*ce sa3ttel me
bihoue3,
Patience is a noble point, though it displeases oft.
For þe penau*n*ce & payne to preue
hit i*n* sy3t,
Þat pacience is a nobel poy*n*t, þa3 hit
displese ofte. Amen.

115

Notes to Patience.

All Notes were originally printed here, between *Patience* and the Glossarial Index. The Notes for *The Pearl* and *Cleanness* come immediately after their respective poems.

Page 89. l. 3 *þe swelme leþe*, lessen the heat.

4 *qued*, evil.

5 *syt*, sorrow; *sele*, happiness.

6 *þro*, anger.

7

þen is better to abyde þe bur vmbe-stoundes,

Then is it better to abide the blow sometimes.

10 *melede*, related.

11 *a3t*, eight.

12 *sunder-lupes*, severally.

13 *happen*, blessed.

P. 90. l. 30 *lyknyng*, likeness; *þewes*, virtues.

42 *lyke oþer greme*, pleasing or displeasing.

47 *lyȝtloker*, more easily; *lotes*, forms.

50 *what dowes me þe dedayn*, what avails me anger.

53 *grayþed*, availed.

56 *þe*(*t*) *had bowed*, etc., That should have been obedient.

P. 91. l. 63 *Goddes glam to hym glod*, God's message came to him.

66 *wythouten oþer speche*, without contradiction, without more words.

67 *my saȝes soghe*, etc., my saws (words) sow, etc.

77 *typped schrewes*, great sinners; literally, extreme, tip-top, schrews.

78 *ta me*, take me, seize me.

82 *mansed*, cursed.

94 *glwande*, glowing, bright; *gloumbes*, sees (indistinctly).

P. 92. l. 98 *to the fare*, to the voyage.

101 *tramme*, gear.

104

Sprude spak to þe sprete þe
spare bawlyne,
Spread quickly to the sprit the
spar bowline (?).

106 *ladde-borde*, larboard.

107 *blyþe breþe*, gentle wind; *bosum*, tide.

108 *He* refers to *breþe*.

112 *maȝt*, might; *mere*, sea.

115 *wenyng*, supposition.

117 *burde*, behoved.

119 *demed*, uttered.

122 *stapefole* = *stapeful* = high (?)

P. 93. l. 131 *crafte*, power.

135 *tom*, interval.

140 *souȝed*, sobbed, moaned; *selly*, marvel.

141 *wonne*, pale.

143 *busched* = *busked*, went.

144 *for roȝ* = for roughness.

148 *bur* = wave.

150 *to murte*, (?) *to-marte*, crushed, broken in pieces.

152 *coge*, boat.

155 *scaþel*, hurtful, dangerous.

156 *lode* = *lote*, lot.

160 *leþe*, calm, quiet.

161 *lot*, noise, roar.

P. 94. l. 173 *I lovne*, I offer (this advice), propose.

183 *flode lotes*, the noises of the flood.

184 *brede*, board.

185 *hurrok*, oar.

191 *runyschly*, fiercely.

192 *slaȝte*, strokes.

198 *lastes*, crimes.

P. 95. l. 208 *at a worde one*, at a word alone.

213 *ossed*, showed, proved; *vnnynges*, signs.

216 *ruyt*, rush, hasten.

227 *balelesȝ*, innocent.

229 *synne*, after.

P. 96. l. 247 *as wyrde þen schaped*, as fate then devised.

255 *malskred*, entranced, bewildered.

258 *warlowes*, monster's.

259 *lyue* = *leue*, believe.

262 *waule3* = shelterless, destitute, but *wanle3* = *wonle3* = hopeless, is perhaps a better reading.

268 *chawle3*, jaws.

269 *glaymande glette*, slimy mud.

270 *rop*, gut, intestine.

P. 97. l. 273 *faþme3*, gropes.

275 *saym*, fat, grease.

277 *le*, shelter.

291 *merk*, darkness.

292 *bulk*, stern.

302 *borne* = *burne*, man.

P. 98. l. 309 *flem* = *flum*, stream.

317 *to my wo stounde3* = ? until my woe over-powers (confounds) me.

320 *to laste* ? to the last; *mere*, boundary.

325 *þacces*, blows.

329 *meled*, conversed.

338 *spare drye* dry *spar* (rafter) but ? *spare* = *space*.

339 *a warthe*, a ford.

341 *sluchched* = *sluched*, dirty, muddy.

342 *mester*, need.

116

P. 99. l. 345 *bruxle3*, reproaches, upbraids,

350 *loke* = *loken*, fastened.

362 *dumpe*, be thrust.

364 *swete*, life; *to lose þe swete* = to lose the (sweet) life.

372 *doured*, mourned, grieved. Cf. Sc. *dour*.

373 *Heter hayre3 þay hent*, etc., rough hair shirts they took, etc.

P. 100. l. 395 *for-clemmed*, very hungry, starved.

396 *rurd*, cry.

400 *amesyng* = *mesyng* = *mese*, pity, mercy.

403 *wodschip*, wrath.

411 *on-hit*, struck or inflamed (?); *calle3*, addresses.

P. 101. l. 418 *bene*, bountiful, kind.

419 *lur*, loss.

426 *bale-stour*, death-pang; *bale* in the sense of death is not very common.

447 *lylled*, flourished.

448 *lefsel* = *leaf-bower*. See Glossary.

P. 102. l. 449 *boȝted*, curved.
450 *happed*, covered.
451 *a nos* = a projection, opening (?)
or is it a clerical error for *abof* = *above*.
452 *schaȝe* = wood, shaw.
453 *glyȝt*, glanced.
460 *þe deuel* ? *ded euel*, did evil.
470 *syfle*, blow.
473 *wyl*, wandering.
478 *wertes he swyþeȝ*, herbs he scorches.

P. 103. l. 486 *wered*, protected.
489 *lansed*, uttered.
492 *waymot* = angry, passionate.
502 *remen*, mourn, lament.
509 *soumme*, company.

P. 104. l. 524 *gryndel*, angry.
526 *rakel*, hasty.

Introductory Material (*main file*)

The Pearl (*separate file*) 1

Cleanness (*separate file*) 37

Patience (*separate file*) 89

117

GLOSSARIAL INDEX

Note that I and J are listed separately, while all initial U except the one-letter word “u” are listed under V. As explained in the editor’s List of Abbreviations, the letters A, B, C refer respectively to *The Pearl*, *Cleanness* and *Patience*. Except for cross-references (“See...”), all links are to these external files.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U UV W Y 3

A

Abate, lessen, put an end to, A. 123; B. 1356.

Abate, abode, A. 617.

Abayst, downcast, abashed, B. 149, pret. of *abaisse* or *abash*, Fr. *esbahir*.

Able, A. 599.

Abof, above, A. 1023.

Abominacione, B. 1173.

Abroched, commenced, A. 1123.

Abyde, (*a*) await, A. 436, 486; (*b*) endure, B. 7. A.S. *abidan*.

Abydyng, *sb.* C. 419.

Abyme, abyss, A. 363; B. 143.

Abyt, habit, dress, B. 141.

Accorde, Acorde, agreement, A. 509, Fr. *accorder*, to agree with.

Achaped, escaped, B. 970.

Achaufe, kindle, B. 1143.

Acheue, accomplish, A. 475.

Acroche, encroach, A. 1069, Fr. *accrocher*, to hook on; from *croc*, a hook.

Adaunt = daunt, A. 157.

Adoun, down, A. 988; B. 953.

Adre3, aside, aback, B. 71. The word is used by Gower under the form *adrigh*. *O-dreghe*, *one-dreghe*, 117b are other forms of the word. Sc. *on-dreich*.

> "The tother withdrewe, *one-dreghe*
> And durste do none other."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 352.)
> "The tother dro3he him *o-dreghe* for drede of the kny3te."

(Anturs of Arther, xliv. 3.)

"He with drogh hym *a draght* & a dyn made."
(T. B. 1224.)

Adubbement, Adubmente, adornment, A. 84, 85, O.Fr. *adoubement*; *dober*, *douber*, garnish, deck; Fr. *douber*, to rig or trim a ship; Prov. Fr. *adobar*, to arrange, prepare.

Adyte, A. 349.

Affraye, *sb.* fear, A. 1174; *vb.* frighten, B. 1780; Fr. *effrayer*, to scare, affright; *effroi*, terror. Cf. *fray*, to scare birds.

Affyen, trust, C. 331.

Agayn, Agayne, Agaynes, against, B. 266, 826, 1711.

Agayne3, towards, B. 611.

Agayn-tote, *sb.* a looking back, B. 931. *Tote*, look, peep, as a 118 verb or a noun, is common in Old English writers.

"She went up wightly by a wall syde,
To the toppe of a tower, & *tot* ouer the water."
(T. B. 862.)

Age, A. 412, B. 426.

Agly3te, slipped from, A. 245. *Gly3t*, as a verb, signifies not only to slip but to *glance*, look. Cf. *leme* = gleam, glance, slip.

Alabaunderynes, B. 1470.

Alarom, alarm, B. 1207.

Al-bare, clearly, A. 1025.

Alce = als, also, B. 1377.

Alder = elder, A. 621, *Aldest*, A. 1042, B. 1333.

Alder-men, elders, A. 887.

Alegge, alledge, A. 703.

Aliche, alike, B. 1477.

Alkaran = alkatran, B. 1035.

Alle-kynne3, all kinds of, A. 1028.

Allyt = a lyt = ? a little, B. 599.

Almy3t, almighty, A. 498.

Alofte, on high, B. 1183.

Al-one, A. 933.

Al-only, except, A. 779.

Alosed, destroyed, B. 274. See *lose*.

Alow, approve, praise, reward, A. 634. O.Fr. *louer*. Lat. *laudare*.

Aloynte, removed, far from (from O.E. *aloigne*, *alogne*, to remove, carry off. O.Fr. *aloigner*).

Alo3, alow, softly, B. 670.

Als, also, A. 253, 827, B. 516.

Also, as, B. 984, 1045, 1792.

Also-tyd,
Als-tyd, at once, immediately, B. 64. See *tyd*.
As-tyd,

118b

Al-þa3, although, A. 759.

Alþer-fayrest, fairest of all, B. 1379.

Alþer-fynest, finest of all, B. 1637.

Alþer-rychest, richest of all, B. 1666.

Alþer-swettest, sweetest of all, B. 699.

Alum, B. 1035.

Amaffised, B. 1470.

Amaraun3, B. 1470.

Amatyst, amethyst, A. 1016.

Ame, (1) *vb.* place, A. 698; (2) *sb.* purpose, B. 128. Germ. *ahmen*. Bavarian, *amen*, *hämen*, to guage a cask, fathom, measure.

Amended, B. 248.

Amesyng, *sb.* moderation, C. 400. See *mese*.

Amoneste, admonish, B. 818.

Amounted, B. 395.

Amoynt, company, A. 895.

And = an, if, B. 864.

An-ende (on-ende), lastly, finally, A. 186.

An-ende = anente, opposite, A. 1136; respecting, A. 697.

An-ende3 = anentes, opposite, A. 975. Sc. *anens*.

Anger, A. 343, B. 572.

Angré, bitter, B. 1035.

Anguych, anguish, C. 325.

Ankre3, anchors, A. 418, B. 103.

Anon, at once (= anane, onane, in one moment), A. 584.

Anournement, ornament, B. 1290.

Anoynted, B. 1446.

Answar, answer, A. 518.

Anter, peril, C. 242. To *aunter*, put a thyng in daunger, or adventure, *adventurer* (Palsgrave).
119

An-vnder, under, A. 1081. Sc. *anonder*. Cf. *down* and *adown*, *low* and *alow*.

Aparaunt, B. 1007.

Apassed, past, A. 540.

Apert, openly, A. 589.

Apparaylmente, ornaments, A. 1052.

Apparement, ornaments, B. 1270. Fr. *appareiller*, to fit, suit.

Appose, *vb.* question, A. 902. Fr. *apposer*, to lay or set on, or near to.

Aproche, A. 686, B. 8, 167. Fr. *approcher*, draw near. Lat. *prope*, near.

Apyke, adorn, B. 1479, 1637.

Aquyle, demand, ask, obtain, A. 690, 966. O.Fr. *aquillir*, to gather.

Aray, Araye, A. 719, 1166; B. 816, 1442. O.Fr. *arroyer*, *arréer*, dispose, set in order.

Arayned, arraigned, C. 191. O.Fr. *arraisonner*, *arraigner*.

Are, before, previously, B. 438, 1128.

Arende, errand, message, C. 72, A.S. *aerend*, *aerende*.

Arest, *sb.* abode, resting place, B. 906.

Areset, *vb.* stop, cease, A. 766, remain, B. 144. Fr. *arrester*. Lat. *arestare*.

Arewarde, apostate, B. 208. Sc. *areird*, backward.

Arn, Arne, are, A. 458, 628, B. 8, 1810.

Aryue, A. 447.

Ary3t, aright, A. 112.

Ar3e, terrify, frighten, fear, B. 572, 119b 713. Provincial *arfe*, *arghe*, afraid. Cf. "*Arwe* or ferefulle (*arwhe*, K. arowe or ferdfulle P.). Timidus, pavidus, formidolus." (Prompt. Parv.) The original notion is that of laziness, inertness, and hence timidity, fear, etc. A.S. *earg*, inert, timid, weak. Ger. *arg*, bad. Du. *erg*. Icel. *argr*, lazy, cowardly. Sc. *argh*, *arch*, to hesitate, be reluctant.

> "Antenor *arghet* with austerne wordes."
> (T. B. 1977.)
> "Antenor, *arghly* auntrid of ship."
> (T. B. 1831.)
> "A! Anec. quoth the qwene
> me *ar3es* of my selfe,
> I am all in aunter, sa
> akis me the wame."
> (K. Alex. p. 29.)
> "Sir Alexander and his ost was *ar3ed* unfaire."
> (*Ibid.* p. 132.)

Ar, are, B. 1725.

Are ? ane, one, A. 711.

As, also, B. 179.

As-bare, ? *al bare*, clearly, openly, A. 836.

Asayl, B. 1188.

Ascape, escape, B. 569.

Ascry, *sb.* cry, outcry, A. 1784. *vb*. B. 195. Swed. *anskri*, outcry, scream. O.N. *skri*, cry.

Asent,
Asente, A. 391, "in *asent*," B. 788.

Aske3, ashes, B. 626.

Askry, shout, cry, B. 1206. See *ascry*.

Aslypped, escaped, lost, C. 218.

Aspaltoun, asphalt, B. 1038.

Asperly, sharply, C. 373.
120

Assayl, C. 301.

Asscaped, escaped, B. 1776.

Asscry, cry, shout. See *ascry*.

Assemble, B. 1364, 1769.

Assemblé, A. 760.

Asspye, espy, see, A. 704, 1035.

Assyse,
Asyse, form, fashion, A. 97, A. 844, service, B. 639.

Astate, state, A. 393.

Astraye, A. 1162.

Astel, stole from, B. 1524.

As-tyt, immediately, at once, A. 645, B. 935.

Asure, B. 1411.

Aswage, A. 3.

At, that, A. 672.

Atlyng, purpose, B. 688. Sc. *ettle*, to endeavour. N.Prov.E.

ettle, *attle*, intend. Icel. *aetla*.

> "Armur & all thing *atlet* before."
> (T. B., 855.)

Aþel, noble, A. 258, 411, 940, gracious, A. 761, fine, B. 1276, A.S. aeþele, noble, excellent.

Atount, so much (?), A. 179.

At-slyke, slip away, A. 575.

Atteny, attain, reach, A. 548.

Attled, endeavoured. See *atlyng*.

Attled, endowed, B. 207. It sometimes occurs under the form *aghteld*. N.Prov.E. *ettle*, to deal out, distribute. A.S. *aeht*, possession.

> "She was eldist & heire *etlit* to his londes."
> (T. B. 394.)

At-wappe, escape, B. 1205. See *Wap*.

Atyre, B. 114.

Augoste, august, A. 39.

Auncetere3, auncestors, B. 258.

120b

Aven,
Aune, own, B. 11, 1222.

Aunte, A. 233.

Aunter, adventure, marvel, B. 1600. See T. B. 1899.

Auter, altar, B. 10.

Autly, noble, B. 795. A.S. *áhtlíce*, courageously, manfully.

Avaunt, *sb.* promise, B. 664.

Avayment, show, B. 1358. F. *avoier*.

Auaye, show, B. 1311.

Auenture, adventure, A. 64. O.Fr. *aventure*.

Auise, advise, B. 1365.

Avow, B. 664.

Avoy, away! B. 863.

Avyle, defile, B. 1151, 1713.

Avysyoun, vision, A. 1184.

Awayed, shown, A. 710.

Awayle, avail, B. 408.

Awowe, avow, C. 333.

Ay, always, ever, A. 33, 720. A.S. *áva*, *a*, all, ever. O.Fris. *a*. Germ. *je*, ever.

Ayre, heir, B. 650, 1709.

Ayþer, each, A. 831.

Aywhere, everywhere, B. 228.

A3er = asure, B. 1457.

A3ly = awly, fearfully, B. 874, 937. Dan. *ave*, fear. Eng. *awe*. O.Eng. *agh*. Cf. A.S. *aglác*, misery, grief.

A3t,
A3te, ought, *pret.* of *a3e*, *agh*, or *awe*, B. 122.

A3t, eight, A. 357, B. 11, 29.

A3t-sum, sorrowful, B. 411.

A3tþe, eighth, A. 1011.

B

Baboyne, baboon, B. 1409.

Babtem, A. 627. See *Baptem*.
121

Bachlere3, batchelors, young men not yet raised to the order of knighthood, B. 86.

Baft, abaft, C. 148. A.S. *baefta*, the hinder part.

Bagge, baggage. C. 158.

Bale, bales, C. 157. Sw. *bal*. Fr. *balle*, *bal*, a ball or pack.

Bale, sorrow, woe; also misery, calamity, A. 18, 373; A. 1243, 1256; *bale3*, A. 123, 807. O.Fris. *bale*. A.S. *bealu*, torment, destruction. Icel. *böl*. Phrases: "bodyly *bale*" (pain), A. 478; "*bale* (torment) of helle," A. 651, "*bale-*

stour," death pang, B. 426.

Balele3 = baleless, innocent, C. 227.

Balke, ridge of land, balk, A. 62. Icel. *balkr*, the division between the stalls in a cow-house. Sw. *balka*, to partition off.

> "To my shepe wylle I stalk, and herkyn anone,
> Ther abyde on a *balk*, or sytt on a stone."
> (Town. Myst. p. 99.)

Balleful = baleful, wretched, wicked, B. 979.

Balter, hop, jump, skip, C. 459.

Balterande, halting, limping, B. 103. Sc. *balter*, to dance.

> "He baltyrde, he bleryde."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 66.)

Etymologically it is connected with *palter* and *falter*, and is applicable either to the unsteady gait of the lame or faltering steps of the blind.

Baly = bayly, authority, jurisdiction, dominion, A. 1083. 121b

Baneres, B. 1404.

Banne, proclamation, decree, B. 95, 1361.

Banne, curse, B. 468, 885. Sw. *bann*, excommunication; *banna*, to reprove, chide, curse.

> "*Bannet* worthe the bale tyme þat ho borne was."
> T. B. 1388.

Banne, comfort, strengthen, B. 620. O.Sc. *bawne*.

Bantel, A. 991, 1017; B. 1459, posts, pillars.

Baptem, baptism, A. 627, 653.

Baptysed, A. 818.

Barayn, barren, B. 659.

Bare, *adj.* naked, B. 452; *sb.* 791.

Bare, only, B. 1573. Sw. *bara*.

Bared, disclosed, B. 1149.

Bare-heued, bare-headed, B. 633.

Bareres, Barre3, bars, barriers, A. 963, 1239; B. 321. W. *bar*, rail, shaft. Fr. *barre*; *barrière*, a barrier. Cf. Sw. *s-parre*. Eng. *s-par*.

Barme, bosom, C. 510. A.S. *bearm*. "*Barme* gremium." (Prompt. Parv.)

> "He fond Horn in arme
> On Rymenhilde *barme*."
> (K. Horn, p. 294.)

Barnage, childhood, B. 517.

Barne, child, son, A. 426; *barne3*, A. 1040; B. 1085. Sc. *bairn*. A.S. *bearn*.

Baronage, nobility, B. 1424. See T. B. 211.

Baroune3, barons, B. 82, 1398.

Barre3, Barers, bars, B. 884, 1263.

Barst, burst, B. 963.
122

Base, Basse, base, foundation, A. 1000, B. 1278. See T. B. 1652.

Bassyn, basin, B. 1145, 1278.

Bastele, B. 1187. "*Bastyle* of a castelle or cytye. Fascennia." (Prompt. Parv.)

Basyng, base, A. 992.

Bated, abated, B. 440.

Bater, B. 1416.

Batelment, B. 1459.

Baþe, dip, plunge, B. 1248.

Bausen, badger, B. 392. "*Bawstone* or *bawsone*, or a gray, Taxus, melota." (Prompt. Parv.)

Bawelyne, bow-line, B. 417.

Bay, recess, B. 1392. The original meaning seems to be *opening* of any kind. Cf. *bay*, space in a building

between two main beams (Forby).

Bayly, dominion, A. 315, 442.

Bayn, *adv.* readily, willingly, A. 807, A. 1511; ready, B. 136. N.Prov.E. *bane*, near, convenient. "*Beyn* or plyaunte. Flexibilis." (Prompt. Parv.) *Bainly*, readily, T. B. 135.

Baysment, abasement, A. 174.

Bayte, B. 55. O.N. *beita*.

Baytayled, fortified, B. 1183.

Beauté, A. 749.

Bed, Bede, bid, command, invite; *p.p. beden*, A. 715, B. 95, 440. See T. B. 389.

Beke, beak, B. 487.

Bekyrande, *sb.* bikering, fighting, B. 1474. "*Bekyryn* or fyghtyn (*bikkeringe*), Pugno, dimico." (Prompt. Parv.)

> "Bolde men to batell and *biker* with hond."
> T. B. 2944.

122b

Bele, *vb.* boil, A. 18. N.Prov.E. *bele*.

Bem, beam, ray, "*bem* of þe brode heuen," B. 603.

Bem, tree, A. 814.

Ben, Bene, are, *3rd pers. pl.* A. 572.

Bench, seat, B. 130, 854.

Bene, fair, A. 198.

Bene, *adj.* kind, merciful, C. 418.

Bent, field, plain, B. 532, 1675. See T. B. 1192.

Ber, bore, *pret.* of *bere*, to bear, A. 426, B. 1480.

Berdles, beardless, B. 789.

Bereste, breast, A. 854.

Berfray, watch tower, B. 1187. O.F. *berfroi*, *beffroit*. Fr. *beffroir*. M.Lat. *belfredum*. The modern English *belfry* is a

corruption of *berfray*.

Beryl, A. 110, 1011.

Beryng, condition, state, behaviour, B. 1060, 1228.

Best, beast, B. 288, 351.

Beste, *sb.* best (one), A. 279.

Besten, of beasts, B. 1446.

Bete, (the fire) mend, repair, kindle, A. 627, *p.p. bet*, B. 1012. Prov.E. *beat*, to mend, repair. A.S. *bétan*, (1) to improve, repair; (2) joined with *fyr* to mend a fire, to light or make a fire, to kindle.

Bete, save, A. 757. A.S. *bétan*, to remedy. Du. *boeten*, mend, fine, expiate.

Bet3 = bes, shall be, A. 611. Present tense with future signification.

Beuerage, drink, liquor, B. 1433, 123 1717. Fr. *beuvrage*, from Lat. *bibere*.

Bewar, beware, B. 292.

Bewté, A. 765.

Beyng, *sb.* being, existence, A. 446.

Bibbe, sip, drink, B. 1499. Prov.E. *beb*. Du. *biberen*, to drink much.

> "Bacus he was brayne-wode for *bebbing* of wynes."
> (K. Alex. p. 154.)

Bicalt, becalled, called from, A. 1163.

> "The kyng was full curteus, *calt* on a maiden."
> (T. B. 388.)

Bi-cnv, acknowledged, B. 1327.

Bidde, bide, abide. C. 51.

Biden, *p.p.* of *bide* = *abide*, B. 616.

Bifalle,
Byfalle, befal, A. 186.

Bifore, before, A. 49.

Bigge, great, A. 43, *bygger*, B. 374.
Bygge,

Bigge, build, B. 1666. A.Sax. *byggan*. Icel. *byggia*. O.Sw. *bygga*, build, also inhabit.

Bigly, strongly, C. 321. See T. B. 904.

Bigonne, began, B. 123.

Bihynde, behind, B. 918.

Biholde, behold, B. 150.

Bihy3t, promised, C. 29.

Bikenne, give, hand over, B. 1296.

Bilde, built, B. 1392.

Bileue, remain, B. 1549.

Bilooghe, below, B. 116.

Birle, pour out, B. 1511. Prov.E. *burl*. A.S. *byrelian*, to give to drink.

> "And seruanz war at this bridale
> That *birled* win in cupp and schal."
> (Met. Hom. p. 120.)

123b

Birolled, berolled, B. 959.

Biseche, beseech, B. 614.

Biso3ten, besought, C. 375.

Bispeke, speak, C. 169.

Bisyde, beside, B. 926.

Bi-talt, aroused, A. 1161. A.S. *tealtian*, *tealtrian*; (1) to *tilt*, shake; (2) to be in danger. William of Shoreham uses one form of this word:

> "For 3ef that water his kende lest
> That cristninge stant *te-tealte*."
> (Poems, p. 9.)
> "For if that water its kind loseth,
> That christening standeth tottery, insecure" (*i.e.* not binding).

Biteche, give up to, entrust to, B. 871; pret. *bita3t*.

Bited, bit, C. 373.

Biþenkke, Biþenke, bethink, B. 1357.

Biþo3t, bethought, B. 125.

Bityde, betide; *pret.* bitydde, C. 61.

Bityde, befall, B. 1804.

Blade, B. 1105.

Blake, black, A. 945; B. 747, 1449.

Blame, *vb.* A. 275; A. 877, 1661; *sb.* B. 43.

Blande, "in blande," together, B. 885. See *blende*.

Blasfamye, Blasfemyon, B. 1661, 1712.

Blayke, yellow, A. 27. Brockett has *blayke* with the sense of yellow, of a golden colour. "*Bleyke* of coloure." Pallidus, subalbus. (Prompt. Parv.)

> "Ther (in paradyse) were floures bothe blew and *blake*,
> Of alle frutes thei myth ther take."
> (Cov. Myst. p. 2.)

124

Bla3t, white, A. 212, *p.p.* of *bleach*, just as *ra3t* is of *reach*. Sc. *blaucht*.

> "As *bla3t* ere thaire wedis
> As any snyppand snawe."
> (K. Alex. p. 54.)

Ble, colour, complexion, A. 76, 212; B. 791, 1759. Prov.E. *ble*, *bly*. A.S. *bleo*.

Bleaunt, a robe of fine linen, A. 163. O.Eng. *bliant*, fine linen, W. *llian*, linen. The *bl* is merely an imitation of the Celtic *ll*.

> "A blewe *bleaunt* obofe brade him al ovir."
> (K. Alex. p. 167.)

Blench, stratagem, device, B. 1202. O.N. *blekkia*.

Blemyst, blemished, B. 1421. O.Fr. *blesmir*.

Blende, Blente, blended, mingled, mixt. A. 385, 1016; B. 967, 1788. A.S. *blendian*. Icel. *blanda*, to mix.

Blo = bla, blue, livid, pale. A. 1017; B. 134. O.H.G. *blao*, N.Fris. *bla*. O.Sc. *bla*.

Blober,

Bluber,

= blubber, waves, C. 221, 266. Prov.E. *blubber*, bubble; *blob*, *bleb*, a bubble. "*Blobure* (blobyre, P.) Burbulium." (Prompt. Parv.) "*Blober* upon water (or bubble) bouteillis." (Palsg.) "The water *blubbers* up." (Baker, Northamptonshire Glossary.)

Blod, a child, B. 686. Supposing the *bl* to represent *ll* we might refer it to the W. *llawd*, a youth, 124b *lad*. O.Sw. *g-lott*. Cf. *bliant*, *bleant*, from W. *llian*.

> "þis Abel was a blissid *blod*,
> Bot Caim was the findes (devil's) fode (offspring)."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 7*b*.)

Blod, blood, A. 650.

Blok, space, C. 272.

Blom, Blome, flower, bloom, A. 578, B. 1467. Sw. *bloma*, a flower. Du. *bloeme*. Ger. *blume*. "*Blome* flowre. Flos." (Prompt. Parv.)

Blome3, blooms, flowers, A. 27.

Blonk, horse, *pl. blonke3*, B. 87, 1392. See T. B. 2371.

Blonkken, *gen. pl.* of horses, B. 1412.

Blosched, looked, C. 343. See *Blusch*.

Blose = blese, blaze, flame. A. 911. Icel. *blossi*, a flame. A.S. *blaese*, a torch. Dan. *blus*.

Blot, spot, blemish, defilement, A. 782.

> "Ye ben worthy, he saide, to be *blottede* and *spottede*, foulede and defoulede with fenne (mire) and with drit of water (*luto inquinari*), and of blode, that in tyme of

werre ne were nat be bespreynt, ne be wette with ennemyes blode." (Quoted by Way, from Roy. MS. 18, A. xii. B. iii. c. 10.)

Blubrande = blubbering, bubbling, foaming, B. 1017. See *blobber*.

Blunt, rushed, C. 272.

Blunt, faint, A. 176. Icel. *blunda*, to sleep. Sw. *blunda*, to close the eyes. Dan. *blende*, to dazzle. Cf. "Blunt of wytte. Hebes." (Prompt. Parv.)

125

Blusch,

Blusche,

look, glance, A. 980, 1083, B. 904, 998, 1537. N.Prov.E. *blush*, resemblance. Cf. "At the first *blush*," at the first appearance, at first sight. Dan. *blusse*, to blaze, flame, glow. There seems to be an etymological connection with words signifying to look, glow, blaze, shine, etc.

> "The kyng *blyschit* on the beryne (man) with his brode eghne."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 10.)
> "He *blusshed* ouer backeward to þe brodesee."
> (See T. B. 1316.)

Blusnande, Blysnande, shining, B. 1404. Icel. *blys*. Dan. *blus*, a torch. Du. *blos*, redness. Dan. *blusse*, to glow. Icel. *lysa*, to shine. Pl.D. *bleistern*, to glisten.

Bluster, B. 886, to wander or stray about.

> "Ac there was wight noon so wys
> The wey thider kouthe,
> But *blustreden* forth as beestes
> Over bankes and hilles."
> (Piers Ploughman, p. 108.)

Blwe, blue, A. 423.

Blwe, blew, B. 885.

Blykked, shone, B. 603. A.S. *blican*, glitter, dazzle. Ger.

blicken, shine, glance, look. Du. *blicken*, glitter; *blick*, a flash.

> "Hire bleo *blyketh* so bryht
> So feyr heo is ant fyn."
> (Lyric Poems, p. 52.)

Blyknande, shining, B. 1467.

Blykned = blaykned, became black, B. 1759. 125b

Blynde, to become faded, dull, B. 1126.

Blynne, cease, A. 729, B. 440, 1661, 1812. A.S. *blinnan* (for *be-linnan*).

Blysful, Blysful, blissful, A. 279, 409.

Blysnande, shining, A. 163. See *blusnande*.

Blysned, shone, A. 1048.

Blyþe, joy, A. 354. Blythe is still used as a noun in the North of England.

Blyþely, joyfully, A. 385.

Bobaunce, boasting, Fr. *bobance*, B. 179, 1712.

Bod, Bode, command, A. 979; B. 56. A.S. *bod*, *gebod*, command, precept, message. "*Bode* or massage (*boode*, H.) nuncium." (Prompt. Parv.)

Bod = abode, *pret.* of *bide* = abide, A. 62; A. 982; wait for, B. 467.

Bodworde, message, B. 473. See T. B. 6262.

Bodyly, A. 478.

Boffet, blast, B. 885.

Boffete3, buffets, blows, A. 809; *boffet*, B. 43.

Bok-lered, book-learned, B. 1551.

Bold, bad, A. 806. A.S. *bâld*, audacious. Sw. *båld*, proud, haughty, warlike. In early English writers the term was applied indifferently to men and women of bad character.

"Þou do me bote again þis *bald* (bad one)
For al þe soth I haf þe tald."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 48*b*.)

126

Bol, bull, A. 1682; *pl. bole3*, B. 55.

Bole, the round stem of a tree, A. 622. It enters also into composition in the word *throte*-bolle. *Pl. bolle3*, B. 76. Icel. *bolr*. Dan. *bul*. Sw. *bål*, trunk of a man's body. See T. B. 4960.

Bolle, bowl, B. 1145, 1511. A.S. *bolla*. Icel. *bolli*.

Bolled, embossed, B. 1464.

Bolnande, swelling, B. 179.

Bolne, swell, A. 18; B. 363. Icel. *bolgna*. Sw. *bulna*, to swell. In some early English works we find *bollen* (ibol3e) the *p.p.* of a verb *bol3e* = bulge, swell. "Bolnyn, Tumeo, turgeo, tumesco." (Prompt. Parv.)

Bonc, bank, A. 907.

Bone, prayer, petition, command (= boon). A. 912, 916; B. 826. A.S. *ben*. S.Sax. *bone*. O.N. *bón* rogatio. "*Bone* or graunte of prayer (*boone* P.) Precarium, peticio." (Prompt. Parv.)

Bone, good, B. 28.

Boner,
Bonere, good, B. 733.

Bonerté, goodness, A. 762.

Bongre, willingly, agreeably to, C. 56. See *Gre*.

Bonk, bank, hill, A. 931, B. 379. Ger. *bank*, bench, bank of a river, etc.

Bor, bower, chamber, dwelling, A. 964. A.S. *bur*, a chamber. Icel. *bur*. N.Prov.E. *boor*, a parlour.

Bore, born, A. 239, B. 584.

Borde, table, B. 1433, 1717.
126b

Borde, board of a vessel, A. 470; B. 211.

Bore3, boars, B. 55.

Borges, burgess; sometimes written *burgeise*, C. 366. O.Fr. *bourgeois*, from Lat. *burgensis*.

Borgoun, to burgeon, bud forth, B. 1042. Fr. *bourgeon*, *bourjon*, young bud or sprig. Prov. Fr. *boure*, bud. Fr. *abourioner*, to bud or sprout forth. See T. B. 4964.

Borlych, burly, B. 1488.

Borne = burne, stream, water, A. 482; *borne3 heued*, head of the stream, source, B. 974. A.S. *burne*. Goth. *brunna*. Icel. *brunnr*. G. *born*, *brunnen*, well, spring.

Bornyst, burnished, A. 77, 220, B. 554. Fr. *brunir*, to polish.

Boro3t = bro3t, brought, A. 628.

Bor3, Bor3e, city, town, A. 957, 989, B. 45, 834, 1750. A.S. *burg*, *burh*. Goth. *baurgs*. Icel. *borg*.

Bos = bus = behoves, B. 687.

Bosk, take, A. 351; *boske* to, go to, B. 834. See *Busk*.

Boske3, bushes, B. 322. Icel. *buskr*.

Bosum, bay, C. 107. Cf. N.Prov.E. *bosom*, the eddy.

> "Eneas and his feris on the strand
> Wery and forwrocht, sped thame to the nerrest land,
> And at the cost of Lyby arryvit he.
> Ane havyn place with a lang hals or entre
> Thar is, with an ile enveronyt on ather part,
> To brek the wallis and storm of every art,
> Within, the water in a *bosum* gays."
> (G. Doug. vol. i. p. 33.)

127

Bost, boast, arrogance. B. 179, 1450.

Boster, boaster, B. 1499.

Bostwys = busteous, boisterous, rough, fierce, A. 814. Pl. Du. *büster*, wild, fearful, savage. Cf. "*Boystows*, rudis." (Prompt. Parv.) *Bustus*, rudis, rigidus, to be *bustus*, rudere. (Cath. Angl.) The form *bostwys* would seem to

point to *bost*, boast, as the probable root.

Bot, "to bot," to boot, B. 473.

Bot, command, B. 944. A.S. *beot*, threat, promise.

Bot, only, A. 18, 382, except, A. 972; *bot-if*, unless, B. 1110.

Bote, saviour, A. 275, 645; remedy, safety, C. 163. A.S. *bót*, amends, atonement; *gebétan*, to make amends. Du. *boet*, remedy; *boeten*, to mend.

Boþe, booth, tent, C. 441.

Boþem,

Boþom,

valley, dale, A. 383, 450; pit, sea, B. 1030. *Bottom*, a valley, is still used in many of our provincial dialects, and is a frequent element in local names. A.S. *botm*, lowest point, depth, abyss. Du. *bodem*. Germ. *boden*. Icel. *botn*.

Bothem, bottom, C. 144.

Boþemleȝ, bottomless, B. 1022.

Bouel,
Bowel, bowel, gut, A. 1251; B. 293.

Bougoun (?) B. 1416.

Boun, (1) ready; (2) finished, A. 534, 992, 1103. See T. B. 827. N.Prov.E. *boun*. Icel. *bua*, to prepare, p.p. *buinn*, prepared, ready.
127b

Bounden, fastened, A. 322; bound (*p.p.* of *binde*), B. 1103.

Bounet, went, *pret.* of *boun* or *bown*, to go, B. 1398. See *boun*. See T. B. 827, 5230.

> "And (he) *bownnes* over a brode mede
> With breth (anger) at his herte."
> (M. Arthure, p. 290.)

Bounté, goodness, B. 1436.

Boureȝ (bowers), chambers. B. 322. See *Bor*.

Bourne = burne, man, A. 617.

Bour3 = bor3, city, B. 1377. See *Bor3*.

Boute, without, A. 260, 824; B. 523.

Bow, Bowe, to go, walk, literally, to bend (one's steps). A. 126, 974; B. 45, 379, 482.

> "Forth heo gunnen *bugen*
> In to Bruttaine."
> (La3. 2, 410.)
> "The burd *bowet* from þe bede."
> (T. B. 775.)

A.S. *búgan*, to *bow*, *bend*, avoid, flee.

Bowe, obey (bend to), C. 56, 75.

Boy, a boy, youth, B. 878.

Boye3, boys, men of low position, servants; generally used in a bad sense, "*boye3 bolde*," A. 806.

> "—— bot a *boye* one (alone)
> Hoves by hym on a blonke (horse) and his spere holdes."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 211.)
> "I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttille
> And fore bare-legyde *boyes* that one the bente houys."
> (*Ibid.* p. 178.)

Bo3 = bow, go, A. 196; B. 1242, 1551. See *Bow*.
128

Bo3e, bough, B. 616, 1467.

Bo3t, bought, A. 651.

Bo3ted, curved, C. 449. A.S. *bugan*, to bend. Dan. *bugt*, bend, turn. Sc. *bought*, to fold, bend.

Brade, broad, A. 138.

Brake vp = break up, throw up, spew, C. 340. Ger. *sich brechen*. Du. *braeken*, to vomit. "*Brakyn*, or castyn or spewe. Vomo." (Prompt. Parv.)

Braken (*brake*, *bracken*), fern, B. 1675, Sw. *bräken*, Dan. *bregne*, Icel. *brok*, sedge. "A *brakane* filix, a *brakan*, *buske*

filicarium." (Cath. Angl.)

Braste, burst, C. 148.

Brathe = breþe, anger, ire, also fierceness. A. 1170; B. 916. O.N. *braedi*, anger. It sometimes signifies angry.

"Bade hom blyn of hor *brathe*."
(T. B. 5075.)
"For this word was Saul wrath,
For oft-sith was he bremli brath."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 42*b*.)

Braþeȝ, *pl.* of braþe, A. 346.

Braunches, B. 1464.

Braundysch, display, A. 346.

Bray, utter (aloud), roar, A. 346. Sw. *bräka*.

Brayde, brought, A. 712; aroused, awakened, A. 1170; "at a *brayde*," at a start (Icel. at *bragdi*), at once, A. 539; "in a *brayd*," in a moment, B. 1507. O.N. *bregtha*, weave, move, brandish, seize, awake, to leap, start. *Bragth*, quick motion. 128b

"Þe Philistienes wituten les
Ran on Sampson in a res,
Bot Sampson þat selcuth smert,
Ute o þair handes son he stert
And gave a *braid* sa fers and fast,
Þat alle þe bandes of him brast."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 40*b*.)

Brayden, ornamented, *p.p.* of *braid*, B. 1481.

Bred, bread, B. 636.

Brede, Bred, = breed, become, A. 1558; replenish, A. 415, 814; B. 257.

Brede, board, C. 184. "*Brede* or lytylle borde. Mensula, tabula, tabella, asserulus." (Prompt. Parv.) A.S. *bred*, plank, board, etc.

Brede, breadth, A. 1030.

Brede, stretch out, A. 814.

Breed, bred, C. 143.

Bref, short, brief, A. 268.

Brek, broke, B. 1105, 1239.

Breme, full, complete, A. 863. A.S. *breme*, famous, glorious.

Breme, fierce, A. 346; A. 229; B. 430. Du. *bremen*, to burn with desire. Fris. *brimme*, to rage.

> "A *brem* lowe." (T. B. 860.)

Bremly, vigorously, B. 509.

Brend,
Brende, = brente, burnt, bright, A. 989; B. 1292.

Brennande, burning, B. 1012.

Brenne, burn, B. 509, 916.

Brent, burnt, bright, A. 106.

Brent, steep; *superl. brentest*, highest, B. 379. N.Prov.E. *brant*, steep. Sw. *brant*, steep, a precipice. 129

> "A man may syt on a *brante* hyll syde."
> (Ascham's Toxoph. p. 58, ed. Arber.)
> "Apon the bald Bucifelon *brant* up he sittes."
> (K. Alex. p. 124.)
> "Thane come thai blesnande till a barme of a *brent* lawe (hill)."
> (*Ibid.* p. 164.)

Brere, briar, B. 791, 1694. N.Prov.E. *brere*, *breer*. A.S. *brér*.

Bresed, rough, like bristles, shaggy (?), B. 1694. Cf. Sc. *birs*, *birse*, bristle.

Brest, attack, outburst, B. 229. N.Prov.E. *birst*, attack (Brockett). O.E. *burst* = injury, A.S. *byrst*.

Breste, to burst, B. 1783.

Breth,
Brethe,
wind, C. 107, 138; smell, vapour, B. 509, 967. Cf. "*brethe* of smoke." (Hampole's Pricke of Conscience,

l. 4727.) Sc. *broth*. Ger. *brodem*, *broden*, steam, vapour. A.S. *brœth*, an odour, scent, breath. "*Brethe* at his wille." (T. B. 1945.)

Breth, wrath, B. 916. See *Brath*.

Breue, tell, A. 755.

"*Breve* us thi name." (K. Alex. p. 78.)

Breued, related, written, B. 197. O.N. *brefa*.

Breyþed, rushed, B. 1421. See *Braid*.

Brod, great; "*brod* wonder," B. 584.

Brode, broad, A. 650.

Brok, Broke, 129b brook, river, stream, A. 981; *pl. broke3*. A. 1074, sea; C. 145. A.S. *broca*.

Brom (broom), heath, C. 392. A.S. *bróm*.

Bronch, branch, B. 487.

Bronde, sword, B. 1246. O.N. *brandr*.

Brond, brand, B. 1012.

Broþe, angry, fierce, rough, B. 149, 1409. The original form in O.E. is *brathe*. It is connected with *brethe*, *brathe*, anger, wrath.

"Wreth it es a *brath* on-fall (outburst)
Menging o mode that cums o galle."
(The Deadly Sins, in Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii.)

Broþely, Broþlych, fierce, rough, and hence vile, bad, A. 848, 1030; vilely, A. 1256; B. 474. The original form is *braþly*, fiercely, vigorously.

"Thoner o-loft fal sal he (Antichrist) gar,
And tres *brathli* blomes bere;
Brathli to do the see be reth (stormy)
And *brathli* to do it be smeth."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 124*a*.)

Broun, brown, A. 537, 990.

Browden, clustered, B. 1132.

Bro3t, brought, A. 286.

Brugge = brigge, bridge, B. 1187. A.S. *bricge*.

Brunt, blow, A. 174.

"All þat was bitten of the best (beast)
was at a brunt dede."
(K. Alex. p. 134.)

Brurd, border, edge, B. 1474. Sc. *breard*. A.S. *brerd*, *breard*, *briord*, *breord*, brim, margin, rim, shore, brink.

Brurd-ful, brimful, full up to the brim, B. 383. Chaucer uses *bret-ful* in the same sense.
130

Brutage = bretage, parapets of a wall, ramparts, B. 1190. Fr. *breteche*.

Bruxle, upbraid, reprove, C. 345. O.N. *bríxla*, to reprove, reproach.

Brych, filth, uncleanness, B. 848. The meaning here assigned to *brych* is conjectural. Cf. Du. *brack*, refuse, damaged. Ger. *brechen*, to vomit, *Bryche* as an adjective occurs in Robt. Brunne's "Handlyng Synne," p. 182, where it is glossed low (loghe) *i.e.* vile.

"Now ys Pers bycome *bryche*

That er was bothe stoute and ryche." In the Romance of Alexander, ed. Stevenson, we find the form *bicchid* = *briched* (?). Cf. *shille* and *shrille*, etc.

"And on the a3tent day, eftire the prime
A basilisk in a browe, breis (annoys) thaim unfaire,
A stra3till and a stithe worme *stinkande* of elde,
And es so bitter, and so breme, and *bicchid* (foul) in himselfe,
That with the *stinke* and the strenth he stroyes no3t allane,
Bot quat he settes on his si3t, he slaes in a stonde."
(p. 165.)

Bryd, lady, A. 769. A.S. *bryd*, a bride, a wife, woman.

Brydde, bird, B. 288, 1482.

Brydale, wedding, marriage, B. 142.

Brym,
Brymme, bank, shore, A. 232, 1074. Dan. *bremme*.

Brymme, stream, water, B. 365. 130b A.S. *brym*, the sea. In this sense *brymme* seems to have been unknown to the Southern dialect.

"O þis water þat sua stanc
Wa was þam þat it nedings dranc,
Þat toþer oncom þat him felle,
Was frosse þat na tung moght telle,
Þat ute o *brim* and brokes bred,
And siþen over al Egypte spred."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 32*b*.)

Brynke3, brinks, banks, B. 384.

Brynston, brimstone, B. 967.

Bry3t, *adj.* bright, A. 110; *sb.* bright one, A. 755.

Bukke3, bucks, B. 392.

Bulde, built, B. 1190.

Bule3, bulls, B. 392.

Bulk, stern of a ship. A.S. *bolca*, O.H.G. *pl. balkun*. Agiavia, loca per quæ ad remiges acceditur. (Graff. iii. p. 108.)

Bur, Burre, blow, assault, A. 176; C. 7. O.Sc. *byr*, a blow. N.Prov. *birre*, *burr*. W. *bur*, violence, rage. See Wicliffe, St. Luke, viii. 33.

"—— no buerne might ffor the *birre* it abide."
(T. B. 170. Cf. T. B. 571, 1902.)

Bur, wave, C. 148. Prov.E. *bore*. Icel. *bara*. O.Ger. *bare*. Du. *baar*, wave, billow. In La3amon, vol. iii. p. 121, *Þe beares* occurs in the latter version for *þa vðen* of the older copy.

Burde, behoved, A. 316; C. 117, 507. O.N. *byrjar*. Dan. *bör*.

Burde, a woman, lady. B. 80, 653. See *Bryd*. See T. B. 3984.
131

Burghe, Bur3, Bur3e, city, town, A. 980; A. 982; B. 366.

Burne, man, A. 397, 712; A. 1202; "*burne3* & *burde3*," men and women, B. 80. A.S. *beorn*, warrior, hero.

Burnist, Burnyst, burnished, B. 1085.

Burre, blow, A. 176. See *bur*.

Burþen, burden, B. 1439.

Butter, B. 636.

Bur3, city, town, B. 1666. See *burghe*.

Busch, Busche, = buske, to go, A. 1416; B. 143, 472.

"& he (she) wist it as wel or bet as 3if it were hire owne,
Til hit big was & bold to *buschen*, on felde."
(William and the Werwolf, p. 7.)

Busily, laboriously, B. 1446.

Busk, prepare, made ready, dress, to direct one's steps

towards a place, to go, hasten. A. 142, 333, 351, 633, 1395; B. 437. Icel. *at buast* (for *at buasc*) = *at bua sig*, to bend one's steps, to prepare, etc. See T. B. 1186.

Busmar, scorn, mockery, B. 653. A.S. *bismer*, reproach, blasphemy.

Bustwys, impetuous, fiery, A. 911. See *bostwys*.

Busye3 = busies, troubles, A. 268.

Buyrne = burne, man, C. 340. See *Burne*.

Bycalle, call, A. 913.

Bycalt, aroused, called, A. 1163.

Bycom, became, A. 537.
131b

Byde, abide, A. 399; suffer, A. 664; A. 32; remain, B. 449, 622.

Bydene, quickly, A. 196.

Bye, buy, A. 732.

Byfallen, befallen, B. 1629.

Byfore, before, A. 530.

Bigge,
Byge, great, B. 229.

Byggyng,
Bygyng, building, A. 932; dwelling, B. 378. A.S. *byggan*, to build, Icel. *byggia*. See T. B. 1379.

Bygly, great, strong; "*bygly bylde*," great building, A. 963. See T. B. 5216.

Bygonne,
Bygonnen, begun, *p.p.* of *byginne*, A. 33; A. 749; began, B. 549.

Bygyn, begin, A. 547.

Bygynner, beginner, A. 436.

Byhelde, beheld, B. 452.

Byhod, behoved, A. 928. Cf. *bud*, behoved; *bus*, behoves.

Byholde, behold, A. 810; B. 64.

Byhynde, Byhynden, behind, B. 653, 980.

Byld, Bylded, built, See *Bulde*.

Bylde, building, A. 727, 963.

Bylyue, immediately, at once, quickly, B. 353, 610.

Bynde, bine, woodbine, C. 444. Sw. *binda*. Ger. *winde*. Eng. *bind*-weed.

Bynne, within, B. 452, 467.

Byrled, poured out, B. 1715. See *Birle*.

Bysech, Byseche, beseech, A. 390.

Byseme, beseem, A. 310.

132

Bysulpe, defile, B. 575. See *Sulpe*.

Byswyke, defraud, A. 568. A.S. *swícan*, deceive.

Bysyde, beside, B. 673.

Byta3t, Byta3te, = betaught, entrusted, confided; *pret.* of *biteche*, A. 1207; B. 528.

Byte, fierce, A. 355.

Byþenk, repent, B. 582.

Bytterly, *adv.* B. 468.

Bytwene, between, A. 140, 658.

Bytwyste, betwixt, A. 464.

Bytyde, betide, happen, A. 397; B. 522.

Byye, buy, A. 478.

By3e, crown, A. 466; ring, collar, B. 1638. A.S. *beáh*, *beág*, ring, collar, diadem.

By3onde, beyond, A. 141, 146, 158, 981.

C

Cable, C. 102.

Cace, case, chance, C. 265.

Cache,

Cachche,

= catch, drive away, take away. (1) "*cache* to," run to, A. 629; (2) take, A. 898, 1252. *Cachche*, to knock together, A. 1541. *Cached*, caught, B. 1800. Prov. Fr. *cacher*. Fr. *chasser*. It. *cacciare*.

Cachen (*3d pers. pl.* of *cache*), B. 16.

Cagged, drawn along (?), B. 1254.

Caggen (*3d pers. pl. pres.* of *cagge*), draw (?), A. 512.

> "Cables were *caget* togedur."
> (T. B. 3703.)
> 132b
> "He plyes ovir the pavement with pallene webis.
> Mas on hi3t ovir his hede for hete of the sone,
> Sylours of sendale to sele ovire the gatis,
> And sammes thaim on aither side with silken rapis,
> And then he *caggis* up one
> Cordis, as curteyns it ware."
> (K. Alex. p. 52.)

Cal, *sb.* call, invitation, B. 61.

Calder, colder, A. 320.

Calle3, addresses, C. 411.

Callyng, *sb.* proclamation, B. 1362. N.Prov.E. calling, notice. "*Callynge*, or clepyng to mete: Invitacio." (Prompt. Parv.)

Calsydoyne, chalcedony, A. 1003.

Cambe, came, A. 775.

Canacle, B. 1461. M.Lat. *canicellus*, a little box, chest.

Candel, C. 472.

Candelstik, B. 1478.

Capeles, horses, B. 1254. *Capul* or *caple*, horse. Caballus.

(Prompt. Parv.)

Capstan, B. 418.

Captyuidé, captivity, B. 1612.

Caraldes, C. 159.

Carayne, carrion, B. 459.

Care, sorrow, A. 50, 371; B. 777. A.S. *cáru*. Goth. *kara*.

Careful, sorrowful, B. 770.

Carf, carved, formed, C. 131.

Carfully, sorrowfully, B. 1252.

Carle, a low fellow, a churl, B. 876. A.S. *ceorl*, a man, countryman. Du. *kaerle*. Ger. *kerl*.

Carneles, battlements, embrasures, B. 1382.

Carpe, *sb.* discourse, A. 883; 133 parable, A. 23; speech, B. 1327.

Carpe, *vb.* to discourse, talk, speak, A. 381; A. 74; of carpe, discourse of, B. 752. "*Carpyn* or talkyn, fabulor, confabulor, garrulo." (Prompt. Parv.) Port. *carpire*, cry.

Carping, discourse, speech, B. 1550.

Cas, case, A. 673.

Cast,
Caste, condition, A. 1163.
Kest,

Cast, look, B. 768.

Casydoyne, B. 1471. See *Calsydoyne*.

Catel, wealth, B. 1296.

Cawse, reason, B. 65.

Cause, A. 702.

Cayre, to turn one's steps to a place, to go, A. 1031; B. 85, 901, 1259. "Kaire to þi londe," T. B. 836. A.S. *cérran*. Ger. *kehren*. Du. *keeren*, to turn.

Cayser, emperor, B. 1322.

Caytif, wretched, B. 1426.

Ca3t, Ca3te, caught, A. 50; ca3te of, took off, A. 237; ca3t away, A. 1275; B. 485. See *Cache*.

Certе3, truly, B. 105.

Cerue, cut, dig, B. 1547.

Ceté, city, A. 927.

Ceuer, recover, reach, A. 319.

Chace, drive, A. 443.

Chambre, A. 904; B. 1586.

Chapel, A. 1062.

Charde, turned, A. 608. A.S. *cérran*, to turn, avert. Cf. *ajar*, older form a-*char*, on-*char*.

133b

Charged, commanded, B. 464.

Charged, loaded, B. 1154, 1295.

Chariote, B. 1295.

Charyté, A. 470.

Chast, chasten, B. 860.

Chastyse, B. 543.

Chaufen, heat, increase, B. 128.

Chaunce, chance, B. 1125.

Chaundeler, candlestick, B. 1272.

Chaunge, change, B. 1588.

Chawle3, jaws, C. 268. N.Prov.E. *chavel*. A.S. *ceafl*. S.Sax. *cheuele*. Cp. the vulgar phrase "cheek by *jowl*."

Chayer, Chayere, chair, seat, A. 885; B. 1218.

Chef, chief, B. 684, 1238.

Cheftayn, chieftain, B. 1295.

Chekke, B. 1238.

Chere, cheer, A. 407; countenance, A. 887. Prov. Sp. *cara*, O.Fr. *chiere*, countenance, favour, look.

Cheryche, Cherisch, cherish, B. 128, 543, 1154, 1644.

Ches, chose (*pret.* of *chese*), A. 759.

Cheualrye, chivalry, B. 1238.

Cheue, achieve, accomplish, B. 1125. Fr. *achever*, to bring to a head, accomplish. Fr. *chevir*, to compass.

Cheuetayn, Cheuentayn, chieftain, A. 605; B. 464. O.Fr. *chevetaine*.

Childer, Chylder, children, A. 718; B. 1300.

Chorles, churl, B. 1258. See *Carle*.

Chos, went. See "chosen," T. B. 490.

Chyche, niggard, A. 605. Fr. 134 *chice*, avarice. *Chynche* and *kynche* are other forms of the same word.

Chyde, A. 403.

Chyldryn, (*gen. pl.*) of children, B. 684.

Chylled = chilled, shivered, became cold, C. 368.

Chysly = choysly, aptly, well, B. 543.

Ciences, sciences, knowledge, B. 1289.

Clam (*pret.*), climbed, B. 405.

Clambe (*2 sing. pret.*), climbedst, A. 773.

Clanner, cleaner, B. 1100.

Clanly, Clanlych, cleanly, purely, A. 2; A. 264, 1089, 1327; neatly, B. 310. T. B. 53.

Clannes, clannesse, cleanness, purity, A. 1, 12, 1809.

Claryoun, clarion, B. 1210.

Clater, Clatter, shatter, B. 912.

> "So hard was she beseged soth for to telle,
> And so harde sautes to the cite were ȝeuen,
> That the komli kerneles were to-*clatered* with engines."

(William and the Werwolf, p. 103.)

Clatering, clattering, B. 1515. Du. *klateren*, to rattle.

Clat3, clash, clatter, B. 839. Ger. *klatschen*, to clap; *klatsch*, slap, clash.

Clawres, claws, B. 1696. *Clawres* is perhaps an error for *clawes*. It may, however, be another form of O.E. *clever*, *claver*, a claw. Du. *klaveren*, *kleveren*. 134b N.Prov.E. *claiver*, to claw oneself up, to scramble.

Clay, A. 312. *Clay*-daubed, B. 492.

Clayme, call for, cry for, B. 1096.

Cleche, receive, take, A. 12. "*Cleches* to," takes, lays hold of, B. 634. Sc. *cleik*, *clek*, *cluke*, claw, hook; *cleke*, *cleik*, catch, snatch. O.Sw. *klaencka*, to snatch, seize.

Clef, cleft, split (*pret.* of *cleve*), B. 367.

Clem, claim, A. 826.

Cleme, daub, plaster with clay, B. 312. N.Prov.E. *cleam*. *Clam*, to daub, glue. S.Prov.E. *cloam*, earthenware; *clomer*, a potter. A.S. *clem*, *clám*, clay; *clæmian*, to *clam*, smear.

> "I stoppe thys ouyn wythowtyn dowte,
> With clay I *clome* yt uppe ryght fast,
> That non heat cum [ther] owte."
> (The Play of the Sacrament, p. 132.)

Clene, perfect, whole, B. 1731.

Clenge, cling, stick, B. 1034. Dan. *klynge*, to cluster, crowd. S.Prov.E. *clunge*, to crowd, squeeze; *clungy*, sticky.

Clente, clenched, fastened, A. 259. Cf. *queynte* = quenched, *dreynte* = drenched.

Clepe, to call, B. 1345. A.S. *clypian*.

Cler, Clere, clear, A. 2, 207; bright, A. 620, 735; plain, B. 26.

Clergye, learning, B. 1570.

Clerke3, clerks, scholars, B. 193.

Clernes, clearness, beauty, B. 1353.
135

Cleþe, clothe, B. 1741.

Cle3t, Cly3t, = clutched, fastened, (*p.p.* of *cleche*), A. 858; fixed, B. 1655.

Clobbe3, clubs, B. 839.

Clos, enclosure, house, B. 839.

Clos, closed, A. 183; B. 12.

Closed, enclosed, B. 310.

Clot, mount, hill, A. 789. In the "Owl and Nightingale," 999, we find *clude*, a hill. A.S. *clúd*. Low Ger. *kloot*, a hill.

Clot, soil, earth, A. 22, 320. Du. *klot*, *klotte*, clod, clot.

Clotte3, clods, A. 857.

Cloþ, sail, C. 105.

Cloutes, Clowte3, pieces, B. 367, 965.

Cloystor, cloister, A. 969.

Cluchche, clutch, B. 1541.

Clustered, B. 367, 951. See T. B. 1647.

Clutte, clouted, patched (?), B. 40. A.S. *clút*, a clout.

Clyde, plaister (?), B. 1692. A.S. *clitha*. Cf. "*Clyte*, *clete*, or vegge (*clete* or wegge, K.) cuneus." (Prompt. Parv.)

Clyffe, cliff, A. 159; B. 405, 965.

Clyket, clicket, latch, B. 858. Prov. Fr. *cliche*, a latch, bolt. *Clyket* of a dore, *clicquette*. (Palsgrave.)

Clynge, wither, decay, A. 857. A.S. *clingan*.

Clyppe, fasten, B. 418. A.S. *clyppan*, to embrace.

> "I wold yonder worthy weddit me hade,
> So comly, so cleane to *clippe* uppon nightes."
> (T. B. 474.)

Clypper, shearer, A. 802.
135b

Clyue, Clyuy, cleave, cling to, B. 1630, 1692. Du. *kleeven*, *klijven*, to fasten. A.S. *clífan*.

Clyuen, cleave, A. 1196.

Cly3t, clutched, stuck, B. 1692.

Cnawe, know, acknowledge, C. 519.

Cnawyng, *sb.* knowledge, A. 859.

Cnoken, knock, A. 727.

Cob-hous = cov (cow)-house (?), B. 629. *Cob* may be another form of Prov. Ger. *colb*, a heifer.

Cof, quickly, A. 60, 898; quick, B. 624. A.S. *cáf*, quick, expert.

Cofer, Cofere, coffer, chest, coffin, A. 259; ship, ark, B. 310, 339; jewel box, 1428. Fr. *coffre*.

Cofly, quickly, B. 1428.

Coge, boat, C. 152. *Cogges* with cablis cachyn to londe, T. B. 1077.

Cokre3, cockers, a kind of rustic high shoes or half boots fastened with laces or buttons, B. 40. "*Cocur* boote. Ocrea. coturnus." (Prompt. Parv.) The term is still used in the north of England = gaiters, leggings.

Cole, coal, B. 456.

Cole, cool, C. 452.

Colde, great, severe, A. 50; "*care3* colde," great sorrow, A. 808.

Coler, collar, B. 1569, 1744.

Colored, B. 456.

Colour, A. 753.

Coltour = coulter, (of a plough), B. 1547. Fr. *coultre*. Lat. *culter*.
136

Colwarde, deceitful, B. 181. See note on this word. Cf.

kolsipe (col-ship), deceit.

Comaunde, B. 1428.

Combre, to trouble, destroy, B. 901, 1024. Du. *kommer*, *kombre*, loss, adversity, care, grief.

Combraunce, trouble, B. 4. See T. B. 726.

Come, *sb.* coming, arrival, A. 1116; B. 467

> "Of his *come* fayne."
> (T. B. 975.)

Comende, A. 1.

Comfort, Comforte, *sb.* A. 55, 357.

Comly, Comlych, comely, A. 259; B. 546.

Commune, common, A. 739.

Comparisune, *vb.* compare, B. 161.

Compas, A. 1072, B. 319, 1455.

Compast, B. 697.

Compaynye, company, B. 119.

Comyne, B. .[B] See T. B. 12863.

Con = can, did (used as an auxiliary of the past tense), A. 453; A. 1561; *cone*ȝ, didst, B. 482.

Conacle = canacle, cup, B. 1515.

Conciens, conscience, A. 1089.

Concubine, B. 1353.

Condelstik, candlestick, B. 1275.

Confourme, conform, B. 1067.

Coninge, Connyng, wisdom, science, B. 1611, 1625.

Conquere, B. 1431, 1632.

Conquerour, B. 1322.

Conquest, conquered, B. 1305.

Consayue, conceive, B. 649.

Conterfete, counterfeit, feign, B. 13.

Contraré, contrary, A. 4, 266; in *contrary*, opposite, B. 1532.
136b

Controeued, contrived, B. 266.

Contryssyoun, contrition, A. 669.

Conueye, guide, B. 678, 768.

Cooste3, properties, B. 1033.

Coperounes, tops, B. 1461. "*Coporne* or *coporoun* of a thyng (*coperone*, K. H. *coperun*, P.), capitellum." (Prompt. Parv.) "The Catholicon explains *capitellum* as signifying merely the capital of a column, but in the Medulla it is rendered '*summa pars capitis*.'" (A. Way, in Prompt. Parv.)

Coppe, top; "hyl *coppe*," A. 791. A.S. *copp*, head, top, apex.

> "Now bowis forth this baratour and bidis na langir,
> Up at a martene mountane, he myns with his ost,
> And viii daies bedene the dri3e was and mare,
> Or he mi3t covir to the *copp*, fra the cave undire."
> (K. Alex. p. 163.)

Corage, heart, B. 1806.

Corbyal, raven, B. 456.

Cordes, C. 153.

Coroun, *sb.* A. 237; *vb.* A. 415, 767.

Cors, course, B. 264.

Corse, corpse, A. 320.

Corse, to curse, B. 1032, 1583.

Corsye, corrosive, B. 1034.

Cortays, Cortayse, courteous, A. 433; A. 512; pure, B. 1089.

Cortaysye, courtesy, A. 468, 480; good conduct, B. 13.

Cortaysly, courteously, A. 381; kindly, B. 564, 1435.

Corte, court, A. 701.
137

Cortel, kirtle, A. 203. A.S.*cyrtel*. Dan. *kjortel*, a garment either for a man or woman.

Corteȝ, courteous, A. 754.

Corupte, B. 281.

Coruen (*p.p.* of *kerue*), cut, reaped. A. 40; B. 1407.

Cost, contrivance, B. 1478. A.S. *costian*. O.Sw. *kosta*. Du. *koste*, to try, attempt. This word is sometimes written *cast*. See "William and the Werwolf," p. 167.

Cost, coost, property, B. 1024, 1033.

Cost, coast, border, side, B. 85.

Costoum, custom, B. 851.

Coumforde, comfort, A. 369.

Counseyl, Counsayl, counsel, A. 319; B. 683, 1201.

Counte, B. 1685, 1731.

Countenaunce, appearance, B. 792.

Counterfete, defraud, A. 556.

Countes, countess, A. 489.

Courtaysye, courtesy, A. 457.

Cout, cut, B. 1104.

Couthe, knew, known, B. 813, 1054.

Coueyte, covet, desire, B. 1054.

Couenaunde, Couenaunt, covenant, A. 562, 563.

Couetyse, covetousness, B. 181.

Cowpe, cup, B. 1458.

Cowþe, could; cowþeȝ, couldst, A. 484.

Cowwardely, cowardly, B. 1631.

Coyntyse, skill, craft, B. 1287. *Coint*, skilful, occurs in T. B. 125. “hir *coint* artys.” Cf. *Coyntly*, T. B. 164.

Crafte, power, wisdom; *pl.* crafte3, 137b A. 356; contrivance, A. 890; power, C. 131.

Crage3, crags, B. 449.

Crak, sound, B. 1210.

Craue, ask, pray for, A. 663; beg, B. 801.

Crede, creed, A. 485.

Cresse, cress, A. 343.

Creste, A. 856.

Croked, bad, B. 181.

Croke3, reapinghooks, sickles, A. 40.

Crone3, cranes, B. 58.

Crossayl, cross-sail, C. 102.

Crouke3, croaks, B. 459.

Cruppele3, cripples, B. 103.

Cry, proclamation, B. 1574.

Crysolite, Crysolyt, chrysolite, A. 1009.

Crysopase, chrysoprasus, A. 1013.

Crystal, A. 159.

Cumly, A. 929. See *Comly*.

Cupborde, B. 1440.

Cupyde, Cubit, B. 315, 319, 405.

Cumfort, C. 485.

Cupple, pair, B. 333.

Cure, care, A. 1091.

Curious, B. 1353.

Cyté, Ceté, city, A. 927, 939.

D

Dale, A. 384 (phrase: “doun and *dale3*,” hill and dale), B. 121.

Dalt, dealt, fulfilled, B. 1756.

Dam, stream, A. 324; the deep, B. 416. Icel. *dammr*. Dan. *dam*, a fish pond.

Dampned, damned, condemned, A. 641.

Dampped, quelled, B. 989. Ger. 138 *dampfen*, to suffocate, choke. Du. *dempen*. Sw. *dåmpa*, to extinguish, repress, damp.

Damysel, damsel, A. 489.

Dare, to tremble, be afraid, A. 839. Sw. *darra*, to tremble, shake.

Dard = dured, endured, A. 609.

Daschande, dashing, C. 312.

Dasande, stupefying, B. 1538.

Dase, lie hid, cower, C. 383. Cf. *dare*, to lie hid, cower. For the interchange of *r* and *s* compare O.E. *gaure*, to gaze.

Dased, stupid, frightened, A. 1085. Sc. *dozen*, *dosen*, to stupefy, benumb. Du. *daesen*, to lose one’s wits; *daes*, *dwaes*, foolish, mad. (Kil.) Prov. Ger. *dasen*, to be still.

> “For he was *dased* of the dint and half dede him semyd.”
> (K. Alex. p. 136.)

Date, A. 492; limit, A. 493; time, A. 504, 516; age, A. 1040.

Daube, daub, plaister, B. 313, 492. Prov.E. *daub*, clay. “*Dawber* or cleyman; *dawbyn*, lino, muro.” (Prompt. Parv.)

Daunce, dance, A. 345.

Daunger, power, A. 11; insolence, B. 71.

Dawande, dawning, C. 445. A.S. *dagian*, to become day. Icel. *dagan*, dawn.

Dawe3, days; “don out of *dawe3*,” deprived of life, dead,

A. 282.

Dayly, A. 313.

Daynty, B. 38, 1046.

Day-rawe, daybreak, B. 893; *rawe* 138b or *rewe* signifies a *streak*. Cf. *day-rim*, in "Owl and Nightingale," l. 328.

> "Qwen the *day-rawe* rase, he rysis belyfe."
> (K. Alex. p. 14.)

Daȝed, dawned, became day, B. 1755. See *Dawande*.

Debate, strife, contest, A. 390.

Debonere, gracious, courteous, kind, A. 162; B. 830.

Debonerté, goodness, A. 798; C. 418.

Dece = dese, seat of honour, B. 38, 1399. See *Dese*.

Declar, explain, B. 1618.

Declyne, A. 333.

Decre, decree, A. 1745; B. 386.

Dedayn, disdain, displeasure, A. 74; B. 50.

Defence, prohibition, B. 243, 245.

Defoule, defilement, C. 290.

Defowle, to defile, B. 1129, 1147.

Degre, degree, condition, B. 92.

Degres, steps, A. 1022.

Dekenes, deacons, B. 1266.

Dele, deal, distribute, give, A. 606; exchange, B. 1118.

Dele, utter, B. 344.

Dele (dole), sorrow, A. 51.

Deled, dealt, C. 193.

Delful, doleful, sorrowful, B. 400.

Delfully, dolefully, sorrowfully, A. 706.

Delyt, delight, A. 642, 1116.

Delyuer, delivered, B. 1084.

Delyuer, deliver, A. 652; B. 500.

Deme, deem, judge, A. 312, 313; A. 1118; utter, decree, A. 1745; C. 119; call, name, B. 1020, 1611. A.S. *déman*.
139

Demerlayk, Demorlayk, magic, glamour, B. 1561, 1578. S.Sax. *dweomer-lake*, magic. A.S. *dweomere*, a juggler.

> "And all this *demerlayke* he did bot be the devylle craftes."
> (K. Alex. p. 15.)

Demme, *vb.* become faded, lost, A. 223. A.S. *dem*, damage, hurt, loss.

Demmed = dammed, collected (?), B. 384. A.S. *demman*, to dam, stop water. Carr gives *demin*, a term applied to clouds when collected in masses. Sw. *dämma*. O.Fris. *demma*, to stop, obstruct.

Dene, vale, dale, A. 295. A.S. *dene*, *denu*.

Denely, loud, A. 51.

Denned, resounded. If it does not signify *dinned*, it must mean settled, took up its abode. A. 51.

Denounce, renounce, forsake, B. 106.

Departe, separate, part, A. 378; B. 396, 1677.

Depaynt, painted, adorned, A. 1102.

Dep, Depe, profound, A. 406; B. 1609.

Depres, depress, A. 778.

Depryue, A. 449; take away, B. 185.

Dere, *vb.* to harm, injure, A. 1157; B. 862. See T. B. 1260. A.S. *derian*, to hurt, damage, injure.

Dere, precious, A. 400; valuable, B. 1792. A.S. *deóre*, dear, precious.

Dere, dear ones, A. 777.
139b

Derelych, Derely, = dearly, beautifully, excellently, A. 995; very, B. 270.

Dereȝ, *sb.* harms, injuries, A. 102. See T. B. 920. A.S. *dar*, *daru*, hurt, harm.

> "Thai dreȝe him up to the drye (land), and he na *dere* sufird."
> (K. Alex. p. 189.)

Derf, great, bold, B. 862. O.N. *diafr*. Sw. *djerf*, strong, bold. "A *derfe* dragon," T. B. 166. "Dang him *derffly* don in a ded hate." *Ib.* 1339.

Derfly, quickly, A. 1641; B. 110.

Derk, dark, A. 1020; C. 263; night, B. 1755. A.S. *deorc*.

Derne, *adj.* secret, hidden, A. 588, 1611; *adv.* secretly, B. 697. See T. B. 1962. A.S. *dearn*, dark, secret, hidden.

Derrest, dearest, B. 115, 1306.

Derþe = dearth, preciousness, value, worth, A. 99. See *Dere*.

Deruely = derfely, quickly, B. 632.

Derworth, precious, beautiful, A. 109. See *Dere*.

Des, Dese, dais, seat of honour, A. 766; B. 115, 1394.

Desert, C. 84.

Desserte, desert, A. 595.

Deseuered, severed, C. 315.

Dessypele, disciple, A. 715.

Destyné, A. 758; C. 49.

Desyre, B. 545.

Determynable, A. 594.

Deuine, *sb.* divine, A. 1302; *vb.* B. 1561.

Deuinores, diviner, B. 1578.

Deuote, devout, A. 406.

Deuoutly, B. 814.

Deuoyde, do away with, destroy, A. 15; B. 908.

Deuyce, Deuyse, Deuice, devise, imagine, A. 1046, 1100; describe, A. 99, 984; order, B. 110, 238.

Deuyse, *sb.* device, A. 139.

Deuysement, description, A. 1019.

Devoydynge, putting away, *sb.* B. 544.

Dewoutly, devoutly, C. 333.

Dewoyde = devoyde, C. 284.

Dewyne = dwine, pine, A. 11.

Deystyné, destiny, B. 400.

De3ter, De3teres, De3tters, daughters, B. 270, 866, 899, 933, 939. See T. B. 1489.

Dialoke, discourse, B. 1157.

Dispayred, in despair, C. 169.

Display, B. 1107.

Displese, A. 1.

Dispit, spite, C. 50.

Dispoyled, stripped, C. 95.

Disserued, B. 613.

Disstrye, destroy, B. 907, 1160.

Disserne, discern, C. 513.

Dissert, desert, C. 12.

Distres, B. 880, 1160.

Diuinité, B. 1609.

Ditte3, stops up, closes, B. 588. N.Prov.E. *ditt*, to stop up. A.S. *dyttan*.

Di3e, die, C. 488.

Di3te, order, arrange, B. 1266. A.S. *dihtan*, to set in order,

dispose, arrange, direct, etc.

Do, doe, "*daunce as any do*," A. 345.

Dobler, dish, B. 1146. O.Fr. *doublier*. 140b

Doc, duke, A. 211.

Doel, Dol, sorrow, A. 326, 339, 642; B. 852.

Dole, part, A. 136.

Dom, Dome, doom, judgment, purpose, A. 157, 580, 667; A. 597; command, A. 632; doom, B. 203.

Dongoun, dungeon, B. 1224.

Dool, part, B. 216.

Dool (dole), sorrow. See *Doel*.

Doole, gift, B. 699.

Dor, door, B. 320.

Dotage, folly, B. 1425.

Dote, act foolishly, A. 286, 1500; C. 125; be astonished, frightened, B. 852. Sc. *doit*. Icel. *dotta*, to slumber. Du. *doten*, *dutten*, delirare, desipere. (Kilian.) "Maddyn, or *dotyn*, desipio." (Prompt. Parv.)

Doted, foolish, wicked, C. 196. N.Prov.E. *doited*, stupid.

Dotel, a fool, B. 1517.

Doun, down, A. 230.

Doun, down, hill, A. 121.

Doungoun, dungeon, A. 1187.

Doured, grieved, mourned, C. 372. Sc. *dour*.

Dousour, sweetness, A. 429.

Doute, doubt, A. 928.

Douth, Douþe, brave, noble, A. 839, B. 270, 597, A.S. *duguth*, the nobility, senate, etc. *Dugeth*, good, virtuous. *Dugan*, to profit, avail, be good, etc.

Doune, Dovene, a female dove, B. 469, 481. Cf. O.E. *wulvene*, a female wolf, and E. *vixen*, a female fox.

Dowe, avail, profit, B. 374; C. 141 50. See T. B. 5001. See *Douth*.

Dowelle, dwell, A. 376, 1770; B. 69.

Downe, dove, B. 485.

Downe3, downs, hills, A. 73, 85.

Dowyne, dwine, pine, A. 326.

Dowrie, B. 185.

Do3ter, daughter, B. 814.

Do3ty, doughty, valiant, B. 1182, 1791. See *Douthe*.

Do3tyest, bravest, B. 1306.

Dra3, draw, A. 699.

Dra3t = draught, character, B. 1557.

Drede, doubt, A. 1047.

Drepe, to kill, slay, A. 246; destroy, B. 599, 1306.

"This stone with his stremys stroyed all the venym,
And *drepit* the dragon to the dethe negh."
(T. B. 929.)

A.S. *drepan*. O.N. *drepa*.

Dresse, order, direct, prepare, A. 495, 860; B. 92; *pret.* *dressed*, *drest*.

Dreue, drive, A. 323.

Dreued, drove, went, A. 980.

Dre3e = dreghe, suffer, endure, B. 1224. Sc. *dree*. A.S. *dreógan*, to bear, suffer, endure. Cf. "dyntes full *dregh*." T. B. 935.

Dre3ly, sorrowfully, B. 476. See T. B. 2379.

Drof, drove, A. 30, 1153.

Drouy, turbid, B. 1016. A.S. *dréfe*, muddy, foul; *dréfan*, to trouble, make turbid. O.E. *drove*, to trouble. Goth. *drobjan*, to trouble. Du. *droeven*. "*Drovy* 141b turbidus, turbulentus." (Cath. Ang.)

"He (the fool-large) is like to an hors that seketh rather to drynke *drovy* watir and trouble, than for to drinke water of the welle that is cleer." (The Persones Tale: *Remedium contra avariciam*.)

Drowned, was drowned, B. 372.

Dro3, drew, A. 1116; A. 71; *pl.* *dro3en*, B. 1394.

Dro3the = drouthe, drought. A.S. *druguth*. Du. *drooghte*. Sc. *drouth*, from A.S. *dryg*. Du. *droogh*, dry.

Druye, dry, A. 412; dry land, B. 472.

Drwry, dreary (?), A. 323.

Drwry = drury, love, B. 699, 1065. O.Fr. *druerie*, *drurie*.

Dry3, Dry3e, dry, B. 385.

Dry3, Dry3e, heavy, sorrowful, A. 823; B. 342.

Dry3e, suffer, B. 372, 400, 1032. See *Dre3e*.

Dry3ly, Dry3lych, strongly, rapidly, A. 125; wrathfully, angrily, A. 74, 344; B. 235.

Dry3tyn, Lord, A. 349; B. 1065. A.S. *drihten*.

Dubbed, Dubbet, decked, A. 73, 97, 202; adorned, B. 115. See T. B. 1683.

Dubbement, adornment, A. 121.

Dublere, a dish, B. 1279. See *Dobler*.

Due, A. 894; C. 49.

Duk, duke, A. 38, 1182; leader, B. 1771.
142

Dumpe, be dashed, fall, C. 362.

> "*Dumpe* in þe depe."
> (T. B. 1996.)
> "Þan sal þe rainbow descend,
> In hu o galle it sal be kend;
> Wit þe wind sal it melle,
> And drive þam dun alle until helle;
> And *dump* the devels þider in,
> In þair bale alle for to brin."
> (*Signa Ante Judicium*, in Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii.)

Dungen, *3d pers. pl. pret.* of *ding*, to beat, B. 1266. Sw. *dänga*.

> "So *dang* he þat dog with dynt of his wappon."
> (T. B. 302.)

Dunne, dun, A. 30. See T. B. 925.

Dunt, blow. See *Dynt*.

Durande, lasting, during, A. 336.

Dure, last, A. 1021; B. 488.

Dusched, struck, B. 1538. Sc. *dusche*, to smite; *dusch*, a blow.

> "All *dusshet* into the diche."
> (T. B. 4776.)

Dan. *daske*, to slap. Icel. *dust* a blow.

Dutande, shutting, closing (from *dutte*, to shut), B. 320. See *Ditte3*.

Dutte, fasten, close, B. 1182. Prov.E. *dyt*, stop up. O.N. *ditta*.

Dych, ditch, A. 607; B. 1792.

Dyd, caused, A. 306.

Dylle = dull, slow, sluggish, foolish, A. 680. N.Prov.E. *dull*, hard of hearing. O.N. *dilla*, lallare.

Dym, black, B. 1016.

Dymly, secretly, C. 375.

Dymme, dark, B. 472.

Dyn, noise, B. 862.

> "All *dynnet* the *dyn* the dales aboute."
> (T. B. 1197.)

Dyngne, worthy, C. 119.

Dyngneté, dignity, B. 1801.
142b

Dynt, blow, C. 125.

Dyscreuen, describe, A. 68.

Dyscouere, reveal, make known, B. 683.

Dysheriete, disinherit, B. 185.

Dysplese, to be displeased, A. 422; to displease, A. 455; B. 1136.

Dyspyt, spite, B. 821.

Dyssente, descend, A. 627.

Dysstrye, destroy, B. 520.

Dystresse, distress, A. 280, 337.

Dystryed, destroyed, A. 124.

Dyt, doeth, A. 681.

Dy3e, die, A. 306.

Dy3t, decked, A. 202, 987; ordered, prepared, A. 243,

632; ordained, A. 49; placed, seated, C. 920; B. 1794.

Dy3tte3, causest, C. 488.

E

Efte, again, A. 328; afterwards, A. 332; B. 562.

Egge = *edge*, hill, B. 451.

Egge, edge (of a knife), A. 1104; of a hill, B. 383. A.S. *ecge*. O.N. *egg*, edge. Du. *egghe*, an angle, corner, angle. Ger. *ecke*, a corner.

Eggyng, instigation, B. 241. Prov.E. "egg on." O.N. *egg*, an edge; *eggia*, to sharpen, and hence instigate.

Elde, age, A. 657; B. 125. A.S. *eld*, *yld*, age.

Elle3, else, otherwise, A. 32; 724; so that, B. 466.

Emerad, Emerade, emerald, A. 118, 1005.

Emperise, empress, A. 441.

Empire, Empyre, A. 454; B. 540, 1332.

143

Enaumayld, Enaumaylde, enamelled, B. 1411, 1457.

Enbaned, supported (?), B. 1459. Sir F. Madden renders it *ornamented*.

Enclose, B. 334.

Enclynande, inclining, bowing, A. 236.

Enclyned, prone, B. 518.

Enclyin, Enclyne, incline, A. 630, 1206.

Encres, increase, A. 959.

Encroche, approach, A. 1117; receive, C. 18.

Ende, die, A. 402; *on ende*, to death, B. 426. Cf. *ender-day*,

and *ending* day = the day of one's death.

Endeleȝ, endless, A. 738.

Endente, A. 639, 1012.

Endentur, crevices, holes, B. 313. O.Fr. *endenter*, to notch, jag.

Endorde, adored, A. 368.

Endure,
Endeure, A. 476, 1082.

Endyte, indite, A. 1126.

Ene, once; *at ene*, at once, A. 291; *at ene*, at one, A. 953. A.S. *æne*, once.

Enfaminied, famished, B. 1194.

Enforsed, forced, B. 938.

Engendered, begat, B. 272.

Enherite, inherit, B. 240.

Enle = enely (? *onlepi*), alone, singly, A. 849.

Enleuenþe, eleventh, A. 1014.

Enmie,
Enmye, enemy, B. 1204.

Enourled, encircled, surrounded, B. 18. Fr. *ourler*, to hem. *Orle* 143b in Heraldry = border. Ital. Orlo = hem, edge. Spanish and Portug. Orla = selvedge, border.

Enprece,
Enpresse, press, C. 43, 528.

Enpresse, impress, A. 1097.

Enpoysened, poisoned, B. 242.

Enprysonment, imprisonment, B. 46.

Enquylen, obtain, C. 39. See *Aquyle*.

Ensens, incense, A. 1122.

Entent, intent, A. 1191.

Entre, enter, A. 38, 1067.

Entré, entrance, B. 1779.

Entyse, to provoke, B. 1137, 1808.

Enurned, adorned, decked, A. 1027.

Er, ere, before, A. 324, 328; B. 648.

Erber,
Erbere, arbour, A. 9, 38, 1171.

Erbes, herbs, B. 1684.

Erde, land, abode, A. 248; B. 596, 601, 1006. A.S. *eard*, native soil, country, region; *eardian*, to dwell, inhabit.

> "Eson afterward *erdand* on lyffe,
> Endured his dayes drowpyaite (? *drowpande*) on age."
> (T. B. 121.)

Erigant, arrogance, B. 148.

Erly, early, A. 392.

Ernde, errand, message, C. 52. See *Arende*.

Erne, eagle, B. 1698. A.S. *earn*, eagle.

Ernestly, quickly, rapidly, B. 277, 1240. A.S. *eornostlíce*.

Errour, A. 422.
144

Erytage, heritage, A. 443.

Eþe, easy, A. 1202; B. 608. A.S. *eáth*.

Euen (wyth), *vb.* to be equal to, A. 1073.

Euen-songe, vespers, A. 529.

Euentyde, A. 582; B. 479.

Euer-ferne, ever-fern, C. 438. A.S. *eforfearn*, polypodium vulgare. See Gloss. to Saxon Leechdoms, ii. 381.

Ewere, ewer, B. 1457.

Excuse, A. 281.

Expoun,
Expoune, expound, A. 37; B. 1058, 1729.
Expowne,

Expounyng, *sb.* expounding, B. 1565.

Expresse, A. 910; B. 1158.

F

Fable, A. 592.

Face, B. 1539.

Fader, father, A. 872.

Falce,
False, B. 205, 474.

Falewed, became pale, faded, B. 1539. Ger. *falb*, pale, faded. A.S. *fealo*, pale, reddish or yellowish; *fealwian*, to grow yellow.

Fale, good, C. 92. A.S. *fæl*, clean, good, true.

Falle3, falls, happens, B. 494.

Falure, A. 1084.

Famacion, defamation, B. 188.

Famed, celebrated, B. 275.

Fande, found, A. 871.

Fanne3, fans, flaps, B. 457.

Fantumme, phantom, B. 1341.

Farande, pleasing, A. 865; handsome, A. 607; joyous, B. 1758. 144b N.Prov.E. *farant*, decent, pleasant, nice. Gael, *farranta*, stout, brave.

Farandely, pleasantly, C. 435. N.Prov.E. *farantly*.

Fare, *vb.* go, A. 129, 147; A. 100, 621, 929; fare, B. 466. A.S. *faran*. O.N. *fara*.

Fare, *sb.* voyage, course, C. 98. A.S. *faru*, *fær*.

> "Þe caf he cast o corn sum quile,
> In þe flum þat hatt þe Nile;
> For-qui þat flum þat rennes þar,
> Til Joseph hus it has þe *fare*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 27*b*.)

Fare, conduct, A. 832; B. 861.

Faren, gone, passed, B. 403.

Fasor, form, A. 431. See T. B. 3956.

Fasoun, fashion, A. 983, 1101.

Fat, B. 627.

Fate3, fades, A. 1038.

Fathme, (*a*) embrace, A. 399; (*b*) grope, B. 273.

> (*a*) "Als I sat upon that lawe,
> I bigan Denemark for to awe,
> The borwes, and the castles stronge,
> And mine armes weren so longe,
> That I *fadmede*, al at ones,
> Denemark with mine longe bones."
> (Havelok the Dane, l. 1291.)

O.N. *fadma*. Dan. *fadme*. A.S. *fæthmian*, to embrace.

Fatte, vessel, B. 802. A.S. *fæt*.

Fatted, fattened, B. 56.

Faunt, child, maiden, A. 161.

Faure, four, B. 958.

Faurty, forty, B. 741, 743.

Faut,
Faute, fault, B. 177, 236, 571.

Fautle3, faultless, B. 794.

Fauty, faulty, sinful, B. 741.

145

Fauor,
Fauour, A. 428; "gret fauor," A. 968.

Fawre, four, B. 938.

Fawte, fault, B. 1736.

Fax,
Faxe, hair, B. 790, 1689. A.S. *feax*.

Fay, *in faye*, in faith, indeed, A. 263; *par ma fay*, by my

faith, A. 489.

Faylande, failing, lacking, B. 1535.

Fayle, be wanting, A. 737. Set (of the sun), B. 1758.

Fayly, fail, A. 34; B. 548.

Fayn, glad, A. 393; *fayn of*, A. 642; *faynest*, B. 1219.

Fayned, false, B. 188.

Fayth, "in *fayth*" indeed, A. 1732; gen. sing, B. 1735.

Fa3te, fought, A. 54.

Febele, Feble, poor, bad, B. 47, 101, 145.

Fech, Feche, fetch, A. 847, 1158; B. 621.

Fede, A. 29.

Fees, cities, B. 960. Fr. *fief*. Prov. Fr. *feu*, *fieu*. M.Lat. *feudum*. Eng. *fee*. The origin of this term is to be found in Goth. *faihu*, possessions. O.H.G. *fihu*, *fehu*, cattle. O.N. *fe*. A.S. *feoh*, cattle, money.

Fel, bitterly, B. 1040. A.S. *fell*, cruel, severe.

Fela3schyp, fellowship, B. 271.

Felde, field, B. 1750.

Fele, (?) hide, B. 914.

Fele, many, A. 21, 927. A.S. *féla*.

Fele (feel), taste, B. 107.

Fele-kyn, many kinds of, B. 1483.

Felle, cruel, severe; *felle chere*, stern countenance, B. 139; 145b sharp, A. 367; A. 156, 1737; boisterous, rough, A. 421; bitter, B. 954.

Felly, fiercely, bitterly, B. 559, 571.

Felonye, crime, sin, A. 800; B. 205.

Feloun, sinner, criminal, B. 217.

Felt, hair, B. 1689. A.S. *felt*. Du. *velt*, felt, cloth. Cf. W. *gwallt*, Gael. *falt*, hair of the head.

Femmale, female, B. 696.

Fende, fiend, devil, B. 205, 1341.

Fende, fend, B. 1191. Fr. *defendre*.

Fenden, of fiends, B. 224.

Feng, took (*pret.* of fonge), B. 377.

Fenny, dirty, vile, B. 1113. Cf. S.Prov.E. *venny*, mouldy. A.S. *fenn*, mud, dirt. Goth. *fani*.

Fenyx, phenix, A. 430.

Fer, far, A. 334.

Ferd, Ferde, frightened, B. 897, 975.

Ferde, fear, A. 386; B. 215. A.S. *forhtian*, to fear; *forht*, fear.

Ferde, went, *pret.* of *fare*, B. 1106.

Fere, a companion; *in fere*, in company, together, A. 89, 884; B. 985, 1062. A.S. *fera*, *gefera*, a companion.

Fere3, carries, A. 98. A.S. *férian*.

Fere3, companions, A. 1150. See *fere*.

Ferke up, get up, A. 897; ferke over, go, walk over, B. 133.

> "The freike upon faire
> wise *ferke* out of lyne."
> (T. B. 145.)
> 146
> "He salle *ferkke* before
> And I salle come aftyre."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 347.)
> "Now *ferkes* to the fyrthe,
> thees fresche mene of armes."
> (*Ibid.* p. 209.)
> "The kyng *ferkes* furthe
> on a faire stede."
> (*Ibid.* p. 202.)

In T. B. 185, it is used transitively. The verb *to ferk* seems to be related to the Eng. *firk*, a quick movement, jerk, etc. A.S. *frician*, to dance.

Ferly, *adj.* wondrous, A. 1084; *adv.* wonderfully, A. 269, 960; *sb.* wonder, astonishment, A. 1086; marvel, B. 1529. A.S. *fær*, *færlice*, sudden.

Ferlyly, exceedingly, B. 962.

Ferre, farther, *comp.* of *fer*, B. 97, 98.

Fers, fierce, B. 101.

Ferslych, fiercely, C. 337.

Feryed, ferried, A. 946. O.N. *feria* (from *fara*, to go), to transport; set over.

Fest, fast, C. 290.

Fest, Feste, feast, A. 283; B. 642, 1758.

Festen, fasten, establish, A. 156, 327, 1255; B. 273.

Fester, B. 1040.

Festiual, festive, B. 136.

Fete, *in fete*, indeed, B. 1106. O.Fr. *faict*. Fr. *fait*, a deed, feat.

Feþer-beddes, C. 158.

Fetly = featly, aptly, fitly, B. 585. See *fete*.

Fette, fetch, B. 802.

Fettle, set in order, provide, make, 146b B. 343, 585; C. 38, 435. Prov.E. *fettle*, set in order, etc. O.Fris. *fitia*, to adorn. Goth. *fetjan*. Norse, *fitla*, to labour at a thing in order to get it right. Pl.D. *fisseln*, to bustle about.

Fettre, fetter, B. 1255.

Feture, feature, B. 794.

Fetys, Fetyse, neat, well made, A. 174; dexterity, B. 1103. O.Fr. *faictis*. Lat. *factitius*, well made, neat, handsome.

Fetysely, handsomely, beautifully, B. 1462.

Fe3t, fight, B. 275, 1191. A.S. *feoht*. Ger. *fecht*, fight. See T. B. 1751.

Fe3tande, fighting, struggling, B. 404.

Filed, defiled. See *Fyled*.

Flake, flake; *flake of soufre*, B. 954. O.N. *flak*, plank, slice.

Flake = fleck, spot, blemish, A. 947. O.N. *fleckr*. Ger. *fleck*, spot, blot, stain.

Flakerande, flickering, fluttering, B. 1410. Ger. *flackern*, to flare, blaze, flutter.

Flambe, flame, A. 769.

Flaumbande, flaming, A. 90; shining, B. 1468.

Flaunke, spark, B. 954. Prov.E. *flanker*, a flying spark. Pl. D. *flunkern*, to flicker, sparkle. Ger. *flunke*, spark.

Flauore, flavour, A. 87.

Flawen, fled, C. 214.

Flay, terrify, A. 960, 1723; B. 215. See T. B. 4593. N.Prov.E. *flay*, *flee*.
147

Flayn, flayed, A. 809.

Fla3t, plot of ground, a flat, A. 57.

Flee3, fleece (of golde), B. 1476.

Flem,
Fleme, banish, A. 334; B. 31, 596. A.S. *flyman*.

Flem, stream, C. 309. Cf. Prov.E. *flume*, *flem*, *fleme*, a mill-stream. Norse, *flom*, *flaum*, flood, overflow of water; *flauma*, to overflow.

Fleschlych,
Fleschly, fleshly, carnal, A. 265; B. 1082.

Flet, *pret.* of flete, to flow, A. 1058.

Flete,
Flet, flow, A. 1025; to people, B. 685. See T. B. 278, 4715. A.S. *fleotan*. Sw. *flyta*, flow, float. O.N. *fliota*. Prov.E. *fleet*.

Flette, floated, *pret.* of *flete*, to float, B. 387.

> "Childer," he said, "yee list and lete,
> I sagh caf on þe water *flete*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 27*b*.)

Fle3e, flew, A. 431.

Flod,
Flode, flood, A. 874, 1058; B. 369.

Flokke, flock, company, B. 386, 1767.

Flonc = flong = flung, A. 1165.

Flor, flower, A. 29, 962; *pl. flores*.

Flor, floor, B. 133.

Flosed, flossed, B. 1689. Cf. *floss*-silk. Ital. *floscio flosso*, drooping, flaccid.

Flot, grease, fat, B. 1011. A.S. *flótan*, to float; *flót-smere*, scum of a pot, floating fat. O.N. *flót*, the act of floating, the 147b grease swimming on the surface of broth. Prov.E. *fleet*.

Flot,
Flote, company, A. 786, 946; army, B. 1212. O.Fr. *flote*, a crowd.

Flot,
Flote,
Flotte, flowed, floated, A. 46; A. 421, 432; B. 248.

Floty (? *flotery*), waving, A. 127.

Flour-de-lys, lily, A. 753.

Floury, flowery, A. 57.

Flowen, flew, fled, A. 89; B. 945.

Flowred, flowered, A. 270.

Flo3ed, flowed, B. 397.

Flurted, flowered, figured, A. 208.

Flyt, force, literally chiding, B. 421. O.S. *flit*, contention.

Flyte, to quarrel, strive, A. 353. Prov.E. *flite*, scold. A.S. *flitan*.

Flytande, chiding, B. 950.

Fly3e, flay (?), A. 813.

Fly3t, flight, B. 377.

Fo, enemy, B. 1219.

Fode, person, people, B. 466; *fode*, a child (King Horn, 1384); *fodder*, producer, mother (King Alys. 645); A.S. *fedan*, *afedan*, to bring forth, give birth to, rear. O.N.*fœda*. Dan. *föde*.

Fogge, dry grass, B. 1683. W. *fwg*.

Fol, full, B. 1754.

Fol, fool, B. 750, 996.

Fol, foolish, C. 283.

Folde, folded, A. 434.

Folde, earth, A. 334; B. 403, 950.

Folde, to beat, buffet, A. 813.

Fole, fowl, B. 1410.

Fole, fool, B. 202.

Fole, foal, B. 1255.

Foler, B. 1410.
148

Foles, acts foolishly, B. 1422.

Folewande, Folwande, following, A. 1040, B. 429, 1212.

Folk, Folke, people, B. 100, 542, 960.

Folken, of people, B. 271.

Folmarde. Properly the beech-martin, but commonly applied to the pole-cat. O.Fr. *foine*, *faine* (Lat. *fagina*), beechmast.

Folyly, foolishly, B. 696. See T. B. 575.

Folȝe, follow, A. 127; B. 6, 677, 918, 1752. A.S. *folgian*.

Folȝed, baptized, A. 654. A.S. *fullian*, *fulwian*, to baptize.

Foman, enemy, B. 1175.

Fon, ceased, *pret.*, of *fyne*, A. 1030; B. 369. The northern form is *fan*.

"Bot ai þe quils he ne *fan*
To behald þe leve maidan."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii, fol. 20*a*.)

Fonde, to found, establish, A. 939; B. 173.

Fonde, to go, proceed, A. 150.

Fonde, try, B. 1103. A.S. *fandian*.

Fonden, found, B. 356.

Fonge, take, receive, A. 439, 479; A. 540; *fonge3 to the fly3t*, takes to flight, B. 457. A.S. *fon*. Ger. *fangen*, take, seize. Goth. *fahan*.

Font, B. 164.

Fonte = *fond*, examined, A. 170, 327.

Fooschyp, Foschip, enmity, B. 918, 919.

For, from, A. 740; because, B. 323.

Forbede, forbid, A. 379; B. 1147.
148b

Forbi, beyond, C. 483.

Forboden, forbidden, B. 826, 998.

Forbrent, burnt, A. 1139.

For-clemmed, starved, C. 395. Prov.E. *clem*, to starve, pinch with hunger. Du. *klemmen*, to pinch, compress.

For-didden, did away with, A. 124.

For-dolked, severely wounded, A. 11. A.S. *dolc*, *dolh*, *dolg*, a wound; *dilgian*, to destroy.

Forering, A. 3. See Note.

Forfare, destroy; also to perish, A. 1168; C. 483; *forferde*, (*pret.*), B. 571, 1051.

Forfete, A. 619, 639; B. 743.

Forfyne, lastly.

Forgart, Forgarte, = for-did, lost, *pret.* of for-gar, ruin, destroy, lose, A. 321; B. 240. See *Gar*.

Forged, made, B. 343.

Forhede, forehead, A. 871.

Foriusted, overthrown, defeated, B. 1216. Fr. *jouster*, to tilt.

> "So mony groundes he *for-justede* & of joy broght."
> (T. B. 296.)

Forlete, lost, A. 327.

For long, very long, A. 586.

Forlonge, furlong, A. 1030.

Forlote3 = forlete3, forsake, B. 101.

> "Þe laghes bath he (Adam) þan *forlete*
> Bath naturel and positif."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 52*b*.)

Forloyne, forsake, depart, go astray, err, A. 368; B. 282, 750, 1155, 1165. Fr. *loin*, far.

For-madde, very mad (foolish), C. 509.
149

Formast, first, foremost, B. 494.

Forme, first, C. 38.

Forme-fader,
Forme-foster, first-father, progenitor, A. 639; B. 257.

Fornes, furnace, B. 1011.

For-payned, severely troubled, A. 246.

Forray, forage, B. 1200. Fr. *fourrager*, to fodder, forrage, prey. O.Fr. *fourrer*. Mid. Lat. *foderare*, *forrare*, from A.S. *foder*. Ger. *futter*, food, victuals.

Forselet, a fortified place, B. 1200. "*Forcelet*, stronge place (*forslet*, H. P.) Fortalicium." (Prompt. Parv.) O.Fr. *forcier*. It. *forciere*. Mid. Lat. *forsarius*, a strong box, safe, coffer.

Forser = forcer, forcet, A. 263. See preceding word.

Forsette, compass, B. 78.

Forsothe, forsooth, indeed, C. 212.

Forst, frost, B. 524. A.S. *forst*.

Forþe, way, passage, A. 150. See T. B. 4094, 4166. Welsh, *ffordd*, a way.

> "The kyng fraystez [seeks] a *furth* over the fresche strandez,
> One a strenghe by a streme in thas straytt landez."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 103.)

Forth-lep, forth-leapt, C. 154.

Forþo3t, repented, B. 557.

Forþrast, for-thrust, B. 249.

Forþy, therefore, wherefore, A. 234; B. 545, 1020.

Forþynke, repent, B. 285.

Fortune, A. 306.

Forwarde = forward, covenant, 149b promise, B. 327, 1742. A.S. *fore-weard*. "*Forwarde*, or cuuinawnt, convencio, pactum." (Prompt. Parv.)

Forwro3t, over-worked, weary, C. 163.

For3es, furrows, B. 1547. A.S. *furh*. Ger. *furche*, a furrow.

For3ete, forgat, B. 203.

Fote, foot, A. 970.

Foted, footed, B. 538.

Founce, bottom, A. 113. See *Founs*.

Foundande, going, C. 126.

Founde, to go, B. 903.

> "Quen we suppose in our sele
> to sit alther heist,
> Than *fondis* furth dame fortoun
> to the flode 3ates,
> Dra3es up the damme borde
> and drenchis us evir."
> (K. Alex. p. 64.)
> "Fflorent and Floridas with fyve
> score knyghttez,
> ffollowede in the foreste, and on the

way *foundys*,
Fflyngande a faste trott,
and on the folke dryffes."
(Morte Arthure, p. 231.)

Foundemente, foundation, A. 993.

Founden, found, B. 547.

Foundered, destroyed, perished, B. 1014.

Founs,
Founce, bottom, B. 1026.

"Onone as thai on Alexander
and on his ost waites,
Thai flee as fast into flode,
and to the *founce* plungid."
(K. Alex. p. 141.)

Fourferde, perished, *pret.* of *forfare*, B. 560.

Fowle, foully, B. 1790.
150

Fowled, became defiled, foul. B. 269.

Fowre, four, A. 886.

Foysoun, abundant, A. 1058. Fr. *foison*. O.Fr. *fuson*, from Lat. *fusio*, pouring out.

Fraunchyse, liberality, A. 609; B. 750.

Fray, terrify, B. 1553. See *Afray*.

Frayne3, demands, asks, desires, A. 129. A.S. *fregnan*, to ask. Goth. *fraihnan*.

Frayste (*a*), sought, A. 169; (*b*) literally, to try, prove, B. 1736. O.N. *fresta*.

(*a*)
"Bot wete thou wele this iwis, within a wale time,
Fra that I *fraist* have that faire (faice?) of my faire lady,
I sall the seke with a sowme of seggis enarmed."
(K. Alex. p. 69.)

Frek,

Freke,

man, B. 6, 79, 540. This word is used by Skelton. A.S. *freca*, a daring warrior, from *frec*, *freca*, bold, daring, eager. The adjective *freke* (*frek*, *frike*), was not unknown to O.E. writers of the 14th century.

> "Israel wit þis uplepp,
> Þat moght noght forwit strid a step,
> Witouten asking help of sun;
> Þat quak wit ilk lim was won,
> Þat first for eild moght noght spek,
> To bidd hast now es nan sa frek."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 29*b*.)

Freles, blameless, A. 431. O.N. *fryja*, to blame. *Frie*, to blame, occurs in the romance of *Havelok the Dane*, 1998.
150b

Freloker, more freely, B. 1106.

Frely, lordly, A. 162; beautiful, A. 173; freely, B. 20.

Frelych, lordly, A. 162; bountiful, B. 214.

French, an error for *frech* (*fresh*) or *frelich*, A. 1086.

Frete, gnaw, eat, devour, B. 1040. A.S. *fretan*.

Freten, devoured, B. 404.

Frette, furnish, A. 339; ornament, B. 1476. A.S. *frætu*, ornament; *frætewian*, *frætwian*, trim, deck, adorn.

Fro, from, A. 427; A. 396. This is another form of the Northumbrian *fra*. O.N. *frá*; "*to ne fro*," B. 347.

Frok,
Frokke, dress, garment, frock, B. 136, 1742.

Froþande, frothing, frothy, filthy, B. 1721.

Frunt, kicked, C. 187. See T. B. 5968.

Frym, beautiful, fresh, vigorous, A. 1079. Prov.E. *frim*; *frum*, tender, fresh. A.S. *freme*, advantageous, good. Drayton uses the phrase "*frim* pastures," *i.e.* luxuriant pastures.

Fryst, delay, put off, B. 743. A.S. *fyrstan*, to give respite;

fyrst, a space of time, interval. Icel. *frest*, delay; "*to frist*, to trust for a time" (Ray); to delay (Jam.).

Fryt,
Fryte, fruit, A. 29; B. 1044.

Fryth, wood, A. 89; B. 534, 1680. Gael, *frith*, a heath, deer park, forest.
151

Ful, foul, B. 231.

Fulfille, accomplish, B. 264, 1732.

Ful3ed, baptized, B. 164. See *Fol3ed*.

Fundament, foundation, A. 1010.

Funde, found, B. 1735.

Fust, fist, B. 1535.

Fyf, five, A. 849.

Fygure, A. 170, 747.

Fykel, treacherous, deceitful, C. 283.

Fyldor, gold thread, A. 106. Fr. *fil d'or*.

Fyled, defiled, dirty, B. 136.

Fyled, formed, B. 1460.

Fylsened, strengthened, aided, supported, B. 1167, 1644. A.S. *fylst*, help, assistance; *fylstan*, to help, aid.

Fylter, huddle together, A. 224; join, A. 696; meet together in battle, B. 1191; become ragged, entangled. Prov.E. *felter*, entangle, clot. Fairfax uses the phrase "*feltred* locks." Cf. the phrase a "*filtered* fole," a shaggy foal. Baker says that the term *felt* is applied to a matted growth of grass.

> "His fax and his foretoppe was *filterede* togeder."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 91.)

Fylyoles (= *fyells*, *phiolls*), round towers, B. 1462. Cf. *Fala*, a tour of tre. Med. Gram.

Fyne, *vb.* end, die, A. 328; cease, A. 353; A. 450; delay, B. 929.

Fyne, *sb.* cessation, A. 635.

Fynne, fin, B. 531.

Fyole, B. 1476.

Fyrmament, B. 221.
151b

Fyrre, *adv.* farther, comp. of *fer*, A. 103, 127; A. 766; C. 116; *adj.* distant, B. 148. A.S. *fyrre*.

Fyrte, fearful, trembling, A. 54. A.S. *fyrhto*; *fyrhtu*, fear, fright, trembling; *forht*, fearful, timid.

Fyþel, fiddle, B. 1082.

Fyþere, feather, B. 530, 1026.

G

Galle, gall, stain, filth, A. 1060; B. 1022. Cf. to *gall*, fret. Fr. *galler*. W. *gwall*. O.N. *galli*, fault, imperfection. Dan. *gal*, wrong, ill.

Gain, against, A. 138.

Gardyn, A. 260.

Gare, cause, make, drive, A. 331; B. 690. N.Prov.E. *gar*. O.N. *göra*, *gera*.

Garlande, A. 1186.

Garnyst, garnished, ornamented, B. 1277.

Gart, forced, made, A. 1151. See *gare*; *garten*, *3d pers. pl.* A. 86.

Gate, way, A. 395, 526; B. 676, 931. See T. B. 6292. O.N. *gata*.

Gaule,
Gawle, A. 463; C. 285. See *galle*.

Gay,
Gaye, A. 260; B. 830, 1315.

Gayn, *vb.* avail, A. 343; C. 164; prevail, B. 1608. Sc. *gane*; *gain*, to be fit or suitable.

Gayn, Gayne, useful, available, good, B. 259, 749.

Gaynly, Gaynlych, gainly, gracious, A. 728; B. 83. Cf. ungainly = awkward. O.N. *gegn*, 152 convenient, suitable; *gegna*, to meet.

Gaȝafylace, royal treasury, B. 1283.

Geder, gather, C. 105.

Gef, gave, A. 174.

Gele, spy, see, A. 931.

Gemme, A. 253.

Gendered, engendered, B. 300.

Gendreȝ, genders, kinds, B. 434.

Generacyoun, A. 827.

Gent, Gente, gentle, noble, gracious, A. 118, 253, 265; B. 1495.

Gentryse, nobleness, B. 1159, 1216.

Gentyl, noble, A. 278; *gentyleste*, A. 1015; B. 1180.

Gentylmen, B. 864.

Gere, gear, A. 16; B. 148.

Gere, clothing, attire, B. 1811.

Gered, covered, clothed, ornamented, B. 1344, 1568. O.N. *gerfi*. A.S. *gearwa*, habiliments. O.H.G. *garawi*, ornament, dress. A.S. *gearwan*; *gearwian*, make ready, prepare, supply.

Gesse, tell, A. 499. Norse, *gissa*.

Geste, tale, saying, A. 277.

Geste, Gest, guest, B. 98, 640.

Gettes, devices, B. 1354. O.N. *geta*, to conceive. A.S. "and-*gitan*," get, know, understand.

Geuen, given, A. 1190.

Gilde, gilt, B. 1344.

Giles, gills, C. 269.

Gilofre, gilly flower, A. 43. Fr. *giroflée*. Lat. *caryophyllus*, a clove.

Glace = glance, A. 171. Fr. *glacer*, 152b *glacier*, slide, slip. Cf. O.E. *glace*, to polish, glance as an arrow turned aside.

Glade, *vb.* to gladden, A. 861.

Glam, word, message, A. 499; A. 63; talk, speech, C. 830; noise, B. 849. Obsolete Swedish, *glamm*, talk, chatter; *glamma*, to talk, chatter. Gael. *glam*, outcry. O.N. *glam*, clash; *glamra*, to rattle. Sc. *glamer*, noise, clatter.

"Alle thire he closis in that cliffe, and cairis on forthire,
To the occyann at the erthes ende, and, ther in an ilee, he heres
A grete *glaver* and a *glaam* of grekin tongis."
(K. Alex. p. 188.)

Glas,
Glasse, A. 990, 1025.

Glauere, to deceive, A. 688. Cf. N.Prov.E. *glaver*, *glaiver*, to talk foolishly; *glauver*, flattery. W. *glafr*. Irish *glafaire*, a babbler.

"Sir," sais syr Gawayne,
"So me gode helpe,
Siche *glaverande* gomes
greves me bot lyttille."
(Morte Arthure, p. 212.)

See extract under word *glam*.

Glaymande, slimy, C. 269. Cf. "gleyme or rewme, reuma;" "gleymyn or *yngleymyn*, visco, invisco." (Prompt. Parv.)

Glayre, glare, amber, A. 1026. A.S. *glære*, amber. O.N. *gler*. Dan. *glar*, glass.

Glayue, a sword, A. 654. Fr. *glaive*. Lat. *gladius*.

Gle, joy, glee, A. 95, 1123.

Glede, kite, B. 1696. A.S. *glída*.
153

Glem,
Gleme, gleam, light, A. 79; brightness, A. 218; *day-glem*, daylight, A. 1094; *heven-glem*, heaven light, B. 946.

Glemande, gleaming, shining, A. 70, 990.

Glene, glean, gather, A. 955.

Glent,
Glente, shone, A. 70, 114, 1026; B. 218. Sc. *glent*, *glint*, to gleam. Dan. *glindse*, to glisten; *glindre*, to glitter.

"The schaftes of the schire sone schirkind the cloudis,

And gods glorious gleme *glent* tham emannge."
(K. Alex. p. 164.)

Glent, Glente, slipped, fell, A. 671. Sc. *glint*, *glent*, not only signifies to gleam, shine, but also to glide, slide. W. *ysglentio*, to slide.

"Glissonand as the glemes þat *glenttes* of þe snaw."
(T. B. 3067.)

Glente3, *sb.* looks, A. 1144.

Glet, Glette, dirt, mud, slime, and hence filth, sin, A. 1060; A. 306, 573; B. 269. Pl. D. *glett*, slippery. Sc. *glít*, pus. O.N. *glæta*, wet.

Glewed, called, prayed, C. 164. Fr. *glay*, cry.

Glode3, glades, A. 79.

Gloped, was terrified, frightened, amazed, B. 849. O.N. *glapa*, stare, gaze, gape. O.Fris. *glupa*, to look, peep. Dan. *glippe*, to wink. N.Prov.E. *glop*, *gloppen*, to be amazed, to frighten.

"Bees not *aglopened* madame ne greved at my fadire."
(K. Alex. p. 30.)
153b
"Thane *glopned* the glotone and glorede unfaire."
(Morte Arthure, p. 90.)
"O, my hart is rysand in a *glope*!
For this nobylle tythand thou shalle have a droppe."
(Town. Myst. p. 146.)

Glopnedly, fearfully, B. 896.

Glory, A. 934; B. 1522.

Gloryous, Glorious, Gloryus, A. 799, 915.

Glotoun, a wicked wretch, a loose fellow, a ribald, B. 1505.

Gloumb, look, observe, C. 94. Chaucer uses *glombe* in the sense of looking gloomy, sullen, frowning. It seems to

be connected with O.N. *glampa*, to glitter, shine. Cf. O.E. *glent*, to shine, and *glent*, to look. So also *stare* signifies not only to look steadfastly at, but to shine, glitter.

Glowed, shone, A. 114. O.N. *gloá*, to glow, burn, shine.

Glwande, glowing, shining, bright, C. 94.

Glydande, going, walking, B. 296.

Glyde, to go, walk, slip along, B. 325, 677, 1590. Pl. D. *gliden*, *glien*, slip, glide.

Glyfte, became frightened, B. 849. Originally to stare, look astonished.

> "Þys munke stode ande lokede þarto,
> And hade þerof so moche drede,
> Þat he wende have go to wede:
> As he stode so sore *aglyfte*
> Hys ry3t hande up he lyfte,
> Ande blessede hym self stedfastly."
> (Handlyng Synne, l. 3590.)

Gliffe, in O.E. signifies also to 154 look, shine, glow. Sc. *glevin*, to glow; *gliff*, a glimpse; *gliffin*, to wink. Dan. *glippe*, to wink.

Glymme, brightness, A. 1088. O.Sw. *glimma*, to shine.

Glysnande, shining, glistening. A. 1018. A.S. *glisnian*. O.N. *glyssa*, to sparkle, glitter.

Gly3t, shone, A. 114; looked, C. 453. Du. *glicken*, to shine. Icel. *glugga*, to peep. *A-gly3te*, slipped from, in line 245, is evidently another form of *gly3t*. Cf. N.Prov.E. *glea*, *aglea*, crooked, aside; *gledge*, to look asquint. Sc. *gley*, *gly*, to squint, all of which originally signified simply to look, shine. See T. B. 3943.

Gnede, niggardly, beggarly, B. 146. The MS. reads nede, but *gnede* is the correct form. Dan. *gnide*, to rub. A.S. *gnidan*. Cf. O.E. *nithing*, a miser. A.S. *gnethen*, moderate, sparing.

> "Sua lang has thir tua boght þair sede,

Þat þair moné wex al *gnede*."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 31*a*.)
"Bot fra þair store bigan to sprede
The pastur þam bigan to *knede*."
(*Ibid.* fol. 15*a*.)
"Bot al he tok in godds nam,
And thold luveli al þat scam;
For al to *gnede* him thoght þe gram
Þat he moght thol on his licam"
(*Ibid.* fol. 51*a*.)

Goande, going, B. 931.

Goblote, goblet, B. 1277.

God,
Gode, good, wealth. See *Goud*.

Godhede, godhead, A. 413.
154b

Godlych, good, B. 753.

Golf, deep, abyss, A. 608.

Gome, man, A. 231; B. 1315.

Gorde = *girde*, rush, go headlong, B. 911, 957. See T. B. 169.

Gore, filth, B. 306. A.S. *gor*, wet, filth, mud. N. *gor*.

Gorste, gorse, B. 99, 534. W. *gores*, *gorest*, waste, open.

Gost,
Goste, spirit, A. 86; B. 325, 1598.

Gostly, spiritual, ghostly, A. 790.

Gote, stream, A. 934; A. 413; C. 310; *pl.* gote3, B. 608.
Prov.E. *gote*, *goit*, *gowt*, ditch, sluice, mill-stream. Du. *gote*, kennel, conduit. A.S. *geotan*, to pour.

"As *gotes* out of *guttars* in golanand, (glomand ?) wedors,
So voidis doun the venom be vermyns schaftes."
(K. Alex. p. 163.)

Goud, Goude, God, *adj.* good, A. 33, 568; *sb.* wealth, riches, A. 731, 734; B. 1326.

Goun, Goune, gown, dress, B. 145, 1568.

Governor, A. 1645; B. 199.

Gowdeȝ, goods, C. 286.

Grace, A. 436.

Gracios, Gracious, A. 95, 260, 934; C. 26.

Gracyously, B. 488.

Grame, wrath, vengeance, C. 53. A.S. *grama*. Ger. *gram*, anger, displeasure.

Graunt, *sb.* leave, permission, A. 317; *vb.* grant, A. 765; B. 240.

Grauayl, gravel, pebbles, A. 81.

Grauen, graven, B. 1324.

Grauen, buried, B. 1332.
155

Grayneȝ, grains, A. 31.

Grayþed, prepared, A. 343, placed, A. 1485; availed, B. 53. See T. B. 229. O.N. *greitha*, to make ready. N.Prov.E. *graid*.

Grayþely, quickly, readily, A. 341; truly, A. 499; B. 240. N.Prov.E. *gradely*. See T. B. 54.

> "On Gydo, a gome þat *graidly* had soght,
> And wist all þe werks by weghes he hade."
> (T. B. 229.)

Cf. *Graiþe* = ready.

Gre, will, desire, C. 348; hence *bongre*, *malgre*, etc. O.Fr. *gret*. Fr. *gré*, will, pleasure. Lat. *gratus*, pleasing.

Grece, step, B. 1590.

Gredirne, gridiron, B. 1277.

Greffe, grief, A. 86.

Greme, *adj.* displeasing, A. 42; wrath, C. 16, 947; *vb.* to make angry, displease, B. 138, 1347. A.S. *gremian*, to displease.

Greme, spot, blemish, A. 465. Norse *grima*, a spot.

Gresse, grass, A. 10, 245; B. 1028.

Grete, the whole, A. 637, ? altogether A. 851; a *grete*, in the gross—a head, A. 560.

Grete, weep, A. 331. A.S. *grætan*, Prov.E. *greet*.

Gretyng, *sb.* weeping, B. 159.

Greue, grieve, A. 471; B. 138, 302, 306.

Greue, grove, A. 321; B. 99.

Greuing, *sb.* sorrowing, grief, B. 159.

Gromylyoun, the herb *gromwell*, grey millet, (Lithospermum officinale), A. 43. "*Gromaly* 155b herbe. Milium solis." (Prompt. Parv.)

Grone, groan, B. 1077.

Gropande, searching, trying, B. 591. A.S. *grápian*, to touch, feel, seize, grope. O.N. *greipa*.

Gropyng, *sb.* handling, B. 1102.

Grounde, ground, sharpened, A. 654.

Groundele3, bottomless, C. 310.

Grouelyng, on the face, A. 1120. O.N. *grufa*; *grufa nidr*, to stoop down. *Liggia á grufu*, to lie face downwards, to lie groveling.

Gruche, begrudge, B. 1347.

Gru3t, *pret.* of *gruche*, B. 810.

Grychchyng, *sb.* murmuring, repining, C. 53.

Grym, black, A. 1070.

Grymly, sharply, A. 654; roughly, B. 1534.

Grymme, horrible, A. 1553; sharp, B. 1696. A.S. *grim*;

grimm, fury, rage; sharp, bitter; "a *grym* toole," T. B. 938.

Grynde, A. 81.

Gryndel, angry, C. 524. Norse *grina*, wry the mouth; *grinall*, sour looking. Du. *grinnen*, *grinden*, to grin, snarl.

Grysly, horrible, B. 1534. A.S. *grislíc*, horrible; *a-grísan*, to dread, fear greatly.

Gryspyng, *sb.* gnashing of the teeth. A.S. *grist-bítung*.

Gryste, dirt (?), A. 465.

Guere, gear, B. 1505.

Guferes, evidently an error for *guteres*, C. 310. See T. B. 3072. See extract under word *gote*.
156

Gult,
Gulte, guilt, A. 942; B. 690.

Gulty, guilty, C. 210, 285.

Gut, C. 280.

Gyde-ropes, C. 105.

Gye, govern, B. 1598. Fr. *guider*; *guier*, direct, guide.

Gyle, guile, A. 671, 688; C. 285.

Gylt, guilt, B. 731.

Gylteȝ, A. 655.

Gyltleȝ, guiltless, A. 668.

Gyltyf, guilty, A. 669.

Gyn, machine; applied to the ark, A. 491; to a boat, B. 146.

Gyng, company, A. 455. A.S. *genge*. See T. B. 1225.

> "Þan was Jacob busked yare,
> Wit al þe *gynge* þat wit him ware."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 30*a*.)

Gyngure, ginger, A. 43.

Gyse, guise, A. 1099.

Gyternere, A. 91. Fr. *guiterre*; *guiterne*, a gittern. (Cot.) Lat. *cithara*, a harp.

H

Habbe, have, A. 75; *habes*, *habbes*, has, B. 555, 995.

Hach, Hachche, hatch (of a ship), A. 409; B. 179.

Hafyng. See *Hauyng*.

Hagherlych, fitly, B. 18. See *Haȝerly*.

Haldande, holding, C. 251.

Halde, hold, A. 454, 490; B. 652.

Halden, held, A. 1191; B. 42.

Hale, flow, A. 125. The original meaning is to drag along. Ger. *holen*. O.N. *hala*. Fr. *haler*. Cf. T. B. 1782.

Hale, toss, A. 1520; B. 219.
156b

Half, side, quarter, B. 950. O.N. *halfa*.

Halke, recess, B. 104, 321. A.S. *hylca*, hooks, turnings. "*Halke* or hyrne. Angulus, latibulum." (Prompt. Parv.) See Canterbury Tales, 11433.

Halse, salute, wish one health, B. 1621. O.N. *heilsa*. Sw. *halsa*, to salute. O.N. *heilsa*, health. See T. B. 367.

Halt, lame, B. 102. O.N. *halltr*, lame; *haltra*, *halta*, to limp.

Halue, behalf, B. 896.

Halue, side, border, B. 1039.

Halyday, holy day, A. 134; B. 9.

Halȝed, hallowed, sanctified, B. 506, 1163.

Hampre, to pack up for removal, B. 1284.

Han (*3d pers. pl. pres.*), have, A. 776.

Hande-helme, B. 419.

Hapeneȝ, is blessed, B. 27.

Happe, joy, A. 16, 1195; *happe*ȝ, blessings, A. 24; B. 11.

O.N. *happ*.

Happe, cover, A. 626; B. 450. Prov.E. *hap*, to cover; *happing*, covering.

> "Lord, what (lo) these weders ar cold, and I am ylle *happyd*."
> (Town. Myst. p. 98.)

"*Happyn* or *whappyn'* yn cloþys." "*Lappyn'*, or *whappyn'* yn cloþys (*happyn* to-gedyr, S.; *wrap* to-geder in clothes, P.) Involvo." (Prompt. Parv.)

Happen, *adj.* happy, blessed, C. 13, 17, 19, 21. 157

Hard, coarse cloth made of tow, "*hard* hattes," B. 1209. A.S. *heordan*, *heordas*, hards, refuse of tow.

> "Sum araies thaim in ringes, and sum in row breuys,
> With *hard hattes* on thaire hedis hied to thaire horsis."
> (K. Alex. p. 102.)

Hardy, bold, B. 143.

Hardyly, boldly, A. 3.

Hare, B. 391.

Harlot, underling, A. 39; servant, profane jester, A. 860, 1584; *harlote*ȝ, harlot's, A. 34; harlots, B. 860. This term was not originally confined to females, nor even to persons of bad character. W. *herlawd*, *herlod*, a youth; *herlodes*, a damsel. Cf. "*harlotte* scurrus." "Gerro a tryfelour or a harlott." Med. MS. Cant. "An *harlott*, balator, rusticus, gerror, mima, joculator, nugatur, scurrulus, manducus. An *harlottry*, lecacitas, inurbanitas," etc. To do *harlottry*, scurrari." Cath. Ang. in Prompt. Parv.

> "Ffore *harlottez* and *hause-mene* (house-men) salle helpe bott littille."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 229.)

Harlottrye, profane speaking, B. 579.

Harme, *sb.* wrong, sin, A. 17; *pl. harme*ȝ, harms, C. 388.

Harmleȝ, guiltless, A. 676, 725.

Harpe, A. 881.

Harpen (*3d pers. pl. pres.*), play on the harp, A. 881.

Harpore3, harpers, A. 881.
157b

Haspe, fasten, A. 419; clothe, cover, B. 381. O.N. *hespa*, a clasp, buckle. Cf. "*haspyng* in armys." T. B. 367.

Haspede, hook, C. 189. Cf. Dan. *haspe*, windlass, reel; *haspevinde* capstan of a ship.

Hastif,
Hastyf, hasty, C. 520.

Hastyfly,
Hastyly, hastily, quickly, B. 200, 1150.

Hat, call, B. 448. A.S. *hátan*, to call.

Hatel,
Hattel,

anger, A. 200; fierce, A. 227; keen, sharp, B. 367, 481. S.Saxon, *hatel*, *hetel*, keen, sharp, bitter. A.S. *hétel*, fierce. O.Sax. *hatol*. A.S. *atol*, dire, cruel.

Hatere, clothing, garments, B. 33. A.S. *hætern*, *hæter*, clothing, apparel.

Haþel, man, literally noble, A. 676; B. 27, 409, 1597. A.S. *æthele*, noble; *ætheling*, a ruler, man.

> "Homer was holden *haithill* of dedis."
> (T. B. 38.)

Hatte, is called, A. 926; B. 35.

Haunte, practise, C. 15. Fr. *hanter*, frequent, haunt, literally, to follow a certain course.

Haueke, hawk, B. 537.

Hauen, haven, port, B. 420.

Hauyng, condition, behaviour, A. 450, 754.

Haylsed, saluted, A. 238; B. 612, 814. See *Halse*. See T. B. 1792.

Hayre, heir, B. 666.

Hayreȝ, shirts of horse-hair, hair-cloth, 158 sack-cloth, C. 373. A.S. *héra*.

Haȝerly, fitly, properly, B. 18. This word occurs in the Ormulum under *haȝherrlike*. O.N. *hægr*, dexter, facilis. Dan. *haage*, to please; *haagelig*, agreeable, acceptable.

Hede, notice, A. 1051.

Hef, heaved, raised, C. 219.

Heke = eke, also, A. 210.

Helde, bend to, come to, B. 1330. A.S. *healdan*; *hyldan*, incline, lean to. Dan. *helde*.

Helde, *adv.* willingly, A. 1193; *in helde*, in mind, in purpose, disposed, B. 1520.

Helded, approached, B. 39.

Heldeȝ, goes, walks, B. 678.

> "Þir brether *helid* ai forth þair wai
> Þat to þair fader ful suith com þai."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 29*b*.)

Hele, safety, A. 335; health, C. 1099; pleasure, B. 16. A.S. *hél*.

Helle-hole, B. 223.

Hellen, of hell, C. 306.

Helme, C. 149.

Hem, them, C. 180.

Hemme, border, A. 1001.

Hende, gracious, A. 612; C. 398; pleasant, B. 1083. Norse *hendt*, adapted; *hendug*. Dan. *hændig*, handy, dextrous. Cf. *hendly*, T. B. 1792.

Hendelayk, mildness, civility, B. 860. Hard-*laike* occurs in T. B. 2213.

Heng,
Henge, hang, B. 1584, 1734.

Hens, hence, C. 204.

158b

Hent, Hente, take, seize, receive, A. 388, 669; B. 151, 376, 883, 1150. O.N. *henda*. A.S. *hentan*.

Hepe, heap, company. B. 1775.

Her, their, A. 888.

Here, heir, B. 52.

> "Bede his doughter come downe and his *dere heire*." (T. B. 389.)

Here, hair, A. 210.

Here, company, B. 409, 902. T. B. 6253. A.S. *here*, an army, host, etc.

Hered, honoured, B. 1086. A.S. *hérian*, to praise, commend.

Herken, Herkne, hearken, B. 193, 458.

Herne3, brains, A. 58. O.N. *hjarni*. Sw. *hjerna*.

Herne3 = erne3, eagles, B. 537.

Hert, heart, B. 1723.

Hertte, hart, B. 391, 535.

Heruest, harvest, B. 523.

Hery, honour, praise, B. 1527. See *hered*.

Herytage, Heritage, A. 417; B. 652.

Her3e, harry, A. 1179, 1294; drag out, B. 178. Sc. *herry*; *harry*, rob, spoil, pillage. A.S. *hergian*, *herian*, to plunder, afflict, vex. Fr. *harrier*, provoke, molest. O.N. *heria*, to make an inroad on.

Hest, Heste, command, A. 633; A. 94, 341; promise, B. 1636.

Hete, promise, vow, A. 402; A. 1346; B. 336. O.N. *haeta*, to threaten. T. B. 240.

Heter, rough, C. 373. See T. B. 159 5254. N.Prov. *hetter*,

hitter, eager, earnest.

Heterly, quickly, greatly, fiercely, A. 402; A. 380, 1222; B. 381, 477. See T. B. 3499.

Heþe, heath, B. 535.

Heþen, hence, A. 231. O.N. *hëthan*. See T. B. 5115.

Heþyng, scorn, contempt, A. 579, 710; B. 2. O.N. *háthung*. See T. B. 1753, 1818.

Heue, heave, raise, A. 314, 473. O.N. *hefia*.

Heued, head, A. 459, 465.

Heuen, raise, exalt, A. 16; A. 24, 506; increase, "*heuen þi hele*." B. 920. We also meet with the phrase to "*heuen harm*."

> "Qua folus lang wit uten turn,
> Oft his fote sal find a spurn;
> Reu his res þan sal he sare,
> Or *heuen* his harme with foli mare."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 25*a*.)

Heuen-ryche, the kingdom of heaven, A. 719; C. 14.

Heuy, sorrowful, A. 1180; A. 2.

Heyred, harried, dragged, pulled, B. 1786. See *Herȝe*. "*Harryn'* or *drawyn'* trahicio, pertraho" (Prompt. Parv.)

Heyred = heryed, honoured, B. 1527. See *Hered*.

Heȝe, high, lofty, B. 1391, 1749.

Heȝe, hasten, B. 1584. See *Hyȝe*.

Heȝt, Heȝþe, height, A. 1031; B. 317.

Hide, Hidde, hid, hidden, B. 1600, 1628.

Hidor, fear, C. 367. O.Fr. *hisdour*; *hidour*, dread.
159b

Hiled, covered, B. 1397. A.S. *hélan*, *hélian*. Prov.E. *hele*, *hill*, *hile*, to cover. O.N. *hylia*, to hide.

Hitte, to make for, A. 289; come, C. 479; B. 380. O.N.

hitta, to light on, find.

> "Þai turne into Tessaile withouten tale more,
> *Hit* up into a havyn all the hepe samyn."
> (T. B. 991.)

Hi3e = high, loud, B. 1564.

Hi3ly, greatly, B. 920.

Ho, she, A. 232, 233; B. 659. A.S. *heo*. Prov.E. *hoo*.

Ho-beste3, she-heasts, B. 337.

Hod, hood, B. 34.

Hodle3, hoodless, B. 643.

Hofen, (*p.p.* of *heve*), exalted, raised, B. 1711.

Hokyllen, beat, B. 1267. Is this an error for *hollkyen*? See *Holkke*.

Hol, whole, B. 102, 594.

Hole-foted, B. 538.

Holde, dominion, B. 1597.

Holkke, thrust out, B. 1222. The original meaning seems to be "to make hollow, dig out, pierce." A.S. *holian*, to hollow; *hol*, *holh*, a hole. Cf. O.Sc. and O.E. *holket*, hollow; *holk*, dig out. Prov.E. *hulk*, to take out entrails of rabbits and hares (Baker). Sw. *holka*, *hulka*, to hollow.

Holly, wholly, B. 104, 1140.

Holte3, woods, A. 921. A.S. *holt*, wood, grove; "*holte woddes*," T. B. 1351.
160

Hol3e, hollow, B. 1695. A.S. *holh*.

Homly, familiar, domestic, A. 1211.

Hommes, hams, thighs, B. 1541. O.N. *höm*, the back of the thigh.

Honde, hand, A. 49, 706; B. 174.

Hondel, handle, B. 11.

Hondelyng, *sb.* handling, B. 1101.

Hondelynge, *adv.* with hands, A. 681.

Honde-werk, handwork, C. 496.

Honde-whyle, a moment, B. 1786. A.S. *hand-hwíl*; "in a *hond-while*," T. B. 406.

Hone, to delay, abide, A. 921. See Met. Hom., p. 129.

Honest, B. 14, 18.

Honestly, B. 134, 705.

Honour, A. 852; B. 594.

Honyse3, destroys, ruins, B. 596. O.Fr. *honeison*, shame; *honnir*, to shame, blame, borrowed from Goth, *haunjan*. Ger. *höhnen*.

> "And Alexander alle that quile asperly rydis
> To the grete flode of Granton, and it one a glance fyndes,
> Or he was so3t to the side 3it sondird the qweryns,
> His hors it *hunyschist* for evir, and he with hard schapid."
> (K. Alex. p. 102.)

Hope, expect, think, suppose, A. 142; B. 663.

Hores, theirs, C. 14.

Hores (?), B. 1695.

Hortyng, *sb.* hurting, harm, B. 740.

Horwed, unclean, B. 335. A.S. *horwa*, *hóru*, dirt; *hyrwian*, to defile.
160b

Horyed, hurried, B. 883.

Hot,
Hote, angry, B. 200.

Hourlande, rolling, rushing, hurling, C. 271.

Hourle, wave, C. 319.

Household, B. 18.

Houe, abide, B. 927. W. *hofian*; *hofio*, to fluctuate, hover, suspend.

Houe3, hovers, B. 458, 485.

Houen, exalted, raised, B. 206, 413, 1451.

Hue, cry, voice, A. 873.

Hue,
Huee, hue, complexion, A. 842; B. 1483.

Huge, great, B. 4, 1659.

Hunger, *vb.* C. 19.

Hurkele, hang, B. 150; rest, 406. The original meaning is to nestle, crouch, squat. N.Prov.E. *hurkle*, to squat, crouch, nestle. Du. *hurken*, to squat. O.N. *hruka*.

> "Then come ther in a litill brid into his arme fle3e,
> And ther *hurkils* and hydis as sche were hande tame,
> Fast scho flekirs about his fete, and fle3tirs aboute."
> (K. Alex. p. 18.)

Hurlande, hurling, rushing, B. 413, 1211.

Hurle, rush, B. 44, 223, 376, 874, 1204; "*hurlet* out of houses," T. B. 1365.

Hurrok, oar, A. 419; B. 185. Prov.E. *orruck*. "*Orruck*-holes, oar-drawing holes, as distinct from thole-pins, which are less used in our boats: *rykke*, to draw (Dan.). Compare English *rullocks*." Norfolk 161 Words: Miss A. Gurney in Transactions of Philological Society for 1855, p. 34.

Huyde, hide, B. 915.

Huyle, while, A. 41.

Hwe, hue, A. 896; *hwes*, B. 1119.

Hwed, coloured, B. 1045.

Hyde, skin, A. 1136.

Hyl-coppe, hill-top, A. 791. See *Coppe*.

Hynde = hende, courteous, A. 909; B. 1098.

Hyne, servants; *hinds*, A. 505, 632, 1211. A.S. *hina*, *hine* (for *higna*, *higne*), a domestic. O.N. *hion*, family.

Hyre, *sb.* hire, wages, A. 534, 539.

Hyre, *vb.* A. 507, 560.

Hyrne, corner, A. 1294; B. 178. A.S. *hyrne*. "Hyd hom in houles and *hyrnys* aboute," T. B. 1362.

Hytte3, strives, seeks, A. 132.

Hyue, hive, B. 223.

Hyure, hire, C. 56.

Hy3e, high grounds, heights, B. 391.

Hy3e, high, A. 39, 395; A. 380; "on *hy3e*," A. 413;
Hy3, "*hy3e* trot," quick pace, B. 976.

Hy3e, hie, hasten, A. 33, 392, 538; B. 217. A.S. *higan*, *higian*.

Hy3e, labourer, servant, B. 67. A.S. *higo*, a servant. See *Hine*.

Hy3ly, greatly, B. 1527.

Hy3t, named, called, promised, A. 305, 950; B. 24, 665, 1162.
161b

Hy3t, height, A. 458; B. 398.

Hy3tled, ornamented, decorated, B. 1290.

> "He had a hatt on his hede *hi3tild* o floures."
> (K. Alex. p. 155.)

I

I-brad, extended, reached, B. 1693. See *Brayde*.

Ichose, chosen, A. 904.

Idolatrye, B. 1173.

Ilk, same, B. 1755.

Ille, bad, evil, B. 577.

Ilyche = alike, A. 228, 975; B. 161. A.S. *gelíc*.

Image, B. 983.

In-blande, together, B. 885. Dan. *iblandt*. See *Bland*.

Inflokke, flock in, B. 1767.

Inlyche, alike, A. 546, 603.

In-melle, among, A 1127. This word is usually written *i-melle*. Icel. *á-milli*.

In-monge, In-monge3, among, amidst, B. 278, 1485.

In-mydde, In-mydde3, amidst, B. 125, 1677.

Innocens, innocence, A. 708.

Innoghe, Inno3e, enough, sufficiently, A. 612, 625, 637; abundant, C. 528.

In-nome, taken in, A. 703.

Innossent, Inoscente, innocent, A. 666, 672, 684.

Inobedyent, disobedient, B. 237. Fr. *inobedient*.

In-seme, together, A. 838. A.S. *gesome*. O.E. *ysome*.

In-stoundes, at times, B. 1603.

Instrumente, B. 1081.

Insy3t, opinion, B. 1659.

Ire, wrath, B. 572.

162

Iwysse, truly, indeed, B. 84. A.S. *gewis*.

In-wyth, within, A. 970.

J

Jacynth, A. 1014.

Janglande, muttering, C. 90. O.Fr. *jangler*, to chatter.

Jape, device, sin, A. 272, 864; B. 57. Fr. *japper*, to yelp, chatter. The original meaning of *jape* is in O.E. to deceive, to lie.

Jasper, A. 999.

Jauele, a wicked wretch, a base fellow, B. 1495. "*Javel*,

Joppus, gerro." (Prompt. Parv.)

"The Lieutenant of the Tower advising Sir Thomas Moor to put on worse cloaths at his execution, gives this reason, because he that is to have them is but a *javel*; to which Sir Thomas replied, shall I count him a *javel* who is to doe me so great a benefit." —MS. Lansd. 1033, in Hall.)

Jeaunte, giant, B. 272.

Jolef,
Jolyf,
Joly, handsome, happy, true, A. 842, 929; A. 300, 864; B. 241.

Joparde, jeopardy, A. 602.

Jostyse, justice, judge, B. 877.

Journay, C. 355.

Jowked, slept, C. 182.

Joy,
Joye, A. 266.

Joyfol, A. 288.

Joyle3, joyless, sorrowful, A. 252; C. 146.

Joyne, B. 726.

Joyned, A. 1009; B. 434.

Joyned, enjoined, A. 877; B. 62, 355.

Joynte, B. 1540.

Joyst, B. 434.

162b

Juel,
Juele, jewel, A. 249, 253, 278.

Jueler,
Juelere, jeweller, A. 252, 264.

Juelrye, jewelry, B. 1309.

Jugge, judge, A. 7, 804; C. 224.

Juggement, judgment, B. 726.

Juis, Juise, judgment, doom, A. 726; B. 224.

Jumpred (? *Jumpre* from A.S. *geomer*, miserable, sad), trouble, B. 491.

Justyfyet, justified, A. 700.

K

Kable, B. 418.

Kake, B. 625, 635.

Kark, sorrow, C. 265. W. and Gael. *carc*, care.

Karle, churl, B. 208. See *Chorle*.

Kart, B. 1259.

Kayrene, to go, B. 945. See *Cayre*.

Kayser, emperor, B. 1593.

Kaȝt, caught, B. 1215.

Kene, great, noble, A. 839, 1593; sharp, B. 1697.

Kenely, quickly, B. 945.

Kenne, to know, make known, show, A. 55; A. 865, 1707; B. 357. O.N. *kenna*. Norse *kjenna*, to perceive by sense, recognise, observe.

Kennest, keenest, B. 1575.

Kepe, care for, regard, B. 508.

Kerve, dig, A. 512; cut, A. 1104; rend, B. 1582.

Kest, Keste, contrive, A. 1070, 1455; cast, A. 66; B. 414.

Keue, depart, A. 320.

Keued, separated, A. 981.

Keuer, recover, restore, B. 1605, 1700.

163

Keye, key, B. 1438.

Klubbe, club, B. 1348.

Klyffe3, cliffs, A. 66, 74.

Knaue, knave, A. 855; servant, B. 801.

Knaue,
Knaw,
Knawe, know; *knawen*, known, A. 637; B. 1435, 1575.

Knawlach, knowledge, B. 1702; See T. B. 1083.

Knot, crowd, company, A. 788.

Knyt, knit, unite, establish, B. 564.

Kost, coast, border, B. 912.

Kote, house, B. 801.

Koynt = quaint, curious, crafty, B. 1382.

Krakke, sound, B. 1403.

Kuy, kine, cows, B. 1259.

Kyd, showed, proved, (*pret.* of *kythe*), B. 23, 208.
Kydde, *Kyde*, as an *adj.* = renowned.

> "This kyde realme."
> (T. B. 213.)

Kylle, to strike, B. 876. See T. B. 1211, 1213.

Kyndam, kingdom, B. 1700.

Kynde, nature, species, B. 266, 505, 507.

Kyndely,
Kyndly, naturally, properly, A. 1, 319.

Kynne, conceive, B. 1072. A.S. *cennan*, to conceive, beget.

Kynned, kindled, B. 915. O.N. *kynda*.

Kynne3, "alle kynne3 = of every kind," A. 1028.

Kyntly = kyndly, naturally, A. 690.

Kyppe, take up, seize, B. 1510. Prov.E. *kep*. O.N. *kippa*. A.S. 163b *cépan*. See Robt. of Glouc. 125. Havelok the Dane, 2407. "*Kyppyn'* idem quod *Hynton*;" "*Kyppynge* or *hyntynge* (*hentynge*, K. P.), Raptus." (Prompt. Parv.)

Kyrk, Kyrke, church, temple, A. 1061; B. 1270.

Kyryous = curious, careful, particular, B. 1109.

Kyst, Kyste, chest, ark, A. 449, 1438; B. 159.

Kyþe, show, exhibit, A. 356; A. 851, acknowledge, B. 1368. A.S. *cíthan*, to make known.

> "Ye *kyþe* me suche kyndnes,"
> (T. B. 557.)

Kyþ, Kyþe, city, land, region, A. 1198; A. 414, 571, 901, 912; B. 18. A.S. *cyth*, a region, home, native place.

> "Ther was a kyng in þat coste þat þe *kithe* ought."
> (T. B. 103.)

Kyþyn (*gen. pl.* of *kyþe*), of cities, B. 1366.

L

Labour, *sb.* A. 634; *vb.* A. 504.

Lache, Lachche, = latch, take, receive, A. 166; *lached*, received, A. 1186; taken, A. 266; reach, C. 322; "*lach* out," take away, B. 425. A.S. *læccan*.

Lad, led, A. 801.

Ladde = lad, man (of inferior station), A. 36; B. 154. O.H.G. *laz*, libertinus. Ger. *lasse*. Du. *laete*, a peasant.

Ladde-borde, larboard, C. 106.

Laddres, ladders, B. 1777.

Lade, led, A. 1146.

Ladyly, A. 774.

Ladyschyp, A. 578.

Lafte, left, B. 1004.

Laften, (*3d pers. pl. pret.*) left, A. 622; C. 405.

Lake,
Llak, lake, deep, B. 438, 536.

Lakke, sin against, abuse, B. 723. Dan. and Sw. *lak*, fault, vice. Dan. *lakke*, decay, decline.

Lalled,
Laled, spoke, B. 153, 913. Dan. *lalle*, to prattle. Bavarian *lallen*, to speak thick, talk. Gr. λαλειν, to talk.

Lance, take, C. 350.

Langage, language, B. 1556.

Langour, sorrow, A. 357.

Lansed (? *laused*), uttered, A. 668; B. 489. *Launch*, in the dialect of Worcestershire, signifies to cry out, groan.

Lansed, ? quaked, B. 957.

Lante3 (? *lance3*), lentest, gavest, B. 348.

Lantyrne, A. 1047.

Lape, lap, taste, B. 1434. *Lape*, lape, taste (Baker's Northampton Glossary).

Lappe, *sb.* A. 201. A.S. *læppa*, border, hem. "*Lappe*, skyrte (*lappe*, barme, K.). Gremium." (Prompt. Parv.)

"The word *lap*, according to many ancient writers, signified the skirt of a garment. Thus G. de Bibelsworth says,

‘Car par deuant avez eskours (*lappes*),
Et d’en costé sont vos girouns (sidgoren).’

It denoted, likewise, the hinder skirt.” (Way in Prompt. Parv.)
164b

Lapped, folded, clothed, B. 175. See T. B. 236.

Lasched, B. 707. ? became hot, lascivious.

Lasned = lessened, made smaller, B. 438, 441.

Lasse, less, A. 599, 600; B. 1640.

Laste, follow, A. 1146; C. 320. A.S. *last*, footstep. Goth, *laistjan*, to follow after.

Laste, fault, crime, C. 198.

Lastes, becomes faulty, B. 1141. Dan. *last*, vice, fault. O.N. *löstr*. S.Sax. *last*, calumny, blame. Icel. *last*. Ger. *lästerung*, slander.

Lat, slow, late, B. 1172. A.S. *læt*, slow, late. Cf. *“lat*-a foot, slow in moving.” (Wilbraham’s Cheshire Glossary.)

Laþe, to invite, B. 81. A.S. *lathian*. O.Sax. *lathian*. O.N. *lada*. Prov.E. *lathe*, to invite. A.S. *lathu*, invitation. N.Prov.E. *lathing*, invitation.

Lauce, loosen, do away with (?), B. 1589.

Laue, law, B. 723.

Lauande, pouring, flowing, B. 366.

Laue, pour out, A. 607; C. 154. A.S. *lafian*.

Launce3, branches (of trees), A. 978.

Launde, an open space between woods, a park; *lawn*, B. 1000, 1207. “*Saltus* a lawnd.” (Nominale MS.) Welsh *llan*. “*Lawnde* of a wode. Saltus.” (Prompt. Parv.) “*Indago*, a parke, a huntynge place, or a *launde*.” (Ortus.) “*Lande*, a *land* or *launde*, a wild untilled 165 shrubbie or bushy plaine.” (Cotg.) O.Fr. *lande*, saltus.

“Sythyne [he] wente into Wales wyth his wyes alle;
Sweys into Swaldye with his snelle houndes,

For to hunt at the hartes in thas hye *laundes*."
(Morte Arthure, p. 6.)

Lawe, hill, B. 992. Sc. *law*. A.S. *hlæw*, mound, mount. Goth. *hlaiw*.

Lawles, C. 170.

Lay, put down, B. 1650.

Layke, *sb.* sport, play, amusement, B. 122, 1053.

Layke, *vb.* to play, B. 872. A.S. *lác*, play; *lácan*, to play.

Layke, device, A. 274; B. 401.

Layned, kept secret, A. 244. N.Prov.E. *lane*, to hide. O.N. *leyna*.

Layth, vile, evil, C. 401. A.S. *láth*, evil, harm; *láth*, hateful, evil; "*laithe* hurtes," T. B. 1351.

Layte, seek, search, B. 97, 1768. N.Prov.E. *late*. Icel. *leita*. Sw. *leta*, to look for; "*laytyng* aboute," T. B. 2348.

La3ares, lepers, B. 1093.

La3e, laugh, B. 653, 661.

La3te,
La3t, = laught, took, A. 1128, 1205. See *Lache*.

Le, shelter, C. 277. A.S. *hleo*, shade, shelter. Cf. T. B. 2806. O.N. *hlja*, to protect. Cf. *Leeside* = the sheltered side of a ship.

"—— thar I the tell
Is the richt place and sted for 3our cite,
And of 3our travell ferm hald to rest in *le*."
(G. Doug. vol. i. p. 152.)

165b
"Þe wicked alsua þe gode sal se,
Wit-in þair gamen stad and gle,
Þat þai þe sorfuller sal be,
Þat losen folili has þat *le*." (*i.e.*, heaven).
("De Penis," quoted in "Hampole's Pricke of Conscience," l. 4, p. xii.)

Leauty, loyalty, B. 1172.

Lebarde, leopard, B. 536.

Lecherye, B. 1350.

Led,
Lede, man, person, A. 542; B. 412. A.S. *leód*, man.

Led,
Leede, people, nation, B. 691, 772, 909. A.S. *leóde*, people, folk.

Ledden = leden, sound, A. 878. Chaucer uses the word *leden* in the sense of *speech*, *language*. A.S. *hlyd*. O.N. *hliod*, a sound.

Ledisch, national, pertaining to a people or country, B. 1556. S.Sax. *leodisce*. See *Lede*.

Leef,
Lef, *adj.* dear, precious; *sb.* dear one, wife, A. 266, 418; B. 772, 939, 1066. A.S. *leóf*.

Lefly, dear, beloved, B. 977. A.S. *leóflíc*.

Lefsel, bower, house formed of leaves, C. 448.

> "By a lauryel ho (Dame Gaynour) lay, vndur a *lefe-sale*,
> Of box and of barberè, byggyt ful bene."
> (The Anturs of Arther in Robson's Met. Rom. p. 3, vi. 5.)
> "With *lefsales* uppon lofte lustie and faire."
> (T. B. 337.)

A.S. *leaf*, a leaf, and *sel*, dwelling, hall. Sw. *löfsal*, a hut built of green boughs. *Levesel* (another form of *lefsel*) is used 166 by Chaucer (Reve's Tale, 4059), but is left unexplained in the glossary to Wright's edition. Tyrwhitt's derivation of this term from A.S. *lefe*, folium, and *setl*, sedes, is certainly very near the mark. Cf. "*levecel* beforne a wyndowe, or other place. Umbraculum." (Prompt. Parv.)

Lege, liege, subject, B. 94, 1174.

Legioune, A. 1121, B. 1293.

Lel, true, B. 425. "Leve this for *lell*." T. B. 239.

Lelly, truly, faithfully, A. 305; B. 1066. See T. B. 420.

Leme, glide away, A. 358.

Leme, shine, gleam, A. 119, 1043; B. 1273. A.S. *leóma*, a ray of light; *leóman*, to shine. See T. B. 699.

Lemman = leof-man, beloved one, mistress, A. 763, 796, 805; B. 1352. A.S. *leóf*, dear, and *man*. O.E. *leofmon*, a lover.

Lene, grant, C. 347. A.S. *lænian*.

Lenge, dwell, abide, A. 261, 933; A. 81, 412, 497, 994; B. 42. See T. B. 1937.

Lenger, longer, A. 600, 977; A. 810; *lengest*, B. 256.

Lenghe, length, A. 416.

Lent (*pret.* of *lend*), abode, dwelt, A. 256; *wat3 lent*, had dwelt, B. 1084.

Lent, arrived, C. 201. A.S. *gelandian*, to land, arrive.

> "Langour *lent* is in land, all lychtnes is lost."
> (G. Douglas, vol. i. p. 447.)

Lenþe, length, A. 1031; B. 425, 1594.
166b

Lep, leaped, C. 179.

Lere, to teach, B. 843. A.S. *læran*

Lere, reward, ? *here*, A. 616.

Ler, Lere, countenance, A. 398; *pl. lers*, features, B. 1542 A.S. *hleor*. See T. B. 480.

Lese, false, A. 865. See *Lese*.

Lesande, loosening, opening, A. 837. O.E. *lese*, *les*, to loose. Goth. *lausjan*.

Lese, false, B. 1719. A.S. *leas*.

Lest, Leste, lost, A. 9; B. 887.

Lesyng, *sb.* lie, A. 897. A.S. *leasung*.

Leþe, assuage, lessen, cease, bate, cool. A. 377; A. 648; B. 3. A.S. *leothian*, to release, slacken. See Met. Hom.

p. 135.

Leþe, *sb.* calm, C. 160. N.Prov.E. *leath*, rest, quiet. Stratmann compares O.Du. *lede*, ease, *leath*.

Lether, leather, B. 1581.

Lette, hinder, prevent, A. 1050; B. 1803.

Letter, B. 1580.

Lettrure, letters, learning, A. 751.

Leue, "*aske leue*," A. 316; "*take leue*," B. 401.

Leue, forsake, C. 401.

Leue, believe, A. 69, 865, 876; B. 1493.

Leued, leaved, A. 978.

Lewed, ignorant, B. 1580. A.S. *leóde*, *leúd*, the people.

Lik, to lick, B. 1000.

Likke, sip, drink, B. 1521.

Liure3, dresses, garments, A. 1108. O.Fr. *livree*.

Lode, lot, C. 156.
167

Lode, course, conduct, guidance, C. 504. A.S. *lád*, *ládu*, way. O.N. *leid*, course. Cf. *lode*, a way for water.

Lodesmon, conductor, pilot, A. 424; B. 179. A.S. *ládman*, a leader.

Lodly, Lodlych, loathsome, hateful, vile, B. 274, 1090, 1093. N.Prov.E. *laidly*, ugly, foul. A.S. *láthlíc*, odious, detestable.

"He laid on þat *loodly*, lettyd he noght." (T. B. 934.)

Lofly, dear, lovely, B. 1804.

Lofte, "*upon lofte*," on high, B. 206, 318, 808. O.N. *lopt*, sky, air.

Loge, Logge, tent, lodge, A. 784, 807, 1407; B. 457. Fr. *loge*, a hut. See T. B. 1140, 1369.

Logging, lodging, B. 887.

Loghe, Lo3, = low, lau, pit, deep, abyss, B. 366. O.N. *lagr*. Sw. *låg*, low.

Lokande, looking, C. 458.

Loke = loken, enclosed, C. 350.

Loke, guard, watch over, C. 504.

Lokyng, *sb.* sight, looking, A. 1049.

Loltrande, ? *loitrande*, lolling, loitering, C. 458. Du. *loteren*, to loiter. O.N. *lotra*, to go lazily.

Lombe, lamb, A. 841, 1047.

Lome, lame, B. 1094.

Lome, vessel, instrument of any kind; (1) ark; (2) boat, A. 314, 412, 443; B. 160. A.S. *gelóma*, *lóma*.

Lomerande, hesitating, creeping, 167b B. 1094. This term seems to be connected with *lumber*. O.E. *lumer*, *lomer*, to move heavily. O.Du. *lammer*, *lemmer*, impedimentum, molestia. (Kil.) Dan. *belemre*. Du. *belemmern*, to encumber, impede.

Lompe, lamp, A. 1046.

Londe, land, A. 148, 937.

Lone, path, lane, A. 1066. N.Prov.E. *lone*, *lannin*. Fris. *lona*, *lana*, a narrow way between gardens and houses. Is it connected with O.N. *leyna*, to hide, conceal?

Longande, belonging, A. 462.

Longed, belonged, B. 1090, 1747.

Lont, land, C. 322.

Lopen (*p.p.* of *lepe*, to leap), leapt, B. 990.

Lore, wisdom, learning, B. 1556. A.S. *lár*.

Lore, mode, wise, A. 236.

Lorn, lost, destroyed, B. 932.

Los, loss, B. 1589.

Lose, destroy, A. 909; C. 198; depart, be lost, B. 908.

Losed, lost, B. 586.

Losyng, perdition, B. 1031.

Losynger, *sb.* liar, deceiver. O.Fr. *losengier*.

Lot,

Lote,

sound, noise, roar, A. 876; C. 161, 183; word, B. 668. Sw. *låta*, to sound; *låt*, sound; *låte*, cry, voice. A.S. *hleóthor*, a sound, noise. O.E. *lud*, voice. The original form of the word is *late*.

> "Than have we liking to lithe (listen to) the *lates* of the foules."
> (K. Alex. p. 149.)
> 168
> "(He) *late* so lathely a *late* and sa loude cried
> That all the fest was aferd and othire folke bathe."
> (K. Alex. p. 17.)
> "He gaped, he groned faste, with grucchande *latez*."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 90.)

Lote = late, countenance, feature, form, manner, A. 899; C. 47. This word occurs in La3amon under the form *late*, looks, glances. Glossarial remarks to La3amon, p. 449. *Lete*, countenance, is found in the Owl and Nightingale, 35, 403. A.S. *wlite*. O.N. *læti*.

Lote, lot, A. 1205; C. 173.

Lote = lout, bow, A. 238. A.S. *lútan*, to bend, bow, stoop. Sw. *luta*. See T. B. 1900.

Loþe, *sb.* sorrow, A. 377. A.S. *láth*, evil, harm.

Loþelych, wicked, bad, B. 1350.

Loute, abide, sit, A. 933.

Loute, bow, make obeisance. B. 798. See *Lote*.

Louande, praising, B. 1719.

Loue, praise, A. 285, 1124, 1127; B. 497, 987. A.S. *lofian*.

Loue3, hands, B. 987. N.Prov.E. *leuf*, palm of the hand, and hence used for the hand itself. *Palm* is used for the hand in early English authors. O.N. *lofi*. Sc. *loof*.

"(He) held the letter in his *love*."
(K. Alex. p. 71.)
"——he takis
The licor in his awen (one) *loove*,
the letter in the tothire."
(*Ibid.* l. 2569.)

Loueloker, more lovely, A. 148. 168b

Lovne, offer (advice), propose, C. 173. N.Prov.E. *loave*, *loff*, to offer. O.N. *lofa*, promise, praise. Du. *looven*. Flem. *loven*, estimate. Cf. "*Lovon* and bedyn as chapmen, Licitor." (Prompt. Parv.)

Louy, love, B. 841, 1053.

Louely,
Louyely,
Louyly, lovely, A. 565, 693; B. 1486.
Louelych,

Lowe, flame; "*luf lowe*," flame of love, B. 707. O.E. *logh* (see T. B. 168) "the *lowe hot*," T. B. 494.

Lowkande, locking, shutting, B. 441.

Lo3, the deep, pit, sea, A. 119; A. 441, 1031; B. 230.
Lo3e, See *Loghe*.

Lo3, Lo3e, low, B. 798, 1761.

Lo3ed, made low, abased, B. 1650.

Lo3en, laughed (*3rd pers. pl. pret.* of *la3e*, B. 495.

Lo3ly, humbly, B. 614, 745.

Luche, pitch, throw, C. 230. N.Prov.E. *lutch*, to pulsate strongly. W. *lluchio*, to fling, throw violently. Stratmann suggests A.S. *lyccan*, pull, lutch.

Ludych,
Ludisch, national, B. 73, 1375. See *Ledisch*.

Luf, *gen. sing.*, of love, B. 707.

Lufly, Luflych, Luflyly, lovely, A. 880; A. 81; 939; B. 419.

Lufsoum, *sb.* lovesome, beloved one, A. 398.

Luged, was pulled, B. 443. O.N. *lugga*.
169

Lulted, sounded, B. 1207. O.N. *lulla*, to lull, sing to sleep. Cf. "*lullit* on slepe," T. B. 648. Ger. *lallen*, to sing without words, only repeating the syllable *la*. N.Prov.E. *lilt*, to sing with a loud voice; *lilt*, a song.

Luly-whit, lilly-white, B. 977.

Lumpen, befallen, B. 424, 1320. See *Lympe*.

Lur, loss, C. 419.

> "What *lure* is of my lyfe & I lyffe here."
> (T. B. 582.)

Lure3, losses, A. 339, 358. A.S. *lyre*, *lor*.

Lurke, Lurkke, A. 978; C. 277. See T. B. 1140.

Lusty, B. 981.

Luther, bad, wicked, A. 163, 1090; B. 156. A.S. *lyther*.

Luuy, love. See *Louy*.

Lyf, life, B. 1719.

Lyflode, sustenance in life, B. 561. A.S. *lif-láde*, from *lád*, a way.

Lyft, Lyfte, heavens, firmament, sky, B. 212, 366, 1356, 1448. A.S. *lyft*.

Lyftande, lifting, rising, B. 443.

Lyfte, raised, A. 567.

Lyfte, left, B. 981, 1581.

Lygge, lie, B. 1126, 1792. A.S. *licgan*.

Lyke, *vb. impers.* please, A. 566; B. 36, 411, 693, 1646.

Lyke, *adj.* pleasing, C. 42.

Lykker, more like, C. 493.

Lykneȝ, likens, compares, A. 500; is like, B. 1064.

Lyknyng, *sb.* likeness, C. 30.

Lykoreȝ, liquors, drinks, B. 1521.
169b

Lykyng, *sb.* pleasure, A. 247; B. 172, 1803. See T. B. 2912.

Lylled, flourished, shone, C. 447. N.Prov.E. *lilli-lo*, a bright flame. Cf. Mod. Gr. λουλούδι, a blossom; λουλουδιαζω, to flourish, bloom. Is *lylle*, to flourish, connected with the word *lilly*?

Lympe, befall, happen, C. 174, 194. See T. B. 36. A.S. *limpan*, to happen, concern.

Lyne, lineage, A. 626.

Lynne, linen, A. 731.

Lyre, flesh, B. 1687. A.S. *lira*.

Lysoun, trace, B. 887.

Lyst, Lyste, *sb.* pleasure, A. 467, 908; A. 843; lust, A. 693; *vb.* desire, please, A. 146; B. 415, 1766.

Lyst, path, border, B. 1761. Du. *lijst*, edge, border.

Lysten, to hear, A. 880.

Lysten, hearing, B. 586. A.S. *hlist*, hearing; *hlistan*, to hear, listen. O.N. *hlust*, an ear.

Lyte, little, B. 119.

Lyth, limb, A. 398. A.S. *lith*.

Lyþe, assuage, lessen, A. 357. See *Leþe*.

Lyþe, grant, A. 369.

Lyþer, evil, wickedly, A. 567. See *Luþer*.

Lyþerly, badly, negligently, B. 36.

Lyuie, Lyuy, live, A. 558, 581; B. 364.

Lyuyande, living, A. 700.

Ly3e, lie, A. 304.

Ly3t, light, A. 69, 1043; bright, A. 500; innocent, guiltless, pure, A. 682; B. 987; *lette* 170 *ly3t*, esteem, treat lightly, B. 1174, 1320.

Ly3t, Ly3te, *vb.* to light, fall upon, A. 247, 943, 988; B. 213, 1069.

Ly3ten, to lighten, C. 160.

Ly3tly, easily, A. 358; soon, quickly, A. 817, 853; C. 88. Comp. *ly3tloker*, B. 47.

M

Ma, make, A. 283; B. 625.

Ma, man (?), A. 323.

Mach, Machche, = make, fellow, companion, B. 124, 695, 1512. See *Make*.

Mache, to make familiar with, C. 99.

Mad, Madde, foolish, A. 267, 290, 1166; B. 654. Prov. Ger. *maden*, to tattle; *madeln*, to mutter.

> "Thi momlyng and thi *mad* wordes."
> (See T. B. 1864.)

Madde, *vb.* to render foolish, A. 359.

Maddyng, folly, A. 1154.

> "*Madding* marrid has thi mode, and thi mynd changid."
> (K. Alex. p. 121.)

Mak, Make, = mach, match, equal, fellow, wife, A. 759; B. 248, 331, 994. A.S. *maca*, a mate; *mace*, a wife.

> "Þe king him (Joseph) did a wiif to tak,
> Hight Assener, a doghti *mak*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 27*a*.)

Makele3, matchless, A. 435, 733, 757, 780.

Male, B. 337, 695.

Malicious, C. 508.
170b

Malscrande, accursed, B. 991.

Malskred, bewildered, C. 255. Bosworth quotes "*malscra*, a bewitching," upon the authority of Somner.

Malt,
Malte, ease, assuage, soothe, B. 776, 1566. O.N. *melta*, to dissolve.

Malte, discourse, speak, A. 224, 1154. A.S. *mælan*, to speak, converse; *mathelian*, *mæthlan*, to discourse.

Malyce,
Malys, A. 250, 518; B. 4.

Man = maken (*3d pers. pl. pres.*), make, A. 512.

Manace, threaten, C. 422.

Manayre, manor, A. 1029.

Mancioun, mansion, B. 309.

Maner, manner, B. 701.

Maner, manor, A. 918.

Manerly, properly, decently, B. 91.

Mangerie, feast, B. 52, 1365. Fr. *manger*, to eat, from Lat. *manducare*.

Mankyn, mankind, A. 637.

Mansed, cursed, A. 774; B. 82. A.S. *a-mánsumian*, to excommunicate.

Mantyle, mantle, C. 342.

Marchal, marshal, B. 91, 118.

Mare, more, A. 145.

Margary,
Margyrye, pearl, A. 199, 1037; B. 556.

Marie, marry, B. 52.

Marked, market, A. 513.

Marre, corrupt, spoil, destroy, perish, A. 23; A. 279, 991; B. 172, 474. O.H.G. *marrjan*, to hinder, make void. A.S. *merran*, 171 *myrran*, to hinder. Du. *merren*, to obstruct.

Marere3 = marre3 (?). A. 382.

Maryag,
Maryage, A. 414, 778; B. 186.

Maryed, married, B. 815.

Marryng, *sb.* spoiling, preventing, B. 186.

Marschal, B. 1427.

Maryners, C. 99.

Mas, mass, A. 1115.

Mascelle3, spotless, A. 732.

Mascle, spot, A. 726. Du. *maese*, *masche*, *maschel*, a spot, stain; *maschelen*, to stain.

Mase (masse), astonishment, alarm, B. 395.

Maskele3,
Maskelles, spotless, A. 744, 745, 756, 768.
Maskelle3,

Maskle, spot, stain, B. 556. See *Mascle*.

Masporye (?), A. 1018.

Mate, dejected, downcast, subdued, A. 386. Fr. *mat*.

Mate, to overcome, A. 613. Fr. *mater*. O.Fr. *amater*. Cf. Du. *mat*, exhausted, overcome. Ger. *matt*, feeble, faint.

Mater, subject, B. 1617.

Matere, matter, C. 503.

Maugre,
Maugref,
Mawgre, C. 44, 54. Fr. *malgré*, in spite of, against the will of; *mal*, ill; *gré*, will, pleasure. In B. 250 *mawgre* is used as a *sb.* = displeasure.

Mawe, stomach, C. 255. Ger. *magen*. Du. *maag*.

May, maid. A. 435, 780. A.S. *mæg*.

Maynful, great, powerful, A. 1093; 171b B. 1730. A.S.

mægen, power, force, strength. O.N. *megin*, strength; *mega*, to be able.

Maynly, loudly, B. 1427.

Mayntnaunce, maintenance, B. 186.

Mayntyne, maintain, C. 523.

Mayster, master, lord, A. 462, 900; B. 1793.

Maysterful, powerful, A. 401; B. 1328.

Maystery, mastery, C. 482.

Maȝt, power, C. 112. Goth. *mahts*. Ger. *macht*, might, power.

Maȝty, mighty, B. 273, 279.

Maȝtyly, mightily, B. 1267.

Mede = meed, reward, B. 1632.

Medoes, meadows, B. 1761.

Megre, meagre, lean, B. 1198. Fr. *maigre*. Lat. *macer*, lean.

Mekne, make meek, B. 1328.

Mele, meal, B. 625.

Mele, *sb.* discourse, A. 23.

Mele, *vb.* to talk, relate, say, A. 497, 589; A. 736; B. 10.

> "To *mele* of this mater." (T. B. 209.)

Melle, speak, A. 797. See *Malte*.

Membreȝ, members, A. 458.

Mendes, amends, A. 351.

Mendyng, *sb.* improvement, repentance, A. 452; B. 764.

Mene, general, common, B. 1241. A.S. *gemæne*. Ger. *gemein*.

Mene, mean, A. 293.

Mene, tell, explain, B. 1635. A.S. *mænan*, to tell.

Meng,
Menge, mix, join, B. 337, 625. A.S. *mengan*.

Mensk, Menske, *sb.* honour, A. 162, 783; A. 121, 522; thanks, B. 646; *vb.* to honour, 172 B. 141, 1740. A.S. *mennisc*, human. N.Prov.E. *mense*, to grace, deck; *mense*, decency, good manners.

Mensked, honoured, B. 118.

Menteene, maintain, A. 783.

Mercy, A. 576, 623.

Mercyable, merciful, A. 1113; B. 238.

Mercyles, B. 250.

Mere = meer, boundary, A. 778; B. 320. Du. *meere*. O.N. *mœri*, boundary.

Mere, sea, lake, stream, A. 140, 158, 1166; A. 991; B. 112. A.S. *mere*. O.Sax. *meri*. O.N. *mar*.

Merit, B. 613.

Merk, *adj.* dark, obscure, B. 1617.

Merk, *sb.* darkness, A. 894; B. 291. A.S. *myrc*, dark. O.N. *myrkr*, darkness; *myrka*, to darken, grow dark.

Merke, make, devise, order, place, B. 558, 637, 1487, 1617. A.S. *mearcian*. O.N. *merkia*, to mark, perceive, signify.

Mersy, A. 383; B. 776.

Meruayle, Merwayle, *adj.* marvellous, A. 81; *sb.* a marvel, C. 1081, 1130; B. 586.

Meruelous, A. 1166.

Mery, pleasant, B. 1760.

Mes, A. 862. See *Messe*.

Message, A. 454; B. 81.

Meschef, evil, misfortune, A. 275; B. 373, 1164.

Mese, moderate, temper, assuage, B. 764. See *Methe*.

> "Sir Pylate mefe you now no more,
> But *mese* youre hart, and mend youre mode."
> (Town. Myst. p. 175.)

172b

"Kyng Eolus set hie apon his chare,
With ceptoure in hand, thar muyd
(mood) to *meys* and stille."
(G. Douglas, vol. i. p. 27.)
"The blastis *mesit*."
(*Ibid.* p. 130.)
"A *mes* you of malice,
but a mene qwile."
(T. B. 12842.)

Messe, mass, service, A. 497.

Messe3, messes (of meat), B. 637.

Mester, need, A. 67; B. 342.

Mesure, measure, moderation, A. 224; A. 215, 247, 565; B. 295.

Mesurable, mild, temperate, B. 859.

Metalles, B. 1513.

Mete, meat, food, applied to an apple, A. 641.

Meten, to measure, A. 1032.

Meth,
Meþe, moderation, mildness, pity, B. 247, 436, 565.

"And Mari ledd hir life with *methe*
In a toun that hiht Nazarethe."
(Met. Hom. p. 107.)

A.S. *mæthian*, to measure, estimate, use gently; *mæth*, measure, degree; *mæthlic*, kind, courteous. N.Prov.E. *meedless*, without measure, immoderate.

Meþele3, immoderate, B. 273.

Mette, measure, B. 625.

Met3 = mese (?), pity, B. 215.

Meuande, moving, B. 783.

Meue, move, A. 156; B. 303.

Meuen (*3rd pers. pl. pres.*), move, A. 64. See T. B. 384.

Meyny, labourers, servants, A. 542; household, A. 331; company, A. 892, 899, 925; A. 454; B. 10.

Miry, pleasant, C. 32.

Misschapen (monstrous), wicked, B. 1355.
173

Mistrauthe, unbelief, B. 996.

Mo, more, A. 870, 1194; B. 674.

Mod,
Mode, = mood, pride, A. 401, 738; B. 565, 764.

Moder, mother, A. 435.

Modey,
Mody, = proud, haughty, A. 1303; B. 422.

Mokke, muck, dirt, A. 905.

Mol = mul, dust, A. 382. Flem. *mul*, *gemul*, dust. Du. *mullen*, to crumble. Pl. D. *mull*, loose earth, dust. Cf. "peat-*mull*," the dust and fragments of peat. (Brockett.)

Molde, earth, A. 279; *molde3*, lands, A. 454; "*on molde*," on earth, A. 514, 1114; "*in molde3*," in earth, B. 494. A.S. *molde*, mould, earth. Goth. *mulda*. O.H.G. *molta*. Dan. *muld*.

> "Loo! here the duchez dere to daye was cho takyne,
> Depe dolvene and dede, dyked *in moldez*."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 82.)

Mon, man, A. 310.

Mon, moan, sorrow, A. 374.

Mone, moon, A. 923.

Monkynd, mankind, B. 564.

Mon-sworne, perjury, B. 182. Other forms of this word are *main-sworn*, *man-sworn*. O.H.Ger. *meinsweridi*, perjury, from *main*, *mein*, spot, stain, injury, impure, bad. O.N. *mein*, sore, crime.

Mony, many, A. 572; B. 1164.

Monyth, month, B. 493, 1030.

Moon, moan, sorrow, B. 373.

Moote = mote, spot, blemish, A. 948.

173b

Mor, moor, B. 385, 1673. A.S. *mór*, a moor, heath.

Morehond, more, A. 475. Cf. *nerehande*, near; *betuixande*, betwixt.

Morn,
Morne, morning, A. 493; morrow, B. 1001.

Mornyf, mournful, A. 386.

Mornyng, *sb.* mourning, A. 262.

Morteres, mortars, B. 1487.

Most,
Moste, greatest, B. 254, 385.

Mot, must, may, A. 397, 663.

Mot,
Mote, spot, blemish, sin, A. 764, 843, 855. Du. *mot*, dust.

Mote, *vb.* speak to, A. 613. A.S. *mótian*, to moot, debate. Then Medea with mowthe *motys* thus agayne. T. B. 610.

Mote, building, dwelling, abode, A. 142, 936, 937, 948, 949; city, C. 422. *Mote* signifies a hill, mound, moat, and hence a city on a hill (?). Mid. Lat. *mota*, hill or mound. O.Fr. *mote*.

> "Þe bryght ceté of heven is large and brade,
> Of whilk may na comparyson be made
> Tille na ceté þat on erth may stand,
> Ffor it was never made with mans hand.
> Bot yhit, als I ymagyn in my thoght,
> I lyken it tylle a ceté þat war wroght
> Of gold, of precyouse stones sere,
> Opon a *mote*, sett of berylle clere,
> With walles, and wardes, and turrettes,
> And entré, and yhates, and garrettes."
>
> (Hampole's Pricke of Conscience, p. 239, l. 8896.)

MS. Lansd. 348, reads *mount* for *mote*.

174

Moteles, Motele3, spotless, A. 899.

Moul = mould, earth, A. 23.

Moun (*3rd pers. pl.* of *mowe*, to be able), are able, A. 536.

Mount, A. 868; B. 447.

Mountaunce, amount, C. 456.

Mountayne, B. 385.

Mountes, Mounte3, = amounts, avails, A. 351; C. 332.

Mourkenes, *mirkens*, becomes dark, B. 1760. O.N. *myrka*, to darken, Dan. *mörkne*.

Mourkne, to rot, become rotten, B. 407. From this verb is derived the O.E. *morkin*, a dead beast, carrion, a scarecrow. O.N. *morkinn*, rotten; *morkna*, to rot.

Mourne, to mourn, C. 508.

Mo3t, might, could, B. 1108, 1668.

Mudde, B. 407.

Mukel, great, B. 52, 366, 1164. O.N. *mikill*.

Mul, dust, dirt, A. 905; B. 736. See *Mol*.

Multyplyed, B. 278.

Mun, C. 44. This may be another form of *mon* = moan. But the phrase "*maugre his mun*," leads us to reject this interpretation. *Maugre* is generally used with some part of the body, as "*mawgre his tethe*," "*maugre his chekes*," etc. *Mun* may therefore signify the mouth. (Sw. *mun*, a mouth.) The term is still retained in the north of England. Halliwell quotes the following: 174b

> "A common cry at Coventry on Good Friday is—
> 'One a penny, two a penny, hot cross buns,
> Butter them and sugar them and put them in your *muns*.'"

Munster = minster, church, cathedral, temple, A. 1267; B. 268.

Munt, purpose, A. 1161. N.Prov.E. *munt*, a hint. See *Mynt*.

Murte, break, crush, C. 150. Pl. D. *murten*, to crush. See *to-murte*. In T. B. 4312 we have *myrte* = to crush. Bothe mawhownus & maumettes *myrtild* in peces.

Mydde3, midst, A. 740. See *In-mydde3*.

Mydny3t, midnight, B. 894.

Myke, *sb.* B. 417. Cf. Du. *mik*. The crutches of a boat, which sustain the main boom or mast and sail when they are lowered for the convenience of rowing.

Myke3, free labourers (?), A. 572. A.S. *mecg*, a man. In the *Cursor Mundi*, Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 17, the angels are represented as speaking to Lot as follows:

> "'Has þou her,' þai said, 'ani man,
> Sun or doghter, *mik* or mau,
> To þe langand, or hei or lau
> Þou lede þam suith out o þis tun
> Ar þat hit be sunken don.'" But ? *be myke3* = he *myke3*, he chooses.

Myne3, "*me myne3*," I remember, B. 25. A.S. *mynan*, to remember. O.N. *minna*.

Mynge, record, mention, A. 855. A.S. *myngian*, to remind. 175

Mynne, recollect, remember, A. 583; B. 436, 771. See T. B. 1434. See *Myne3*.

Mynte, devise, purpose, B. 1628. A.S. *myntan*, *myntian* to dispose, settle, appoint. "*Myntyn'* or *amyn'* towarde for to assayen. Attempto." (Prompt. Parv.)

Mynstralsy, B. 121.

Mynyster, minster, temple, A. 1063.

Mynystre, *vb.* B. 644.

Myre, B. 1114.

Myrþe3, joys, A. 140.

Myrþe3, gladdens, A. 862.

Myri, Myry, = merry, pleasant, A. 23, 158; A. 417, 804; *myryer*, A. 850; *myryest*, B. 435.

Myryly, pleasantly, joyously, B. 493.

Mys, Mysse, wrong, sin, A. 262; C. 420.

Myserecorde, mercy, A. 366.

Myse-tente, misunderstood, A. 257.

Mysse, to lose, A. 329; B. 189. O.N. *missa*, to lose. Du. *missen*, to fail, miss.

Mysse, loss, grief, A. 364.

Mysseleue, unbelief, B. 1230.

Mysse-payed, displeased, C. 399.

Mysse-ȝeme, mis-use, A. 322.

Myst, B. 1760.

Myste, mysteries, secrets, (?), A. 462.

Mysterys, A. 1194.

Myþe, to trouble, weary (?), A. 359. A.S. *méthe*, wearied; *méth*, feeble.

Myȝt, might, A. 630.

Myȝtes = mights, powers, B. 644, 1699.

175b

N

Nadde = ne hadde, had not, B. 404.

Nakeryne (*gen. pl.* of *naker*), B. 1413; *naker*, *nacaire*, seems to signify a kettle-drum.

Nas = ne was, was not, B. 727, 983.

Nature, A. 749.

Nauel, C. 278.

Naule, nail, A. 459.

Nauþele3, Nawþeles, nevertheless, A. 877, 950.

Nauþer, Nawþer, neither, A. 1087; B. 1226.

Nawhere, nowhere, A. 534.

Nay, refuse, deny, B. 805.

Nayed, refused, B. 65.

Nayt, use, employ, B. 531. See T. B. 1038. A.S. *neotan*. O.N. *nyta*.

Naytly, neatly, dexterously, B. 480. See T. B. 2427. Nestor, a noble man, *naitest* in werre. T. B. 1038. N.Prov.E. *nately*, neatly.

Na3te, night, A. 1203; B. 484, 807, 1002.

Ne, nor, B. 1226.

Nece, niece, A. 233.

Nedde, needed, A. 1044; hem nedde = they needed.

Nede, Nede3, of necessity, A. 344.

Nedle3, needless, useless, A. 381; B. 220.

Nee = ne, nor, A. 262.

Nel, ne wille, will not, B. 513.

Nem, took (*pret.* of *nimme*), A. 802; B. 505.

Nemme, name, A. 997. See T. B. 152.

176

Nente, ninth, A. 1012.

Nere, *ne were*, were not, B. 21.

Nere, Ner, near, nigh, A. 286, 404; *wel ner*, nearly, B. 1585.

Nerre, nearer, A. 233; C. 85.

Nesch, gently, A. 606. A.S. *hnesc*, soft, tender.

Neue, fist, hand, B. 1537. N.Prov.E. *neve*, *neif*, a fist. O.N.

hnefi.

Neuen, name, B. 410, 1376, 1525. O.N. *nafn*, a name; *nefna*, to name.

Ne3,
Ne3e, nigh, near, A. 528; B. 803.

Ne3,
Ne3e, approach, B. 32, 143, 805, 1016, 1754.
Ne3en,

Nice, *adj.* foolish, A. 1354; *sb.* B. 1359. Fr. *nice*, foolish, simple.

Nif, ne-if, if not, B. 30.

Niye, trouble, B. 1002.

Noble, A. 1097.

Nobley, nobleness, B. 1091.

No-bot, only, B. 1127. N.Prov.E. *no-bot*.

Nok, nook, C. 278.

Nolde, ne wolde, would not, B. 805, 1091.

Nom,
Nome, took, A. 587; B. 1613; *pret.* of *nimme*, to take.

Nome, name, A. 872.

Nomen, seized, taken; *p.p.* of *nimme*, A. 1281; B. 360.

Norne, entreat, ask, B. 803. A.S. *gnornian*, to complain, murmur.

Norture, nurture, B. 1091.

Note, city, A. 922; B. 1233.

Note, devise, ordain, A. 1651; B. 220.

Note, device, purpose, A. 155; 176b B. 381, 727. A.S. *nota*, use, duty, employment; *notian*, to employ, use.

"The Bibel telles us openlye
Of Nembrot and his maistri,
Hou the fole that was wit him
Bigan to mak a tour that tim,
That suld reche to the lifte;
Bot Godd that skilfulli kan skift.
Mad them alle serely spekand,
That nan moht other understand,
And gert them lef thair wilgern werk,
Bot of thair *not* yet standes merk,
In Babilony the tour ȝet standes,
That that folk mad wit thair handes."
(Met. Hom. p. 61.)
"Mony noble for þe nonest to þe *note* gode."
(T. B. 284.)

Note, A. 879, 883.

Notyng, device, devising, B. 1354. See *Note*.

Noumbre, number, B. 1283, 1376.

Nouþe, now, C. 414.

Nowþelese, nevertheless, A. 889.

Noye, trouble, annoy, B. 1236.

Noys,
Noyse, A. 849; B. 490.

Noȝt, naught, nothing, A. 520; A. 888; not, B. 106.

Noȝty, bad, B. 1359.

Nummen (*p.p. nimme*), taken, A. 1291; B. 76.

Nurne, speak, say, B. 669.

Nuye, displease, B. 578.

Nuyed, troubled, B. 1176.

Nw,
Nwe, new, A. 527; anew, A. 1079.

Nwy, wrath, B. 301.

Nwyed, displeased, B. 306.

Nye, trouble, A. 1376; *nyes*, troubles, A. 1754; B. 76.

Nyed, troubled, B. 1603.

Nyf = ne if, if not, B. 424.
177

Nyl, ne wyl, will not, A. 1261; B. 41.

Nylt, ne wylt, wilt not, C. 346.

Nym,
Nymme, take, B. 481. A.S. *niman*.

Nys, ne ys, is not, A. 951.

Nyse, nice, dainty, B. 824.

Nyteled, laboured, toiled, B. 888. Prov.E. *nattle*, to endeavour, to be busy about trifles. O.E. *nyte*, to use, employ, enjoy. O.N. *nyta*.

Ny3e, nigh, A. 484; *wel ny3e*, B. 704.

Ny3t,
Ny3te, night, A. 243; B. 526.

O

Obeche, reverence, B. 745. Prov. Fr. *obezir*.

Obes, obey, A. 886.

Odde, (1) not even, A. 426; (2) spotless, faultless, B. 505. See T. B. 4401, 6157, 6172, 6179, 6189, 6194, 6198.

Oddely, (*a*) alone, A. 923; (*b*) nobly, B. 698.

> (*b*) "I Alexandre the aire and eldest childe hattene,
> Of kyng Philip the fers, that fest am in Grece,
> And of the quene Olimpades, the *oddest* under heven,
> To all 3ow of Athenes, thus I etill my sa3es."
> (K. Alex. p. 79.)
> "For thai the mesure and the mett of alle the mulde couthe,
> The sise of alle the grete see and of the gryme wawys,
> Of the ordere of that *odde* home [heaven] that overe the aire hingis."
> (*Ibid.* p. 2.)

Oke, oak, B. 602.
177b

Olipraunce, vanity, fondness for gay apparel, B. 1349. Prov.E. *olypraunce*, a merry making.

> "Of tournamentys y preue thereynne
> Seven poyntes of dedly synne;
> Fyrst ys pryde, as þou wel wost
> Avauntement, bobaunce and bost;
> Of rych atyre ys here avaunce,
> Prykyng here hors wyth *olypraunce*."
> (Robt. of Brunne's Handlyng Synne, p. 145.)

On, an, A. 9.

One, alone, self, B. 872, 923, 1669.

Onelych, only, B. 1749.

One3, once, B. 801.

Onhede, unity, concord, B. 612.

On-hit, struck, inflamed with anger (?), C. 411. A.S. *onhætan* to inflame, heat.

On-lofte, aloft, on high, B. 692; 947.

On-ry3t, aright, B. 1513.

On-syde3, aside, C. 219.

On-wyde, about, B. 1423.

On-y3ed, one-eyed, B. 102.

Ordaynt, ordained, B. 237.

Ordenaunce, ordinance, B. 698.

Ordure, filth, B. 1092.

Ore, oar, C. 218.

Orenge, orange, B. 1044.

Organe, B. 1081.

Orisoun, prayer, C. 328.

Ornemente, ornament, B. 1799.

Orppedly, quickly, B. 623. N.Prov.E. *orput*, quick (at learning). Orped is generally derived from O.N. *verpa*,

to throw; *p.p. orpinn*. But this etymology is very doubtful. Cf. "*Orpud*, audax, bellipotens." (Prompt. Parv.)

Ossed, showed, C. 213. N.Prov.E. 178 *awse*, *oss*, to attempt, offer. W. *osi*.

> "Quat and has thou *ossed* to Alexander
> this *ayndain* (angry) wirdes."
> (K. Alex., p. 79.)

Oste, host, army, B. 1204.

Oþer, or, A. 141.

Ouer-borde, C. 157.

Ouer-brawden, covered over, B. 1698.

Ouer-seyed, passed over, gone, B. 1686.

Ouer-tan, overtaken, C. 127.

Ouer-þwert, across, B. 316, 1384.

Ouer-tok, B. 1213.

Ouer-torne, past, B. 1192.

Ouer-walte, overflowed, B. 370.

Ouer-ȝede, past, went, B. 1753.

Ouerte, open, clear, A. 593.

Ouerture, opening, A. 218.

Oure, prayer, A. 690.

Out-borst, *vb.* outburst, B. 1251.

Out-comlyng, a stranger, B. 876. N.Prov.E. *out-cumling*, a foreigner, stranger. The more usual form in early English is *comling*.

Out-dryf, drive out, A. 777.

Out-fleme, banished, A. 1177. See *Fleme*.

Out-kast, B. 1679.

Out-sprent, outburst, A. 1137.

Out-taken, excepted, B. 1573.

Out-tulde, thrown out, C. 231.

O3e = owe, ought, A. 552.

O3t, O3te, *vb.* ought, A. 341.

O3t, O3te, *pr.* aught, A. 274; B. 663.

P

Pace, passage, A. 677.

178b

Pacience, Pacyence, A. 1, 36.

Pakke, pack, B. 1282.

Pakke, company, A. 929.

Palayce, Palays, B. 83, 1389, 1531.

Pale, A. 1004.

Palle = pall, fine cloth, B. 1384, 1637.

Pane, a side, division of a building, A. 1034. Lat. *pagina*, a leaf, any flat expanse. "A *pane*, piece or pannel of a wall, of wainscot, of a glasse window." (Cotg.) "*Pane* of a wall, *pan de mur*." (Palsg.)

Panne, head, but we may read *paune*, paws, claws, B. 1697.

Papeiay = a popinjay, a parrot, B. 1465. It. *papagallo*. O.Fr. *papegau*, *papegay*. Sp. *papagayo*, parrot.

Parage, kindred, rank, nobleness, A. 419; B. 167. O.Fr. *parage*.

Paramore3, paramours, lovers, B. 700. Fr. *par amour*, by way of love.

Paraunter, peradventure, A. 588.

Parchmen, parchment, B. 1134.

Pare, cut, B. 1408, 1536.

Parform, perform, A. 542; B. 406.

Parfyt, perfect, A. 638.

Parget, plaister of a wall, B. 1536. "*Pariette* for walles, blanchissure." (Palsg.)

Parlatyk, paralytic, B. 1095.

Partle3, partless, portionless, A. 335.

Partrykes, partridges, B. 57.

Pass, surpass, A. 428.

Passage, journey, C. 97.
179

Passande, passing, B. 1389.

Pasture, C. 393.

Pater, paternoster, A. 485.

Paume, palm, hand, B. 1533, 1542.

Pay,
Paye, pleasure, A. 1, 1164, 1176; C. 99.

Pay, please, A. 1165, 1177.

Payment, A. 598.

Paynt, A. 750.

Payre, pair, B. 335.

Payre = appayre, become worse, fade, B. 1124. Lat. *pejor*, worse. "To *appayre* to waxe worse." (Palsg.)

Payred, impaired, A. 246.

Pechche, sin, fault, A. 841. Fr. *péché*.

Penance,
Penaunce, A. 477.

Pene3, pens, folds (for cattle), B. 322.

Penitotes, (? *Peritotes*), a kind of stone (the *peritot* or *peridot* Marsh), B. 1472.

Penne, B. 1724.

Penne-fed, B. 57.

Pensyf, pensive, A. 246.

Pented, appertained, belonged to, B. 1270.

Peraunter, peradventure, B. 43.

Pere,
Per, equal, peer, A. 4; B. 1214, 1336.

Pere3, pears, A. 104.

Perile, B. 856, 942.

Perré, precious stones, jewelry, A. 730; B. 1117.

Pertly = apertly, openly, B. 244. See T. B. 1130. Cf. "*pert* wordes," T. B. 977.

Peryle, A. 695; C. 85.
179b

Pes, peace, A. 952.

Pich, pitch, B. 1008.

Pike = pick, pluck, B. 1464.

Pinnacle, B. 1463.

Pité, pity, B. 232.

Pitously,
Pytosly, A. 370, 798.

Planed, B. 310.

Planete, A. 1075.

Plaster, B. 1549.

Plat, flat, B. 1379.

Plat, struck (*pret.* of *plette*, to strike), B. 1265. A.S. *plættian*.

> "Hwan he hauede him so schamed,
> His hand (he) of *plat*, and yvele lamed."
> (Havelok the Dane, 2755.)

Plater, plate, platter, B. 638.

Plate3, A. 1036.

Plat-ful, brimful, B. 83.

Plattyng, *sb.* striking (or folding?), B. 1542.

Play, A. 261.

Play-fere, play-fellow, companion, C. 45.

Playn, *adj.* even, clear, A. 178, 689; A. 1068; B. 439.

Playn, *sb.* A. 104, 122; B. 1216.

Playned, lamented, A. 53, 242.

Playne3, complains, C. 376.

Playnt, complaint, A. 815.

Plek, place, plot of ground, B. 1379. "*Pleckke* or plott, porculetum." (Prompt. Parv.) N.Prov.E. *pleck*. A.S. *plæc*.

"Se that the hare hathe be at pasture in grene corne, or in eny other *plek*."

(Quoted by Way from MS. Harl. 5086, fol. 47.)

Pleny, to complain, A. 549.

Plete, demand, plead for, A. 563.
180

Pleyn, mourn, C. 371.

Plontte, plant, A. 104.

Plow, plough, B. 68.

Plyande, pliant, C. 439.

Plye, A. 1039; B. 196, 1385.

Plyt, danger, fault, A. 647; A. 1494; B. 114. A.S. *pliht*.

Ply3t, condition, A. 1075; B. 111.

Pobbel, pebble, A. 117.

Pole, pool, stream, A. 117.

Polle, poll, head, B. 1265. Du. *polle*, *pol*, head, top, crown.

Polmente, a kind of pottage, B. 628. O.Fr. *polment*. Lat. *pulmentum*. "*Pulmentarium* a *pulment*." Nominale, MS.

"His brother (Jacob) he fand give—and his tent
To grayth a riche *pulment*."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 21*a*.)

Polyce, Polyse, polish, B. 1068, 1131, 1134.

Polyle, poultry, B. 57. Fr. *poule*, a hen; *poulet*, a chicken. Lat. *pullus*. "*Polayle*, bryddys or fowlys, Altilis." (Prompt. Parv.)

Pomgarnade, pomegranate, B. 1466. Cf. Lat. *malum granatum*. It. *granata*. Sp. *granada*.

Poplande, rushing, foaming, C. 319. N.Prov.E. *popple*, to tumble about with a quick motion. O.Sc. *pople*, to flow, rush.

> "The wawis of the wild see apone the wallis betes,
> The pure *populand* hurle passis it umby."
> (K. Alex. p. 40.)
> "And on the stanys owt thar harnys [he] dang,
> Quhil brayn and eyn and blude al *poplit* owt."
> (G. Douglas, vol. i. p. 167.)

180b

Porchase, purchase, A. 439.

Porche, B. 785.

Pore, poor, A. 873.

Porfyl, hem, A. 216. Fr. *pourfiler*, to work upon the edge, embroider; *fil*, a thread. O.E. *purfle*, to overlay with gems or gold. "*Purfyll* or hemme of a gowne, bort." (Palsg.)

Porpre, purple, B. 1568.

Porros, B. 1772.

Port, gate, A. 856; harbour, B. 90.

Portale, A. 1036.

Portray, B. 700.

Poruay, Poruaye, to provide, A. 1502; B. 36.

Possyble, A. 452.

Potage, B. 638.

Poursent, course, A. 1035.

Pourtray, B. 1271. Fr. *pourtraire*.

Pouer, power, B. 1654.

Pouer,
Pouere, poor, B. 615, 1074.

Poueren (*pl.* of *pouer*), poor, B. 127.

Pouert, poverty, C. 43.

Pouerté, C. 13.

Powdered, A. 44.

Powleȝ, pools, C. 310.

Poyned, trimmed, ornamented, A. 217.

Poynt, *sb.* particle, A. 891.

Poysened, B. 1095.

Poyntel, a style, B. 1533.

Pray, *sb.* prey, A. 1297; *vb.* to plunder, B. 1624.

Prayse, A. 301.

Prece, press, B. 880.

Prechande, preaching, B. 942.

Precios,
Precious, A. 4, 216; B. 1282.
181

Prelate, A. 1249; B. 389.

Pres, press, A. 730; to press, A. 957.

Prese, praise, honour; "his *prese*, his *prys*," A. 419. Sp. *prez*, honour, glory. Fr. *prix*, value, worth, price.

> "Fra þan forth heild Sir Moyses
> Þis wandes bath in *pris* and *pres*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 36*a*.)

Prese,
Pres, *sb.* press, A. 1114; *vb.* B. 1249.

Presens, Presente, presence, A. 389; B. 8, 1496.
Present, *vb.* B. 1217.
Presonere, prisoner, B. 1217.
Prest, ready, A. 147; B. 303. Ital. *presto*.
Prestly, quickly, B. 628.
Presyous, B. 1496.
Pretermynable, A. 596.
Preue, prove, A. 983; B. 704, 1748.
Prisoner, B. 1297.
Profecie, B. 1158, 1308.
Profere, A. 235, 1200.
Profert, B. 1463.
Professye, A. 821.
Profete, prophet, A. 797.
Proper, A. 686.
Properté3, properties, A. 752.
Property, A. 446.
Prophete, A. 831; B. 1300.
Prosessyoun, procession, A. 1096.
Prouince, B. 1300.
Pruddest, proudest, B. 1300.
Prudly, proudly, B. 1379, 1466. See T. B. 857.
Pryce, chief, B. 1308.
Prymate, B. 1570.
Pryncipale, B. 1531, 1781.
181b
Pryncipalté, dominion, B. 1672, 1738.
Priys, Prys, value, worth, A. 272, 419, 755; B. 1117. See *Prese*.

Prysoun, C. 79.

Pryuely, B. 238.

Pryuy, A. 12; *pryuyest*, B. 1748.

Pulde, pulled, B. 1265.

Pulle, draw, B. 68.

Pure, *adj.* A. 227; A. 704; *vb.* B. 1116.

Purely,
Purly, A. 1004; B. 1660.

Purpre, purple, A. 1016.

Pursaunt, a sergeant, B. 1385. O.Fr. *pursuivant*.

Pursue, B. 1177.

Purtraye, B. 1465, 1536.

Puryté, B. 1074.

Pyche, pitch, fix, B. 477.

Pye, B. 1465.

Pyked, adorned, A. 1036.

Pyke3, pick, choose, A. 573.

Pyle, building, A. 686.

Pyle, to rob, B. 1270, 1282. Fr. *piller*, to rob.

Pylere, pillar, B. 1271.

Pyne, *vb.* to torment, A. 1095; *sb.* pain, B. 330. Du. *pijnen*, to torture.

Pyne = pynd, fasten, C. 79. A.S. *pyndan*, to shut in.

Pynkardine, ? *perre carnadine*, carnelian stone (Marsh), B. 1472.

Pyony, A. 44.

Pytosly, pitifully, A. 370.

Pyty, A. 1206.

Py3t, fixed, placed (*pret.* of *pyche*), A. 117, 228, 742; B. 785.

Q

Quat, what, A. 293.

Quat-kyn, what kind of, A. 771.

Quauende, flowing, waving, B. 324.

Quayle, *sb.* quail, A. 1085.

Quayntyse, wisdom, craft, B. 1632. O.Fr. *accointer*, to make known; *coint*, informed, acquainted with. Lat. *cognitus*.

Qued, *sb.* evil, crime, ill, A. 567; B. 4. Du. *kwaad*, bad. Pl. D. *quat*.

Quelle, kill, A. 799; A. 324; subdue, B. 4. A.S. *cwellan*.

Queme, *adj.* pleasing, A. 1179. A.S. *cweman*, to please. Your *qweme* spouse, T. B. 634.

Quen, when, A. 40, 93, 232, 804.

Quenche, C. 4.

Quere, where, A. 65.

Query, A. 803.

Quest, C. 39.

Queþer-so-euer, whether-so-ever, A. 606.

Quikken, C. 471.

Quo, who, A. 747.

Quo-so, who-so, A. 1647; B. 5.

Quos, whose, B. 1648.

Quoynt, wise, A. 889; A. 160, 871; curious, B. 1459. See *Quayntyse*.

Quoyntis, clothing, B. 54. "*Quoyntyse*, yn gay floryschynge, or other lyke. Virilia." (Prompt. Parv.)

Quoyntyse, device, C. 39. See *Quayntyse*.

Quyk, Quik, quick, living (*pl. quyke3*, A. 1179; A. 567), B. 324.

Quyl, while, B. 627.

Quyte, requite, reward, A. 595; B. 1632.

Quyte, white, A. 220, 842, 844.

R

Raas = rase, rese, way, course, A. 1167. A.S. *ræs*, way, course, race. Sw. *resa*.

Rac, storm, vapour, B. 433. N.Prov.E. *rack*, driving clouds, clouds driven along by the wind.

> "A *rak* and a royde wynde rose in her saile."
> (T. B. 1984)

Rachche, proceed, go, B. 619. A.S. *ræcan*, to reach, extend. O.H.G. *rechen*. N.Prov.E. *ratch*, stretch. Perhaps *rachche* is a softened form of *rayke* (Icel. *reika*, to go), to go. S.Sax. *ruchen*.

Rad, frightened, B. 1543. Sw. *raedd*, afraid. N.Prov.E. *rade*.

> "In a *rad* haste."
> (T. B. 917.)
> "Vn-to the gryselyche gost Syr Gauane is gone,
> And rayket to hit in a res, for he was neuyr *radde*;
> *Rad* was he neuyr ȝette, quoso ryȝte redus."
> (The Anturs of Arther, p. 5; ix. 8, 9.)

Radde, advised, C. 406 (*pret.* of *rede*, to advise). See *Rede*.

Radly, readily, quickly. A.S. *rád*, ready, quick; *rádlice*, speedily.

> "The sight of þat semely sanke in hir herte,
> And rauysshed hir *radly* þe rest of hir sawle."
> (T. B. 462)

Raft, bereft, took, (*pret.* of *reve*), A. 1142, 1431; taken, B. 1739. See *Reue*.

Rak, C. 176. See *Rac*.

183

Rakel, hasty, rash, C. 526. N.Prov.E. *rackle*.

Rakente, chain (?), C. 188. A.S. *raccenta*.

Rakke, C. 139. See *Rac*.

Ramelande, fetid, filthy, C. 279. Prov.E. *ram*, fetid; *rammely*, tall, rank; *ramel*, rubbish, dirt.

Rande3, paths, borders, A. 105. A.S. *rand*, *rond*, a border, rim, edge.

Rank, strong, severe, B. 233. Fris. *rank*, long-grown, rank. Dan. *rank*, upright. See T. B. 1392, 1879.

Ranker, rancour, B. 756.

Rape, blow, B. 233. Sw. *rapp*.

Rapely, quickly, A. 363, 1168. O.E. *rape*, haste. O.N. *rápa*, cursitare. In T. B. rape = to hasten (818).

Rasch, A. 1167.

Rasp, B. 1545, 1724.

Rasse, summit, top, B. 446. N.Prov.E. *raise*, a mound, cairn. O.N. *reysa*.

Ratted, rent, ragged, B. 144; from O.E. *ratte*, to tear, rend. N.Prov.E. *rats*, pieces, fragments. Fris. *rite*, tear, pull.

> "Thane the Romayns relevyde that are ware
> rebuykkyde,
> And alle *to-rattys* oure mene with theire risté horsses."
> (Morte Arthure, E. E. T. S. 2235.)

Rauþe, Rawþe, = ruth, pity, sorrow, A. 858; A. 233, 972; mercy, B. 21.

Raue, A. 363, 665.

Rauen, B. 455.

Rauyste, ravished, A. 1088.
183b

Rawe, row, "vpon a *rawe*," in a row, in order, A. 545.

Rawe3, rows, borders, A. 105.

Raw-sylk, B. 790.

Raxled, roused up, A. 1174. A.S. *ræscian*, to shake, rustle. O.N. *ruska*. Sc. *rax*, to stretch.

Ray, A. 160.

Raykande, going, flowing, A. 112; B. 382.

Rayke, go, A. 465, 671; B. 89. O.N. *reka*. N.Prov.E. *rake*, to go about.

Raynande, raining, B. 382.

Rayn-ryfte, rain-fissure, B. 368.

Raysoun, reason, cause, A. 268; C. 191.

Raȝt, Raȝte, afforded, extended (*pret.* of *rache*), B. 561, 766, 1691. See *Rachche*.

Reame, realm, B. 1316.

Rebaude, ribald, B. 873. Fr. *ribald*, from O.H.G. *hrúpa*, a prostitute. (Burguy.)

Rebel, B. 455.

Rebounde, B. 422.

Rebuke, A. 367.

Recen, tell, A. 827. A.S. *recan*.

Reche, reach, extend, B. 10, 1369.

Rech, Reche, reck, care, A. 333; B. 465. A.S. *récan*.

Reche = reke, smoke, B. 1009. A.S. *reác*.

Recorde, *sb.* A. 831; *vb.* B. 25.

Recoverer, recovery, B. 394.

Rede, *vb.* to counsel, advise, A. 1346; explain, B. 1578. A.S. *rædan*.

Redles, Redeles, without counsel, uncertain, fearful, A. 1197; B. 502.

Refete, feed, refresh, A. 88; C. 20.

Reflayr, smell, A. 46; odour, B. 1079. Fr. *flairer*, to smell. Prov. Fr. *flairar*, to smell, sniff.

Refrayne, B. 756.

Reget, A. 1064.

Regretted, A. 243.

Regioun, A. 1178; B. 760, 964.

Rehayte, cheer, B. 127. O.Fr. *rehaiter*.

Reiaté3, kingdoms, royalties, A. 769. O.Fr. *reiauté* = *reialté*, royalty.

Reken, beautiful, A. 5, 906; joyous, A. 92; merry, A. 1082; pious, A. 10, 738; wise, B. 756. See Wright's Lyrical Poems, p. 27. A.S. *recan*. O.S. *recon*, to order, direct. Pl. D. *reken*, right, straight, orderly.

Rekenly, nobly, princely, B. 127, 1318.

Rekken up, A. 2.

Relande, reeling, C. 270.

Rele, reel, roll, C. 147.

Reles,
Relece, cessation, A. 956; B. 760.

Releue, C. 323.

Relusaunt, shining, A. 159. O.Fr. *reluire*, to shine.

Relygioun, B. 7, 1156.

Relyke, B. 1156, 1269.

Reme, realm, A. 448, 735.

Reme, lament, cry, A. 858, 1181; C. 502. A.S. *hreman*.

Remembre, C. 326.

Remnaunt, remainder, A. 1160; B. 433.

Remorde, grieved, A. 364.

Remue,
Remwe, remove, A. 427, 899; B. 646, 1673.
184b

Renay, reject, forsake, A. 105; B. 344.

Renge,
Rengne, reign, B. 328, 1321.

Rengne3, courses, B. 527. A.S. *ryne*, course.

Renischche, foreign, strange, B. 96. See *Runische*.

Renk, Renke, a man, originally a warrior, B. 7, 96, 766, 969. A.S. *rinc*. O.N. *reckr*.

Renne, run, B. 527, 1392.

Renoun, A. 986, 1182.

Renowle3, renews, A. 1080.

Renyschly, fiercely, B. 1724. See *Runische*.

Reparde, kept back, A. 611.

Repayre, *vb.* A. 1028.

Repente, A. 662.

Repreue, reprove, A. 544.

Requeste, A. 281.

Rere, rise, A. 366, 423; A. 188; raise, C. 873; proceed, B. 160.

Rert, if not *rered*, raised = *ert*, powerful, A. 591. Cf. *ertid*. T. B. 2641, 4841.

Res, onset, assault, B. 1782. See *Raas*.

Reset, resting place, seat, abode, A. 1067.

Resonabele, Resounable, A. 523; B. 724.

Resoun, A. 665, 716; B. 1633.

Respecte, "in respecte of," A. 84.

Respyt, A. 644.

Resse, "on resse," in course, A. 874. See *Raas*.

Restay, keep back, restrain, A. 716, 1168.

Restle3 = restless, unceasing, B. 527.

Restore, A. 659; B. 1705.

Retrete, treat of, A. 92.

Reue, bereave, C. 487. A.S. *refian*, *reafian*. O.Fris. *râva*.

Reuel, B. 1369.

Reuer, river, A. 105.

Reuerence,
Reverens, B. 10, 1318.

Rewarde, A. 604.

Rewfully, sorrowfully, A. 1181.

Rewled, ruled, ordered, B. 294.

Reynye3, reins, B. 592.

Re3tful, rightful, B. 724.

Rial, royal, B. 1082.

Rialté, royalty, B. 1321.

Ridlande, dropping (as out of a sieve), oozing, B. 953. A.S. *hriddel*, a sieve; *hridrian*, to sift.

Riboudrye, ribaldry, B. 184.

Rigge, back, C. 379. A.S. *hrycg*.

Rifte3, pieces, fragments, B. 964.

Ring = rink, man, B. 592. See *Renk*.

Robbor, B. 1269.

Roborrye, B. 184.

Roche, rock, B. 537.

Rode, cross, A. 705; C. 96.

Rok, crowd, throng, B. 1514. Sc. *rok*. O.Sw. *rok*, cumulus.

Rollande, curly, waving, B. 790.

Rome = roam, go, C. 52.

Romy, roar, howl, B. 1543. A.S. *reomian*, to cry out. O.E. *rome*. Sc. *rame*. Sw. *raama*.

Ronk = rank, fine, A. 844; bold, A. 1167; A. 490; bad, A. 455, 760; full grown, C. 869; *sb.* boldness, B. 298.

Ronkly, fiercely, C. 431.

Rop, rope, C. 150.
185b

Rop, gut, intestine, C. 270. N.Prov.E. *ropps*, the guts. A.S. *roppas*, the bowels, entrails, the *raps*. Cf. A.S. *rop*-weorc,

the colic.

"Huervore he (the liar) is ase the gamelos (chameleon), thet leveth by the eyr, and na3t ne heth ine his *roppes* bote wynd, and heth ech manere colour, thet ne heth non (of) his o3en."

(The Ayenbite of Inwyt, E. E. T. S. p. 62.)

Rore, roar, cry, B. 390, 1543.

Rose, praise, B. 1371. Sc. *ruse*. Sw. *rosa*. Dan. *rose*, to praise.

Rot,
Rote, root, A. 26.

Rote, *sb.* rot, decay, B. 1079.

Rote, lyre of seven strings, B. 1082. O.H.G. *hrotta*. M.H.G. *rotte*. W. *crwth*. Eng. *crowd*.

Roþeled, prepared, A. 59; rushed, hastened, B. 890. A.S. *hrathian*, to be quick. Or from Welsh *rhuthr*, a sudden gust, onset, assault. Lanc. *rhute*, passion. Sc. *ruther*, uproar.

Roþer, rudder, B. 419.

Roþun, rush, B. 1009. See *Roþeled*.

Roum, room, B. 96.

Roun = rune, discourse, C. 514. A.S. *rún*, a letter, character, mystery, council, conversation.

Rourde, sound, A. 112. A.S. *reord*, *reard*, speech, language.

Route, snore, C. 186. Fr. *router*. O.N. *rauta*, to roar, bellow.

"Dormiendo sonare, Anglice to *rowtyn*."
(MS. Bibl. Reg. 12 B. i. f. 88.)

Rownande, murmuring, A. 112.
186

Rowned, sounded, C. 64. A.S. *rúnian*, to whisper.

Rowtande, rushing, B. 354. "A *routond* rayn," T. B. 1986.

Rowte, company, band, host, B. 969, 1197, 1782.

Rowwe, row, C. 216.

Royl, royal, B. 790.

Roȝ, Roȝe, rough, A. 382, 1724; A. 139, 147; roughness, C. 1545; B. 144.

Roȝly, roughly, B. 433. Is it an error for *rwly*, sorrowful?

Roȝt, cared for (*pret.* of *reche*), C. 460.

Ruchen, fettle, set in order, C. 101. M.H.G. *rechen*. O.S. *recon*. A.S. *recan*, to order, direct.

> "(He) *riches* him radly to ride and remowis his ost."
> (K. Alex. p. 172.)
> "[The king] Ricchis his reynys."
> (T. B. 1231.)

Ruddon, light, literally redness, B. 893. O.N. *rodna*, rubescere, erubescere; *rodi*, rubor, rubigo. Prov.E. *roaded*, *rody*, streaked.

Rudnyng, ? lightning, C. 139. See *Ruddon*.

Rueled, rushed, B. 953. O.N. *hrolla*. Dan. *rulle*.

Ruful, sorrowful, pitiful, A. 916.

Runnen (*p.p.* of *rinne*), run, A. 26, 874.

Runisch, strange, B. 1545. A.S. *rénisc*, hidden; from *rún*, a mystery.

Runyschly, fiercely, roughly, C. 191. *Renisch* or *runisch*, signifies not only strange but fierce, 186b rough. N.Prov.E. *rennish*, *rinnish*, furious.

> "Than has sire Dary dedeyne and derfely he lokes;
> Rysys him up *renysche* and reȝt in his sete."
> (K. Alex. p. 100.)

Rurd, cry, noise, A. 390; B. 64. A.S. *reord*.

Ruþe, arouse, B. 895, 1208. See *Roþeled*.

Ruyt, hasten, endeavour, C. 216. Fris. *rite*, to pull.

Rwe, to pity, C. 176, 502; *vb. impers. rwe*, repent, B. 290, 561. A.S. *hreówan*, to rue, repent, grieve; *hreówian*, to be sorry for.

Rwly = ruly, sorrowfully, piteously, A. 390; B. 96.

Ryal, royal, A. 160; B. 786.

Ryally, royally, A. 987; B. 812.

Rybaude, ribald, C. 96.

Rybe, ruby, A. 1007.

Ryche, kingdom, A. 601, 722. A.S. *ríce*.

Ryche, rich, A. 770.

Rydelande, drifting, C. 254. See *Ridlande*.

Rydelles, without counsel, uncertain, B. 969. See *Redeles*.

Ryf = rife, abundant, plentiful, A. 770, 844. A.S. *ryf*, frequent. O.N. *rifr*.

> "Forþi he hight (promised) þam giftes *riif*,
> Þat suld bring David of his liif;
> In feild and tun, in frith and felle,
> Saul soght David for to quelle."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 43*a*.)

Ryg, Ryge, 187 rain, torrent, shower, B. 354, 382. O.N. *hregg*. A.S. *racu*. N.Prov.E. *rag*.

Ryngande, ringing, B. 1082.

Rynk, man, C. 216. See *Renk*.

Rypande, searching, trying, B. 592. O.E. *rype*, to probe, plunder. A.S. *rypan*; N.Prov.E. to investigate.

> "Now if ye have suspowse to Gille or to me,
> Com and *rype* oure howse, and then may ye se who had hir."
> (Town. Myst. p. 112.)

See State Papers, i. 295.

Rysed, rose, B. 1778.

Ryth, a hound, mastiff, B. 1543. A.S. *riththa*, a mastiff.

Ry3t, right, A. 622.

Ry3twys, righteous, right, A. 675; C. 490.

Ry3twysly, aright, A. 709.

S

Sacrafyce, Sacrefyce, A. 510, 1447; B. 239.

Sad, Sade, Sadde, sad, staid, solemn, A. 211, 887; A. 595; long, A. 1286; bitter, B. 525.

Sadele, saddle, B. 1213.

Sadly, soundly, heavily, C. 442.

Saf, safe, secure, A. 672.

Saf, save, except, B. 1749.

Saffer, Safyre, sapphire, A. 1002; B. 1469.

Sage, B. 1576.

Saghe = saw, word, A. 226. See *Saw*.

Sake, fault, A. 800; C. 84. A.S. *sacu*.

Sakerfyse, sacrifice, A. 1064; B. 507.

Sakleȝ = sakeless, innocent, faultless, B. 716. Sc. *sackless*. O.N. *saklaus*, innocent. See *Sake*.
187b

Sakred, hallowed, B. 1139.

Sale, hall, palace, B. 120, 1260, 1722. A.S. *sal*. T. B. 1657.

Samen, *adv.* together, at once, A. 518; A. 400, 468; *adj.* B. 985. O.N. *saman*.

Samen, to consort with, B. 870. A.S. *samnian*, to assemble, collect.

Samne, assemble, B. 53.

Samned, assembled, B. 126, 361.

Samnes (*imp.* of *samne*), C. 385.

Sample, example, A. 499; B. 1326.

Sapyence, wisdom, B. 1626.

Sardiner, sardine stone, B. 1469.

Sardonyse, sardonyx, A. 1006.

Sarre (*comp.* of *sare*), sorer, more painful, A. 1195; *superl.* *sarrest*, B. 1078.

Sattle, settle, C. 409. N.Prov.E. *sattle*.

Sau,
Saue, = saw, word, B. 1545.

Sauce, B. 823.

Saudan, sultan, B. 1323.

Saule,
Sawle, soul, A. 461; A. 290; B. 325.

Saundyuer, sandever, glass-gall, B. 1036.

Sauter, psalter, A. 677.

Sauteray, psaltery, B. 1516.

Saue, A. 666.

Sauer, *vb.* savour, B. 825.

Sauerly, savourly, sweet, A. 226.

Sauor,
Savour, A. 510, 995, 1447; B. 275.

Sauyté, safety, B. 489.

Saw,
Sawe, word, A. 278; B. 109. A.S. *sagu*.

Sayde = sadde, stedfast, B. 470.

Saym, fat, grease, C. 275. Prov.E. *saim*, seam, lard. W. *saim*.

Sayned, blessed, B. 746. A.S. *senian*. Ger. *segnen*, to bless.

"Swa sal I *saine* þe in lif mine,
Sic benedicam te in vita mea,
And sal lift mi handes in name thine,
Et in nomine tuo levabo manus meas."
(Psalm lxii. 5.)

Saynt, A. 835.

Sa3,
Sa3e, word, B. 1599, 1737. See *Saw*.

Sa3, saw, A. 1021.

Sa3t,
Sa3te, reconciliation, A. 1201; *adj.* at peace, A. 52. A.S. *saht*, peace; *saht*, reconciled; *sahtlian*, to reconcile.

Sa3tled, appeased, reconciled, B. 230, 1139.

Sa3tled, settled, restored, A. 445; became calm, B. 232.

Sa3tlyng, reconciliation, peace, B. 490, 1795.

Sa3ttel, to be calm, patient, C. 529.

Scale, A. 1005.

Scape, escape, A. 62, 529, 928; B. 155.

Scarre = scare, *vb.* be frightened, A. 598, 838; scatter, B. 1784. N.Prov.E. *skair*, wild, timid. S.Sax. *skerren*, to terrify.

Scaþe, harm, ruin, wrong, sin, B. 21, 196, 569, 600, 1148.

Scaþe, to break, destroy, B. 1776. A.S. *scethan*, to injure, hurt, harm. *Scetheþe*, injury, loss, guilt.

Scaþel, dangerous, C. 155. Goth. *skathuls*. O.H.G. *scadhal*, hurtful. 188b

"Lokez the contree be clere the corners are large:
Discoveres now sekerly skrogges and other,
That no *skathelle* (hurtful thing) in the skroggez skorne
us here-aftyre;
Loke 3e skyfte it so that no *skathe* lympe."
(Morte Arthure, pp. 137-8.)

Ascalphus, a *skathel* duke, T. B. 4067.

Scelt, spread, served (?), B. 827.

Schad, descended, B. 1690.

Schadowed, shaded, A. 42.

Schaftes, beams, rays, A. 982; C. 455. A.S. *sceaft*, dart, arrow.

> "(He) had on a mitre
> Was forged all of fyne gold, and fret fulle of perrils,
> Sti3t staffulle of stanes that stra3t out bemes
> As it ware schemerand *schaftis* of the schire sonne."
> (K. Alex. p. 53.)

Schalk, Schalkke, man, fellow, A. 762, 1029; B. 476. A.S. *scealc*, a warrior, serving man. Goth. *skalks*. O.S. *scalc*. O.N. *skálkr*.

Schape, devise, form, A. 247; endeavour, C. 762; happen, B. 160. A.S. *scapan*, to appoint, shape, create. O.N. *skapa*.

Schauen, shaven, scraped, B. 1134.

Schawe, show, B. 1599.

Schawe, Scha3e, grove, thicket, wood, A. 284; C. 452. Prov.E. *scow*, *shaw*. O.N. *skógr*, Dan. *skov*, a wood.

Schede, depart, A. 411.

Schelde3, shields (of a boar), B. 58.

Schende, ruin, destroy, B. 519. 189 A.S. *scendan*, to confound, shame, destroy.

Schended, accursed, C. 246.

Schene = sheen, *sb.* bright, beautiful, A. 166, 965; brightness, A. 440; *adj.* C. 203, 1145; B. 1076, 1310. A.S. *sceone*, beautiful; *scine*, splendour.

Schent, Schente, destroyed, A. 668; A. 1029; ruined, B. 47, 580.

Schep, sheep, A. 801.

Schepon, stall, stable, B. 1076. A.S. *scypen*.

Schere, divide, separate, A. 107; purify, A. 165. A.S.

scéran, to divide.

Schet, shut, C. 452.

Schin, shall, B. 1435. See "Liber Cure Cocorum," p. 29, l. 29.

> "For in a slac thou shalle be slayn,
> Seche ferlès *schyn* falle!"
> (The Anturs of Arther, p. 12, xxiii. 13.)

Schome, shame, B. 1115.

Schomely, shamefully, C. 128.

Schonied, shunned, B. 1101.

Schor, shower, B. 227.

Schore, shore, A. 230.

Schorne (gold), purified, refined, A. 213. See *Schere*.

Schortly, quickly, hastily, B. 519, 600.

Schowte, shout, A. 877.

Schowue, shove, B. 44, 1029, 1740.

Schrewe, a wicked person, a wretch, A. 186; B. 77.

Schrewedschyp, wickedness, B. 580.

Schrowde, clothing, B. 47, 170. A.S. *scrúd*, garment, shroud.

189b

Schrylle = shrill, clear, A. 80.

Schulder, shoulder, B. 981, 1690.

Schunt = aside, aslant, B. 605. O.E. *shunt*, to slip aside, withdraw. A.S. *scunian*, to shun. Du. *schuins*, slope, slant.

> "He schodirde and schrenkys and *shontes* bott lyttille."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 354.)
> "3a werpes tham up (the 3ates) quoth
> the wee, and wide open settes,
> If at 3e schap 3ow to *schount* unschent
> of oure handes."
> (K. Alex. p. 73.)

Schylde, to shield, A. 965; C. 440.

Schyldere, shoulder, A. 214.

Schym, bright, A. 1077. A.S. *scima*, a brightness. M.H.G. *schîm*. A.S. *sciman*, to glitter, shine. See T. B. 4974.

Schymeryng, *sb.* brightness, A. 80. A.S. *scimrian*, to shine. Du. *schémeren*, to dazzle. Sw. *skimra*, to glitter.

Schyn, shall, B. 1810. See *Schin*.

Schynde, shone, A. 80.

Schyr, Schyre, brightly, A. 28; bright, beautiful, A. 42, 284; A. 553, 605, 1278; bare, A. 1690. Comp. *schyrrer*, B. 982. A.S. *scír*, *sheer*, pure, clear, bright. See T. B. 1269.

Sclade = slade, valley, green plain, A. 1148. A.S. *slæd*.

Scla3t, slaughter, B. 56.

Scoghe, scoff, or perhaps perverseness, backsliding, A. 610. A.S. *sceoh*, askew, perverse.

Scole, cup, B. 1145. O.N. *skál*. Dan. *skaal*.

Scolere, scholar, B. 1554.

Scomfyt, to discomfit, B. 1784.
190

Scope, scoop, C. 155.

Scorn, Scorne, *vb.* A. 709; *sb.* B. 827.

Scoumfit, discomfited, B. 151.

Scowte-wach, sentinel, guard, B. 838.

> "Thane the price mene prekes and proves theire horsez,
> Satilles to the cete appone sere halfes;
> Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,
> And skyrmys a lyttille;
> Skayres thaire skottefers
> And theire *skowtte-waches*."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 206.)

Scoymous, particular, scrupulous, fearful, B. 21, 1148.

Scrof, rough, B. 1546.

Scrypture, writing, B. 1546.

Scue. See *Skewe*.

Scylle, wit, B. 151. It signifies also reason, cause. O.N. *skil*.

Scylful, wise, B. 1148.

Sech,
Seche, seek, A. 354; B. 29, 420.

Seele, joy, happiness, C. 242. A.S. *sél*, good, excellent. Cf. *unsell*, T. B. 1961.

Sege, seat, C. 93. Fr. *siége*.

Sege, siege, B. 1185.

Segg,
Segge, a man, servant, B. 93, 398, 549, 681. A.S. *secg*, a man, literally a messenger, speaker; from *secgan*, to say.

Segge, say, B. 621.

Segh, saw, A. 790.

Sekke, sack, C. 382.

Selconth, a marvel, B. 1274. A.S. *sel-cúth* = *seld-cúth*, rare, seldom known.

Selden, seldom, A. 380. A.S. *seldan*.
190b

Sele, happiness, bliss, C. 5. See *Seele*.

Selepe = slep, slept, C. 186.

Self, very, A. 1046; same, B. 1769.

Selly, a marvel, A. 140; wonderfully, C. 353. A.S. *séllíc*, *síllíc*, worthy, wonderful; *séllíce*, wonderfully.

> "For thou has samned, as men sais, a *selly* noimbre
> Of wrichis and wirlinges out of the west endis,
> Of laddis and of losengers and of litille thevys."
> (K. Alex. p. 59.)

See T. B. 1544.

Sely, fortunate, blessed, happy, A. 659; B. 490. See *Seele*.

Sem, seam, B. 555.

Semblaunt, appearance, cheer, A. 211, 1143; B. 131, 640.

Semblé, assembly, B. 126.

Sembled, assembled, C. 177.

Seme, seemly, A. 190; B. 549, 1810. O.Sw. *sæma*. Dan. *sömme*, to be fitting, bear one's self becomingly. O.N. *sæmr*, seemly.

Seme, to be fitting, become, B. 793.

Semed, A. 760.

Semely, Semly, Semlych, seemly, beautiful, A. 34, 789; A. 209, 1442. Comp. *sem-loker*, B. 868.

Sengeley, ever, constantly, A. 8. A.S. *singallíce*, perpetually.

Ser, Sere, diverse, various, separate, A. 358; *ser kynde*, A. 507; *sere course*, A. 1418; *ser wyse*, B. 12. 191

Serelych, severally, separately, C. 193.

Sergaunt, a royal servant, a squire, B. 109.

Serges, wax tapers, B. 1489. Lat. *cerea*.

Seriaunte, sergeant, C. 385. See *Sergaunt*.

Serkynde3, diverse kinds, B. 336.

Serlype3, diverse, different, separate, A. 994.

Sermoun, discourse, speech, A. 1185.

Sertain, certainly, A. 685.

Seruage, bondage, B. 1257.

Seruaunt, A. 699; B. 631.

Serue, avail, A. 331.

Serue, deserve, A. 553; B. 1115.

Seruyse, B. 1152, 1401.

Sese, cease, A. 523; *sese3*, let cease, B. 391.

Sesoune, season, B. 523.

Sessed, Sesed, took possession of, A. 417; B. 1313.

Sete, Seete, sat, A. 161; A. 1171. *pl. seten*, B. 1763.

Sete, seat, C. 24.

Seþe = seethe, boil, B. 631.

Seue, Seve, = sewe, sew, a kind of pottage, B. 108, 825.

Sewer, the officer who set and removed the dishes, tasted them, etc., B. 639.

Sewrté, surety, C. 58.

Sexte, sixth, A. 1007.

Seyed, passed, B. 353.

> "*Seyet* furth with sory chere."
> (T. B. 2512.)

Seysoun, season, A. 39.

Se3, saw, A. 158, 531, 698; B. 209.
191b

Side-borde, B. 1398.

Siue, sieve, B. 226.

Skarmoch, fight, skirmish, B. 1186.

Skaþe, harm, danger, sin, B. 151, 598, 1186. See *Scaþe*.

Skele, dish, B. 1405.

Skelt, scattered, spread, B. 1186, 1206. O.E. *skale*, to scatter. N.Prov.E. *scale*, to spread. See Hall, Richard III. f. 15. A.S. *scylan*, to separate, divide; *pret. scel*.

> "Skairen out skoute wacche for *skeltyng* of harme."
> (T. B. 1089, 6042.)

Skelt, hasten, run, B. 1554. Sw. *skala*, to scamper, scour.

Skete, quick, sudden, A. 1186; quickly, B. 195. See T. B. 13672. O.N. *skjótt*.

Skewe, sky, cloud, B. 1206, 1759. Sw. *sky*, a cloud. A.S. *scúa*, a shadow.

Skowte, look, search, B. 483. See T. B. 1089.

Skoymous, B. 598. See *Scoymous*.

Skwe, sky, B. 483.

Skyfte, devise, order, ordain, A. 569. A.S. *scyftan*.

Skyfte, shift, change, B. 709. Sw. *skifta*.

Skyg, scrupulous, careful, B. 21. Sw. *skygg*, shy. N.Prov.E. *sky*, to shun.

Skyl, Skyle, reason, wit, A. 312; *by skylle*, rightly, reasonably, A. 674; ordinance, A. 709; meaning, B. 1554. See *Scylle*.

Skylle3, doubts, A. 54.

Skylly, device, purpose, B. 529. 192

Skyly, excuse, B. 62.

Skyre = shire = sheer, clear, B. 1776. See *Schyre*.

Skyrme, screams (?), B. 483.

> "Scho gaffe *skirmande* skrikes at all the skowis range."
> (K. Alex. p. 176.)

Or does it here signify to look about, like Prov.E. skime? O.N. *Skima*, to look about.

Skyualde, ordained, manifested, B. 529. Prof. Child suggests Somerset, *scaffle*, scramble, scuffle. See *Skyfte*.

Slade, valley, A. 141.

Slake, absolve (lit. to loosen), A. 942. A.S. *sleacian*, to slacken.

Slauþe, sloth, B. 178.

Sla3t, slaughter, A. 801.

Sla3te, stroke, A. 59; C. 192. A.S. *slagan*, to strike, beat, kill.

Sleke, assuage, lessen, B. 708. See *Slake*.

Slente = slant, a slope, declivity, A. 141. Sw. *slinta*, to

slip.

Slep, slept, C. 466.

Sloberande, slobbering, drivelling, C. 186. *Slobber* is evidently formed from *slob*, *slab*, in the same way as *blubber* is formed from *blob*, *blab*, a drop. Cf. "*Slobur* or *blobur*, of fysshe and other like Burbulum." (Prompt. Parv.) O.E. *slab*. Prov.E. *slob*, thick, slimy. Ir. *slaib*, mud, ooze. O.N. *sluppra*. Dan. *slubbre*, to sip, sup. Du. *slubberen*, to hang loose and slack.

Slode, slid, A. 59.

Sloghe, slow, C. 466.

Sloue, slew, B. 1264.
192b

Sloumbe, slumber, C. 186, 466. N.Prov.E. *sloomy*, dronish, slow; *sloum*, *sloom*, slumber. O.E. *slome*, *sleme*, to sleep. A.S. *sluma*, a slumber. O.N. *slæmi*. Cf. the modern phrase, "to slumber and sleep."

> "(Sire Telomew) cairys into a cabayne, quare the kyng ligges,
> Fand him *slomande* and on slepe, and sleely him rayses."
> (K. Alex. p. 176.)

Slow, slew, B. 1221.

Sluchched, muddy, dirty, C. 341. Prov.E. *slutch*, mud; *slotch*, a sloven; *slotching*, slovenly.

Slyde, fall, C. 466.

> "And *slydyn* uppon slepe by slomeryng of age."
> (T. B. 6.)

Slyke, slide, slip. O.N. *slikja*, to make smooth. See *Atslyke*.

Slyp, stroke, blow, B. 1264.

Slyppe, go, glide, make off, slip away, A. 985; fall, B. 186. A.S. *slipan*.

Slyppe, escape, B. 1785. Sw. *slippa*, to escape.

Sly3t, slight, A. 190.

Sly3t, wisdom, A. 1289; device, B. 130. O.E. *sleghe*, *sle3e*,

wise. O.N. *slægr*.

Smach, scent, smell, B. 461, 1019. A.S. *smæc*. Prov.E. *smatch*, flavour.

Smachande, smelling, savouring, B. 955.

Smartly, quickly, B. 711.

Smod, stain, filth, B. 711. Sc. *smot*, *smad*. O.Sw. *smuts*, spot, stain. Dan. *smuds*, dirty. Pl. D. *smuddern*, to dirty. 193

Smolderande, smouldering, smothering, B. 955.

Smolt, be at peace, quiet, B. 732. A.S. *smolt*, serene, clear. Prov.E. *molt*-water, clear exudation; *smolt*, smooth, clear. See *Smelt*, T. B. 1669.

Smolt*es*; so in MS., but ? an error for smolt*e* = smelt, B. 461.

> "A smoke *smulte* through his nase."
> (T. B. 911.)

Smoþe, smooth, A. 6.

Smoþely, quietly, B. 732.

Smylt, decayed (?), B. 226. Sw. *multna*, to moulder. Dan. *smuldre*, to crumble, moulder.

Snaw, snow, B. 222.

Soberly, quietly, A. 256; courteously, decently, B. 117, 799, 1497. See T. B. 248.

Sobre, gentle, A. 532.

Sodanly, suddenly, A. 1098; B. 1769.

Soerly, an error for *Soberly*, B. 117.

Soffer, suffer, A. 940.

Soffraunce, forbearance, C. 417.

Soghe, sow, C. 67.

Soghe, moan, C. 391. A.S. *swógan*, *swégan*, to make a noise, howl. O.S. *suôgan*.

Sok, *sb.* suck, C. 391.

Sokored, succoured, C. 261.

Solace, A. 130; B. 870, 1080.

Solased, B. 131.

Solemne,
Solempne, A. 1171, 1447; B. 239.

Solempnely, B. 37.

Solemneté,
Solempneté, B. 1313, 1678, 1757.
193b

Solie, throne, B. 1171, 1678. A.S. *sylla*, a chair; *salo*,
Soly, a hall, palace.

Somere, B. 1686.

Sommoun,
Somone, *vb.* A. 1498; *sb.* summons, B. 1098.

Sonde, sand, C. 341.

Sonde = sande, message, word, A. 943; messenger, B. 53, 781. A.S. *sánd*.

Sonde3-mon, messenger, B. 469.

Sone, soon, B. 461.

Sonet,
Sonete, B. 1415, 1516.

Songen, *pl.* sang, B. 1763.

Sope, sup, B. 108.

Soper, supper, B. 107, 829, 997, 1763.

Sor, sorrow, A. 130; A. 242, 507; *adv.* sorely, C. 550;
Sore, B. 290.

Sorewe, sorrow, B. 778.

Sorquydry3e = surquedrie, presumption, arrogance, conceit, A. 309.

Sorsers, sorcerers, B. 1579.

Sorsory, sorcery, B. 1576.

Sorte, lot, C. 193.

Sor3, Sor3e, sorrow, A. 352; B. 75, 563, 1080.

Soth, Soþe, true, truth, A. 482, 653; A. 515; *soþes*, truths, B. 1598. A.S. *sóth*.

Soþefast, faithful, B. 1491.

Sothfol, truthful, A. 498.

Soþly, Soþely, truly, B. 299, 654, 657.

Sotte, fool, sot, A. 581; B. 501. A.S. *sot*. See T. B. 1961.

Sotyle, subtle, A. 1050.

Soufre, sulphur, B. 954.
194

Soumme, company, C. 509.

Soun, sound, word, A. 532; C. 429; to sound, B. 973, 1670.

Sounande, sounding, A. 883.

Souped, supped, B. 833.

Sour, bad, vile, B. 192. Cf. "Soory or defowlyd yn *sowr* or filth. Cenosus." (Prompt. Parv.)

Sou3ed, sobbed, sighed, C. 140. See T. B. 342. Prov.E. *sugh*, *sow*, *suff*, to murmur. O.Sc. *swouch*, a noise, sound. A.S. *swoeg*, a noise; *swógan*, to sound, howl. Du. *zwoegen*, to pant, puff.

Souerayn, B. 93, 552.

Soyle, soil, earth, A. 1039, 1387; B. 443.

So3t, sought, A. 518, 730; *so3t to*, reached, A. 510, 563; made for, C. 249; endeavoured, B. 1286.

Spak, quickly, A. 104; *spakest*, boldest, C. 169.

Spakk, spake, A. 938.

Spakly, certainly, surely, quickly, A. 755; B. 338.

Spare, spar, C. 104, 338. Sw. *sparre*. O.H.G. *sparro*.

Sparred, spurred, rushed, A. 1169.

Spec, speck, B. 551.

Special,
Specyal, A. 235, 938; B. 1492.

Sped, help, B. 1607.

Spede, prosper, A. 511; hasten, B. 551.

Spedly, quickly, B. 1729.

Sped-whyle, a short space of time, a moment, B. 1285.

Speke, spoke, B. 1220.
194b

Spelle, tell, relate, A. 793.

Spelle, speech, A. 363. A.S. *spell*.

Spenned, folded, A. 49. O.N. *spenna*. A.S. *spannan*.

Spenned, allured, enticed away, A. 53. A.S. *spanan*.
N.Prov.E. *span*, to wean from.

Spiritually, B. 1492.

Spitous, fell, abominable, B. 845.

Spitously, fiercely, angrily, B. 1220.

Sponne = spun, grew, A. 35.

Spornande, rushing, dashing, A. 363. O.E. *sporn*, *spurn*, to dash. A.S. *spurnan*.

> "Now aithir stoure on ther stedis,
> *Spurnes* out spakly with speris in hand."
> (K. Alex. p. 27.)

Spot, blemish, A. 12, 764.

Spote, place, spot, A. 13; B. 551.

Spotle3, spotless, pure, A. 856.

Spotty, to defile, A. 1070.

Spoyle, B. 1285, 1774.

Sprad,
Spradde, spread (*pret.* of *sprede*), A. 1607; B. 365.

Sprange, sprung, A. 13.

Sprawlyng, B. 408.

Sprete = sprit (as in bow-sprit), C. 104. A.S. *sprit*.

Sprude = spread, fasten, C. 104.

Spryngande, springing, A. 35.

Spuniande = spinnande, sticky, cleaving, B. 1038. *Pynnand* occurs in this sense in the Northern Romance of Alexander, p. 142.

> "Than vmbyclappis thaim a cloude and covirs all ovir,
> As any *pynnand* pik (pitch) the planets it hidis."
>
> 195

Spure = spere, ask, inquire of, B. 1606. Sc. *speer*. A.S. *spirian*. See T. B. 823.

Sputen = spouted, uttered, B. 845.

Sput = spat, vomited, C. 338.

Spyce, Spyse, A. 235, 938; *pl.* *spyse3*, A. 25, 35.

Spye, B. 780, 1774.

Spylt, destroyed, B. 1220.

Spyrakle, breath, spirit, B. 408.

Spysere3, spice-mongers, B. 1038.

Spyt, cruelty, A. 1138; vengeance, B. 755.

Spytously, B. 1285. See *Spitously*.

Stable, *adj.* A. 597; *vb.* B. 1334, 1652.

Stac (*pret.* of *steke*), closed, fastened, B. 439. See *Steke*.

Stad, Stadde, placed, fixed (*pret.* of *stede*), B. 806, 983, 1506.

Stage, state, A. 410.

Stal, seat, B. 1506. A.S. *stal*, *steal*.

Stale, step, degree, place, A. 1002.

Stalke, A. 152.

Stalle, place, fix, B. 1334. A.S. *stælan*.

Stalle, *vb.* bring, place, A. 188; B. 1184.

> "Lia he (Jacob) *stalle* until his bedd."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 22*b*.)

Stalworth, strong, A. 884; great, B. 983.

Stalworþest, bravest, B. 255.

Stamyn, threshold, B. 486.

Stanc, pool, B. 1018. N.Prov.E. *stank*. Gael. *stang*, a pool.

> "*Stagnum*, a pounde, a *stanke*, a dam."
> (MS. Harl. 2270, f. 181.)

Standen (*p.p.*), stood, A. 519, 1148.
195b

Stange, pool, B. 439. See *Stanc*.

Stape-fole, high, C. 122.

Stare, *vb.* A. 149; B. 389.

Stare, star, B. 583.

Stared, shone, B. 1506.

Staren (*3rd pers. pl. pres.*), shine, A. 116. "*Staring* stone," T. B. 3037. Cf. "*Staryng*, or schynyng as gaye thyngys. Rutilans." "*Staryñ* or schynyñ and glyderyñ, niteo." (Prompt. Parv.)

> "Many *starand* stanes strikes of thair helmes."
> (K. Alex. p. 28.)
> "As ai stremande sternes *stared* alle thaire wedes."
> (*Ibid.*, p. 129.)

Start, A. 1159.

Statue, B. 995.

Staue,
Staw, = stow, place, B. 352, 360, 480.

Stayre, shine, B. 1396. See *Staren*.

Stayre, ladder, C. 513.

Stayre, steep, high, A. 1022. A.S. *stígan*, to ascend; *stæger*, a stair. O.E. *staire*, to ascend.

"A hundreth daies and a halfe he held be tha playnes,
Till he was comen till a cliffe, at to the cloudis semed,
That was so *staire* and so stepe, the storé me tellis,
Mi3t ther no wee, bot with wynges, winne to the topp."
(K. Alex. p. 164, l. 4828.)
"With that *stairis* he forth the stye that stre3t to the est."
(*Ibid.*, 4834.)

Steke, fasten, shut up, close, B. 157, 352, 754, 884. N.Prov.E. *steek*. A.S. *stician*, to stick in. O.N. *steckr*, a fold.
196

Stel, stole, B. 1203.

Stele, approach stealthily, B. 1778. A.S. *stélan*.

Stele, a step (of a ladder), C. 513. See *Stale*.

"This ilke laddre (that may to hevene leste) is charite,
The *stales* gode theawis."
(Poems of Wm. of Shoreham, p. 3.)

Stemme = stem, to stop, delay, B. 905. The same root occurs in *stammer*, stumble, etc. Sw. *stämma*, to dam.

Stepe, step, B. 905.

Stepe, Steppe, bright, B. 583, 1396. S.Sax. *steap*, bright, brilliant. "Stepe ene." T. B. 3101. Cf. "eyen *stepe*." Chaucer. C. T. Prologue, l. 201.

Stere, direct, A. 623; rule, C. 27.

Sterne, star, A. 115; C. 207. O.N. *stjarna*.

Sterne (of a boat), C. 149.

Sterre, star, B. 1378.

Stewarde, B. 90.

Steuen, voice, A. 188; sound, A. 1125; A. 1203, 1402; noise, A. 1778; command, B. 360, 463. A.S. *stefen*.

Stiffe, B. 983.

Stifly, firmly, B. 157.

Stik, fix, fasten, B. 157. See *Steke*.

Stille, dumb, B. 1523.

Stoffe, fill, B. 1184. See T. B. 2748.

Stoken, fastened, enclosed, shut (*p.p.* of *steke*), A. 1065; B. 360, 1199, 1524.

> "Sothe stories ben *stoken* up & straught out of mind."
> (T. B. 11.)

196b

Stokke,
Stoke, stocks, B. 46, 157.

Stonde, stand, B. 1490.

Stonde, blow, B. 1540. A.S. *stunian*, to beat, strike. O.E. *stund*, to strike.

> "Quat! wyns (wenis) þou I am a hund,
> Wit þi stans me for to *stund*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 42*b*.)

Stonen, *adj.* of stone, B. 995.

Ston-harde, fast, B. 884.

Store, a great (number), A. 847.

> "A *store* man of strength and of stuerne will."
> (T. B. 538.)

Stote, stand, stop still, A. 149. Dan. *stötte*, stay, support. S.Sax. *stuten*, to stop. Sc. *stoit*, stumble. "*Stotyng*, Titubatus." (Prompt. Parv.)

> "Anone to the forest they found (go),
> There they *stoted* a stound."
> (Sir Degrevant, 225.)
> "Ffurth he stalkis a stye, by tha stille euys,
> *Stotays* at a hey strette, studyande hym one."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 290.)
> "Than he *stotays* for made, and alle his strenghe faylez."
> (*Ibid.*, p. 357.)

Stound, Stounde, a space of time, moment, A. 659; A. 1716; *in stoundes*, at times, B. 1603. A.S. *stund*.

Stounde, blow, and hence sorrow, A. 20. See *Stonde*.

Stour, conflict; *bale-stour*, death pang, C. 426. Cf. *dede-*

stoure, death conflict. Hampole's Pricke of Conscience, 1820, 5812. O.N. *styr*. 197

> "Son efter-ward, it was not lang,
> Gain Saul þai gaf batail strang;
> Þaa sarȝins þan þe king umsett,
> In hard *stur* þai samen mett;
> Ful snaip it was þair, *stur* and snelle,
> The folk al fled of Israel."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 43*b*.)

Stout, firm, stable, A. 779, 935; brave, B. 1184.

Stowed, placed, B. 113.

Stowned, troubled, astonished, C. 73. A.S. *stunian*.

Strake, struck up, sounded, B. 1402.

Strate, street, A. 1043.

Straunge, strange, B. 409.

Stray, A. 1173; B. 1199. See T. B. 6258.

Strayne, strain, A. 128; labour, A. 691; pain, A. 1540; trouble, B. 234.

Strayt, B. 880, 1199.

Strech, Streche, stretch, A. 843, 971; B. 905.

Stremande, shining, A. 115. See extract under the word *Staren*.

Strenkle, scatter, B. 307.

Strenþe, strength, B. 1155, 1430.

Streny, strain, toil, labour, A. 551.

Streȝt, strait, A. 691; C. 234. Cf. streght, T. B. 351.

Stronde = strand, stream, river, A. 152; C. 254, 311.

> "Midward þat land a wel springes,
> Þat rennes out wit four *strandes*,
> Fflummes farand in fer landes."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 7*b*.)
> "Quen thai war passed over *strand*,
> And raght apon þe toiþer land,

Witte yee þat þai war ful gladd."
(*Ibid.*, fol. 46*a*.)

197b

Strot = strut, contest, chiding, A. 353, 848.

"O pride bicums unbuxumnes,
Strif and *strutt* and frawardnes."
(The Seven Deadly Sins, in Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii.)

Stroþe, bold, fierce (?), A. 115.

Strye, destroy, A. 307, 1768; *stryed*, B. 1018.

Stryf, A. 248.

Stryke, pass, go, A. 1125. A.S. *strican*.

Strynde = strond, stream, C. 311.

Stryuande, striving, C. 311.

Stud = stede, place, B. 389, 1334.

Sturnen, strong, B. 1402.

Styf, Styffe, strong, A. 779; C. 234; *styfest*, strongest, B. 255.

Styfly, fast, firmly, B. 352, 1652.

Styke = stryke, walk, go (?), A. 1186.

Stykked, fixed, placed, B. 583. See *Steke*.

Stylle, secret, A. 20; A. 589, 706; quiet, A. 1203; quietly, B. 486. See T. B. 1778.

"State from þe slyth kyng *styllé* by night."
(T. B. 988.)

Stylle, secretly, B. 806, 1778.

Stynkande, stinking, B. 1018.

Stynst, a mistake for stynt, stop, A. 353.

Stynt, stop, A. 225, 381, 1261; stopped, B. 73. A.S. *stintan*.

Styry, stir, move, B. 403, 1720.

Styste3 = stynte3, stops, B. 359.

Sty3e, path, C. 402. A.S. *stíg*.

Sty3e, ascend, climb, B. 389. A.S. *stígan*, to ascend. 198

Sty3tle, place, order, fix, A. 90; B. 402. A.S. *stihtan*, to arrange, dispose. See T. B. 1997.

> "Unstithe for to stire or *stightill* the Realme."
> (T. B. 117.)

Sued, followed, B. 681.

Suffer,
Suffre, A. 554.

Suffraunce, endurance, patience, A. 3, 529.

Suffyse, A. 135.

Sulp,
Sulpe,

defile, pollute, B. 15, 550, 1130, 1135. O.E. *sulwe*, to defile, soil. M.H.D. *be-sulwen*. O.N. *söla*, to pollute. Prov. Ger. *sulpern*, unclean, to defile. The word *sulp* (*solp*) occurs in the Romance of K. Alexander, ed. Stevenson, but the editor renders it "*to swallow*"!

> "Oure inward enmys ilkane we inwardly drepis,
> That is to say alle the sin, at *solp* may 3e (the ?) saule."
> (K. Alex. p. 146.)

Sulpande, defiling, A. 726.

Sumkyn, of some kind, A. 619.

Sumoun, to summon, A. 539.

Sum quat, some sort of, B. 627.

Sum-while, formerly, C. 57.

Sunderlupes, severally, C. 12.

Suppe, A. 108; B. 151.

Supplantor, A. 440.

Sure, A. 1089.

Sum, one, "*al & sum*," one and all, A. 584.

Surely, A. 1643; B. 315.

Sustnaunce, B. 340.

Sute (?) A. 203, 1108.
198b

Sve = sue, follow, go after, A. 976.

Swalt, died, A. 816, 1160. See T. B. 1200, 4687. See *Swelt*.

Swaneȝ, swans, B. 58.

Swange (*pret.* of *swenge* or *swinge*), toiled, worked, A. 586. A.S. *swingan*, to dash, to labour.

Swange, flowed, A. 1059.

Swangeande, flowing, rushing, A. 111. See T. B. 13024.

Swap, blow, B. 222. A.S. *swipian*. O.N. *svipa*, to shake. O.E. *swepe*, *swappe*, to beat. See T. B. 1889.

> "He swynges out with a swerd and *swappis* him to dethe."
> (K. Alex. p. 38.)
> "With a swinge of his sworde *swappit* hym in þe fase."
> (T. B. 1271.)

Sware, square, A. 837; B. 1386.

Sware, answer, A. 240; B. 1415. O.N. *svara*. See T. B. 1200.

Swarme, B. 223.

Swart, black, C. 363.

Swat,
Swatte, sweated (*pret.* of *swete*), A. 586, 829.

Swayf, blow, literally, a sudden movement. See *Swayue*.

> "Than Alexander . . . . .
> Swythe swyngis out his swerde and his *swayfe* feches,
> The nolle of Nicollas, the kyng, he fra the nebb partis."
> (K. Alex. p. 28.)

Swayne, swain, servant, B. 1509.

Swayue, swims. T. B. 2358. Dan. *swœve*, to wave, move, flutter.

Swe, follow, A. 892; ran, B. 956.

Sweande, flowing, B. 420.

Sweft, swift, C. 108.
199

Swelme, heat, A. 3. A.S. *swell*, a burning; *swélan*, to burn, *sweal*.

> "[He] lete asauage, or he sware (spoke), the *swelme* of his angirs."
> (K. Alex. p. 21.)

Swelt, die, perish, A. 108; C. 427; destroy, B. 332. A.S. *sweltan*. O.N. *svelta*.

Swemande (*pres. part.* of *sweme*), afflicting, B. 563. A.S. *swima*, a stupor. S.Sax. *sweamen*, to grieve, vex.

> "Whan this was seide, his hert began to melt
> For veray *sweme* of this *swemeful* tale."
> (Lydgate's Minor Poems, p. 38.)
> "Sum swalt in a *swym* with outen sware more."
> (T. B. 1200.)

Sweng, *sb.* toil, labour, A. 575. A.S. *sweng*, a stroke, blow. See *Swange*. See T. B. 1271.

Swenge, hasten, rush, dash out, A. 109, 667; B. 108, 250, 253.

> "He *swynges* out with a swerd and swappis him to dethe."
> (K. Alex. p. 33.)

A.S. *swingan*, to swing, dash.

Swepe, glide, A. 111; hasten, B. 1509. See T. B. 342. O.E. *swippe*, to pass quickly. O.N. *svip*, a rapid movement; *svipa*, to whip, do quickly, turn.

Swepe, to seize, C. 341. A.S. *swipian*, to take by violence.

Swer, swore, B. 69, 667.

Swete, life; *to lose the swete* = to die, C. 364. *Swete* may here signify *sweet*, the word *life* being understood. 199b

"And alle at lent ware on loft loste ther the *swete*."
(K. Alex. p. 105.)
"—— the brande es myne awene
Many swayne, with the swynge [struck], has the *swete* levede."
(Morte Arthure, p. 281.)
"All the kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and other,
Killyd are colde dede and castyne over burdez
Theire swyers sweyftly has the *swete* levyde."
(*Ibid.* p. 309.)

Swetter, sweeter, C. 236.

Sweuen, dream, A. 62. A.S. *swefen*.

Swey, go, walk, A. 788; came, B. 429. See T. B. 2512. O.N. *sweigia*. Dan. *sveje*, to bend. N.Prov.E. *swey*, to swing; *sweigh*, to press. See *Sve*.

Sweyed, swayed, C. 151.

Swe3e, go, A. 72; drove, C. 236.

Swol3e, swallow, C. 250, 363; kill, B. 1268.

Swone, swoon, A. 1180. A.S. *aswunan*.

Swowed, swooned, C. 442. S.Sax. *swowen*, to swoon.

Swyed = sweyed, followed, B. 87.

Swyere, squire, B. 87,

Swypped, escaped, B. 1253. See *Swepe*.

Swyre, neck, B. 1744. A.S. *sweora*.

Swyþe, firm, strong, A. 354; A. 236; great, A. 1283; very, A. 816; many, A. 1299; quickly, A. 1059; C. 354; greatly, B. 987. A.S. *swíth*, strong, great; *swíthe*, very, greatly.

Swyþe, burn, scorch, C. 478 (*pret.* 200 *swath*). N.Prov.E. *swither*, to singe; *swidden*, to scorch. O.N. *svítha*.

"Mi Gode, als whele set þam,
Als stubble bi-fore wind lickam
Als fire that brennes wode swa;
Als lowe *swiþand* hilles ma."

(Ps. lxxxii. 15.)

Syence, B. 1454, 1599.

Syfle, blow, C. 470. *Syfle* sometimes signifies to *whistle*. It may he connected with the Prov.E. *suffe*, to pant, blow. A.S. *siofian*, mourn, lament.

Sykande, sighing, B. 715. A.S. *sycan*, to sigh.

Syked, sighed, C. 382.

Sykerly, surely, C. 301. O.Fris. *sikur*. Ger. *sicher*, sure.

Syle, to glide, go, proceed, B. 131. See T. B. 364, 1307. Prov.E. *sile*, to go. O.N. *sîla*.

"With that the segge all himselfe *silis* to his chambre."
(K. Alex. p. 5.)

See T. B. 364.

Sylueren, silver, B. 1406.

Symbale, B. 1415.

Symple, A. 1134; B. 746.

Sympelnesse, A. 909.

Syn, since, C. 218.

Syngne, sign, B. 489, 1710.

Synglerty, singularity, singleness, A. 429.

Synglure, uniqueness, A. 8.

Syngnette3, signets, A. 838.

Synne, after, B. 229.

Syre, lord, B. 1260.

Syt,
Syte, sorrow, sin, A. 566, 1257; B. 5, 517. O.N. *sút*.

"Jacob wen he was mast in *siit*,
God lighted him witouten *liit*."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 27*b*.)

200b
"This tre in forbot haf I laid,
If þou sa bald be it to bite,
Þou sal be ded in sorou and *site*,

And if þou haldes mi forbot,
Þou sal be laverd ouer ilk crot."
(*Ibid.* fol. 52*b*.)

Syþe, time, A. 1079; B. 1169, 1417, 1686. A.S. *sith*.

Syþen, afterwards, A. 13, 643, 1207; A. 998; since, B. 245.

Sytole, citole, guitar, A. 91.

Sy3, Sy3e, saw, A. 308, 788, 985; B. 985.

Sy3t, Sy3te, sight, A. 226; B. 552, 1710.

T

Ta, take, arrest, C. 78. "Ta me," take, arrest me. Tat3, take, B. 735. (Cf. O.E. *ma* = make.)

Tabarde, coat. It sometimes signifies a short coat or mantle, B. 41. Fr. *tabar*. Ital. *tabaro*.

Tabelment, A. 994.

Taborne, tabour, B. 1414.

Tached, fixed, fastened, A. 464.

Takel, C. 233.

Tale, tale, message, B. 1437.

Talent, will, pleasure, C. 416. See T. B. 464.

Talle = tuly (?), B. 48.

Tan, taken, B. 763.

Tat3, take, B. 735. See *Ta*.

Tayt, agreeable, lively, B. 871. O.N. *teitr*.

"The laddes were kaske and *teyte*."
(Havelok the Dane, 1841.)
"Ther mouhte men se the boles beyte,
And the bores with hundes *teyte*."
(*Ibid.* 2331.)

Tayt, fear, B. 889.

> "Brynges furthe, [as] sayd the boke, bestes out of noumbre,
> And trottes on toward Tyre with *taite* at thaire hertes."
> (K. Alex. p. 42.)

Teche, teach, B. 160.

Teche, mark, sign, B. 1049.

Teche, fault, A. 1230; device, B. 943. Fr. *tache*.

Tede, an error for *tene* = ten (?), B. 1634.

Tee, go, A. 9, 1262; B. 87.

> "Let hym *tegh* to þe tempull."
> (T. B. 2541.)

A.S. *teon*. Cf. *teght*, T. B. 1786.

Telde, tent, B. 866. A.S. *teld*.

Telded, raised, B. 1342. See T. B. 6075.

Telle, raise, excite, B. 1808. Du. *tillen*, to lift up.

Teme, approach, A. 460; A. 9; B. 316. See T. B. 3306. It seems to be connected with the A.S. *geteman*, to bear witness; *teama*, to cite, summon. In La3amon *teman* signifies to go, proceed, approach, vol. i. p. 53, l. 1245.

> "Albion hatte that lond;
> Ah leode ne beoth thar nane,
> Ther to thu scalt *teman* [wende]
> & ane neowe Troye thar makian."

Teme, team, C. 37.

Teme, theme, C. 358.

Tempest, C. 231.

Temple, A. 1062.

Tempre, moderate, B. 775.

Temptande, tempting, B. 283.

Tender, A. 412; B. 630.

Tene, *sb.* anger, sorrow, A. 332; 201b B. 283, 687, 1137; A. 90; *adj.* angry, C. 1808; *vb.* punish, B. 759. A.S.

teonan, *tynan*, to anger; *teona*, wrong, mischief.

Tenfully, sorrowfully, bitterly, B. 160.

Tenor, C. 358.

Tenoun, A. 993.

Tent, Tente, attend, care for, A. 676, 935; C. 59, 498; heed, B. 387.

Terme, term, A. 1053; B. 1393.

Terne, lake, B. 1041. N.Prov.E. *tarn*. O.N. *tjörn*.

Teuel (or *tenel* ?), enclose, or ? *undermine*, B. 1189.

Þacce, blow, C. 325. A.S. *thaccian*, to stroke.

Þayre3, theirs, B. 1527.

Þa3, though, A. 134.

Þede, country, A. 711. A.S. *theód*.

> "I sett 3owe ane ensample 3e se it alle day,
> In thorps and in many *thede* ther 3e thur3e ride,
> At ilka cote a kene curr, as he the chache walde,
> Bot as bremely as he baies, he bitis never the faster."
> (K. Alex. p. 62.)

Þede, vessel, B. 1717. Prov.E. *thead*, a strainer used in brewing. "*Thede*, bruares instrument, qualus." (Prompt. Parv.)

Þeder, thither, B. 461.

Þef, thief, A. 273.

Theme, A. 944; C. 358.

Þen, Þenne, than, A. 134.

Þenkande, thinking, C. 294.

Þerue, unleavened, B. 635. Prov.E. 202 *therf*, *tharf*, *thar*. A.S. *theorf*, *therf*.

Þester, darkness, B. 1775. A.S. *theostru*. See T. B. 2362.

Þewe, virtue, A. 1436; C. 30; ordinances, B. 544, 755.

Þewed, virtuous, B. 733.

Þewes, thieves, B. 1142.

Þikker, oftener, C. 6.

Þirled, pierced, B. 952.

Þo, the (*pl.*), A. 635; those, B. 557.

Þole, suffer, A. 344; A. 190; B. 6. A.S. *thólian*, to suffer, endure.

Þonc, *sb.* thank, A. 901.

Þonkke, *vb.* thank, B. 745.

Þore, there, A. 562.

Þorpe, city, B. 1178. O.N. *thorp*.

Þor3, through. See *Þur3*.

Þo3, though, A. 345.

Þo3t, seemed, A. 153; B. 562.

Þo3t, imagination, B. 516.

Þrad, reproached, tormented, B. 751. A.S. *threagan* (*pret. threáde*, *p.p. thread*), to blame, vex, torment.

Þrange, pierce, A. 17. See *Þrenge*.

Þrast, stroke, thrust, B. 952.

Þrat, vexation, torment, C. 55. A.S. *threat*, threat; *threatian*, to vex, distress.

Þratten (*3d pers. pl. pret.*) threatened, B. 937.

Þrawe, to reach, B. 590.

Þrawen, close, thick, B. 1775.

Þrenge, press, crowd after, follow, A. 930; pass, B. 354. A.S. *thringan*, to press, crowd, throng. O.N. *threnga*.

Þrep, contradiction, B. 350. 202b N.Prov.E. *threap*, *threpe*, to dispute. A.S. *threapian*, to reprove, chide.

> "*Withoutyn threp* more."
> (T. B. 1127.)

Þrepyng, *sb.* strife, B. 183. A.S. *threapung*.

Þret,
Þrete, threaten, A. 561; B. 680, 1728.

Þretty, thirty, B. 751.

Þreuenest, wisest, noblest, B. 1571.

Þro, anger, A. 754; C. 6; angry, B. 344. N.Prov.E. *thro*, keen, eager. O.N. *thrá*.

> "Be þou noght in þi hert so *thra*."
> (MS. Harl. 4196. fol. 94.)

Cf. "his *throo* hert," T. B. 147. "A *throo* (bold) knight." *Ib.* 1482.

Þro, good, A. 868.

Þro, sharply, quickly, B. 220. A.S. *threá*.

Þro, thoroughly, B. 1805.

Þroble, press, B. 879.

Þroly, fiercely, quickly, B. 180, 514.

> "*Throly* he thoght in his hert."
> (T. B. 209.)

Þrong,
Þronge, *sb.* crowd, B. 135, 504, 754.

Þrongen (*3d pers. pl. pret.* of *thringe*), crowded, pressed, B. 1775.

> "Mony thoughtes full thro *thronge* in hir brest."
> (T. B. 470.)

Þrublande, pressing, B. 504. See *Þroble*.

Þrwen,
Þrowen, thrown, B. 220, 504.

Þrych, through, A. 17. O.Sc. *throuch*.
203

Þryd,
Þryde, third, A. 833; B. 249, 300, 1639.
Þrydde,

Þrye3, thrice, B. 429.

Þrynge, press, A. 180; follow, B. 1639. See *Þrenge*.

Þrynne, three, B. 606, 1727.

Þryuande, good, pure, B. 751. See T. B. 1482.

Þryue, prosper, thrive, A. 249; B. 521.

Þryuen, prudent, wise, A. 868, 1192; grown up, adult, A. 298; *þryuenest*, wisest, noblest, B. 1639.

Þry3t, thrust, pressed, thronged, A. 670, 706, 926; B. 135; Cf. *thriccing* of hondys. T. B. 1522. A.S. *thryccan* (*pret. thrycte*), to thrust, press, tread on.

Þur3, through, A. 670.

Þykke, closely, B. 504.

Þy3e, thigh, B. 1687.

To, toe, C. 229.

To-cleues, separate, B. 1806.

To-corue (*3d pers. pl. pret.*), slit, ript up, B. 1250.

Token, betoken, B. 1557.

To-kerue, divide, B. 1700.

Tole,
Tool, tool, B. 1108, 1342.

Tolk,
Tolkke,
Tulkke, man, B. 687, 757. *Tolk*, like *segge*, signified originally a speaker, an interpreter. O.N. *túlka*, to explain, interpret; *túlkr*, an interpreter, a mediator. See T. B. 63.

Tom, (1) leisure, A. 134; opportunity, A. 1153; interval, B. 135; 203b (2) time, A. 585. O.Sw. and O.N. *tóm*. "*Toom* oportunitas." (Prompt. Parv.)

> "Tharfore þis *tyme* I may noght cum
> Telle þi lord I haue no *tome*."
> (MS. Harl, 4196, fol. 105.)

In T. B. 1088, we have *tomly*.

To-marred, spoilt, B. 1114.

To-murte, crushed to pieces, C. 150. See *murte*, T. B. 6128.

Tonne (or toune?), conceive, B. 655.

Top, head, C. 229.

Topace, topaz, B. 1469.

Tor, tower, A. 966.

Tor, hard, A. 1109. O.N. *tor*. Sans. *dus*, hard, difficult. Cf. O.E. *torfer*, hardship, T. B. 81.

> "But this tyme is so *tore*."
> (T. B. 645.)

To-rente,
To-rent, rent asunder, A. 1136; A. 368; B. 96.

To-riuen, torn away, A. 1197.

Tormenttour, B. 154.

To-rof (*pret.* of *to-riue*), burst, A. 964; B. 379.

Torre3, towers, A. 875,

Toter, totter, C. 233.

Tote3 = tot3, toes; Cf. *got3* = goes, etc., B. 41.

To-torne, torn, B. 41.

Tot3, goes, A. 513. Sw. *tota*.

Tour, tower, B. 216.

Tourne3 = turns, devices, B. 192.

Tow, two, B. 866.

> "*Two* pyllers he pight in a place low."
> (T. B. 310.)

To-walten, overflowed (*3d pers. pl.*), B. 428. 204

Towche, to relate, deliver a message, speak, A. 898; B. 1437.

> "Litille kyngis there come . . . . .
> *Touches* titly thair tale and tribute him askis."
> (K. Alex. p. 31.)

Towche, *sb.* touch, C. 252.

Towe, C. 100.

Towen, drawn, A. 251.

To3e, tough, B. 630.

To3t, firm, binding, A. 522.

Tra, high (?), B. 211, or (?) *tor*, great, difficult of access.

> "This castel es o luve and grace,
> Bath o socur and o solace,
> Apon the mathe it standes traist;
> O fede ne dredes it na fraist;
> It is hei sett upon þe crag,
> *Trai* and hard wituten hag."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 55*a*.)

Tramme, tackle, gear? C. 101. In the northern Romance of Alexander, p. 5, *tramme* signifies an instrument (optical).

> "He toke *trammes* him with to tute (look) in the sternes."

Tras = trace, path, course, A. 1113. "*Trace*, a streyght way, *trace*." (Palsg.)

Trasches = trauses or trossers, drawers or trousers? B. 40.

Trauayle, *sb.* labour, A. 505; *vb.* A. 550; C. 498.

Trave = trawe, believe, B. 587.

Trauerce = traverse, B. 1473.

Traw, Trawe, = trow, believe, suppose, A. 282, 295; B. 655, 1335, 1686. See T. B. 298.

Trawande, believing, B. 662.

Trawþe, Trauþe, 204b truth, A. 495; B. 63, 667; belief, 1490, 1703.

Trayled, B. 1473.

Traysoun, treason, B. 187.

Trayþly, Trayþely, certainly, surely? B. 907, 1137. If *trayþly* be derived from *trauth*, *truth*, the meaning here assigned to it may be correct; but the sense of *fiercely*, *fearfully*, would suit the context better.

Traytoure, A. 1041; B. 77.

Tre, wood, B. 1342.

Trendel, roll, A. 41.

Tres, yards (of a ship), C. 101.

Tresor,
Tresore, treasure, A. 237, 331, B. 866.

Tresorye, treasury, B. 1317.

Trespas, B. 48.

Trespast, B. 1230.

Trestes, trestles, B. 832.

Trichcherye, treachery, B. 187.

Trоched, ornamented? An architectural term of uncertain meaning, B. 1383.

Tron, went (*pret.* of *tryne*), A. 1113; A. 132; B. 101.
Trone, See *Trynande*.

Trone, throne, A. 1055.

Trot, *sb.* pace, step, B. 976.

Trow, believe, B. 1049.

Trumpen, trumpets, B. 1402.

Trussed, deposited, B. 1317. See T. B. 1819.

Trwe, true, A. 460.

Tryed, select, trusty, B. 1317. O.E. *trie*, choice. See T. B. 695.

Tryfled = trayfoled, ornamented with knots, B. 1473. Fr. *treffilier*, a chain maker.

Trynande, going, walking, B. 976. Dan. *trine*, to go. 205

> "Than the traytoure treunted the Tyesday thar aftyre,
> *Trynnys* in with a trayne tresone to wirke."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 326.)
> "The trays (path) of the traytoure he *trynys* fulle evenne,
> And turnys in be Treynte, the traytoure to seche."
> (*Ibid.* p. 339.)
> "They *tryne* unto a tente whare tables whare raysede."

(*Ibid.* p. 267.)

Tryste, trusty, A. 460; *vb.* to trust, C. 324.

Trysty, trusty, B. 763.

Try3e, to trust in, rely upon, A. 311. N.Prov.E. *trigg*, firm, faithful. Sw. *trygg*, safe, sure.

Tuch, cloth, B. 48. Ger. *tuch*. Cf. Eng. *tuck* and *tucker*.

Tulkke, man, soldier, B. 1189, 1262. See *Tolk*.

"The Tothyr was a *Tulke* out of Troy selfe."
(T. B. 63.)

Tulket = tulked, sounded, B. 1414. The original meaning of *tulk* is to speak, explain (O.N. *túlka*), hence to utter, sound.

"The Tebies *tulked* (addressed) us with tene (anger)."
(K. Alex. p. 83.)

Tult, threw, pitched. A. 1213; B. 252. See *Tilt*, in T. B. 914, 3704. A.S. *tealtian*, to tilt, shake.

Tuyred, destroyed, B. 1234.

Twayned, separated, A. 251.

Tweyne, two, B. 674, 1749.

Twynande, entwining, B. 1691. Sw. *twinna*, to twine.

Twynne, two, A. 251; B. 1047.

Twynne, separate, B. 402.
205b

Tyd, quickly, A. 64, 1213; B. 100, 229. A.S. *tíd*, *tídlíce*. Sw. *tida*, frequently.

Tyde, time, B. 1393.

Tykel, uncertain, B. 655.

Tylle, to, B. 1064.

Tymbre, B. 1414. "Tymbyr a lytyl taboure, timpanellum." (Prompt. Parv.)

Tylte, overturn, A. 832; tumble, B. 361.

"*Tylude* ouer borde."
(T. B. 3704.)

Tynde, branch, A. 78. A.S. *tine*. O.E. *tind*, a tine, tooth, prong, fork.

Tyne, lose, A. 332; destroy, B. 775, 907. O.N. *tyna*.

Tynt, lost, B. 216. See T. B. 1208.

Type, overturn, C. 506.

Typped, extreme, C. 77.

Tyraunte, B. 943.

Tyrauntyré, tyranny, B. 187.

Tyrne, flay, B. 630. Du. *tornen*, to rend, rip up.

> "And so thai did al bidene and sum oure douth slo3e,
> Tuke out the tuskis and the tethe, and *ternen* of the skinnes."
> (K. Alex. p. 140.)

Tyt, quickly, A. 728. N.Prov.E. *tite*, soon. Cf. *tytly*, T. B. 1094. See *Tyd*.

Tyþe, tenth, B. 216.

Tyþynge, tiding, A. 458, 498; B. 78.

Tytter, sooner, C. 231. N.Prov.E. *titter*. See *Tyt*.

Tyxt, text, A. 1634; B. 37.

Ty3ed, tied, A. 464; B. 702.

206

Ty3t, Ty3te, described, A. 1053; give, A. 1153; endeavour, A. 1108; near, B. 503. See T. B. 1358. A.S. *tihtan*, to draw.

U

U = o = of, A. 792.

UV

Vch, Vche, Vcha, = ilk, ilka, each, every. A. 33, 117.

Vchon, each one, A. 546.

Vglokest (*superl.* of *vgly*), most horrid, dreadful, B. 892. See *vgsome*, horrible, T. B. 877.

Vmbe, about, A. 879, 1384; B. 309. A.S. *ymbe*.

> "Grete toures full toure all þe toune *vmbe*."
> (T. B. 320.)

Vmbe-brayde, accost, B. 1622. See *Brayde*.

Vmbe-grouen, overgrown, B. 488.

Vmbe-kest, look about, B. 478.

Vmbe-lyȝe, compass, surround, B. 836.

Vmbe-pyȝte, surrounded, A. 1052.

Vmbre, rain, B. 524. Cf. *ymur*, in T. B. 897. Lat. *imber*.

Vmbe-schon, shone about, C. 455.

Vmbe-stounde, Vmbe-stoundes, at times, sometimes, C. 7, 122.

Vmbe-sweyed, encircled, B. 1380.

Vmbe-walt, surrounded, B. 1181.

Vnavysed, unadvised, thoughtless, A. 292.

Vnblemyst, unblemished, A. 782.

Vn-brosten, unburst, B. 365.

Vnblyþe, dismal, B. 1017.

Vncheryst, uncherished, uncared for, B. 1125.

Vnclannesse, uncleanness. B. 30, 1800, 1806.
206b

Vnclene, B. 550, 1713.

Vncler, indistinct, C. 307.

Vnclose, disclose, B. 26, 1438.

Vncortoyse, uncourteous, A. 303.

Vncouþe, Vncowþe, unknown, B. 414, 1600, 1722.

Vnder, the third hour of the day, A. 513. A.S. *undern*. Goth. *undaurns*.

Vnder-nomen, understood, perceived, C. 213.

Vnder-stonde, understand, A. 941; C. 122.

Vnder-ȝede = under-ȝete, understood, B. 796. A.S. *undergitan*, to perceive.

Vndyd, destroyed, B. 562.

Vnfayre, bad, B. 1801.

Vnfolde, B. 1563.

Vnfre, unfortunate, B. 1129.

Vngarnyst, unadorned, B. 137.

Vnglad, sorry, C. 63.

Vngoderly, bad, wicked, B. 145, 1092.

Vnhap, misfortune, A. 143, 1150; misery, B. 892. See T. B. 1402.

Vnhappen, unfortunate; and hence bad, B. 573.

Vnhaspe, disclose, B. 688.

Vnhole, badly, B. 1681.

Vnhonest, vile, B. 579.

Vnhuled, uncovered, B. 451. See *Hile*.

Vnhyde, disclose, A. 973.

Vnhyle, disclose, B. 1628. See *Hile*.

Vnknawen, unknown, B. 1679.

Vnkyndely, wickedly, B. 208.

Vnmard, undefiled, B. 867.

Vnmete, unmeet, unfit, A. 759.

Vnneuened, unnamed, B. 727. See *Neuen*. 207

Vnnynges, signs, C. 213. A.S. *unnan*, to give, grant,

permit.

Vnpynne, to unpin, unfasten, A. 728.

Vnresounable, unreasonable, A. 590.

Vnry3t, wrong, B. 1142.

Vnsmyten, B. 732.

Vnsounde, wicked, evil, bad, A. 575; C. 527; misfortune, wretched state, B. 58. See T. B. 495.

Vnsoundely, badly, B. 201. See T. B. 1826.

Vnstered, unmoved, B. 706.

Vnstrayned, untroubled, A. 248.

Vnswol3ed, unhurt, B. 1253. See *Swol3e*.

Vnþank, Vnþonk, wrath, displeasure, A. 183; B. 55.

Vnþewe, fault, vice, B. 190. See *Thewe*.

Vnþryfte, folly, wickedness, B. 516, 1728.

Vnþryftyly, unwisely, badly, B. 267.

Vnþryuandly = unthrivingly, badly, B. 135. See T. B. 4893.

Vntrwe, untrue, A. 897; A. 456; unfaithful, B. 1160.

Vntwynne, separate; and hence, destroy, B. 757.

Vnwar, foolish, C. 115.

Vnwaschen, unwashed, B. 34.

Vnwelcum, B. 49.

Vnworþelych, unworthy, B. 305.

Vnwytté, unwise, foolish, simple, C. 511.

Vpbrayde, literally to raise; and hence to utter loudly, rebuke, C. 430. See *Brayde*. In the sense of to utter, speak, we find 207b *upbrayde* used in the following passage.

> “Again my brether haue I bene
> Oft-sith lightly for to tene,
> Wit flitt, wit brixil, strive and strut;

Myn euen cristen haue I hurt,
And oft unsaght o him I said,
And of his lastes (faults) gane upbraid."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 156.)

Vp-caste, spoken, B. 1574.

Vp-folden, up-folded, B. 643.

Vp-lyfte, uplifted, B. 987.

Vpon, open, B. 453.

Vp-rerde, upreared, B. 561.

Vp-ros, uprose, C. 378.

Vpryse, C. 433.

Vp-set, raised, C. 239.

Vp-so-doun, upside down, C. 362.

Vp-wafte, uprose, B. 949.

Vpynyoun, opinion, C. 40.

Vrnementes, ornaments, B. 1284.

Vrþe, earth, A. 442.

Vrþely, earthly, A. 135; B. 35.

Vsage, B. 710.

Vsched, A. 1393, *to vsched* = ? *tousched* = *towched*, approached. See B. 1437.

Vse, B. 11.

Vsle, Vslle, ashes, cinders, B. 747, 1010. A.S. *ysle*, ashes. O.N. *usli*, fire. "Isyl, of fyre. Favilla." (Prompt. Parv.) Prov.E. *isle*, *easle*, embers; *eizle*, ashes.

Vtter, out, A. 42; without, B. 927.

Vt-wyth, without, outside, A. 969.

Vus, us, B. 842.

Vȝten, the morning, dawn, B. 893. A.S. *uhta*.

"Hi sloȝen and fuȝten
Þe niȝt and þe *uȝten*."
(K. Horn, 1424.)

208

Vale, A. 127; B. 673.

Vanyté, A. 1713; B. 331.

Vanyste, vanished, B. 1548.

Vayle, avail, A. 912; B. 1151, 1311.

Vayment, exhibition, show, B. 1358.

Vayn, A. 811; B. 1358.

Vayned, brought, A. 249. See *Wayned*.

Venge, avenge, A. 199, 559; B. 71.

Vengeaunce, B. 247, 1013.

Venkkyst, Venquyst, vanquished, B. 544, 1071.

Venym, venom, filth, A. 574; B. 71.

Veray, Verray, true, A. 1184, 1185; truly, A. 333; very, C. 370.

Verayly, verily, B. 664, 1548.

Vered, veered, raised, A. 254.

Vergyne, virgin, A. 1099.

Vergynté, Vergynyté, virginity, A. 767; B. 1071.

Vertue, A. 1126.

Vertuous, precious, B. 1280.

Vessayl, vessel, B. 1713.

Vesselment, vessels, B. 1280, 1288.

Vesture, B. 1288.

Veued = weued, passed, A. 976. See *Weue*.

Vilanye, C. 71.

Vilté, filth, vileness, B. 199. O.Fr. *vilté*.

Violent, B. 1013.

Voched, prayed, A. 1121. Fr. *voucher*.

Vouche, resolve, B. 1358.

Vouched, vowed, C. 165.

Vowe, C. 239.

Voyde, do away with; A. 744; destroy, A. 1013; C. 370; depart, B. 1548.
208b

Vus, use, or ? drink, B. 1507. We may, however read, and thus preserve the alliteration, *bus* = *bous* = *bouse*, to drink deeply. Du. *buysen*.

Vycios, vicious, B. 574.

Vyf, wife, A. 772.

Vygour, 971.

Vyl, vile, evil, B. 744.

Vylanye, crime, sin, B. 544, 574.

Vyle, defile, B. 863.

Vyole, vial, B. 1280.

Vyolence, B. 1071.

Vyrgyn, A. 426.

Vys,
Vyse, face, A. 254. O.Fr. *vis*.

Vyue3, wives, A. 785.

W

Wach, watch, B. 1205.

Wade, A. 143, 1151.

Waft, closed, B. 857. A.S. *wefan*, *wæfan*, to cover. O.N. *vefa*.

Wafte, move, lift up, raise, A. 453 O.N. *veifa*, to raise, move, swing. *Waft*, B. 857, in the sense of *closed* may be of the same origin with *wafte*.

Wage, endure, A. 416.

Wage, wave, B. 1484. A.S. *wágian*.

Wake, watch, A. 85; B. 130. A.S. *wæccan*. O.N. *vaka*.

Waken, raise, arouse, awake, A. 1171; A. 323, 437, 891, 933, 948; B. 132; O.N. *vakna*.

"Wyndis at hir wille to *wakyn* in the aire."
(T. B. 404.)

Wakker (*comp.* of *wayke*), weaker B. 835.

Wale, *vb.* discern, A. 1000; choose, select, A. 921;
Walle, B. 511; *adj.* noble, choice, B.

209 1734. Sc. *wale*. See T. 386, 4716. Ger. *wählen*, to choose, select. O.N. *val*, electio, optio, delectus.

"O mister was ther wimmen tuin,
Þat ledd þar liif wit sike and sin,
Ffor þai had husing nan to *wale*,
Þai lended in a littel scale."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 48*a*.)
"Of choys men syne, *walit* by cut (lot), thai tuke
A gret numbyr, and hyd in bylgis dern."
(G. Douglas, vol. i. p. 72.)
"Awai þan drou him son Davi,
Bot Saul dred him mo forþi,
And of a thusand men o *wal* (worth)
He made him ledder and marscal."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 43*a*.)
"That worthy had a wyfe *walit* hym seluon."
(T. B. 105.)

Walkyries, witches, fate-readers, B. 1577. O.N. *valkyriur*; *f. pl. Parcæ*. Dan. *valkyrier*.

Wallande, boiling, bubbling up, A. 365. A.S. *weallan*, to boil up.

Walle-heued = well-head, spring, B. 364.

Walt, rolled, turned, B. 501, 1734. Prov.E. *walt*, *welt*.
Walte, A.S. *wealtian*, to roll. O.N. *vella*.

"Hit *walt* up the wilde se."
(T. B. 4633.)

Walter, roll, flow, A. 415, 1027; B. 142. O.Sc. *welter*,

walter. Dan. *vælte*, to roll. See *Walt*.

Waltere3, an error for watterez = waters? C. 263.

Walterande, swimming, C. 247.

Walte3, pours, rushes, flows, B. 364, 1037. See *Walte*, T. B. 3699, 4632.
209b

Wame, belly. See *Wombe*.

Wamel, to wamble, C. 300. O.N. *vambla*. Dan. *vamle*, to wamble, to create or cause a squeamishness or loathing. "*Wamelyn'* in the stomake. Nauseo." "*Wamelynge* of the stomake, Nausia." (Prompt. Parv.)

Wan (*pret.* of *wynne*), got, reached, A. 107; B. 140.

Wap, a step, C. 449. O.N. *vapp*. It is generally explained by a blow, stroke, which was probably its original meaning.

> "The werld wannes at a *wappe* and the wedire gloumes."
> (K. Alex. p. 141.)
> "It (worldly wealth) wites away at a *wapp*, as the wynd turnes."
> (*Ibid.* p. 181.)

See T. B. 207, 6405.

Wappe, to strike, knock, B. 882.

War, aware, A. 1096; crafty, B. 589. A.S. *wær*, wary. O.N. *var*.

War,
Ware, guard, beware, B. 165, 545, 1133. A.S. *wárian*.

Warded, guarded, C. 258. A.S. *weardian*, to guard.

Ware, were, A. 151.

Warisch, protect, B. 921.

Warla3e, wizard, B. 1560. See *Warlow*.

Warlok, prison, C. 80.

Warlow, a monster, C. 258. A.S. *wér-loga*, a liar, a faith-breaker.

"Þe warla3 was wete of his wan atter."
(T. B. 303.)

Warne, bid, C. 469.

Warnyng, *sb.* B. 1504.

Warpe, Warpen, cast, hurl, A. 444; ejaculate, utter, B. 879; 210 B. 152, 213. O.N. *varpa*. A.S. *weorpan*, to throw, cast.

Warþe, a water-ford, C. 339. A.S. *warth*, *waroth*, the shore.

Wary, curse, B. 513. A.S. *wærgian*, to curse.

Waryed, accursed, B. 1716.

Wassayl, B. 1508.

Wast, Waste, destroy, B. 326, 431, 1178. A.S. *véstan*.

Wasturne, a wilderness, B. 1674. *Wasterne* signifies a desert place, from the A.S. *véste*, desert, barren, and *ærn*, a place.

"Methoughte I was in a wode willed myne one,
That I ne wiste no waye whedire that I scholde,
Ffore wolue3 and whilde swynne, swykkyde bestez,
Walkede in that *wasterne* wathes to seche."
(Morte Arthure, p. 270.)

Wate = wot, know, A. 502. A.S. *witan* (*Ic wát*, *þu wást*, *he wát*).

Water, stream, A. 107, 139; river, B. 1380.

Waule3, shelterless, from the A.S. *wáh*, a wall (?), C. 262. We should perhaps read wanle3 = wonle3, hopeless, from the A.S. *wén*. O.N. *von*. O.E. *wone*, hope.

Wawe, wave, A. 287; A. 382; B. 142. A.S. *wæg*.

Wax, increase, B. 521.

Waxlokes, waves (?), B. 1037.

Wayferand, wayfaring, B. 79.

Waykned, weakened, B. 1422. O.N. *veikr*. A.S. *wác*, weak; *wácan*, to become weak.

Wayle, select, choice, B. 1716. See *Wale*. 210b

Waymot, passionate, C. 492. A.S. *weamod*.

Wayne, give, B. 1504; gain, recover, 1616, 1701. The original meaning seems to be that of gaining, getting. O.Fr. *gaagnier*. In some O.E. works *wayne* is used like our word *get*.

> "Than past up the proude quene into prevé chambre,
> *Waynes* (*i.e.* puts out her head) out at wyndow and waytes aboute."
> (K. Alex. p. 33.)

Wayte, look into, search, A. 99; be careful, A. 292; look about, A. 1423; inquire, B. 1552. See T. B. 876. "*Waytyn* or *aspyyn*, observo." (Prompt. Parv.)

Wa3e3es, *wa3es*, waves, B. 404.

> "Girdon ouer the grym *waghes*."
> (T. B. 1410.)

See *Wawe*.

Webbe, cloth, A. 71.

Wedde, A. 772; B. 69.

Wedded wyf, B. 330.

Weddyng, A. 791.

Wed, Wede, garments, weeds, A. 748, 766; B. 793. A.S. *wæd*.

Wed, Wede, become mad, B. 1585. A.S. *wédan*, to rave, be mad.

Weder, storm, B. 444, 948.

Weder, weather, B. 1760.

Wela-wynnely, very joyfully, B. 831. A.S. *welig*, rich, bountiful; *wyn*, pleasure, joy.

Welcom, Welcum, B. 813.

Welde, govern, rule, wield, A. 195, 835; use, employ, possess, A. 705, 1351; B. 16. A.S. *wealdan*, rule, exercise, possess.

Welder, ruler, C. 129.
211

Wele, joy (*pl. wele3*), A. 14, 154, 394; A. 651; B. 262. A.S. *wela*.

Welgest, worthiest, B. 1244. A.S. *welig* (*welga*), rich, wealthy.

Welke, walked, A. 101.

Welkyn, welkin, the sky. A.S. *welcn*, *wolcen*. O.Sc. *walk*, a cloud.

Welle-hede3, springs, B. 428.

Welt, revolved, C. 115. See *Walter*.

Welwed, faded, C. 475. A.S. *wealwian*.

"The grond stud burrant, widderit dosk or gray,
Herbis, flowris and gersis *wallowyt* away."
(G. Douglas, vol. i. p. 378.)

Wely, joyous, happy, A. 101. A.S. *welig*.

"*Welli* make, Laverd, and noght ille,
To Syon in þi gode wille."
(Ps. i. 20.)
"Þan was þar never suilk a hald,
Ne nan in *welier* in werld to wald."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 55*b*.)

Wem,
Wemme, spot, blemish, A. 1003. A.S. *wem*.

Wemle3, spotless, without blemish.

Wenche, woman, A. 974, 1250; concubine, B. 1716. A.S. *wencle*, a maid. S.Sax. *wenchell*, a child.

Wende = wened, thought, A. 1148; C. 111.

Wene = ween, believe, A. 47; A. 821; B. 244. A.S. *wénan*.

Wene, doubt, A. 1141.

Weng, avenge, B. 201.

Wenyng, supposition, C. 115.

Wepande, weeping, C. 384.

Weppen, weapon, B. 835.
211b

Wered, guarded, protected, C. 486. A.S. *weren*. Ger. *wehren*, defend.

Werke3, labours, B. 136.

Werp (*pret.* of *warp*), threw, B. 284.

Werre, war, B. 1178.

Wers, worse, B. 80.

Werte, root, herb, C. 478. A.S. *wyrt*.

Weryng, wearing, age, B. 1123. "*Weryn* or wax olde, febyl, veterasco." (Prompt. Parv.)

Wesch, washed, A. 766.

Westernays, wrongly, A. 307. See Note on this word, p. 106. ? wiþer-ways, wrong-wise.

Wete, wet, A. 761.

Weue, pass, A. 318.

Weued, cut off (?), B. 222.

Wex (*pret.* of *wax*), became, A. 538; B. 204.

We3e, weigh (anchor), C. 103; carry round, B. 1420, 1508. A.S. *wegan*, to weigh, carry.

We3te, weight, B. 1734.

Wham, whom, A. 131.

Whate3 = wat3, was, A. 1041.

What-kyn, what kind of, B. 100.

Whichche = hutch, ark, B. 362. "*Hutche* or *whyche*, cista, archa." (Prompt. Parv.) A.S. *hwœcca*.

Whyle, moment, B. 1620.

Wite, blame. See *Wyte*.

With-dro3, withdrew, A. 658.

With-nay, refuse, deny, A. 916.

Wi3t = wight, quickly, C. 103. See *Wy3t*.

Wlate, to abhor, hate, detest, A. 305; to be disgusted at, B. 1501. A.S. *wlættian*.

Wlatsum, hateful, abominable, B. 541.

212

Wlonc, Wlonk, beautiful, A. 122, 1171; A. 606, 793, 933; C. 486; good, B. 903. A.S. *wlanc*.

Wod, Wode, mad, enraged, A. 204, 1558; foolish, A. 828; fierce, strong, A. 364; B. 142. A.S. *wód*.

Wodbynde, woodbine, C. 446.

Wodder (*comp.* of *wode*), fiercer, rougher, C. 162.

Woghe, wrong, sin, A. 622. A.S. *woh*.

Wolde = walde, perform, do, A. 812. See *Welde*.

Wolde, would, A. 772.

Wolen, woollen, A. 731.

Wolle, wool, A. 844.

Wombe, belly, B. 462, 1250.

Won, Wone, *sb.* dwelling, abode, A. 32, 1049; A. 140, 928; wone3, A. 917, 924; *vb.* to dwell, A. 404, 298; B. 875. A.S. *wunian*. O.Fris. *wona*.

Won = wone, custom, usage, B. 720. A.S. *wune*.

Wonde, fear, hesitate, B. 855. A.S. *wandian*.

Wonde = wande, delay, cease, A. 153.

> "[I wole] for no dethe *wonde*."
> (T. B. 591.)
> "I wille noghte *wonde* for no werre,
> To wende whare me likes."
> (Morte Arthure, p. 292.)
> "Sua did þis wiif I yow of redd,
> Sco folud Joseph ai þar he fledd,
> And for sco foluand fand a spurn,
> Sco waited him wit a werr turn,
> Hirself in godds gram and gilt,
> And almast did him to be spilt;
> How sco broght him to the fand (trial),
> Fforth to telle wil I noght *waand*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 25*a*.)

212b

Wonder, *adj.* wonderful, A. 1095; B. 153.

Wonderly, wonderfully, A. 570; B. 384.

Woned = waned, decreased, B. 496. A.S. *wanian*, to decrease.

Wonen (*pret. pl.*) got, B. 1777.

Wonne, pale, wan, C. 141. A.S. *wonn*, wan.

Wonne, got, A. 32.

Wonnen, begotten, B. 112.

Wonnyng, dwelling, B. 921. See *Won*.

Wont, be wanting, B. 739.

Wony, dwell, abide, live, A. 284; A. 431; B. 462. See *Won*.

Wonyande, dwelling, living, B. 293.

Wonys, dwells, A. 47.

Worche, *vb.* work, labour, A. 511.

Worcher = worker, maker, B. 1501.

Worchyp, honour, B. 1802.

Worded, spoken, uttered, C. 421.

Wore, were, A. 142, 232; B. 928.

Worme, reptile, B. 533.

Worre, weaker, literally, worse, B. 719. O.N. *verr*. Sw. *värre*. O.Sc. *war*. O.E. *werr*, worse.

Worschyp, honour, A. 394.

Worteȝ, herbs, A. 42. See *Werte*.

Worþe, to be, C. 22.

Worþely,
Worþelych,
Worþly,
Worþlych,
Worþyly,
: worthy, A. 47, 846, 1073; B. 471, 651, 1298, 1351; beautiful, C. 475.

Worþloker, more worthy (*comp.* of *worþelych*), C. 464.

Wost,
Woste,
: knowest, A. 293, 411; B. 875. See *Wot*.

Wot, know, A. 47, 1107; C. 129.

213

Wote, knows, C. 397.

Woþe, hurt, harm, B. 855. This word occurs under the forms *quathe*, *wathe*, and seems to be related to O.E. *qued*. Low Ger. *quat*, bad. O.E. *wathe*, bad; *wathely*, badly.

"Ffor *woþe* of þe worse."
(T. B. 1223.)

Woþe, path, A. 151, 375. A.S. *wáth*, *wáthu*. O.E. *wathe*, a way, path. See extract under the word *Wasturne*.

Wowe, Wo3e, wall, A. 1049; B. 832, 839, 1403, 1531. A.S. *wáh*. "*Wowe* or wal, murus." (Prompt. Parv.)

Wrache, vengeance, A. 204, 229; B. 185. A.S. *wrec*, *wracu*.

Wrak (*pret.* of *wreke*), avenged, B. 570.

Wrake, vengeance, B. 213, 235, 718, 970, 1225.

Wrakful, angry, bitter, B. 302, 541.

Wrang, wrong, A. 15; A. 76; wrongly, A. 488, 631; bad, B. 384.

Wraste (*pret.* of *wreste*), raised, uplifted, A. 1166, 1403; thrust, 1802; B. 80.

Wrastel, Wrastle, wrestle, A. 949; B. 141.

Wraþe, become angry, A. 230; C. 74; make angry, B. 719.

Wra3te, wrought, A. 56.

Wrech = wrache, vengeance, B. 230.

Wrech, Wreche, Wrechche, wretch, A. 84, 828; B. 113.

Wrech, wretched, C. 258. A.S. 213b *wrec*, wretched. With *wrech* and *wretched*, cf. *wik* and *wikked*.

Wrek, Wreke, avenged, B. 198.

Wrenche, device, B. 292. A.S. *wrence*.

Wro, passage; literally, corner, A. 866. O.Sw. *wraa*. Dan. *vraa*.

Wroken, (*pret.* of *wreke*), banished, exiled, A. 375. A.S. *wrecan*, to exile, banish.

Wrot (*pret.* of *wrote*), grubbed up, C. 467. A.S. *wrótan*, to

turn up with the snout; *wrót*, a snout.

> "With wrathe he begynnus to *wrote*,
> He ruskes vppe mony a rote
> With tusshes of iij. fote."
> (Avowynge of Arthur, xii. 13.)

Wroþe, fierce, B. 1676. A.S. *wráth*, wroth, enraged.

Wroþeloker (*comp.* of *wroþely*), more fiercely, angrily, C. 132.

Wroþely, Wroþly, angrily, fiercely, A. 280, 949; B. 132.

Wroþer (*comp.* of *wroþe*), fiercer, C. 162.

Wroȝt, Wroȝte, wrought, worked, A. 525, 748.

Wruxeled, raised, B. 1381. *Wrixle* = change, turn, occurs in T. B. 445.

> "Þis unwarnes of wit *wrixlis* hys mynd."

Wryst, B. 1535.

Wryt, B. 1552.

Wryþe, turn, A. 350, 488; wriggle, A. 533; toil, A. 511; bind, thrust, B. 80. A.S. *writhan*, to writhe, bind, twist. "*Writhen* like a wilde eddur." T. B. 4432.

Wunder, B. 1390.

Wunnen, won, B. 1305.
214

Wyche, B. 1577.

Wyche-crafte, B. 1560.

Wyddere, wither, C. 468.

Wydowande (*wyndowande*), withering, dry, B. 1048; *wyndowand* = burnt up. N.Prov.E. *winny*, to dry, burn up.

Wyke, member, part, B. 1690. O.N. *vik*.

Wykke, Wyk, wicked, B. 908, 1063. A.S. *wícan*, to become weak, to yield. O.N. *víkia*.

Wykket, Wyket, wicket, gate, door, B. 501, 857.

Wyl, Wylle, wandering, C. 473; forlorn, B. 76. O.N. *villa*, error; *villa*, to lead astray, beguile. Phrase, *wille o wan*, astray from abode, uncertain where to go; *wil-sum*, *wil-ful*, lonely, solitary, desert.

"So I *wilt* in the wod."
(T. B. 2359.)
"Adam went out ful *wille* o wan."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 7*a*.)
"All wery I wex and *wyle* of my *gate*."
(T. B. 2369.)
"Sone ware thay *willid* fra the way the wod was so thick."
(K. Alex. p. 102.)
"Sorful bicom þat fals file (the devil)
And thoght how he moght man *bi-wille*;
Agains God wex he sa gril,
Þat alle his werk he wend to spil."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 5*b*.)
"His suns þat (we) of forwit melt,
Al þe werld bituix þam delt;
Asie to Sem, to Cham Affrik,
To Japhet Europ þat *wilful* wike:
Al þer þre þai war ful rike."
(*Ibid.* fol. 13*a*.)

Wyldren = wyldern (?), waste, wilderness, C. 297. A.S. *wild*, 214b wild, and *ærn*, a place (?). See *Wasturne*.

"In *wildrin* land and in wastin,
I wil tham (the Israelites) bring of þair nocin;
Bot wel I wat he (Pharaoh) is ful thra,
Lath sal him think to let þam ga."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 33*a*.)

Wylsfully, wilfully, B. 268.

Wylger, wild, fierce, B. 375. See extract under the word *Note*.

Wylle, forlorn, B. 76. See *Wyl*.

Wylnes, apostacy, B. 231.

Wylne3, desirest (*2d pers. sing* of *wylne*), A. 318. A.S. *wilnian*.

Wyly, curiously, craftily, B. 1452. A.S. *wile*, a device.

Wyndas, windlass, C. 103.

Wyndowe, B. 453.

Wynne, joyful, A. 154. A.S. *wyn*, pleasure, delight.

Wynne, obtain, get, A. 579; B. 617. A.S. *winnan*. See T. B. 1165.

Wynnelych, gracious, B. 1807, Cp. *wynly* = dexterously, 1165.

Wyrde, fate, destiny, A. 249, 273; B. 1224. Sc. *wird*. A.S. *wyrd*.

Wyrle, flew, B. 475.

Wyschande, hoping for, wishing, A. 14.

Wyse, manner, A. 1095; *wyses*, B. 1805.

Wyse, Wysse, show, appear, A. 1135, A. 1564; direct, send out, A. 453; instruct, B. 60. A.S. *wissian*.

Wyst, Wyste, knew, A. 376; B. 152.

Wyt, wisdom, A. 348; B. 129.

Wyt, know, learn, B. 1319, 1360. A.S. *witan*.
215

Wyte, blame, A. 76; B. 501. A.S. *wítian*.

Wyte, pass away (?), C. 397. A.S. *wítan*.

Wyter, true, truly, B. 1552. O.N. *vitr*, wise, prudent.

> "& her ice wile shæwenn 3aw
> Summ þing to *witter* tákenn."
> (Ormulum, vol. i. p. 115.)

"Ne þe nedder was noght bitter
Þan, þowf he was ever *witter*;
Ffor of alle, als sheus þe boke,
Mast he cuth o crafte and crok."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 5*b*.)

Wytered, informed, B. 1587.

Wyterly, truly, B. 171, 1567. Dan. *vitterlig*, known, manifest.

Wyþe, gentle, soft, C. 454. A.S. *wéthe*, soft, pleasant.

Wyþer, contrary, opposite, A. 230; adverse, hostile, C. 48. S.Sax. *witherr*, adverse, evil. A.S. *witherian*, to oppose, resist. Cf. *wetheruns* = *wetherings*, enemies, T. B. 5048.

"Ga, *witherr* gast, o bacch fra me."
(Ormulum, vol. ii. p. 41.)

Wyþerly, fiercely, angrily, A. 198; B. 74.

Wyth-halde, withhold, B. 740.

Wythouten, without, A. 390.

Wytles, foolish, A. 1585; B. 113.

Wytte, meaning, A. 1630; wit, A. 294; *wytte3*, devices, B. 515.

Wy3, Wy3e, person, being, A. 131, 579; B. 545. A.S. *wiga*, a warrior, soldier; *wig*, war.

Wy3t, quick, quickly, A. 617; B. 103. O.E. *wight*. Sw. *vig*, active.

Wy3tly, quickly, B. 908.

"He waites vmbe hym *wightly*."
(T. B. 876.)

215b

Y

Ydropike, dropsical, B. 1096.

Yle, isle, A. 693.

Ylle, bad, evil, C. 8.

Ynde, blue, A. 1016; B. 1411.

> "Þe toiþer heu neist (to grennes) for to find,
> Es al o *bleu*, men cals it *ynd*."
> (Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 53*a*.)

Yow, you, A. 287.

Yor, your, A. 761.

Yre, anger, B. 775, 1240.

Yþe, wave, A. 430; B. 147. A.S. *ythu*, a wave, flood. S.Sax. *uthe*.

> "Þe roghe *yþes*." —T. B. 1045.

Yȝe, eye (*pl. yȝen*), A. 254, 302.

ȝ

ȝare = yare, plainly, accurately, A. 834. A.S. *gearo*, ready, prepared, accurate.

ȝark, *adj.* select, A. 652; prepare, A. 1708; *vb.* to grant, B. 758. A.S. *gearcian*, to prepare, make ready. See T. B. 414.

ȝarm, cry, B. 971. As the character ȝ in these poems always represents *g* or *gh*, ȝ*arm* is evidently not derived from the A.S. *cyrm*, noise, retained in O.E. *charm*, a humming noise, the cry of birds, etc., but is from the Welsh *garm*, shout, outcry; *garmio*, to set up a cry, from which the A.S. *cyrm*, is itself derived.

ȝate, gate, A. 1034.

ȝe, ye, A. 381.

ȝede (*pret.* of *go*), went, A. 526, 1049; B. 432.

ȝederly, quickly, soon, B. 463. O.N. *gedugr*, exceedingly. The adjective ȝ*eder* does not occur in the poems, but was not 216 unknown to O.E. literature. It occurs in the glossary to the Romance of King Alexander, ed. Stevenson, but is left unexplained by the editor.

> "Then bownes agayn the bald kyng, baldly he wepis,

That he so skitly suld skifte and fo his skars terme;
So did his princes, sais the profe, for pete of himselfe,
With *ȝedire* ȝoskinges and ȝerre ȝette out to grete."
(p. 172.)

"*ȝedire ȝoskinges* = great (frequent) sobbings."

ȝelde, yield, perform, B. 665.

ȝellyng = yelling, outcry, B. 971. A.S. *geallian*, to yell. "*ȝellyn'* or hydowsly cryin', Vociferor." (Prompt. Parv.)

ȝeme, protect, guard, B. 1242, 1493. A.S. *géman*, to care for, take care of.

ȝemen, yeomen, A. 535.

ȝender, yonder, B. 1617.

ȝep,
ȝepe, quick, active, bold, B. 796, 881. A.S. *gæp*.

"So yonge & so *ȝepe*." T. B. 357.

ȝeply, quickly, B. 665, 1708. See T. B. 414.

ȝer,
ȝere, year, A. 483, 588.

ȝerne = yearn, desire, A. 1190; B. 66, 758.

ȝestande, B. 846. If from the A.S. *gæston*, "afflicted," we may render this term "afflicting," but if, as is more probable, it is from the A.S. *gist*, froth, yeast, we may explain it as "frothing," "overflowing." Cf. the phrase, "the *yesty* waves."
216b

ȝete, offer, give, A. 558. O.E. *yate* (*pret. yatte*). O.N. *géta*.

"He *yatte* hir freli al hir bone (prayer)."
(Cott. MS. Vesp. A. iii. fol. 47*a*.)

Gate, in T. B. 979, seems to mean a request.

"And he hir graunted þat *gate* with a good wille."

ȝete, yet, A. 1061.

ȝeȝed, spoke, B. 846. Prov. Ger. *gaggen*, to stutter, gabble.

ȝif, if, B. 758.

ȝise, truly, yes, C. 117.

ȝisterday, yesterday, B. 463.

ȝokke, yoke, B. 66.

ȝolden, restored, B. 1708.

ȝolpe, *vb.* boast, B. 846. A.S. *gilpan*.

ȝomerly, sorrowful, lamentable, B. 971. A.S. *geomor*, sad; *geomorlíc*, doleful. Cf. *ȝomeryng*, T. B. 1722.

ȝon, yon, A. 693; B. 772.

ȝonde, yonder, B. 721.

ȝong,
ȝonge, young, A. 412, 474; B. 783.

ȝore, before, A. 586. A.S. *geara*.

ȝore-fader, forefather, A. 322.

ȝore-whyle, ere-while, B. 842.

ȝornen (*3rd pers. pl. pret.*), ran, B. 881. A.S. *ge-yrnan*, to run.

ȝyrd, go, hasten, A. 635. The original meaning of *ȝyrd* is perhaps a sudden sting, blow, hence to strike, then to start forward. Goth. *gazd*, a sting, goad. Lat. *hasta*. O.E. *gird*, to strike.

> "*Gird* out the grete teth of the grym best."
> (T. B. 177.)

B. The word “comynes” appears at B. 1747, but the only number that fits the blank space is 111. This entry is not in the 1864 edition; the editor may have left a space, intending to come back and fill in the correct line number.

Comyne, B. 111. See T. B. 12863.

This e-text is based on the 1869 (second) edition of the *Alliterative Poems*. A few apparent misprints were checked against the 1864 edition, but the texts as a whole were not closely compared.

The text includes characters that will only display in UTF-8 (Unicode) text readers, primarily ȝ Ȝ (yogh). There are also a few Greek words in the Index, and a handful of letters with overline or macron, such as ī. If these characters do not display properly, or if the quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that your browser's "character set" or "file encoding" is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change the default font.

All brackets are in the original.

Typographical errors are shown with mouse-hover popups. Quotation-mark errors—especially orphaned open quotes—are similarly marked. In some cases it may be possible to guess where the missing quotation mark belongs, but it seemed safer to leave the text as printed. No quotation marks disappeared between the 1864 and 1869 editions.

Full Contents
Preface
The Pearl (*separate file*)
Cleanness (*separate file*)
Patience (*separate file*)
Glossarial Index (*separate file*)
Sidenotes
Details of Text and Layout

EDITED FROM
THE UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT

BRITISH MUSEUM MS. COTTON
NERO A. x

BY

RICHARD MORRIS

Published for
THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
by the
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON NEW YORK TORONTO

FIRST PUBLISHED 1864
SECOND EDITION 1869
REPRINTED (1869 VERSION) 1965

Original Series, No. 1

ORIGINALLY PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN, HERTFORD
AND NOW REPRINTED LITHOGRAPHICALLY IN GREAT
BRITAIN
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, OXFORD
BY VIVIAN RIDLER, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Contents

(added by transcriber)

Items in *italics* do not have headings in the body text.

Preface v

Introduction to ***The Pearl*** [xi]

Introduction to ***Cleanness*** [xiii]

Introduction to ***Patience*** [xviii]

General Introduction [xix]

Remarks Upon the Dialect and Grammar xxi

Grammatical Details xxviii

I. Nouns xxxiii

II. Adjectives xxxiii

III. Pronouns xxx

IV. Verbs xxxiii

V. Adverbs xl

VI. Prepositions xl

VII. Conjunctions xl

Description of the Manuscript xli

Contractions Used in the Glossary xliv

The Pearl (*separate file*) 1

Notes to *The Pearl* 105

Cleanness (*separate file*) 37
Notes to *Cleanness* [108]
Patience (*separate file*) 89
Notes to *Patience* [115]

Glossarial Index (*separate file*) 117
Collected Sidenotes *(section added by transcriber)*

PREFACE.

All page references in Arabic numerals refer to the main text, located in a separate file. Parenthetical Roman numerals *do not* correspond to the editor's section headings, but the text summary is generally similar to the appropriate headnote.

THE following poems are taken from a well known manuscript in the Cottonian collection, marked Nero A. x, which also contains, in the same handwriting and dialect, a metrical romance,[1] wherein the adventures of Sir Gawayne with the "Knight in

Green," are most ably and interestingly described.

Unfortunately nothing can be affirmed with any certainty concerning the authorship of these most valuable and interesting compositions. The editor of "Syr Gawayn and the Green Knight" considers that Huchowne, a supposed[2] Scotch *maker* of the fourteenth century, has the best claims to be recognised as the author, inasmuch as he is specially referred to by Wyntown as the writer of the *Gret gest of Arthure* and the *Awntyre of Gawayne*.

I do not think that any certain conclusions are to be drawn from the Scotch historian's assertion. It is well known that more versifiers than one during the fourteenth century attempted romance composition in the English language, having for their theme the knightly deeds of Arthur or Sir Gawayne. These they compiled from French originals, from which they selected the most striking incidents and those best suited to an Englishman's taste for the marvellous. We are not surprised, vi then, at finding so many romance poems treating of the exploits of the same hero, and laying claim to be considered as original productions. In Scotland, Huchowne's works might no doubt have been regarded as the standard romances of the period, but that they were the only English *gests* is indeed very doubtful.

The Early English alliterative romance, entitled the *Morte Arthure*, published from a manuscript in Lincoln Cathedral by Mr. Halliwell,[3] is considered by Sir F. Madden to be the veritable *gest of Arthure* composed by Huchowne. An examination of this romance does not lead me to the same conclusion, unless Huchowne was a Midland man, for the poem is not written in the old Scotch dialect,[4] but seems to have been originally composed in one of the

Northumbrian dialects spoken *South* of the Tweed.[5]

The manuscript from which Mr. Halliwell has taken his text is not the original copy, nor even a literal transcript of it. It exhibits certain orthographical and grammatical peculiarities unknown to the Northumbrian dialect which have been introduced by a Midland transcriber, who has here and there taken vii the liberty to adapt the original text to the dialect of his own locality, probably that one of the North Midland counties, where many of the Northumbrian forms of speech would be intelligible.[6]

A comparison of the Arthurian romance with the following poems throws no light whatever upon the authorship of the poems. The dialect of the two works is altogether different, although many of the terms employed are common to both, being well known over the whole of the North of England. The grammatical forms (the best test we can have) in the poems are quite distinct from those in the *Morte Arthure*, and of course go far to prove that they do not proceed from the pen of the same writer.

The Editor of "Syr Gawayn and the Green Knight" acknowledges that the poems in the present volume, as now preserved to us in the manuscript, are not in the Scottish dialect, but he says "there is sufficient internal evidence of their being *Northern*,[7] although the manuscript containing them appears to have been written by a scribe of the Midland counties, which will account for the introduction of forms differing from those used by writers beyond the Tweed."

Now, with regard to this subsequent transcription of the poems from the Scotch into a Midland dialect,—it cannot be viii said to be improbable, for we have abundant instances of the multiplication of copies by

scribes of different localities, so that we are not surprised at finding the works of some of our popular Early English writers appearing in two or three forms; but, on the other hand, a comparison of the original copy with the *adapted transcriptions*, or even the reading of a transcribed copy, always shows how the author's productions have suffered by the change. Poetical works, especially those with final rhymes, of course undergo the greatest amount of transformation and depreciation. The changes incident upon the kind of transcription referred to are truly surprising, and most perplexing to those who make the subject of Early English *dialects* a matter of investigation.

But, in the present poems, the uniformity and consistency of the grammatical forms is so entire, that there is indeed no internal evidence of subsequent transcription into any other dialect than that in which they were originally written. However, the dialect and grammatical peculiarities will be considered hereafter.

Again, in the course of transcription into another dialect, any literary merit that the author's copy may have originally possessed would certainly be destroyed. But the poems before us are evidently the work of a man of birth and education; the productions of a true poet, and of one who had acquired a perfect mastery over that form of the English tongue spoken in his own immediate locality during the earlier part of the fourteenth century. Leaving out of consideration their great philological worth, they possess an intrinsic value of their own as literary compositions, very different from anything to be found in the works of Robert of Gloucester, Manning, and many other Early English authors,

which are very important as philological records, but in the light of poetical productions, cannot be said to hold a very distinguished place in English literature. The poems in the present volume contain many ix passages which, as Sir F. Madden truly remarks, will bear comparison with any similar ones in the works of Douglas or Spenser.

I conclude, therefore, that these poems were not transcribed from the Scotch dialect into any other, but were written in their own West-Midland speech in which we now have them.

Mr. Donaldson, who is now editing for the Early English Text Society the Troy Book, translated from Guido di Colonna, puts forward a plea for Huchowne as its author, to whom he would also assign the *Morte Arthure* (ed. Perry) and the Pistel of Sweet Susan.[8] But Mr. Donaldson seems to have been misled by the similarity of vocabulary, which is not at all a safe criterion in judging of works written in a Northumbrian, West or East Midland speech. The dialect, I venture to think, is a far safer test. A careful examination of the Troy Book compels me to differ in toto from Mr. Donaldson, and, instead of assigning the Troy Book to a Scotchman, say that it cannot even be claimed, in its present form, by any Northumbrian south of the Tweed; moreover, it presents no appearance of having been tampered with by one unacquainted with the dialect, though it has perhaps been slightly modernised in the course of transcription.

The work is evidently a genuine West-Midland production,[9] having most of the peculiarities of vocabulary and inflexions that are found in these *Alliterative Poems*.[10] I feel greatly inclined to claim this English Troy Book as the production of the

author of the *Alliterative Poems*; for, leaving out identical and by no means common expressions, we find the same power of x description,[11] and the same tendency to inculcate moral and religious truths on all occasions where an opportunity presents itself.[12] Without dwelling upon this topic, which properly falls to the Editor of the Troy Book, it may not be out of place to ask the reader to compare the following description of a storm from the Troy Book, with that selected from the present volume on pp. 14 and 18.

A TEMPEST ON ÞE SEE.

There a tempest *hom* toke on þe torres hegh:
—
A *rak* and a royde wynde rose in *hor* saile,
A myst & a *merkenes* was mervell to se;
With a *routond* rayn ruthe to be-holde,
Thonr*et*[13] full *throly* with a thicke haile;
With a leuenyng light as a *low* fyre,
Blas*et* all the brode see as it bren wold.
The flode with a felle cours flow*et* on hepis,
Rose uppon rockes as any *ranke* hylles.
So wode were the waghes & þe wilde *ythes*,
All was like to be lost þat no lond hade
The ship ay shot furth o þe *shire waghes*,
As qwo clymbe at a clyffe, or a clent[14] hille.
Eft *dump* in the depe as all drowne wolde.
Was no *stightlyng* with stere ne no stithe ropes,
Ne no sayle, þat might serue for *unsound* wedur.
But all the buernes in the bote, as *hom* best liked,
Besoght unto sainttes & to sere goddes; (p. 65)

A STORME ON THE SE.

All the company enclin*et* cair*yn* to ship;
Cach*yn* in cables, knyt up *hor* ancres,
Sesit vp *hor* sailes in a sad hast;
Richet þere rapes, rapit unto see.
xi
Hokit out of hauyn, all the hepe somyn,
Hade bir at hor bake, blawen to þe depe;
Sail*yn* forthe *soberly*, somyn but a while,
Noght fyftene forlong fairly to the end.
.....
When sodenly the softe aire *unsoberly* rose;
The cloudis overcast, *claterrit* aboute;
Wyndes full wodely *walt* up the ythes;
Wex *merke* as the mydnighte mystes full thicke:
Thunret in the *thestur throly* with all;
With a *launchant laite* lightonyd the water;
And a *ropand* rayne *raiked* fro the heuyn.
The storme was full stithe with mony stout
windes,
Hit *walt* up the wilde se vppon wan hilles.
The ffolke was so ferd, that *on flete* were,
All drede for to drowne with dryft of the se;
And in perell were put all the proude kynges.
—(p. 150.)

The poems in the present volume, three in number, seem to have been written for the purpose of enforcing, by line upon line and precept upon precept, Resignation to the will of God; Purity of life as manifested in thought, word, and deed; Obedience to the Divine command; and Patience under affliction.

In the first poem, entitled by me "*The Pearl*", the author evidently gives expression to his own sorrow

for the loss of his infant child, a girl of two years old, whom he describes as a

> Perle plesaunte to prynces paye
> *Pearl pleasant to princes' pleasure,*
> To clanly clos in golde so clere
> *Most neatly set in gold so clear.*

Of her death he says:

> Allas! I leste hyr in on erbere
> *Alas! I lost her in an arbour,*
> Þur3 gresse to grounde hit fro me yot
> *Through grass to ground it from me got.* —(p. 1.)

The writer then represents himself as visiting his child's grave (or arbour) in the "high season of August," and giving way to his grief (p. 2). He falls asleep, and in a dream is carried xii toward a forest, where he saw rich rocks gleaming gloriously, hill sides decked with crystal cliffs, and trees the leaves of which were as burnished silver. The gravel under his feet was "precious pearls of orient," and birds "of flaming hues" flew about in company, whose notes were far sweeter than those of the cytole or gittern (guitar) (p. 3). The dreamer arrives at the bank of a stream, which flows over stones (shining like stars in the welkin on a winter's night) and pebbles of emeralds, sapphires, or other precious gems, so

> Þat all the lo3e lemed of ly3t
> *That all the deep gleamed of light,*
> So dere wat3 hit adubbement
> *So dear was its adornment.* —(p. 4.)

Following the course of the stream, he perceives on the opposite side a crystal cliff, from which was reflected many a "royal ray" (p. 5).

> At þe fote þer-of þer sete a faunt

At the foot thereof there sat a child,
A mayden of menske, ful debonere
A maiden of honour, full debonnair;
Blysnande whyt wat3 hyr bleaunt
Glistening white was her robe,
(I knew hyr wel, I hade sen hyr ere)
(I knew her well, I had seen her before)
At glysnande golde þat man con schore
As shining gold that man did purify,
So schon þat schene an-vnder schore
So shone that sheen (bright one) on the opposite shore;
On lenghe I loked to hyr þere
Long I looked to her there,
Þe lenger I knew hyr more & more
The longer I knew her, more and more. —(pp. 6, 7.)

The maiden rises, and, proceeding along the bank of the stream, approaches him. He tells her that he has done nothing but mourn for the loss of his Pearl, and has been indeed a "joyless jeweller" (p. 8). However, now that he has found his Pearl, xiii he declares that he is no longer sorrowful, but would be a "joyful jeweller" were he allowed to cross the stream (p. 8). The maiden blames her father for his rash speech, tells him that his Pearl is not lost, and that he cannot pass the stream till after death (p. 10). The dreamer is in great grief; he does not, he says, care what may happen if he is again to lose his Pearl. The maiden advises him to bear his loss patiently, and to abide God's doom (p. 11). She describes to him her blissful state in heaven, where she reigns as a queen (p. 12). She explains to him that Mary is the Empress of Heaven, and all others kings and queens (p. 13). The parable of the labourers in the vineyard[15] (pp. 15-18) is then rehearsed at length, to prove that "innocents" are admitted to the same privileges as are enjoyed by

those who have lived longer upon the earth (p. 18). The maiden then speaks to her father of Christ and his one hundred and forty thousand brides (p. 24), and describes their blissful state (p. 26). She points out to him the heavenly Jerusalem, which was "all of bright burnished gold, gleaming like glass" (p. 29). Then the dreamer beholds a procession of virgins going to salute the Lamb, among whom he perceives his "little queen" (p. 33). On attempting to cross the stream to follow her, he is aroused from his dream (p. 35), laments his rash curiosity in seeking to know so much of God's mysteries, and declares that man ever desires more happiness than he has any right to expect (p. 35).

The second poem, entitled "*Cleanness*," is a collection of Biblical stories, in which the writer endeavours to enforce Purity of Life, by showing how greatly God is displeased at every kind of impurity, and how sudden and severe is the punishment which falls upon the sinner for every violation of the Divine law.

After commending cleanness and its "fair forms," the author relates (I.) The Parable of the Marriage Feast (p. 39); xiv (II.) the Fall of the Angels (p. 43); (III.) The wickedness of the antediluvian world (p. 44),

> He wat3 famed for fre þat fe3t loued best
> *He was famous as free that fight loved best,*
> & ay þe bigest in bale þe best wat3 halden
> *And ever the biggest in sin the best was held;* (p. 45.)

(IV.) The destruction of mankind by the Flood. When all were safely stowed in the ark,

> Thenne sone com þe seuenþe day, when samned wern alle
> *Then soon came the seventh day when assembled*

were all,
& alle woned in þe whichche þe wylde & þe tame.
And all abode in the ark (hutch), the wild and the tame.
Þen bolned þe abyme & bonke3 con ryse
Then swelled the abyss and banks did rise,
Waltes out vch walle-heued, in ful wode streme3
Bursts out each well-head in full wild streams,
Wat3 no brymme þat abod vnbrosten bylyue
There was no brim (stream) that abode unburst by then,
Þe mukel lauande loghe to þe lyfte rered
The much (great) flowing deep (loch) to the loft (sky) reared.
Mony clustered clowde clef alle in clowte3
Many a clustering cloud cleft all in clouts (pieces),
To-rent vch a rayn-ryfte & rusched to þe vrþe
Rent was each a rain-rift and rushed to the earth;
Fon neuer in forty daye3, & þen þe flod ryses
Failed never in forty days, and then the flood rises,
Ouer-walte3 vche a wod and þe wyde felde3
Over-flows each wood and the wide fields;
.....
Water wylger ay wax, wone3 þat stryede
Water wildly ever waxed, abodes that destroyed,
Hurled in-to vch hous, hent þat þer dowelled
Hurled into each house, seized those that there dwelt.
Fyrst feng to þe fly3t alle þat fle my3t
First took to flight all that flee might,
Vuche burde with her barne þe byggyng þay leue3
Each bride (woman) with her bairn their abode they leave,
& bowed to þe hy3 bonk þer brentest hit wern

And hied to the high bank where highest it were,
xv
& heterly to þe hy3e hille3 þay [h]aled on faste
And hastily to the high hills they rushed on fast;
Bot al wat3 nedle3 her note, for neuer cowþe stynt
But all was needless their device, for never could stop
Þe ro3e raynande ryg [&] þe raykande wawe3
The rough raining shower and the rushing waves,
Er vch boþom wat3 brurd-ful to þe bonke3 egge3
Ere each bottom (valley) was brim-ful to the banks' edges,
& vche a dale so depe þat demmed at þe brynke3
And each dale so deep that dammed at the brinks.
—(pp. 47, 48).

The ark is described as "heaved on high with hurling streams."

Kest to kyþe3 vncouþe þe clowde3 ful nere
Cast to kingdoms uncouth the clouds ful near,
Hit waltered on the wylde flod, went as hit lyste
It tossed on the wild flood, went as it list,
Drof vpon þe depe dam, in daunger hit semed
It drove upon the deep dam, in danger it seemed,
With-outen mast, oþer myke, oþer myry bawe-lyne
mike] See Glossary.
Without mast, or mike, or merry bow-line,
Kable, oþer capstan to clyppe to her ankre3
Cable or capstan to clip to their anchors,
Hurrok, oþer hande-helme hasped on roþer
Oar or hand-helm hooked on rudder,
Oþer any sweande sayl to seche after hauen
Or any swinging sail to seek after haven,
Bot flote forthe with þe flyt of þe felle wynde3
But floated forth with the force of the fell winds.

Wheder-warde so þe water wafte, hit rebounde
Whither-ward so (as) the water waft, it rebounded,
Ofte hit roled on-rounde & rered on ende
Oft it rolled around and reared on end,
Nyf our lorde hade ben her lode3-mon hem had lumpen harde
Had our Lord not been their (pilot) leader hardship had befallen them. —(p. 49.)

(V.) The Visit of Three Angels to Abraham (p. 54).

(VI.) The destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (pp. 64, 65), including a description of the Dead Sea, the tarn (lake) of traitors (p. 66).
xvi

(VII.) The invasion of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (p. 71), and the captivity of Judah (p. 74).

The following is a paraphrase of the fourth and fifth verses in the twenty-fifth chapter of the second book of Kings.[17]

Þenne þe kyng of þe kyth a counsayl hym takes
Then the king of the kingdom a counsel him takes,
Wyth þe best of his burnes, a blench for to make
With the best of his men a device for to make;
Þay stel out on a stylle ny3t er any steuen rysed
They stole out on a still night ere any sound arose,
& harde hurles þur3 þe oste, er enmies hit wyste
And hard hurled through the host, ere enemies it wist,
Bot er þay at-wappe ne mo3t þe wach wyth oute
But ere they could escape the watch without,
Hi3e skelt wat3 þe askry þe skewes an-vnder
High scattered was the cry, the skies there under,
Loude alarom vpon launde lulted was þenne
Loud alarm upon land sounded was then;
Ryche, ruþed of her rest, ran to here wedes,

Rich (men) roused from their rest, ran to their weeds,
Hard hattes þay hent & on hors lepes
Kettle hats they seized, and on horse leap;
Cler claryoun crak cryed on-lofte
Clear clarion's crack cried aloft.
By þat wat3 alle on a hepe hurlande swyþee
By that (time) was all on a heap, hurling fast,
Fol3ande þat oþer flote, & fonde hem bilyue
Following that other fleet (host), and found them soon,
as tyd] Immediately.
Ouer-tok hem, as tyd, tult hem of sadeles
Over-took them in a trice, tilted them off saddles,
Tyl vche prynce hade his per put to þe grounde
Till each prince had his peer put to the ground;
& þer wat3 þe kyng ka3t wyth calde prynces
And there was the king caught with crafty princes,
xvii
& alle hise gentyle for-iusted on Ierico playnes
And all his nobles vanquished on Jericho's plains.
—(pp. 71, 72.)

(VIII.) Belshazzar's impious feast (pp. 76-80), and the handwriting upon the wall (pp. 80, 81).

In þe palays pryncipale vpon þe playn wowe
In the palace principal upon the plain wall,
In contrary of þe candelstik þat clerest hit schyned
Opposite to the candlestick that clearest there shone.
Þer apered a paume, with poyntel in fyngres
There appeared a palm with a pointel in its fingers,
Þat wat3 grysly & gret, & grymly he wrytes
That was grisly and great, and grimly it writes,
None oþer forme bot a fust faylaynde þe wryst
None other form but a fist failing the wrist
Pared on þe parget, purtrayed lettres

Pared on the plaister, pourtrayed letters.
When þat bolde Balta3ar blusched to þat neue
When that bold Belshazzar looked to that fist,
Such a dasande drede dusched to his hert
Such a dazzling dread dashed to his heart.
Þat al falewed his face & fayled þe chere
That all paled his face and failed the cheer;
Þe stronge strok of þe stonde strayned his ioyntes
The strong stroke of the blow strained his joints,
His cnes cachche3 to close & cluchches his hommes
His knees catch to close, and he clutches his hams,
lers] ? feres.
& he with plat-tyng his paumes displayes his lers
And he with striking his palms displays his fears,
& romyes as a rad ryth þat rore3 for drede
And howls as a frightened hound that roars for dread,
Ay biholdand þe honde til hit hade al grauen,
Ever beholding the hand till it had all graven,
& rasped on þe ro3 wo3e runisch saue3
And rasped on the rough wall uncouth saws (words).

(IX.) The story of Nebuchadnezzar's pride and its punishment (pp. 84, 85), and the interpretation of the handwriting by Daniel (p. 86).
xviii

(X.) The invasion of Babylon by the Medes (pp. 87, 88).

Balta3ar in his bed wat3 beten to deþe
Belshazzar in his bed was beaten to death,
Þat boþe his blood & his brayn blende on þe cloþes
That both his blood and his brains blended on the

clothes;
Þe kyng in his cortyn wat3 ka3t by þe heles
The king in his curtain was caught by the heels,
Feryed out bi þe fete & fowle dispysed
Ferried out by the feet and foully despised;
Þat wat3 so do3ty þat day & drank of þe vessayl
He that was so doughty that day and drank of the vessels,
Now is a dogge also dere þat in a dych lygges
Now is as dear (valuable) as a dog that in a ditch lies. —(p. 88.)

The third poem, entitled "*Patience*," is a paraphrase of the book of Jonah. The writer prefaces it with a few remarks of his own in order to show that "patience is a noble point though it displease oft."

The following extract contains a description of the sea-storm which overtook Jonah:—

Anon out of þe norþ est þe noys bigynes
Anon out of the north east the noise begins,
boþe breþes]
Eurus and Aquilo.
When boþe breþes con blowe vpon blo watteres
When both breezes did blow upon blue waters:
Ro3 rakkes þer ros with rudnyng an-vnder
Rough clouds there arose with lightning there under,
Þe see sou3ed ful sore, gret selly to here
The sea sobbed full sore, great marvel to hear;
Þe wyndes on þe wonne water so wrastel togeder,
The winds on the wan water so wrestle together,
Þat þe wawes ful wode waltered so hi3e
That the waves full wild rolled so high,
& efte busched to þe abyme þat breed fyssches
And again bent to the abyss that bred fishes;
Durst nowhere for ro3 arest at þe bothem.

Durst it nowhere for roughness rest at the bottom.
When þe breth & þe brok & þe bote metten
When the breeze and the brook and the boat met,
xix
Hit wat3 a ioyles gyn þat Ionas wat3 inne
It was a joyless engine that Jonah was in,
For hit reled on round vpon þe ro3e yþes
For it reeled around upon the rough waves.
Þe bur ber to hit baft þat braste alle her gere
The bore (wave) bear to it abaft that burst all her gear,
Þen hurled on a hepe þe helme & þe sterne
Then hurled on a heap the helm and the stern,
to murte, marred]
? = to-marte.
Furste to murte mony rop & þe mast after
First marred many a rope and the mast after.*
Þe sayl sweyed on þe see, þenne suppe bihoued
The sail swung on the sea, then sup behoved
Þe coge of þe colde water, & þenne þe cry ryses
The boat of the cold water, and then the cry rises;
3et coruen þay þe cordes & kest al þer-oute
Yet cut they the cords and cast all there-out.
Mony ladde þer forth-lep to laue & to kest
Many a lad there forth leapt to lave and to cast,
Scopen out þe scaþel water, þat fayn scape wolde
To scoop out the scathful water that fain escape would;
For be monnes lode neuer so luþer, þe lyf is ay swete
For be man's lot never so bad, the life is aye sweet.
—(p. 93.)

The writer, in concluding the story of Jonah, exhorts his readers to be "patient in pain and in joy."

For he þat is to rakel to renden his cloþe3,

> Mot efte sitte with more vn-sounde to sewe hem togeder.
> *For he that is too rash to rend his clothes,*
> *Must afterwards sit with more unsound (worse ones) to sew them together.* (p. 104.)

This brief outline of the poems, together with the short extracts from them, will, it is hoped, give the reader stomach to digest the whole. It is true that they contain many "uncouth" terms; but this will be their highest merit with the student of language, as is shown, by Dr. Guest's testimony, that they are "for several reasons curious, and especially so to the philologist."[22] To those readers who do not appreciate the importance xx of such a very large addition to the vocabulary of our Early Language as is made by these treatises, let Sir Frederic Madden's opinion of their literary merit suffice. That distinguished editor says, of the author's "poetical talent, the pieces contained in the MS. afford unquestionable proofs; and the description of the change of the seasons, the bitter aspect of winter, the tempest which preceded the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, and the sea storm occasioned by the wickedness of Jonas, *are equal to any similar passages* in Douglas or Spenser."[23] Moreover, as to the hardness of the language—inasmuch as the subject matter of the poem will be familiar to all who may take up the present volume, the difficulty on the word-point will not be such as to deter the reader from understanding and appreciating the production of an old English poet, who—though his very name, unfortunately, has yet to be discovered—may claim to stand in the foremost rank of England's early bards.

The Editor of the present volume has endeavoured to

do justice to his author by giving the text, with some few exceptions, as it stands in the manuscript.[24] The contractions of the scribe have been expanded and printed in italics, a plan which he hopes to see adopted in every future edition of an early English author.

The Glossary has been compiled not only for the benefit of the reader, but for the convenience of those who are studying the older forms of our language, and who know how valuable a mere index of words and references sometimes proves.

In conclusion, I take the present opportunity of acknowledging the kind assistance of Sir Frederic Madden and E. A. Bond, Esq., of the British Museum, who, on every occasion, were most ready to render me any help in deciphering the manuscript, in parts almost illegible, from which the poems in the present volume are printed.

REMARKS UPON THE DIALECT AND GRAMMAR.

Higden, writing about the year A.D. 1350, affirms, distinctly, the existence of three different forms of speech or dialects, namely, Southern, Midland, and Northern;[25] or, as they are sometimes designated, West-Saxon, Mercian, and Northumbrian. Garnett objects to Higden's classification, and considers it certain "that there were in his (Higden's) time, and probably long before, five distinctly marked forms, which may be classed as follows:— 1. Southern or standard English, which in the fourteenth century was perhaps best spoken in Kent and Surrey by the

body of the inhabitants. 2. Western English, of which traces may be found from Hampshire to Devonshire, and northward as far as the Avon. 3. Mercian, vestiges of which appear in Shropshire, Staffordshire, and South and West Derbyshire, becoming distinctly marked in Cheshire, and still more so in South Lancashire. 4. Anglian, of which there are three sub-divisions—the East Anglian of Norfolk and Suffolk; the Middle Anglian of Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire and East Derbyshire; and the North Anglian of the West Riding of Yorkshire—spoken most purely in the central part of the mountainous district of Craven. 5. Northumbrian," spoken throughout the Lowlands of Scotland, Northumberland, Durham, and nearly the whole of Yorkshire.

Garnett's division is based upon peculiarities of pronunciation, which will be found well marked in the *modern* provincial dialects, and not upon any essential differences of inflexion that are to be found in our Early English manuscripts.[26]

The distinction between Southern and Western English was not at all required, as the Kentish Ayenbite of Inwyt (A.D. xxii 1340) exhibits most of the peculiarities that mark the Chronicles of Robert of Gloucester (Cottonian MS. Calig. A. xi.) as a Southern (or West-Saxon) production. The Anglian of Norfolk, Lincolnshire, and Nottinghamshire may be referred to one group with the Mercian of Lancashire, as varieties of the Midland dialect.

A careful examination of our early literature leads us to adopt Higden's classification as not only a convenient but a correct one.

There is, perhaps, no better test for distinguishing these dialects from one another than the verbal inflexions of the plural number in the present tense,

indicative mood.

To state this test in the briefest manner, we may say that the Southern dialect employs *-eth*, the Midland *-en*, and the Northumbrian *-es* as the inflexion for all persons of the plural present indicative:[27]—

	Southern.	Midland.	Northern.
1st pers.	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (we) hope.
2nd „	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (ye) hope.
3rd „	Hop-*eth*.	Hop-*en*.	Hop-*es*. (they) hope.

It is the constant and systematic employment of these inflexions, and not their occasional use that must be taken as the criterion of dialectical varieties.

In a pure specimen of the Southern dialect, we never find the Northumbrian *-es*. We do occasionally meet with the Midland *-en*, but only in those works written in localities where, from their geographical position, Southern and Midland forms would be intelligible.[28] We might look in vain for the Southern plural *-eth* in a pure Northumbrian production, but might be more successful in finding the Midland *-en* in the third person plural; as, “thay *arn*” for “they *ar*”, or “thay *er*.”
xxiii

In a work composed in Lincolnshire, Nottinghamshire, or Lancashire, we should be sure to find the occasional use of the Northumbrian plural *-es*.[29]

The inflexions of the verb in the singular are of value in enabling us to discriminate between the several varieties of the Midland dialect.[30] The Southern and

Midland idioms (with the exception of the West-Midland of Lancashire, Cheshire, etc.) conjugated the verb in the singular present indicative, as follows:—

1st pers.	hope	(I) hope.
2nd „	hop-*est*	(thou) hopest.
3rd „	hop-*eth*	(he) hopes.

The West-Midland, corresponding to Garnett's Mercian, instead of *-est* and *-eth* employs the inflexions that are so common in the so-called Northumbrian documents of the ninth and tenth centuries:—

1st pers.	hope	(I) hope.
2nd „	hop-*es*	(thou) hopest.
3rd „	hop-*es*	(he) hopes.

The Northumbrian dialect takes *-es* in all three persons; but mostly drops it in the first person.

The peasantry of Cheshire and Lancashire still preserve the verbal inflexions which prevailed in the fourteenth century, and conjugate their verbs in the present indicative according to the following model:—

	Singular.	Plural.
1st pers.	hope	hopen.
2nd „	hopes	hopen.
3rd „	hopes	hopen.

Inasmuch as the poems in the present volume exhibit the xxiv systematic use of these forms, we cannot but believe that they were originally composed in one of those counties where these verbal inflexions were well known and extensively used. We have to choose between several localities, but if we assign the poems to Lancashire we are enabled to account for the large

number of Norse terms employed. It is true that the ancient examples of the Lancashire dialect contained in Mr. Robson's Metrical Romances,[31] the Boke of Curtasye,[32] and Liber Cure Cocorum,[33] present us with much broader forms, as *-us* for *-es* in the plural number and possessive case of nouns, *-un* for *-en* in the plural present indicative mood, in passive participles of irregular (or strong) verbs, *-ud* (*-ut*) for *-ed* in the past tense and passive participle of regular (or weak) verbs, and the pronominal forms *hor* (their), *hom* (them), for *her* and *hem*.[34]

These forms are evidence of a broad pronunciation which, at the present time, is said to be a characteristic of the northwestern division of Lancashire, but I think that there is good evidence for asserting that this strong provincialism was not confined, formerly, to the West-Midland dialect, much less to a division of any particular county. We find traces of it in Audelay's Poems (Shropshire), the Romance of William and the Werwolf,[35] and even in the Wickliffite version of the Scriptures.

Formerly, being influenced by these broad forms, I was led to select Cheshire or Staffordshire as the probable locality where the poems were written; but I do not, now, think that either of these counties ever employed a vocabulary containing so many Norse terms as are to be found in the Lancashire dialect. But although we may not be able to fix, with certainty, xxv upon any one county in particular, the fact of the present poems being composed in the West-Midland dialect cannot be denied. Much may be said in favour of their Lancashire origin, and there are one or two points of resemblance between our poems, the Lancashire Romances, and Liber Cure Cocorum, that deserve especial notice.

I. In Sir Amadace,[36] lxviii. 9, there occurs the curious form *mi3tus* = *mi3tes* = *mightst*.[37] As it appears only once throughout the Romances we might conclude that it is an error of the scribe for *mi3test*, but when we find in the poems before us not only *my3te3* = *my3tes* (mightst), but *wolde3* = *woldes* (wouldst), *couthe3* = *couthes* (couldst), *dippte3* (dippedest), *travaylede3* (travelledst), etc., we are bound to consider *mi3tus* as a genuine form.[38] In no other Early English works of the fourteenth century have I been able to find this peculiarity. It is very common in *the Wohunge of Ure Lauerd* (xiiith cent.). See O.E. Homilies, p. 51. The Northumbrian dialect at this period rejected the inflexion in the second person preterite singular, of regular verbs,[39] and in our poems we find the *-es* often dropped, xxvi so that we get two conjugations, which may be called the inflected and the uninflected form.

	Inflected.	Uninflected.	
1st pers.	hopede	hoped	(I) hoped.
2nd „	hoped*es*	hoped	(thou) hopedest.
3rd „	hopede	hoped	(he) hoped.

Originally the inflected form may have prevailed over the whole of the North of England, but have gradually become confined to the West-Midland dialect.

II. The next point of resemblance is the use of the verb SCHIN or SCHUN = schal = shall. It is still preserved in the modern dialect of Lancashire in combination with the adverb *not*, as schunnot[40] = shall not. The following examples will serve to illustrate the use of this curious form:—

"—— þay *schin* knawe sone,
Þere is no bounté in burne lyk Balta3ar
þewes."[41]
—(B. l. 1435.)
"& þose þat seme arn & swete *schyn* se his face."[42]
—(*Ibid.* l. 1810.)
"Pekokys and pertrikys perboylyd *schyn* be."[43]
—(Liber Cure Cocorum, p. 29.)
"For þer bene bestes þat *schyn* be rost."[44]
—(*Ibid.* p. 34.)
"Alle *schun* be dra3un, Syr, at þo syde."[45]
—(*Ibid.* p.& 35.)
"Seche ferlies *schyn* falle."[46]
—(Robson's Met. Rom. p. 12, l. 4.)

41. They *shall* know soon there is no good in man like Bels virtu

42. And thos that seen are and swee *shall* see His (God face

43. Peac and part parb *shall* be.

44. For þer are beas þat *shall*

be
roas
45.
All
shall
be
drav
(hav
the
entr
rem
Sir,
at
the
side.
46.
Such
mar
shall
hapı

III. Nothing is more common in the present poems than the use of *hit* as a genitive = its, which is also found in the Lancashire romances.

xxvii

"Forþy þe derk dede see hit is demed ever more,
For *hit* dede3 of deþe duren þere 3et."[47]
—(Patience, l. 1021.)

"And, as hit is corsed of kynde & *hit* cooste3 als,
Þe clay þat clenges þer-by arn corsyes strong."[48]
—(*Ibid.* l. 1033.)

"For I wille speke with the sprete,
And of *hit* woe wille I wete,
Gif that I may *hit* bales bete."[49]
—(Robson's Met. Romances, p. 5, ll. 3, 4.)

47.

For

48.

The

49.

And

The present dialect of Lancashire still retains the uninflected genitive:—

> "So I geet up be strike o' dey, on seet eawt; on went ogreath tilly welly coom within two mile oth' teawn; when, os tha dule woud height, o tit wur stonning ot an ale heawse dur; on me kawve (the dule bore eawt *it* een for me) took th' tit for *it* mother, on woud seawk her."[50] (Tummus and Meary).

Thus much for the dialectical peculiarities of our author. The scanty material at our disposal must be a sufficient excuse for the very meagre outline which is here presented to the reader. As our materials increase, the whole question of Early English dialects will no doubt receive that attention from English philologists which the subject really demands, and editors of old English works will then be enabled to speak with greater confidence as to the language and peculiarities of their authors. Something might surely be done to help the student by a proper classification of our manuscripts both as to date and place of composition. We are sadly in want of unadulterated xxviii specimens of the Northumbrian and East-Midland idioms during the twelfth and thirteenth

centuries. There must surely be some records of these dialects in our university libraries which would well repay editing.[51]

GRAMMATICAL DETAILS.

I. Nouns.

(1) *Number.*—The plurals generally end in *-es* (*e*ȝ), *-s*. *Yȝen* (eyes), *trumpen* (trumpets), are the only plurals in *-en* that occur in the poems. In Robson's Metrical Romances we find *fellun* (fells, hills,), *dellun* (dells), and *eyren* (eggs), in Liber Cure Cocorum. The plurals of *brother*, *child*, *cow*, *doȝter* (daughter), are *brether*, *childer*, *kuy*, and *deȝter*.

(2) *Gender.*—The names of inanimate things are in the neuter gender, as in modern English. The exceptions are *deep* (fem.), *gladnes* (fem.), and *wind* (masc.).

(3) *Case.*—The genitive singular (masc. and fem.) ends in *-es* (*-e*ȝ), *-s*, but occasionally the inflexion is dropped; as, "Baltaȝar thewes," the virtues of Balshazzar.[52] If "*honde* myȝt," "*honde* werk," "*hellen* wombe," are not compounds, we have instances of the final *-e* (*en*) which formed the genitive case of *feminine* nouns in the Southern English of the fourteenth century.

In the phrases "*besten* blod" (blood of beasts), "*blonkken* bak" (back of horses), "*chyldryn* fader" (father of children), "*nakeryn* noyse" (noise of nakers), we have a trace of the genitive plural *-ene* (A.S. *-ena*).

II. Adjectives.

(1) *Number.*—The final *e*, as a sign of the plural, is very frequently dropped. *Pover* (poor), *sturn* (strong), make the xxix plurals *poveren* and *sturnen*. In the phrase, "þo sy3te3 so *quyke3*"[53] (those sights so living), the *-e3* (= *-es*) is a mark of the plural, very common in Southern writers of the fourteenth century, and employed as a plural inflexion of the adjective until a very late period in our literature.

The Article exhibits the following forms:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	
The.	tho.[54]	tho.

This forms the plural *thise* and *thes* (*these*). *That* is always used as a demonstrative, and never as the neuter of the article; its plural is *thos* (those).[55] The older form, *theos* = *these*, shows that the *e* is not a sign of the plural, as many English grammarians have asserted.

(2) *Degrees of Comparison.*—The comparative degree ends in *-er*, and the superlative in *-est*.

Adjectives and adverbs terminating in the syllable *-lyche* form the comparative in *-loker* and the superlative in *-lokest*; as, positive *uglyche* (= ugly), comp. *ugloker*, superl. *uglokest*. The long vowel of the positive is often shortened in the comp. and superl., as in the modern English *late*, *latter*, *last*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Brade (broad),	bradder,	braddest.
Dere (dear),	derrer,	derrest.
Lyke (like),	lykker,	lykkest.
Swete (sweet),	swetter,	swettest.
Wayke (weak),	wakker,	wakkest.

Wode (mad), wodder, woddest.

The following irregular forms are occasionally met with:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Fer (far),	ferre (fyrre),	ferrest.
Heȝe (high),	herre,	heȝest (hest).
xxx Neȝe (nigh, near)	nerre,	nerrest (nest).
Sare (sore),	sarre,	sarrest.
Forme (first),		formast.
Mikelle (great),	mo	most.
Yvel, ill (bad),	wers (worre),	werst.

Numerals.—*Twinne* and *thrinne* occur for two and three. The ordinal numbers are—

first
(fyrste), the
forme,
secunde,
that other,
tother,
thryd,
thrydde,
furþe,
fyfþe,
sexte,
sevenþe,
aȝtþe,
nente,

tenþe,
tyþe.

The Northumbrian numerals corresponding to *sevenþe*, *a3tþe*, *nente*, *tenþe*, are *sevend*, *aghtend*, *neghend*, *tend*. The Southern forms end in *-the*, as *sevenþe*, *ei3teoþe*, *nyþe*, *teoþe* (*tyþe*).

III. Pronouns.

In the following poems we find the pronoun *ho*, she, still keeping its ground against the Northumbrian *scho*.[56] *Ho* is identical with the modern Lancashire *hoo* (or *huh* as it is sometimes written), which in some parts of England has nearly the same pronunciation as the accusative *her*.

The Northumbrian *thay* (they) has displaced the older Midland *he*, corresponding to the Southern pronoun *hii*, *hi* (A.S. *hí*). *Hores* and *thayre3* (theirs) occasionally occur for *here*.[57] The genitives in *-es*, due no doubt to Scandinavian influence, are very common in Northumbrian writers of the fourteenth century, but are never found in any Southern work of the same period.
xxxi

Hit is frequently employed as an indefinite pronoun of all genders, and is plural as well as singular. It is, as has been previously shown, uninflected in the genitive or possessive case.

Me in Southern writers is used as an indefinite pronoun of the *third* person, and represents our *one*, but in the present poems it is of all persons, and seems to be placed in apposition with the subject of the sentence corresponding to our use of myself, thyself, himself, etc.; as,

"*He* swenges *me* þys," etc. = He himself sends this,

etc.[58]

"Now swe3e *me* þider swyftly" = Now go (thou) thyself thither swiftly.[59]

"*He* mete3 *me* þis good man" = He himself meets this good man.[60]

Sturzen-Becker ("Some Notes on the leading Grammatical Characteristics of the Principal Early English Dialects, Copenhagen, 1868") thinks that I have been led astray with regard to this use of *me*, which he says is nothing more than the *dativus ethicus*.

The *me* in these examples may be merely an expletive, having arisen out of the general use of the dative ethicus, but the context does not satisfy me that it has the force of a dative. Dr. Guest (Proceedings of Philolog. Soc., vol. i. p. 151-153, 1842-1844) has discussed this construction at some length, and he carefully distinguishes the dative of the 1st person from the indeterminate (or indefinite) pronoun *me* = Fr. one. He says that in Old Frisian the indefinite pronoun has two forms, *min* and *me*, "the latter of which seems to be always used as a suffix to the verb, as *momme*, one may; *somme*, one should," etc. The same construction was occasionally used in our own language, and it no doubt gave rise to those curious idioms which are noticed by Pegge in his "Anecdotes of the Eng. Lang.," p. 217. This writer, whose evidence to a *fact* we may avail ourselves of, whatever we think of his criticism or his scholarship, quotes the following as forms of speech then prevalent among the xxxii Londoners: "and so says *me* I;" "well what does *me* I;" "so says *me* she;" "then away goes *me* he;" "what does *me* they?" Here it is obvious that *me* is the indeterminate pronoun, and represents the *subject*, while the personal

pronoun is put in apposition to it, so that "says *me* I" is equivalent to "*one says, that is I*,"[61]. These idioms are not unknown to our literature.

(1) 'But as he was by diverse principall young gentlemen, to his no small glorie, lifted up on horseback, *comes me a page* of Amphialus, etc.' Pembr. Arcad. B. iii.

Other idioms, which have generally been confounded with those last mentioned, have the indeterminate pronoun preceded by a nominative absolute.

(2) '*I*, having been acquainted with the smell before, knew it was Crab, and—*goes me* to the fellow, who whips the dogs,' etc. Two Gent. of Verona, 4. 4.

(3) '*He thrusts me* himself into the company of three or four gentlemanlike dogs under the Duke's Table.' *Ib.* See B. Jons. Ev. Man in his Humour, 3, 1.

Johnson considers the *me* in examples 2 and 3 to be the oblique case of the first pers. pron., and treats it as "a ludicrous expletive." It is difficult to say how he would have parsed example 2 on such a hypothesis.

With these instances of the use of *me* (indef. or reflexive), the reader may compare the following:

(1) "Suche a touche in that tyde, *he* taȝte
(Gauan) hym in tene
And *gurdes me*, Sir Gallerun, evyn grovelonges
on grounde."
(The Anturs of Arther at the
Tarnewathelan, p. 22.)

(2) There at the dore he (the Fox) cast *me* downe
hys pack.
Spenser's Shep. Cal. ed. Morris, p. 460,

l. 243.

Cp. *Cut me*, i. Hen. IV. Act 4. Sc. 4; *steps me*, Ib. Act 4, Sc. 3; *comes me, runs me*, Ib. Act 3, Sc. 1.

(3) "Juno enraged, and fretting thus,
Runs me unto one Æolus."
(Virgile Travestie, 1664.)

xxxiii

The indefinite *me* = one is not uncommon in Elizabethan writers. Cf. "*touch me* his hat;" "*touch me* hir with a pint of sack," etc.; "and *stop me* his dice you are a villaine" (Lodge's Wit's Miserie).

The following table exhibits the declension of the personal and relative pronouns:—

		SINGULAR.			
Nom.	I,	thou,	he,	ho,	hit.
Gen.	My, myn,	thy, thyn,	his,	hir, her,	hit.
Dat.	Me,	the,	him,	hir, her,	hit.
Acc.	Me,	the,	him,	hir, her,	hit.
		PLURAL.			
Nom.	We,	ȝe,	thay,		hit.
Gen.	Oure,	yor, youre,	her (here), hor,		hit.
Dat.	Vus (= uus),	yow, you,	hem, hom,		hit.
Acc.	Vus (= uus),	yow, you,	hem, hom,		hit.

Nom.	Who (quo).
Gen.	Whose (quos).

Dat.	Whom, Wham	(quom).
Acc.	Whom, Wham	(quom).

IV. Verbs.

Infinitive Mood.—The *-en* of the infinitive is frequently dropped, without even a final *-e* to mark its omission. Infinitives in *-y*, as *louy* (love), *schony* (shun), *spotty* (spot, defile), *styry* (stir), *wony* (dwell), occasionally occur, and probably owe their appearance to the author's acquaintance with Southern literature.[62]

Indicative Mood.—The final *e* often disappears in the first and third persons of the preterite tense, as I *loved*, he *loved*, instead of I *lovede*, he *lovede*.
xxxiv

The *-en* in the plural of the present and preterite tenses is frequently dropped. The pl. present in *-e3* occasionally occurs.

Imperative Mood.—The imperative plural ends in *-es* (*e3*), and not in *-eth* as in the Southern and ordinary Midland dialects.

Participles.—The active or imperfect participle ends in *-ande*[63] and never in *-ing*.

The participle passive or perfect of regular verbs terminates in *-ed*; of irregular verbs in *-en*. Occasionally we find the *n* disappearing, as *bigonn-e*, *fund-e*, *runn-e*, *wonn-e*, where perhaps it is represented by the final *-e*.

The prefix *-i* or *-y* (A.S. *-ge*) occurs twice only in the poems, in *i-chose* (chosen), and *i-brad* (extended); but, while common enough in the Southern and

Midland dialects, it seems to be wholly unknown to the Northumbrian speech.

The verb in the West-Midland dialect is conjugated according to the following model:—

I.—Conjugation of Regular Verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
(I) hope,	(We) hopen.
(Thou) hopes,	(ȝe) hopen.
(He) hopes,	(Thay) hopen.

PRETERITE TENSE.

(I) hopede[64] (hoped),	(We) hopeden.
(Thou) hopedes (hoped),	(ȝe) hopeden.
(He) hopede[64] (hoped),	(Thay) hopeden.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Hope (thou).	Hopes (ȝe).

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect or Active.	Perfect or Passive.
Hopande.	Hoped.

II.—Conjugation of Irregular Verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

(I) kerve, renne, smite, stonde.

(Thou) kerves,	rennes,	smites,	stondes.
(He) kerves,	rennes,	smites,	stondes.

Plural.

(We) kerven,	rennen,	smiten,	stonden.
(Ȝe) „	„	„	„
(Thay) „	„	„	„

PRETERITE TENSE.

Singular.

(I) carf,	ran,	smot,	stod.
(Thou) carve,	ranne,	smote,	stode.
(He) carf,	ran,	smot,	stod.

Very frequently the *e* in the second person is dropped,[65] as in the Northumbrian dialect, but we never meet with such forms as carves (= carvedest), rannes (= ranst), smotes (= smotest), etc.

Plural.

(We) corven,	runnen,	smiten,	stonden.
(Ȝe) „	„	„	„
(Thay) „	„	„	„

PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

Corven,	runnen,	smiten,	stonden.

The Northumbrian dialect does not preserve any separate form for the preterite plural, and this distinction is not always observed in the present poems.

Table of Verbs.

A.—SIMPLE ORDER.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Hate,	hatede,	hated.
Class II. (*a*)	Bede (offer),	bedde,	bed.
	Dype (dip),	dypte,	dypt.
	Kythe (show),	kydde,	kyd.
	Lende,	lende,	lent.
	Rende,	rende,	rent.
	Sende,	sende,	sent.
(*b*)	Clothe,	cladde,	clad.
	Dele (deal),	dalte,	dalt.
	Lede,	ladde,	lad.
	Leve,	lafte,	laft.
	Rede (advise),	radde,	rad.
	Sprede (spread),	spradde,	sprad.
	Swelt (die),	swalte,	——
	Swette (sweat),	swatte,	——
	Threte (threaten),	thratte,	thrat.
Class III.	Byye (buy),	bo3te,	bo3t
	Bringe,	bro3te,	bro3t.

	Cache (catch),	ca3te,	ca3t.
	Lache (seize),	la3te,	la3t.
	Reche (reck),	ro3te,	——
	Reche (reach),	ra3te,	——
	Selle,	solde,	sold.
	Worche (work),	wro3te,	wro3t.

B.—COMPLEX ORDER.

DIVISION I.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Bere (bear),	ber,	born.
	Bete (beat),	bet,	beten.
xxxvii	Breke (break),	brek,	broken.
	Chese (choose),	ches (chos),	chosen.
	Cleve (cleave),	clef,	cloven.
	Ete (eat),	ette (*for* et),	eten.
	For3ete (forget),	for3et,	for3eten.
	Frese (freeze),	fres,	frosen.
	Gife (give),	gef,	given, geven.

	Heve (heave),	hef,	hoven.
	Ligge (lie),	le3,	leyen, le3en.
	Lepe (leap),	lep,	lopen.
	Nemme Nimme	nem (take), (nam),	nomen.
	Schere (shear),	scher,	schorn.
	Slepe (sleep),	slep,	slepen.
	Speke (speak),	spek,	spoken.
	Stele (steal),	stel,	stolen.
	Swere (swear),	swer,	sworen.
	Wepe (weep),	wep,	wopen.
	Wreke (avenge),	wrek,	wroken.
Class II.	Falle,	fell,	fallen.
	Fonge (take),	feng,	fongen.
	Growe,	grew,	growen.
	Hange, honge,	heng,	hangen, hongen.
	Knowe, knawe,	knew,	knawen, knowen.
	Schape (make),	schep,	schapen.
	Walke,	welk,	walken.

	Wasche,	wesch,	waschen.
Class III.	Drawe, dra3e,	dro3,	drawen,.
	Fare (go),	for,	faren.
	La3e (laugh),	lo3,	la3en.
	Stande, stonde,	stod,	standen.
	Slaye,	slow, slew,	slayn.
xxxviii	Take,	tok,	tane, tone.
	Wake,	wok,	waken.

DIVISION II.

	Present.	Preterite.	Passive Participle.
Class I.	Biginne,	bigon,	bigonnen, bigunnen
	Breste,	brast, borst,	brusten, bursten.
	Climbe,	clamb, clomb,	clumben.
	Drinke,	dronk, drank,	drunken, dronken.
	Finde,	fand, fond,	funden.
	Fi3te,	fa3t, fe3t,	fo3ten.
	Helpe,	halp,	holpen.
	Kerve (cut),	carf,	corven.
	Melte,	malt,	molten.
	Renne (run),	ran,	runnen.
	Ringe,	rong,	rungen, rongen.

	Singe,	song, sang,	sungen.
	Steke,	stac,	stoken.
	Sterve (die),	starf,	storven.
	Werpe (throw),	warp,	worpen.
	Win,	wan, won,	wonnen, wunnen.
	3elde (yield),	3ald,	3olden.
Class II.	Bide (abide),	bod,	biden.
	Bite,	bot,	biten.
	Drive,	drof,	driven.
	Fine (cease),	fon,	——
	Glide,	glod,	gliden.
	Ride,	rod,	riden.
	Rise,	ros,	risen.
	Schine,	schon,	——
	Slide,	slod,	sliden.
	Smite,	smot,	smiten.
	Trine (go),	tron,	——
xxxix Class III.	Fly,	fle3, flegh, fla3,	flowen.
	See,	se3, segh, sy3,	seen.
	Sti3e, ste3e,	ste3	——

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

Can,	pret. couthe.
Dare,	„ dorste.
May,	„ mi3te.
Mot,	„ moste.
O3e (owe),	„ o3te.
Schal,	„ scholde, schulde.
Thar,	„ thurte.
Wote,	„ wiste.
Wille,	„ wolde.

Schal (shall) in the second person singular is *schal* or *schalt*; so, too, we occasionally find *wyl* for *wylt*.

The present plural of *schal* is *schul*, *schulen*, or *schyn*.

The verb *to be* is thus conjugated:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	PAST TENSE.
Singular.	
(I) am.	(I) was, wat3.
(Thou) art.	(Thou) was, wat3.
(He) is, bes, bet3.	(He) was, wat3.
Plural.	
(We) arn, are, ar.	(We) wern, were.
(3e) arn, are, ar.	(3e) wern, were.
(Thay) arn, are, ar.	(Thay) wern, were.

The verbs *be*, *have*, *wille*, have negative forms; as, *nam* = am not; *nar* = are not; *nas* = was not; *naf* = have not; *nade* = had not; *nyl* = will not.

The following contractions are occasionally met

with: *bos* = behoves; *byhod* = behoved; *ha* = have; *ma* = make; *man* = make (pl.) *mat3* (*mas*) = makes; *ta* = take; *tat3* (= *tas*) = takes; *tane*, *tone* = taken.
xl

V. Adverbs.

The Norse forms *hethen*, *quethen* (*whethen*),[66] and *thethen*, seem to have been known to the West-Midland dialect as well as the Saxon forms *hence* (*hennes*, *henne*), *whence* (*whennes*), *thence* (*thennes*), etc.[A] The adverbs *in-blande* (together), *in-lyche* (alike), *in-mydde* (amidst), *in-monge* (amongst), are due, perhaps, to Scandinavian influence.

VI. Prepositions.

The preposition *from* never occurs in the following poems; it is replaced by *fro*, *fra* (Northumbrian), O.N. *frá*.

VII. Conjunctions.

The conjunction *if* takes a negative form; as, *nif* = if not, unless.
xli

DESCRIPTION OF THE MANUSCRIPT USED IN THE PRESENT VOLUME.[67]

COTTON MS. NERO A. X. A small quarto volume, consisting of three different MSS. bound together, which originally had no connection with each other. Prefixed is an imperfect list of contents in the hand-writing of James, the Bodley Librarian.

The first portion consists of a panegyrical oration in Latin by Justus de Justis, on John Chedworth, archdeacon of Lincoln, dated at Verona 16th July, 1468. It occupies thirty-six folios, written on vellum, and is the original copy presented by the author.

The second portion is that we are more immediately concerned with. It is described by James as "*Vetus poema Anglicanum, in quo sub insomnii figmento multa ad religionem et mores spectantia explicantur*," and this account, with some slight changes, is adopted by Smith and Planta, in their catalogues; both of whom assign it to the fifteenth century. It will appear, by what follows, that no less than four distinct poems have been confounded together by these writers.

This portion of the volume extends from fol. 37 to fol. 126, inclusive, and is written by one and the same hand, in a small, sharp, irregular character, which is often, from the paleness of the ink, and the contractions used, difficult to read. There are no titles or rubrics, but the divisions are marked by large initial letters of blue, flourished with red, and several illuminations, coarsely executed, serve by way of illustration, each of which occupies a page.

1. Four of these are prefixed to the first poem. In the first the Author is represented slumbering in a meadow, by the side of a streamlet, clad in a long red gown, having falling sleeves, turned up with white, and a blue hood attached round the neck. xlii In the second the same person appears, drawn on a larger scale, and standing by the stream. In

the third he occurs nearly in the same position, with his hands raised, and on the opposite side a lady dressed in white, in the costume of Richard the Second's and Henry the Fourth's time, buttoned tight up to the neck, with long hanging sleeves. Her hair is plaited on each side, and on her head is a crown. In the fourth we see the author kneeling by the water, and beyond the stream is depicted a castle or palace, on the embattled wall of which appears the same lady, with her arm extended towards him.

The poem commences on fol. 39, and consists of one hundred and one twelve-line stanzas,[68] every five of which conclude with the same line, and are connected by the iteration of a leading expression. It concludes on fol. 55*b*.

2. Then follow two more illuminations; in the first of which Noah and his family are represented in the ark; in the second the prophet Daniel expounding the writing on the wall to the affrighted Belshazzar and his queen. These serve as illustrations to the second poem, which begins at fol. 57, and is written in long alliterative lines. It concludes on fol. 82.

3. Two illuminations precede, as before; one of which represents the sailors throwing the prophet Jonas into the sea, the other depicts the prophet in the attitude of preaching to the people of Nineveh. The poem is in the same metre as the last, and commences at fol. 83.

It is occupied wholly with the story of Jonas, as applicable to the praise of meekness and patience; and ends on fol. 90.

4. The Romance intitled *Sir Gawayne and the Grene*

Kny3t follows, fol. 91. Prefixed is an illumination of a headless knight on horseback, carrying his head by its hair in his right hand, and looking benignly at an odd-eyed bill-man before him; while from a raised structure above, a king armed with a knife, his queen, an attendant with a sabre, and another bill-man scowling looks on. Here and elsewhere the only colours used are green, red, blue, and yellow. It ends on fol. 124*b.*, and at xliii the conclusion, in a later hand, is written "Hony soit q̃ mal penc," which may, perhaps, allude to the illumination on the opposite page, fol. 125, representing the stolen interview between the wife of the Grene Kny3t and Sir Gawayne. Above the lady's head is written:

> Mi mind is mukel on on, þ*a*t wil me no3t amende,
> Sum time was trewe as ston, & fro schame couþ*e* hir defende.

It does not appear very clearly how these lines apply to the painting. Two additional illuminations follow; in the first of which Gawayne is seen approaching the *Grene Chapel*, whilst his enemy appears above, wielding his huge axe; and in the second Sir Gawayne, fully equipped in armour, is represented in the presence of king Arthur and queen Guenever, after his return to the court.

The third and concluding portion of the Cotton volume extends from fol. 127 to fol. 140*b*, inclusive, and consists of theological excerpts, in Latin, written in a hand of the end of the thirteenth century. At the conclusion is added *Epitaphium de Ranulfo, abbate Ramesiensi*, who was abbot from the year 1231 to 1253, and who is erroneously called *Ralph* in the *Monasticon*, vol. ii. p. 548, new ed.

xliv

CONTRACTIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARY.

The letters A. B. C. refer severally to the poems, entitled by me, “The Pearl,” “Cleanness,” and “Patience.”

A.S.	Anglo-Saxon.
Dan.	Danish.
Du.	Dutch.
E.	English.
O.E.	Old English.
Prov.E.	Provincial English.
N.Prov.E. N.P.E.	North Provincial English.
Fr.	French.
O.Fr.	Old French.
Prov. Fr.	Provincial French.
Fris.	Frisian.
G. Doug.	Gawin Douglas’s *Æneid*, published by the Bannatyne Club, 2 vols.
Ger.	German.
Goth.	Gothic.
Icel.	Icelandic.
Jam.	Jamieson’s Scottish Dictionary.

K. Alex.	King Alexander, Romance of (Ed. Stevenson).
Met. Hom.	Metrical Homilies (Ed. Small).
O.N.	Old Norse.
O.S.	Old Saxon.
Prompt. Parv.	Promptorium Parvulorum (Ed. Way).
Sc.	Scotch.
O.Sc.	Old Scotch.
S.Sax.	Semi-Saxon.
Sw.	Swedish.
O.Sw.	Old Swedish.
Town. Myst.	Townley Mysteries.
T. B.	Troy Book (Ed. Donaldson).

Gaps in numbering represent notes that were shown inline, with or without visible numbers.

1. Edited by Sir Frederic Madden for the Bannatyne Club, under the title of “Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t,” and by me for the Early English Text Soc., 1865.

2. Wyntown nowhere asserts that Huchowne is a Scotchman.

3. Edited for E. E. T. Soc. by Rev. G. G. Perry, M.A.

4. This is evident from the following particulars: —

I. In old Scotch manuscripts we find the guttural *gh* (or 3) represented by *ch*; thus, *aght*,

laght, *saght*, *wight*, are the English forms which, in the Scotch orthography, become *aucht* (owed), *laucht* (seized), *saucht* (peace), *wicht* (active). It is the former orthography, however, that prevails in the Morte Arthure.

II. We miss the Scotch use of (1) *-is* or *-ys*, for *-es* or *-s*, in the plural number, and of possessive cases of nouns, and in the person endings of the present tense indicative mood of verbs; (2) *-it* or *-yt*, for *-ed* or *-d*, in the preterites or passive participles of regular verbs.

III. There is a total absence of the well-known Scotch forms *begouth* (began), *sa* (so), *sic* (such), *throuch*, *thorow* (through). Instead of these *bigan*, *so*, *syche*, *thrughe* (*thurgh*) are employed. See Preface to Hampole's Pricke of Conscience, pp. vii, viii.

5. This is shown by the frequent employment of *-es* as the person ending of the verb in the present tense, plural number. The corresponding Southern verbal inflexion *-eth never* occurs; while the Midland *-en* is only occasionally met with in the third person plural present, and has been introduced by a later copyist. There are other characteristics, such as the predominance of words containing the A.S. long *a*; as *hame* (home), *stane* (stone), *thra* (bold), *walde* (would), etc.; the frequent use of *thir* (these), *tha* (the, those), etc.

6. The peculiarities referred to do not appear to be owing to the copyist of the Lincoln manuscript (Robert de Thornton, a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire), who, being a Northumbrian, would probably have restored the original readings. The non-Northumbrian forms in the Morte Arthure are— 1. The change of *a* into *o*, as *bolde* for *balde*, *bote* for *bate*, *one* for *ane*, *honde* for *hande*, *londe* for *lande*; 2. *they*,

theyre, *them*, *theym*, for *thay*, *thaire*, *tham*; 3. *gayliche*, *kindliche*, *semlyche*, etc., for *gayly*, *kindly*, *seemly*, etc. (the termination *lich*, *liche*, was wholly unknown to the Northumbrian dialect, being represented by *ly* or *like*); 4. *churle*, *churche*, *iche*, *mache*, *myche*, *syche*, *wyrche*, etc., for *carle*, *kirke*, *ilk*, *make*, *mykelle*, *swilk*, *wyrk*, etc.; 5. infinitives in *-en*, as *drenschen*, *schewenne*, *wacchenne*, etc.; 6. the use of *eke*, *thos*, for *als* (*alswa*), *thas*; 7. the employment of *aye* for *egg*. The former word *never* occurs in any pure Northumbrian work, while the latter is seldom met with in any Southern production.

7. The poems are *Northern* in contradistinction to *Southern*, but they are not Northern or Northumbrian in contradistinction to *Midland*.

8. Printed by Mr. D. Laing in his "Inedited Pieces," from a MS. of Mr. Heber's. Other copies are in the Vernon MS., and Cotton Calig. A. ii.; the latter imperfect.

9. Other specimens of this dialect will doubtless turn up. Mr. Brock has found a MS. in British Museum (Harl. 3909) with most of the peculiarities pointed out by me in the preface to the present work, and I believe that this dialect was probably a flourishing one in the 13th century. See O.E. Homilies, p. li.

10. (1) *en* as the inflexion of the pres. tense pl., indic. mood of verbs; (2) *s* in the second and third pers. sing. of verbs; (3) *ho* = she; (4) *hit* = its; (5) *tow* = two; (6) *deȝter* = daughters, etc.

11. See p. 36, ll. 1052-1066; p. 37, ll. 1074-1089; pp. 161-162, ll. 4956-4975.

12. See pp. 25, 26 (Jason's unfaithfulness); pp. 74, 75, ll. 2241-2255; p. 75, ll. 2256-2263; p. 69, ll. 2267-2081; p. 158, ll. 4839-4850; p. 189, ll. 4881-4885; p. 165, ll. 5078-5086, etc.

13. In the Harl. MS. 3909, nearly all the p. part. and preterites end in *-et* (*-ut* and *-et* occur in Romances ed. by Robson).

14. This seems to furnish an etymology for *Clent* Hills, Worcestershire—*brent* is the term employed in Alliterative.

15. Matthew, chapter xx.

17. "4. And the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which is by the king's garden: (now the Chaldees were against the city round about:) and the king went the way toward the plain.

"5. And the army of the Chaldees pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho: and all his army were scattered from him."

22. History of English Rhythms, vol. i. p. 159.

23. Syr Gawayn, ed. Madden, p. 302.

24. Wherever the Text has been altered, the reading of the MS. will be found in a foot-note.

25. Polychronicon R. Higdeni, ap. Gale, p. 210, 211. See Garnett's Philological Essays, p. 43, and Specimens of Early English, p. 338.

26. It is to be regretted that Garnett did not enter upon details, and give his readers some tests by which to distinguish the "five distinctly marked forms."

27. In English works of the fourteenth century the *-en* of the Midland, and the *-es* of the Northumbrian is frequently dropped, thus gradually approximating to our modern conjugation.

28. We are here speaking of works written in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

29. Robert of Brunne, in his “Handlyng Synne,” often employs it instead of *-en*, but only for the sake of the rhyme.

30. The Midland dialect is a very difficult one to deal with, as it presents us with no uniform type; and, moreover, works written in this idiom are marked by Northern or Southern peculiarities, which have led many of our editors altogether astray in determining the locality of their composition.

31. Published by the Camden Society, 1842.

32. Edited by Mr. Halliwell for the Percy Society.

33. Edited by me for the Philological Society, 1862.

34. *-us* and *-ud* for *-es* and *-ed*, as well as *hom*, *hor*, do occasionally occur in the MS. containing our poems.

35. The Romance of William and the Werwolf is written in the West-Midland dialect as spoken probably in Shropshire.

36. Robson’s Metrical Romances, p. 54, l. 9.

37. *Woldus* = *woldes* = *wouldst*, appears in Audelay’s poems (in the Shropshire dialect of the fifteenth century), p. 32, l. 6.

38. The so-called Northumbrian records of the ninth and tenth centuries frequently use *-es* instead of *-est*, in the 2nd pers. preterite of regular verbs, *e.g.*,

ðu forcerdes usic on-bec = Thou turnedst us hindward. —(Ps. xliii. 11.)

ðu saldes usic = Thou gavest us. —(Ps. xliii. 12.)

ðu bi-bohtes folc ðin butan weorðe = Thou soldest thy folk without price. —(Ps. xliii. 12.)

ðu *ge-hiowades* me & *settes* ofer me hond ðine

= Thou madest me and settest over me thy hand. —(Ps. cxxxviii. 5.)

ðu *ðreades ða* ofer-hygdan = Thou hast rebuked the proud. —(Ps. cxviii. 21.)

Ic ondeto ðe fader drihten heofnes forðon ðu *gedeigeldes* ðas ilco from snotrum & hogum & *ædeaudes* ða ðæm lytlum = I thank thee, O father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. —(Matt. xi. 25).

39. Þou *torned* us hindward. —(Early English Nn. Psalter, xliii. 11.)

Þou *salde* þi folk. —(*Ibid.* xliii. 12.)

Þou *meked* us. —(*Ibid.* xliii. 20.)

Þou *made* me and set þi hand over me. —(*Ibid.* cxxxviii. 5.)

Þou *snibbed* proude. —(*Ibid.* cxviii. 21.)

40. I am informed by a Shropshire friend that it prevails in his county under the form *shinneh*.

Win = will, in *winnot*, *wunnot* = will not, is still heard in the West-Midland districts. It is found in Robson's Romances and in Liber Cure Cocorum.

50. So I got up by break of day and set out; and went straight till I well nigh came within two miles of the town, when, as the devil would have it, a horse was standing at an ale-house door; and my calf (the devil bore out *its* eyes for me) took the horse for *its* mother, and would suck her.

51. Three specimens of the East-Midland dialect have come to light since writing the above. Harl. MS. 3909; Troy Book, ed. Donaldson, E. E. T. Soc.; The Lay-folks Mass-Book, ed. Simpson, E. E. T. Soc.

52. In the romance of “Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t” we find “*blonk* (horse) sadele,” “*fox* felle” (skin). In *blonk* an *e* has probably been dropped.

53. The feminine form is seldom employed.

54. The Northumbrian plural article is *tha*.

55. The Northumbrian corresponding form is *thas*.

56. *Scho* occurs *once* in the present poems.

57. *Yowre3* (yours) sometimes takes the place of *youre* in the romance of “Sir Gawayne and the Grene Kny3t.”

58. Page 92, l. 108.

59. Page 91, l. 72.

60. Syr Gawayn, l. 1932.

61. I would say that *says me I* = I myself say. — R. M.

62. *Schonied* occurs for *schoned*. No Southern writer would retain, I think, the *i* in the preterite.

63. Garnett asserts that the present participle in *-ande* is “a *certain criterion* of a Northern dialect subsequent to the thirteenth century.” It is never found in any Southern writer, but is common to many Midland dialects. Capgrave employs it frequently in his Chronicles. It is, however, no safe criterion by itself.

64. The final *e* is often dropped.

65. In *The Wohunge of Ure Lauerd* the *e* is constantly omitted.

66. “Syr Gawayn and the Grene Kny3t.”

67. Taken with some few alterations from Sir F. Madden’s “Syr Gawayn.”

68. A line, however, is missing from the MS. on fol. 55*b*. See page 15.

Collected Sidenotes

This section was added by the transcriber. It contains the editor's summaries as given in his sidenotes, and can be read as a condensed version of the full text. Headings in Roman numerals link to sections of the poem.

The Pearl
Cleanness
Patience

The Pearl: Sidenotes

I.

Description of a lost pearl (*i.e.* a beloved child).

The father laments the loss of his pearl.

He often visits the spot where his pearl disappeared, and hears a sweet song.

Where the pearl was buried there he found lovely flowers.

Each blade of grass springs from a dead grain.

In the high season of August the parent visits the grave of his lost child.

Beautiful flowers covered the grave.

From them came a delicious odour.

The bereaved father wrings his hands for sorrow, falls asleep upon the flowery plot, and dreams.

II.

In spirit he is carried to an unknown region, where the rocks and cliffs gleamed gloriously.

The hill sides were decked with crystal cliffs.

The leaves of the trees were like burnished silver.

The gravel consisted of precious pearls.

The father forgets his sorrow.

He sees birds of the most beautiful hues, and hears their sweet melody.

No tongue could describe the beauty of the forest.

All shone like gold.

The dreamer arrives at the bank of a river, which gave forth sweet sounds.

In it, stones glittered like stars in the welkin on a winter night.

III.

His grief abates, and he follows the course of the stream.

No one could describe his great joy.

He thought that Paradise was on the opposite bank.

The stream was not fordable.

More and more he desires to see what is beyond the brook.

But the way seemed difficult.

The dreamer finds new marvels.

He sees a crystal cliff, at the foot of which, sits a maiden clothed in glistening white.

He knows that he has seen her before.

He desires to call her but is afraid, at finding her in such a strange place.

IV.

So he stands still, like a well trained hawk.

He fears lest she should escape before he could speak to

her.

His long lost one is dressed in royal array—decked with precious pearls.

She comes along the stream towards him.

Her kirtle is composed of ‘sute,’ ornamented with pearls.

She wore a crown of pearls.

Her hair hung down about her.

Her colour was whiter than whalebone.

Her hair shone as gold.

The trimming of her robe consisted of precious pearls.

A wonderful pearl was set in her breast.

No man from here to Greece, was so glad as the father, when he saw his pearl on the bank of the stream.

The maiden salutes him.

V.

The father enquires of the maiden whether she is his long-lost pearl, and longs to know who has deprived him of his treasure.

The maiden tells him that his pearl is not really lost.

She is in a garden of delight, where sin and mourning are unknown.

The rose that he had lost is become a pearl of price.

The pearl blames his rash speech.

The father begs the maiden to excuse his speech, for he really thought his pearl was wholly lost to him.

The maiden tells her father that he has spoken three words without knowing the meaning of one.

The first word. The second. The third.

VI.

He is little to be praised who loves what he sees.

To love nothing but what one sees is great presumption.

To live in this kingdom (*i.e.* heaven) leave must be asked.

This stream must be passed over by death.

The father asks his pearl whether she is about to doom him to sorrow again.

If he loses his pearl he does not care what happens to him.

The maiden tells her father to suffer patiently.

Though he may dance as any doe, yet he must abide God's doom.

He must cease to strive.

All lies in God's power to make men joyful or sad.

VII.

The father beseeches the pearl to have pity upon him.

He says that she has been both his bale and bliss.

And when he lost her, he knew not what had become of her.

And now that he sees her in bliss, she takes little heed of his sorrow.

He desires to know what life she leads.

The maiden tells him that he may walk and abide with her, now that he is humble.

All are meek that dwell in the abode of bliss.

All lead a blissful life.

She reminds her father that she was very young when she died.

Now she is crowned a queen in heaven.

VIII.

The father of the maiden does not fully understand her.

Mary, he says, is the queen of heaven.

No one is able to remove the crown from her.

The maiden addresses the Virgin.

She then explains to her father that each has his place in heaven.

The court of God has a property in its own being.

Each one in it is a king or queen.

The mother of Christ holds the chief place.

We are all members of Christ's body.

Look that each limb be perfect.

The father replies that he cannot understand how his pearl can be a queen.

He desires to know what greater honour she can have.

IX.

She was only two years old when she died, and could do nothing to please God.

She might be a countess or some great lady but not a queen.

The maiden informs her father that there is no limit to God's power.

The parable of the labourers in the vineyard.

The lord of the vineyard hires workmen for a penny a day.

At noon the lord hires other men standing idle in the market place.

He commands them to go into his vineyard, and he will give them what is right.

At an hour before the sun went down the lord sees other men standing idle.

Tells them to go into the vineyard.

X.

As soon as the sun was gone down the "reeve" was told to pay the workmen.

To give each a penny.

The first began to complain.

Having borne the heat of the day he thinks that he deserves more.

The lord tells him that he agreed only to give him a

penny.

The last shall be first, and the first last.

The maiden applies the parable to herself.

She came to the vine in eventide, and yet received more than others who had lived longer.

The father says that his daughter's tale is unreasonable.

XI.

In heaven, the maiden says, each man is paid alike.

God is no niggard.

The grace of God is sufficient for all.

Those who live long on the earth often forfeit heaven by sinning.

Innocents are saved by baptism.

Why should not God allow their labour.

Our first father lost heaven by eating an apple.

And all are damned for the sin of Adam.

But there came one who paid the penalty of our sins.

The water that came from the pierced side of Christ was baptism.

XII.

Repentance must be sought by prayer with sorrow and affliction.

The guilty may be saved by contrition.

Two sorts of people are saved, the *righteous* and the *innocent*.

The words of David.

The innocent is saved by right.

The words of Solomon.

David says no man living is justified.

Pray to be saved by innocence and not by right.

When Jesus was on earth, little children were brought unto him.

The disciples rebuked the parents.

Christ said, “Suffer little children to come unto me,” etc.

XIII.

No one can win heaven except he be meek as a child.

The pearl of price is like the kingdom of heaven, pure and clean.

Forsake the mad world and purchase the spotless pearl.

The father of the maiden desires to know who formed her figure and wrought her garments.

Her beauty, he says, is not natural.

Her colour passes the fleur-de-lis.

The maiden explains to her father that she is a bride of Christ.

She is without spot or blemish.

Her weeds are washed in the blood of Christ.

The father asks the nature of the Lamb that has chosen his daughter, and why she is selected as a bride.

XIV.

The Lamb has one hundred and forty thousand brides.

St. John saw them on the hill of Sion in a dream, in the new city of Jerusalem.

Isaiah speaks of Christ or the Lamb.

He says that He was led as a lamb to the slaughter.

In Jerusalem was Christ slain.

With buffets was His face flayed.

He endured all patiently as a lamb.

For us He died in Jerusalem.

The declaration of St. John, “Behold the Lamb of God,” etc.

Who can reckon His generation, that died in Jerusalem?

In the New Jerusalem St. John saw the Lamb sitting upon the throne.

XV.

The Lamb is without blemish.

Every spotless soul is a worthy bride for the Lamb.

No strife or envy among the brides.

None can have less bliss than another.

Our death leads us to bliss.

What St. John saw upon the Mount of Sion.

About the Lamb he saw one hundred and forty thousand maidens.

He heard a voice from heaven, like many floods.

He heard the maiden sing a new song.

So did the four beasts and the elders “so sad of cheer.”

This assembly was like the Lamb, spotless and pure.

The father replies to the maiden.

He says he is but dust and ashes.

He wishes to ask one question, whether the brides have their abode in castle-walls or in manor.

XVI.

Jerusalem, he says, in Judea.

But the dwelling of the brides should be perfect.

For such “a comely pack” a great castle would be required.

The city in Judæa, answers the maiden, is where Christ suffered, and is the Old Jerusalem.

The New Jerusalem is where the Lamb has assembled his brides.

Jerusalem means the city of God.

In the Old city our peace was made at one.

In the New city is eternal peace.

XVII.

The father prays his daughter to bring him to the blissful bower.

His daughter tells him that he shall see the outside, but not a foot may he put in the city.

XVIII.

The maiden then tells her father to go along the bank till he comes to a hill.

He reaches the hill, and beholds the heavenly city.

As St. John saw it, so he beheld it.

The city was of burnished gold.

Pitched upon gems, the foundation composed of twelve stones.

The names of the precious stones.

i. Jasper.
ii. Sapphire.
iii. Chalcedony.
iv. Emerald.
v. Sardonyx.
vi. Ruby.
vii. Chrysolite.
viii. Beryl.
ix. Topaz.
x. Chrysoprasus.
xi. Jacinth.
xii. Amethyst.

The city was square.

The wall was of jasper.

Twelve thousand furlongs in length and breadth.

XIX.

Each “pane” had three gates.

Each gate adorned with a pearl.

Such light gleamed in all the streets, that there was no need of the sun or moon.

God was the light of those in the city.

The high throne might be seen, upon which the “high God” sat.

A river ran out of the throne; it flowed through each street.

No church was seen.

God was the church; Christ the sacrifice.

The gates were ever open.

There is no night in the city.

The planets, and the sun itself, are dim compared to the divine light.

Trees there renew their fruit every month.

The beholder of this fair city stood still as a “dased quail.”

XX.

As the moon began to rise he was aware of a procession of virgins crowned with pearls, in white robes, with a pearl in their breast.

As they went along they shone as glass.

The Lamb went before them.

There was no pressing.

The “alder men” fell groveling at the feet of the Lamb.

All sang in praise of the Lamb.

The Lamb wore white weeds.

A wide wound was seen near his breast.

Joy was in his looks.

The father perceives his little queen.

XIX.

Great delight takes possession of his mind.

He attempts to cross the stream.

It was not pleasing to the Lord.

The dreamer awakes, and is in great sorrow.

He addresses his pearl; laments his rash curiosity.

Men desire more than they have any right to expect.

The good Christian knows how to make peace with God.

God give us grace to be his servants!

Cleanness: Sidenotes

I.

Cleanness discloses fair forms.

God is angry with the unclean worshipper, and with false priests.

The pure worshipper receives great reward.

The impure will bring upon them the anger of God, Who is pure and holy.

It would be a marvel if God did not hate evil.

Christ showed us that himself.

St. Matthew records the discourse.

The clean of heart shall look on our Lord.

What earthly noble, when seated at table above dukes, would like to see a lad badly attired approach the table with "rent cockers," his coat torn and his toes out?

For any one of these he would be turned out with a "big buffet," and be forbidden to re-enter, and thus be ruined through his vile clothes.

The parable of the "Marriage of the King's Son."

The king's invitation.

Those invited begin to make excuses.

One had bought an estate and must go to see it.

Another had purchased some oxen and wished to see them "pull in the plough."

A third had married a wife and could not come.

The Lord was greatly displeased, and commanded his servants to invite the wayfaring, both men and women, the better and the worse, that hispalace might be full.

The servants brought in bachelors and squires.

When they came to the court they were well entertained.

The servants tell their lord that they have done his behest, and there is still room for more guests.

The Lord commands them to go out into the fields, and

bring in the halt, blind, and “one-eyed.”

For those who denied shall not taste “one sup” to save them from death.

The palace soon became full of “people of all plights.”

They were not all one wife’s sons, nor had they all one father.

The “brightest attired” had the best place.

Below sat those with “poor weeds.”

All are well entertained “with meat and minstrelsy.”

Each with his “mate” made him at ease.

II.

The lord of the feast goes among his guests.

Bids them be merry.

On the floor he finds one not arrayed for a holyday.

Asks him how he obtained entrance, and how he was so bold as to appear in such rags.

Does he take him to be a harlot?

The man becomes discomfited.

He is unable to reply.

The lord commands him to be bound, and cast into a deep dungeon.

This feast is likened to the kingdom of heaven, to which all are invited.

See that thy weeds are clean.

Thy weeds are thy works that thou hast wrought.

For many faults may a man forfeit bliss.

For sloth and pride he is thrust into the devil’s throat.

He is ruined by covetousness, perjury, murder, theft, and strife.

For robbery and ribaldry, for preventing marriages, and supporting the wicked, for treason, treachery, and tyranny, man may lose eternal bliss.

III.

The high Prince of all is displeased with those who work wickedly.

For the first fault the devil committed, he felt God's vengeance.

He, the fairest of all angels, forsook his sovereign, and boasted that his throne should be as high as God's.

For these words he was cast down to hell.

The fiends fell from heaven, like the thick snow, for forty days.

From heaven to hell the shower lasted.

The devil would not make peace with God.

Affliction makes him none the better.

For the fault of one, vengeance alighted upon all men.

Adam was ordained to live in bliss.

Through Eve he ate an apple.

Thus all his descendants became poisoned.

A maiden brought a remedy for mankind.

IV.

Malice was merciless.

A race of men came into the world, the fairest, the merriest, and the strongest that ever were created.

They were sons of Adam.

No law was laid upon them.

Nevertheless they acted unnaturally.

The "*fiends*" beheld how fair were the daughters of these mighty men, and made fellowship with them and begat a race of giants.

The greatest fighter was reckoned the most famous.

The Creater of all becomes exceedingly wroth.

Fell anger touches His heart.

It repents Him that He has made man.

He declares that all flesh shall be destroyed, both man

and beast.

There was at this time living on the earth a very righteous man: Noah was his name.

Three bold sons he had.

God in great anger speaks to Noah.

Declares that He will destroy all “that life has.”

Commands him to make “a mansion” with dwellings for wild and tame.

To let the ark be three hundred cubits in length, and fifty in breadth, and thirty in height, and a window in it a cubit square.

Also a good shutting door in the side, together with halls, recesses, bushes, and bowers, and well-formed pens.

For all flesh shall be destroyed, except Noah and his family.

Noah is told to take into the ark seven pairs of every clean beast, and one of unclean kind, and to furnish the ark with proper food.

Noah fills the ark.

V.

God asks Noah whether all is ready.

Noah replies that all is fully prepared.

He is commanded to enter the ark, for God tells him that he will send a rain to destroy all flesh.

Noah stows all safely in the ark.

Seven days are passed.

The deep begins to swell, banks are broken down, and the clouds burst.

It rains for forty days, and the flood rises, and flows over the woods and fields.

All must drown.

The water enters the houses.

Each woman with her bairns flees to the hills.

The rain never ceases.

The valleys are filled.

People flock to the mountains.

Some swim for their lives.

Others roar for fear.

Animals of all kinds run to the hills.

All pray for mercy.

God's mercy is passed from them.

Each sees that he must sink.

Friends take leave of one another.

Forty days have gone by, and all are destroyed.

All rot in the mud, except Noah and his family, who are safe in the ark.

The ark is lifted as high as the clouds, and is driven about, without mast, bowline, cables, anchors, or sail to guide its course.

At the mercy of the winds.

Oft it rolled around and reared on end.

The age of the patriarch Noah.

Duration of the flood.

The completeness of the destruction.

God remembers those in the ark.

He causes a wind to blow, and closes the lakes and wells, and the great deep.

The ark settles on Mount Ararat.

Noah beholds the bare earth.

He opens his window and sends out the raven to seek dry land.

The raven "croaks for comfort" on finding carrion.

He fills his belly with the foul flesh.

The lord of the ark curses the raven, and sends out the dove.

The bird wanders about the whole day.

Finding no rest, she returns about eventide to Noah.

Noah again sends out the dove.

VI.

The dove returns with an olive branch in her beak.
This was a token of peace and reconciliation.
Joy reigns in the ark.
The people therein laugh and look thereout.
God permits Noah and his sons to leave the ark.
Noah offers sacrifice to God.
It is pleasing to Him that “all speeds or spoils.”
God declares that He will never destroy the world for the sin of man.
That summer and winter shall never cease.
Nor night nor day, nor the new years.
God blesses every beast.
Each fowl takes its flight.
Each fish goes to the flood.
Each beast makes for the plain.
Wild worms wriggle to their abodes in the earth.
The fox goes to the woods.
Harts to the heath, and hares to the gorse.
Lions and leopards go to the lakes.
Eagles and hawks to the high rocks.
The four ‘frekes’ take the empire.
Behold what woe God brought on mankind for their hateful deeds!
Beware of the filth of the flesh.
“One speck of a spot” will ruin us in the sight of God.
The beryl is clean and sound,—it has no seam.

VII.

When God repented that he had made man, he destroyed all flesh.
But afterwards He was sorry, and made a covenant with mankind that He would not again destroy all the living.

For the filth of the flesh God destroyed a rich city.
God hates the wicked as “hell that stinks.”
Especially harlotry and blasphemy.
Nothing is hidden from God.
God is the ground of all deeds.
He honours the man that is honest and whole.
But for deeds of shame He destroys the mighty ones.

VIII.

Abraham is sitting before his house-door under a green oak.
He sees three men coming along, and goes toward them.
He entreats them to rest awhile, that he may wash their feet, and bring them a morsel of bread.
Abraham commands Sarah to make some cakes quickly, and tells his servant to seethe a tender kid.
Abraham appears bare-headed before his guests.
He casts a clean cloth on the green, and sets before them cakes, butter, milk, and pottage.
God praises his friend’s feast, and after the meat is removed, He tells Abraham that Sarah shall bear him a son.
Sarah, who is behind the door, laughs in unbelief.
God tells Abraham that Sarah laughs at His words.
Sarah denies that she laughed.
Abraham’s guests set out towards Sodom, two miles from Mamre.
The patriarch accompanies them.
God determines to reveal to Abraham his secret purposes.

IX.

He informs him of the destruction about to fall upon the cities of the plain, for their great wickedness, in abusing the gifts bestowed upon them.

The ordinance of marriage had been made for them, but they foully set it at nought.

The flame of love.

Therefore shall they be destroyed as an example to all men for ever.

Abraham is full of fear, and asks God whether the “sinful and the sinless” are to suffer together.

Whether he will spare the cities provided fifty righteous are found in them?

For the sake of fifty the cities shall be spared.

The patriarch beseeches God to spare the city for the sake of forty-five righteous.

For the lack of five the cities shall not be destroyed.

For forty the cities shall be spared.

Abraham entreats God’s forbearance for his speech.

Thirty righteous, found in the cities, shall save them from destruction.

For the sake of twenty guiltless ones God will release the rest.

Or if ten only should be found pure.

The patriarch intercedes for Lot.

Beseeches Him to “temper His ire,” and then departs weeping for sorrow.

X.

God’s messengers go to Sodom.

Lot is sitting alone at the “door of his lodge.”

Staring into the street he sees two men.

Beardless chins they had, and hair like raw silk.

Beautifully white were their weeds.

Lot runs to meet them.

Invites them to remain awhile in his house, and in the morning they may take their way.

Lot invites them so long that at last they comply.

The wife and daughters of Lot welcome their visitors.

Lot admonishes his men to prepare the meat, and to serve no salt with it.

Lot's wife disregards the injunction.

The guests are well entertained.

But before they go to rest the city is up in arms.

With "keen clubs" the folk clatter on the walls, and demand that Lot should deliver up his guests.

The wind yet stinks with their filthy speech.

Lot is in great trouble.

He leaves his guests and addresses the Sodomites.

He offers to give up to them his two daughters.

The rebels raise a great noise, and ask who made him a justice to judge their deeds, who was but a boy when he came to Sodom.

The young men bring Lot within doors, and smite those outside with blindness.

In vain they try to find the door of Lot's house.

XI.

Early in the morning the angels command Lot to depart from Sodom, with his wife and two daughters, and to look straight before him, for Sodom and Gomorrah shall be destroyed.

Lot asks what is best to be done, that he may escape.

He is told to choose himself a dwelling which shall be saved from destruction.

He chooses Zoar.

The angels command Lot to depart quickly.

He wakes his wife and daughters.

All four are hastened on by the angels, who "preach to them the peril" of delay.

Before daylight Lot comes to a hill.

God aloft raises a storm.

A rain falls thick of fire and sulphur.

Upon the four cities it comes, and frightens all folks therein.

The great bars of the abyss do burst.

Cliffs cleave asunder.

The cities sink to hell.

Such a cry arises that the clouds clatter again.

Lot and his companions are frightened, but continue to follow their face.

Lot's wife looks behind her, and is turned to a stiff stone "as salt as any sea."

Her companions do not miss her till they reach Zoar.

By this time all were drowned.

The people of Zoar, for dread, rush into the sea and are destroyed.

Only Zoar with three therein (Lot and his daughters) are saved.

Lot's wife is an image of salt for two faults:

1. She served salt before the Lord at supper.
2. She looked behind her.

Abraham is up full early on the morn.

He looks towards Sodom, now only a pit filled with pitch, from which rise smoke, ashes and cinders, as from a furnace.

A sea now occupies the place of the four cities.

It is a stinking pool, and is called the Dead Sea.

Nothing may live in it.

Lead floats on its surface.

A feather sinks to the bottom of it.

Lands, watered by this sea, never bear grass or weed.

A man cannot be drowned in it.

The clay clinging to it is corrosive, as alum, alkaran, sulphur, etc., which fret the flesh and fester the bones.

On the shores of this lake grow trees bearing fair fruits, which, when broken or bitten, taste like ashes.

All these are tokens of wickedness and vengeance.
God loves the pure in heart.
Strive to be clean.
Jean de Meun tells how a lady is to be loved.
By doing what pleases her best.
Love thy Lord!
Conform to Christ, who is polished as a pearl.
By how comely a contrivance did he enter the womb of the virgin!
In what purity did he part from her!
No abode was better than his.
The sorrow of childbirth was turned to joy.
Angels solaced the virgin with organs and pipes.
The child Christ was so clean that ox and ass worshipped him.
He hated wickedness, and would never touch ought that was vile.
Yet there came to him lazars and lepers, lame and blind.
Dry and dropsical folk.
He healed all with kind speech.
His handling was so good, that he needed no knife to cut or carve with.
The bread he broke more perfectly than could all the tools of Toulouse.
How can we approach his court except we be clean?
God is merciful.
Through penance we may shine as a pearl.
Why is the pearl so prized?
She becomes none the worse for wear.
If she should become dim, wash her in wine.
She then becomes clearer than before.
So may the sinner polish him by penance.
Beware of returning to sin.
For then God is more displeased than ever.

The reconciled soul God holds as His own.

Ill deeds rob Him of it.

God forbids us to defile any vessels used in His service.

In Belshazzar's time, the defiling of God's vessels brought wrath upon the king.

XII.

Daniel in his prophecies tells of the destruction of the Jews.

For their unfaithfulness in following other gods, God allowed the heathen to destroy them, in the reign of Zedekiah, who practised idolatry.

Nebuchadnezzar becomes his foe.

He besieges Jerusalem, and surrounds the walls.

The city is stuffed full of men.

Brisk is the skirmish.

Seven times a day are the gates assailed.

For two years the fight goes on, yet the city is not taken.

The folk within are in want of food.

Meager they become.

For so shut up are they that escape seems impossible.

But on a quiet night they steal out, and rush through the host.

They are discovered by the enemy.

A loud alarm is given.

They are pursued and overtaken.

Their king is made prisoner.

His chief men are presented as prisoners to Nebuchadnezzar.

His sons are slain.

His own eyes are put out.

He is placed in a dungeon in Babylon.

All for his "bad bearing" against the Lord, who might otherwise have been his friend.

Nebuchadnezzar ceased not until he had destroyed Jerusalem.

Nebuzaradan was “chief of the chivalry.”

The best men were taken out of the city.

Nevertheless Nebuzaradan spared not those left.

Brains of bairns were spilt.

Priests pressed to death.

Wives and wenches foully killed.

All that escaped the sword were taken to Babylon, and were made to drag the cart or milk the kine.

Nebuzaradan burst open the temple, and slew those therein.

Priests, pulled by the poll, were slain along with deacons, clerks, and maidens.

The enemy pillages the temple of its pillars of brass, and the golden candlestick from off the altar.

Goblets, basins, golden dishes, all are taken by Nebuzaradan, and hampered together.

Solomon had made them with much labour.

The temple he beats down, and returns to Babylon.

Presents the prisoners to the king, among whom were Daniel and his three companions.

Nebuchadnezzar has great joy, because his enemies are slain.

Great was his wonder when he saw the sacred jewelry.

He praises the God of Israel.

Such vessels never before came to Chaldea.

They are thrust into the treasury.

Nebuchadnezzar reigns as emperor of all the earth, through the “doom of Daniel,” who gave him good counsel.

Nebuchadnezzar dies and is buried.

Belshazzar succeeds him.

He holds himself the biggest in heaven or on earth.

He honours not God, but worships false phantoms.

He promises them rewards if good fortune befal.

If they vex him he knocks them in pieces.

He has a wife, and many concubines.

The mind of the king was fixed upon new meats and other vain things.

XIII.

Belshazzar, to exhibit his vainglory, proclaims throughout Babylon, that all the great ones should assemble on a set day, at the Sultan's feast.

Kings, dukes, and lords were commanded to attend the court.

To do the king honour many nobles came to Babylon.

It would take too long to name the number.

The city of Babylon is broad and big.

It is situated on a plain, surrounded by seven streams, a high wall, and towers.

The palace was long and large, each side being seven miles in length.

High houses were within the walls.

The time of the feast has come.

Belshazzar sits upon his throne: the hall floor is covered with knights.

When all are seated, service begins.

Trumpets sound everywhere.

Bread is served upon silver dishes.

All sorts of musical instruments are heard in the hall.

The king, surrounded by his loves, drinks copiously of wine.

It gets into his head and stupifies him.

A cursed thought takes possession of him.

He commands his marshal to bring him the vessels taken from the temple by Nebuchadnezzar, and to fill them with wine.

The marshal opens the chests.

Covers the cupboard with vessels.

The Jewels of Jerusalem deck the sides of the hall.

The altar and crown, blessed by bishop's hands, and anointed with the blood of beasts, are set before the bold Belshazzar.

Upon this altar were noble vessels curiously carved, basins of gold, cups arrayed like castles with battlements, and towers with lofty pinnacles.

Upon them were pourtrayed branches and leaves, the flowers of which were white pearls, and the fruit flaming gems.

The goblets were ornamented with flowers of gold.

The candlestick was brought in, with its pillars of brass, and ornamental boughs, upon which sat birds of various hues.

Lights shone bright from the candlestick, which once stood before the "Holy of Holies."

The pollution of the sacred vessels is displeasing to God.

For "a boaster on bench" drinks from them till he is as "drunken as the devil."

God is very angry.

Before harming the revellers He sends them a warning.

Belshazzar commands the sacred vessels to be filled with wine.

The cups and bowls are soon filled.

Music of all kind is heard in the hall.

Dukes, princes, concubines, and knights, all are merry.

Drinking of the sweet liquors they ask favours of their gods, who, although dumb, are as highly praised "as if heaven were theirs."

A marvel befals the feasters.

The king first saw it.

Upon the plain wall, "a palm with pointel in fingers" is seen writing.

The bold Belshazzar becomes frightened.

His knees knock together.

He roars for dread, still beholding the hand, as it wrote on the rough wall.

The hand vanishes but the letters remain.

The king recovers his speech and sends for the "book-learned;" but none of the scholars were wise enough to read it.

Belshazzar is nearly mad.

Commands the city to be searched throughout for the "wise of witchcraft."

He who expounds the strange letters, shall be clothed in "gowns of purple."

A collar of gold shall encircle his throat.

He shall be the third lord in the realm.

As soon as this cry was upcast, to the hall came clerks out of Chaldea, witches and diviners, sorcerers and exorcists.

But after looking on the letters they were as ignorant as if they had looked into the leather of the left boot.

The king curses them all and calls them churls.

He orders the harlots to be hanged.

The queen hears the king chide.

She inquires the cause.

Goes to the king, kneels before him, and asks why he has rent his robes for grief, when there is one that has the Spirit of God, the counsellor of Nebuchadnezzar, the interpreter of his dreams, through the holy Spirit of God.

The name of this man is Daniel, who was brought a captive from Judæa.

The queen tells the king to send for Daniel.

Her counsel is accepted.

Daniel comes before Belshazzar.

The king tells him that he has heard of his wisdom, and

his power to discover hidden things, and that he wants to know the meaning of the writing on the wall.

Promises him, if he can explain the text of the letters and their interpretation, to clothe him in purple and pall, and put a ring about his neck, and to make him "a baron upon bench."

Daniel addresses the king, and reminds him how that God supported his father, and gave him power to exalt or abase whomsoever he pleased.

Nebuchadnezzar was established on account of his faith in God.

So long as he remained true, no man was greater.

But at last pride touches his heart.

He forgets the power of God, and blasphemes His name.

He says that he is "god of the ground," and the builder of Babylon.

Hardly had Nebuchadnezzar spoken, when God's voice is heard, saying, "Thy principality is departed.

Thou, removed from men, must abide on the moor, and walk with wild beasts, eat herbs, and dwell with wolves and asses."

For his pride he becomes an outcast.

He believes himself to be a bull or an ox.

Goes "on all fours," like a cow, for seven summers.

His thighs grew thick.

His hair became matted and thick, from the shoulders to the toes.

His beard touched the earth.

His brows were like briars.

His eyes were hollow, and grey as the kite's.

Eagle-hued he was.

At last he recovered his "wit," and believed in God.

Then soon was he restored to his seat.

But thou, Belshazzar, hast disregarded these signs, and hast blasphemed the Lord, defiled his vessels, filling

them with wine for thy wenches, and praising thy lifeless gods.

For this sin God has sent thee this strange sight, the fist with the fingers writing on the wall.

These are the words: “Mene, Tekel, Peres.

Mene.— God has counted thy kingdom and finished it.
Tekel.—Thy reign is weighed and is found wanting in deeds of faith.
Peres.— Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Persians.

The Medes shall be masters here.”

The king commands Daniel to be clothed in a frock of fine cloth.

Soon is he arrayed in purple, with a chain about his neck.

A decree is made, that all should bow to him, as the third lord that followed Belshazzar.

The decree was made known, and all were glad.

The day, however, past.

Night came on.

Before another day dawned, Daniel’s words were fulfilled.

The feast lasts till the sun falls.

The skies become dark.

Each noble hies home to his supper.

Belshazzar is carried to bed, but never rises from it, for his foes are seeking to destroy his land, and are assembled suddenly.

The enemy is Darius, leader of the Medes.

He has legions of armed men.

Under cover of the darkness, they cross the river.

By means of ladders they get upon the walls, and within an hour enter the city, without disturbing any of the watch.

They run into the palace, and raise a great cry.

Men are slain in their beds.

Belshazzar is beaten to death, and caught by the heels, is

foully cast into a ditch.

Darius is crowned king, and makes peace with the barons.

Thus the land was lost for the king's sin.

He was cursed for his uncleanness, and deprived of his honour, as well as of the joys of heaven.

Thus in three ways has it been shown, that uncleanness makes God angry.

Cleanness is His comfort.

The seemly shall see his face.

God give us grace to serve in His sight!

Patience: Sidenotes

I.

Patience is often displeasing, but it assuages heavy hearts, and quenches malice.

Happiness follows sorrow.

It is better to suffer than to be angry.

Matthew tells us of the promises made by Christ: Blessed are the poor, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Blessed are the meek, for they shall "wield the world."

Blessed are the mourners, for they shall be comforted.

Blessed are the hungry, for they shall be filled.

Blessed are the merciful, for mercy shall be their reward.

Blessed are the clean of heart, for they shall see the Saviour.

Blessed are the peace-makers, for they shall be called God's sons.

Blessed are they that live aright, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

These blessings are promised to those who follow poverty, pity, penance, meekness, mercy, chastity, peace and patience.

Poverty and patience are to be treated together.

They are “fettled in one form,” and have one meed.

Poverty will dwell where she lists, and man must needs suffer.

Poverty and patience are play-fellows.

What avails impatience, if God send affliction?

Patience is best.

Did not Jonah incur danger by his folly?

II.

Jonah was a prophet of the gentiles.

God’s word came to him, saying, “Rise quickly, take the way to Nineveh.

Say that which I shall put in thine heart.

Wickedness dwells in that city.

Go swiftly and carry my message.”

Jonah is full of wrath.

He is afraid that the shrews will put him in the stocks, or put out his eyes.

He thinks that God desires his death.

He determines not to go near the city, but fly to Tarshish.

Grumbling, he goes to port Joppa.

He says that God will not be able to protect him.

Jonah reaches the port, finds a ship ready to sail.

The seamen catch up the cross-sail, fasten the cables, weigh their anchors, and spread sail.

A gentle wind wafts the ship along.

Was never a Jew so joyful as was Jonah then.

He has, however, put himself in peril, in fleeing from God.

The words of David.

Does He not hear, who made all ears?

He is not blind that formed each eye.

Jonah is now in no dread.

He is, however, soon overtaken.
The wielder of all things has devices at will.
He commands Eurus and Aquilo to blow.
The winds blow obedient to His word.
Out of the north-east the noise begins.
Storms arose, winds wrestled together, the waves rolled high, and never rested.
Then was Jonah joyless.
The boat reeled around.
The gear became out of order.
Ropes and mast were broken.
A loud cry is raised, Many a lad labours to lighten the ship.
They throw overboard their bags and feather beds.
But still the wind rages, and the waves become wilder.
Each man calls upon his god.
Some called upon Vernagu, Diana, and Neptune, to the sun and to the moon.
Then said one of the sailors: “Some lawless wretch, that has grieved his God, is in the ship.
I advise that we lay lots upon each man.
When the guilty is gone the tempest may cease.”
This is agreed to.
All are assembled, from all corners of the ship, save Jonah the Jew, who had fled into the bottom of the boat.
There he falls asleep.
Soon he is aroused, and brought on board.
Full roughly is he questioned.
The lot falls upon Jonah.
Then quickly they said: “What the devil hast thou done, doted wretch?
What seekest thou on the sea?
Hast thou no God to call upon?

Of what land art thou?

Thou art doomed for thy ill deeds."

Jonah says: "I am a Hebrew, a worshipper of the world's Creator.

All this mischief is caused by me, therefore cast me overboard."

He proves to them that he was guilty.

The mariners are exceedingly frightened.

They try to make way with their oars, but their endeavours are useless.

Jonah must be doomed to death.

They pray to God, that they may not shed innocent blood.

Jonah is cast overboard.

The tempest ceases and the sea settles.

The stiff streams drive the ship about.

At last they reach a bank.

The seamen thank God, and perform solemn vows.

Jonah is in great dread.

III.

Jonah is shoved from the ship.

A wild whale swims by the boat.

He opens his swallow, and seizes the prophet.

It is not to be wondered at that Jonah suffered woe.

The prophet is without hope.

Cold was his comfort.

Jonah was only a mote in the whale's jaws.

He entered in by the gills, and by means of one of the intestines of the fish, came into a space as large as a hall.

The prophet fixes his feet firmly in the belly of the whale.

He searches into every nook of its navel.

The prophet calls upon God.

He cries for mercy.

He sits safely in a recess, in a bowel of the beast, for three days and three nights.

The whale passes through many a rough region.

Jonah makes the whale feel sick.

The prophet prays to God in this wise:

IV.

“Lord! to thee have I cried out of hell’s womb.

Thou dippedst me in the sea.

Thy great floods passed over me.

The streams drive over me.

I am cast out from thy sight.

The abyss binds me.

The rushing waves play on my head.

Thou possessest my life.

In my anguish I remembered my God, and besought His pity.

When I am delivered from this danger, I will obey thy commands.”

God speaks fiercely to the whale, and he vomits out the prophet on a dry space.

Jonah has need to wash his clothes.

God’s word comes to the prophet.

He is told to preach in Nineveh.

By night Jonah reaches the city.

Nineveh was a very great city.

Jonah delivers his message; “Yet forty days and Nineveh shall come to an end.

It shall be turned upside down, and swallowed quickly by the black earth.”

This speech spreads throughout the city.

Great fear seizes all.

The people mourn secretly, clothe themselves in sackcloth, and cast ashes upon their heads.

The message reaches the ears of the king.

He rends his robes, clothes himself in sackloth, and mourns in the dust.

He issues a decree, that all in the city, men, beasts, women and children, prince, priest, and prelates, should fast for their sins.

Children are to be weaned from the breast.

The ox is to have no hay, nor the horse any water.

Who can tell if God will have mercy?

Though He is mighty, He is merciful, and may forgive us our guilt.

All believed and repented.

God forgave them through his goodness.

V.

Much sorrow settles upon Jonah.

He becomes very angry.

He prays to God and says: “Was not this my saying, when Thy message reached me in my own country?

I knew Thy great goodness, Thy long-suffering, and Thy mercy.

I knew these men might make their peace with Thee, therefore I fled unto Tarshish.

Take my life from me, O Lord!

It is better for me to die than live.”

God upbraids Jonah, saying: “Is this right to be so wroth?”

Jonah, jangling, uprises, and makes himself a bower, of hay and ever-fern, to shield him from the sun.

He slept heavily all night.

God prepared a woodbine.

Jonah awakes, and is exceedingly glad of the bower.

The prophet, under its gracious leaves, is protected from the sun’s rays.

Jonah wishes he had such a lodge in his own country.

God prepared a worm, that made the woodbine wither.

Jonah awakes and finds his woodbine destroyed.

The leaves were all faded.

The sun beat upon the head of Jonah.

He is exceedingly angry, and prays God that he may die.

God rebukes the prophet.
"Dost thou well," He says, "to be angry for the gourd?"

Jonah replies, "I would I were dead."

God asks if it is to be wondered at that He should help His handy work.

Is not Jonah angry that his woodbine is destroyed, which cost him no labour?

God is not to be blamed for taking pity upon people that He made.

Should He destroy Nineveh the sorrow of such a sweet place would sink to His heart.

In the city there are little bairns who have done no wrong.

And there are others who cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand.

There are also dumb beasts in the city incapable of sinning.

Judgment must be tempered with mercy.

He that is too hasty to rend his clothes must afterwards sit with worse ones to sew them together.

Poverty and pain must be endured.

Patience is a noble point, though it displeases oft.

Text and Layout

The text is intended to replicate the layout of the printed book as closely as possible.

Headnotes, printed at the top of each page, have been moved to the most appropriate sentence break.

Some shorter headnote pairs may be merged into one. **Sidenotes** giving plot summary are placed close to their original location.

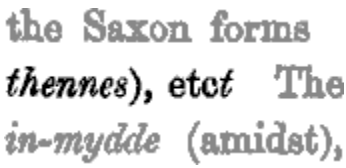
The **Notes** were originally printed as a short (12 pages) section before the Glossarial Index. For this e-text they have been distributed among their respective texts. Links to the Notes are intended to be visible but not distracting.

Text-Critical Notes such as variant readings have been handled differently than in the printed book, where they appeared either as footnotes (numbered) or sidenotes (sometimes but not always marked). Here, the word they refer to is underlined if necessary, and the note itself will generally have this form:

leak] the *t* of the MS. has a *k* over it.

Where a single word has both an endnote and a marginal note, the link to the endnote is shown.

A. An unusual typographical error, shown with beginnings of adjoining lines:



Back to Top
Preface
The Pearl (*separate file*)
Cleanness (*separate file*)
Patience (*separate file*)
Glossarial Index (*separate file*)
Sidenotes